

LSHTM



0011382479



LIBRARY

Author : STITT (E.R.)

Title : The diagnostics and treatment of
tropical diseases.

Acc. No.	Class Mark	Date	Volume
59588	b.UB	1914	

Croydon 1546.

DON 44818

14, Addiscombe Road,
East Croydon.

July 23^d 162

I am so glad this may be useful. Dr. Eadell was in Menopausia in the 1944-18 W.

L. H. Walters

13/11/19

1. Thyrid

(a) Thyrid

Thyrid is a small, oval, or round, shell with a smooth surface. It is often found in the same place as the other shells. The shell is usually white or light brown, and it is often found in the same place as the other shells. The shell is usually white or light brown, and it is often found in the same place as the other shells.

(b) Thyrid

3. Thyrid

Thyrid is a small, oval, or round, shell with a smooth surface. It is often found in the same place as the other shells. The shell is usually white or light brown, and it is often found in the same place as the other shells. The shell is usually white or light brown, and it is often found in the same place as the other shells.

(c) Thyrid

Thyrid is a small, oval, or round, shell with a smooth surface. It is often found in the same place as the other shells. The shell is usually white or light brown, and it is often found in the same place as the other shells. The shell is usually white or light brown, and it is often found in the same place as the other shells.

Thyrid is a small, oval, or round, shell with a smooth surface. It is often found in the same place as the other shells. The shell is usually white or light brown, and it is often found in the same place as the other shells.

1. Thyrid

2. Thyrid

3. Thyrid

4. Thyrid

5. Thyrid

6. Thyrid

7. Thyrid

8. Thyrid

9. Thyrid

10. Thyrid

11. Thyrid

12. Thyrid

13. Thyrid

14. Thyrid

15. Thyrid

1. Thyrid

2. Thyrid

3. Thyrid

4. Thyrid

5. Thyrid

6. Thyrid

7. Thyrid

8. Thyrid

9. Thyrid

10. Thyrid

11. Thyrid

12. Thyrid

13. Thyrid

14. Thyrid

15. Thyrid

II. *R. ...* - to ...

1. ... 43 ...
... + ...
... on ...
... the ...

Empusa ... 63% ...
... - ...
... - ...

Sp. ...
...
...
...

...
... 50 ...

...
... 10 ...

...

... a ...
...

...
...

THE
DIAGNOSTICS AND TREATMENT
OF
TROPICAL DISEASES

STITT

BY THE SAME AUTHOR

Practical Bacteriology, Blood Work and Animal Parasitology; Including Bacteriological Keys, Zoological Tables and Explanatory Clinical Notes. Third Edition. 4 Plates, 106 Other Illustrations containing 513 Figures. 12mo; xv+408 pages.

Cloth, 6s. 6d. net

"It would be difficult to find a book of so small a size which would prove more useful than this to those whose work is away from books of reference, whose service involves travel and residence in remote districts or in tropical countries."—*The Lancet, London.*

The Diagnostics and Treatment OF Tropical Diseases

BY

E. R. STITT, A. B., Ph. G., M. D.

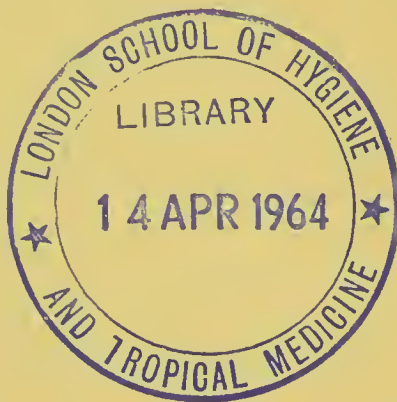
MEDICAL DIRECTOR, U. S. NAVY; GRADUATE, LONDON SCHOOL OF TROPICAL MEDICINE; HEAD
OF DEPARTMENT OF TROPICAL MEDICINE, U. S. NAVAL MEDICAL SCHOOL; PROFESSOR OF
TROPICAL MEDICINE, GEORGETOWN UNIVERSITY; PROFESSOR OF TROPICAL MED-
ICINE, GEORGE WASHINGTON UNIVERSITY; LECTURER IN TROPICAL MEDI-
CINE, JEFFERSON MEDICAL COLLEGE; FORMERLY ASSOCIATE PRO-
FESSOR OF MEDICAL ZOOLOGY, UNIVERSITY OF THE PHILIP-
PINES AND INSTRUCTOR IN BACTERIOLOGY AND
PATHOLOGY, U. S. NAVAL MEDICAL SCHOOL.

WITH 86 ILLUSTRATIONS

LONDON
H. K. LEWIS & CO., LTD.
136 GOWER STREET, W. C.

59564

COPYRIGHT, 1914, BY P. BLAKISTON'S SON & CO.



Printed in the United States

PREFACE

There is no more striking evidence of advance in general medicine than the present attitude of the physician or rather internist in the diagnosis of the cases met with in a modern hospital ward. Instead of first considering the evidence obtainable at the bedside and then noting the laboratory findings as something apart and entirely subordinate, we now find the two aids to diagnosis so correlated that it is as difficult to note one kind of information as bedside and another as laboratory as it formerly was to separate signs from symptoms in the study of a case.

In tropical medicine, however, we have for many years made our diagnosis in the laboratory, the bedside playing a subsidiary part—the laboratory diagnosis is controlled by the bedside findings.

It was originally my idea to prepare a book which would enable students to have presented to them in intimate relation the laboratory and clinical aids to the diagnosis of tropical diseases. I was forced to abandon this plan as it did not seem possible to take up clinical diagnosis prior to the obtaining by the student of a comprehensive knowledge of the facts in connection with each separate tropical disease. There was not the same difficulty attaching to a book exclusively devoted to the diagnostic methods of the laboratory so that in 1908 a laboratory manual was published. More recently it has occurred to me that my methods in teaching tropical medicine from the clinical rather than the laboratory standpoint might be of assistance to those who are interested in this very important branch of medicine.

When we consider that a knowledge of malaria, blackwater fever, amoebic dysentery, bacillary dysentery, liver abscess, pellagra and hookworm disease is just as important for the medical man in the Southern States of the United States as for the physician in tropical colonial possessions, it will be realized that there is more of a practical side to tropical medicine than is usually admitted.

Although this is intended as a companion volume to the one on laboratory methods yet, in order to make it complete in itself, there has

been prepared under each disease a paragraph dealing with the laboratory diagnosis of the disease under consideration.

Furthermore, under the sections on the blood, faeces and urine in the diagnosis of tropical diseases, the laboratory methods which are of practical application have been given.

The chief feature of the book is in presenting in Part II the clinical side of tropical diseases from a standpoint of the signs and symptoms of these diseases which are connected with anatomical or clinical groupings rather than from the side of the individual disease. Thus in Chapter XXXVI the diagnostic points which may be obtained from a study of the temperature chart are given while in Chapter XLII the neurological manifestations, which may be noted in various tropical diseases, are presented.

In Part I each individual tropical disease is treated as taken up in any of the well-known books on tropical medicine. It has seemed to me, however, that the paragraphs on epidemiology and prophylaxis should receive especial attention. Again, in order to bring out more strongly the symptomatology of each disease, I have followed the paragraph on symptomatology in general with a section dealing with the symptoms in detail, as shown in a consideration of the circulatory, respiratory, digestive, nervous and other systems.

The paragraph devoted to the definition of each important disease has been prepared with a view to giving the reader a brief description of the disease in its clinical and etiological aspects.

Small type has been used rather to supply headings than for the purpose of indicating less important matter because in a book so condensed it has not seemed advisable to present any subject not of practical value.

This book is written from the standpoint of the teacher who aims not only to give the essential points but to present them in a manner so cross-referenced that the student has the subject presented to him from every angle.

It has been my custom in preparing my lectures to abstract the various works on tropical medicine in order that special points in one book, not noted in the others, would stand out prominently. In this connection I am deeply indebted to the manuals of Manson, Scheube, Castellani and Chalmers, LeDantec, Jeanselme and Rist as well as to the monographs in *Maladies Exotiques*, Albutt's *System of Medicine*,

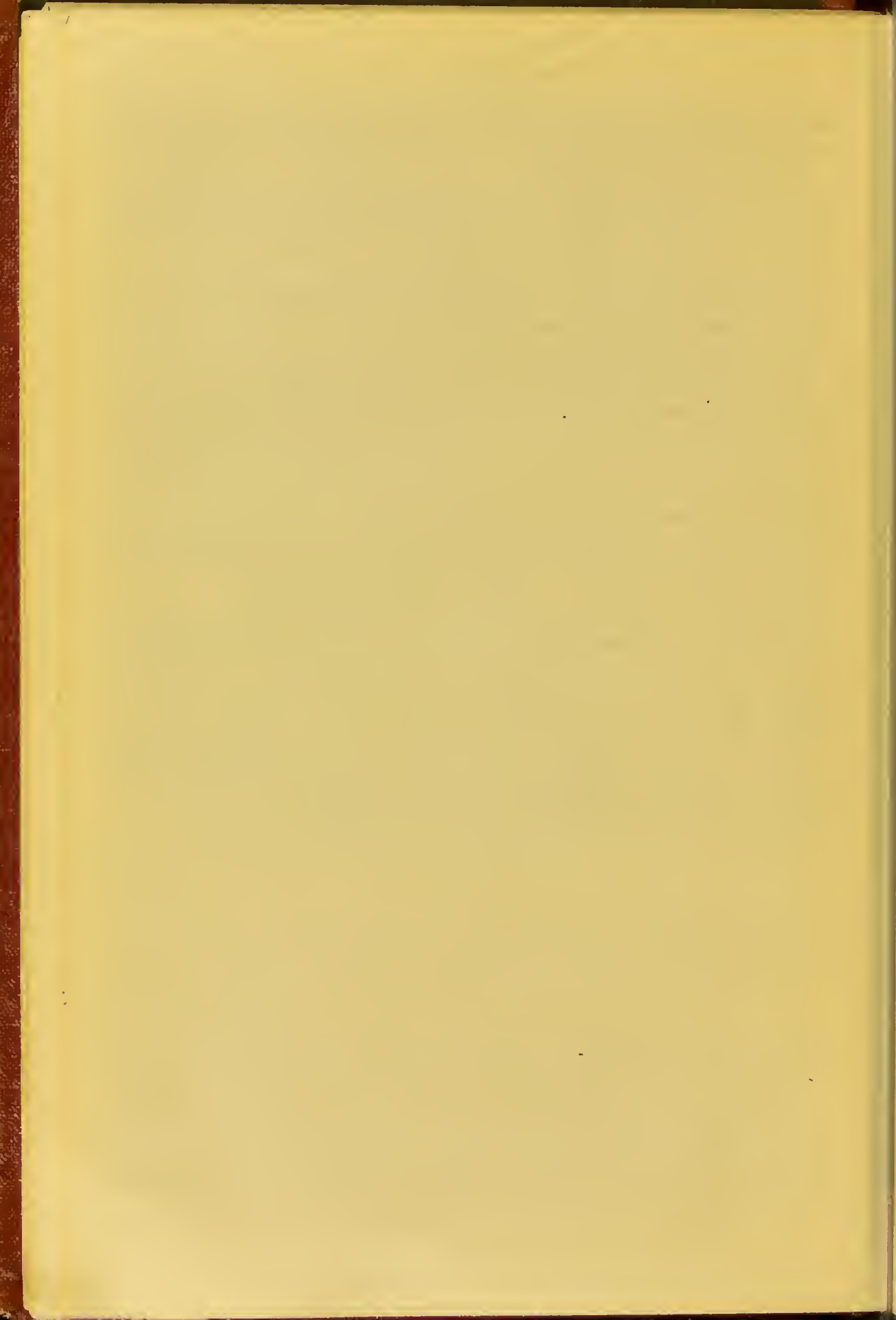
Osler's System of Medicine, Mense's Tropenkrankheiten and Traite Pratique de Pathologie Exotique.

In particular I am indebted to Ruge and zurVerth's Tropenkrankheiten, to Brumpt's Precis de Parasitologie and to the only work in the diagnosis of tropical diseases I have been able to obtain, that of Wurtz and Thiroux, entitled Maladies Tropicales.

In the section on blood examination I have advocated the adoption of the scheme of differential counting brought out in Schilling-Torgau's work on the blood in tropical diseases.

I have freely consulted the various journals dealing with the subject of tropical medicine as to recent advances in this branch of medicine and I would particularly express my indebtedness to the Tropical Diseases Bulletin which should be in the hands of every student of tropical medicine, not only as an index to original papers but as a guide as to the advisability of consulting such papers. These abstracts are prepared by authorities in the different tropical diseases and many of the abstracts indicate the value or lack of value of the paper abstracted.

The tropical diseases are classified under those due to protozoa, those due to bacteria, those due to filterable viruses, infectious granulomata and tropical skin diseases. Sprue is classified as a food deficiency disease for the reason that the cure seems to rest solely in dietary treatment. Certain diseases which did not definitely belong to any of the above-named sections were taken up under diseases of disputed nature or minor importance. The second part of the book deals with the clinical diagnosis of tropical diseases.



CONTENTS

PART I

TROPICAL DISEASES AND THEIR TREATMENT

DISEASES DUE TO PROTOZOA

CHAPTER I.—Malaria, 1.

CHAPTER II.—Blackwater fever, 40.

CHAPTER III.—The trypanosomiasis, 49; African trypanosomiasis, 49; Brazilian trypanosomiasis, 61.

CHAPTER IV.—The tropical relapsing fevers, 64.

CHAPTER V.—The leishmaniasis, 71; Visceral leishmaniasis, 76; Cutaneous leishmaniasis, 82.

CHAPTER VI.—General considerations of dysentery, 88.

CHAPTER VII.—Amoebic dysentery, 93.

CHAPTER VIII.—Liver abscess, 104.

DISEASES DUE TO BACTERIA

CHAPTER IX.—Bacillary dysentery, 114.

CHAPTER X.—Plague, 126.

CHAPTER XI.—Cholera, 147.

CHAPTER XII.—Malta fever, 165.

CHAPTER XIII.—Leprosy, 172

DISEASES DUE TO FILTERABLE VIRUSES

CHAPTER XIV.—Yellow fever, 191.

CHAPTER XV.—Dengue, 204; Dengue like fevers, 209; Phlebotomus or Pappataci fever, 209; Seven day fever, 210; Sand fly fever and three day fever, 211; Six day fever, 211.

FOOD DEFICIENCY DISEASES

CHAPTER XVI.—Beriberi, 212; Rice and beriberi, 215.

CHAPTER XVII.—Pellagra, 229.

CHAPTER XVIII.—Sprue, 244; Hill diarrhoea, 247.

HELMINTHIC INFECTIONS

CHAPTER XIX.—Ancylostomiasis, 249.

CHAPTER XX.—Filarial infections, 262; *Filaria bancrofti*, 266; *Filaria loa*, 276; *Filaria volvulus*, 277; *Filaria medinensis*, 278.

CHAPTER XXI.—The schistosomiasis, 280; Japanese schistosomiasis, 284.

CHAPTER XXII.—Minor helminthic infections, 287; Paragonomiasis, 287; Clonorchiosis, 288; Intestinal distomiasis, 289; Cochinchina diarrhoea, 290.

INFECTIOUS GRANULOMATA OF THE TROPICS

CHAPTER XXIII.—Yaws, 292.

CHAPTER XXIV.—Gangosa, 299.

CHAPTER XV.—Mycetoma, 303.

CHAPTER XXVI.—Granuloma venereum, 307.

TROPICAL SKIN DISEASES

CHAPTER XXVII.—Tropical ulcer, 309.

CHAPTER XXVIII.—*Tinea imbricata*, 312.

CHAPTER XXIX.—*Tinea cruris*, 315.

CHAPTER XXX.—Pinta, 317.

CHAPTER XXXI.—Minor tropical affections of the skin, 319; Dermato-philiasis, 319; Tropical impetigo, 320; Piedra, 320; Cutaneous myiasis, 321; Creeping eruption, 322; Craw-craw, 323.

TROPICAL DISEASES OF DISPUTED NATURE OR MINOR IMPORTANCE

CHAPTER XXXII.—*Verruga peruviana* and Oroya fever, 325; Oroya fever, 325; *Verruga peruviana*, 327.

CHAPTER XXXIII.—Heat stroke and heat prostration, 329.

CHAPTER XXXIV.—Tsutsugamushi or Japanese River fever, 333; Spotted fever of the Rocky Mountains and tabardillo or Mexican typhus, 335.

CHAPTER XXXV.—Climatic bubo, ainhum, goundou and rat bite disease, 337; Climatic bubo, 337; Ainhum, 339; Goundou, 339; Rat bite disease, 340.

PART II

DIAGNOSTICS OF TROPICAL DISEASES

CHAPTER XXXVI.—Onset and the temperature chart in the diagnosis of tropical diseases, 345.

CHAPTER XXXVII.—Blood examinations in the diagnosis of tropical diseases, 355.

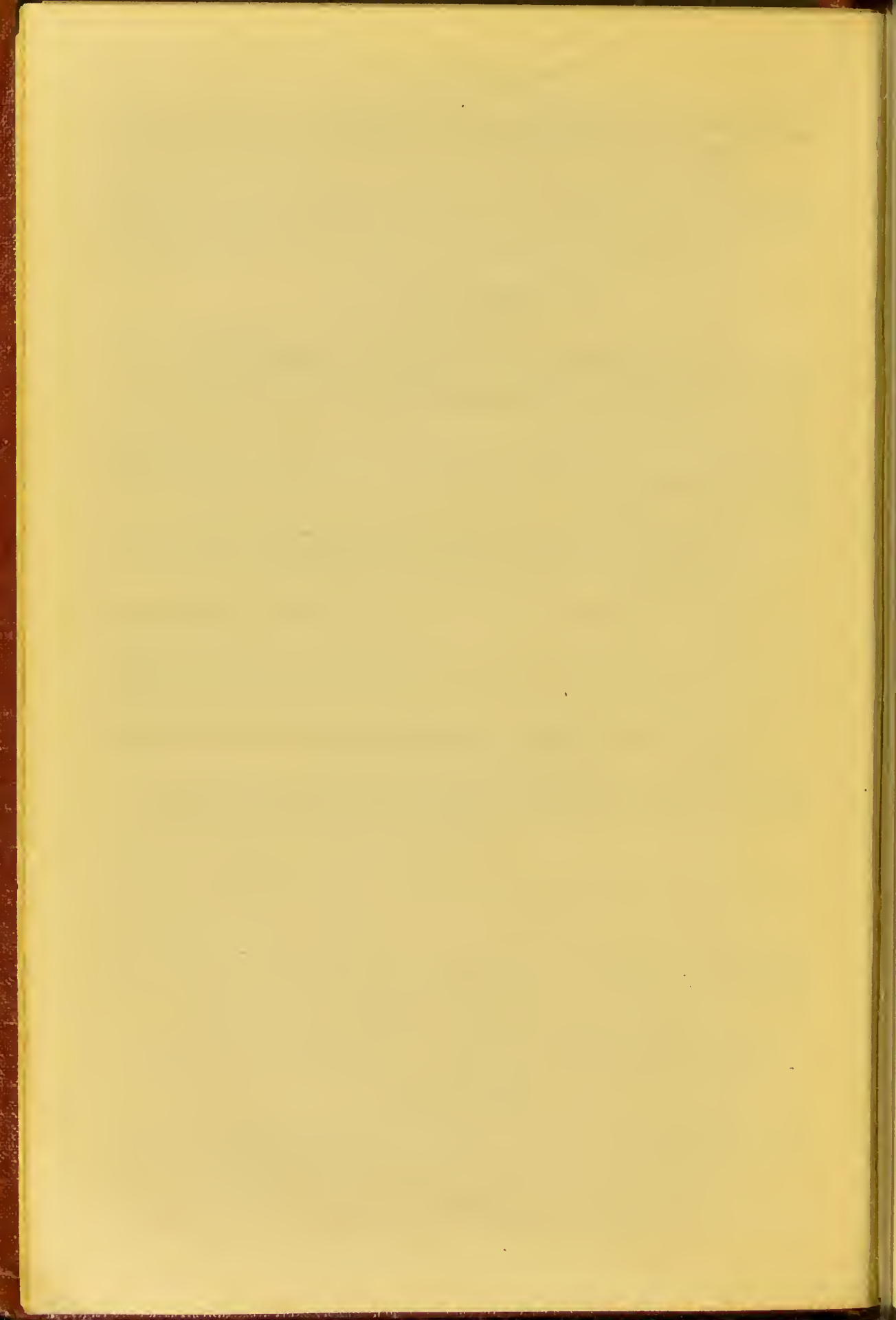
CHAPTER XXXVIII.—The circulatory, respiratory and lymphatic systems together with anaemia, haemorrhages and oedema in tropical diseases, 378.

CHAPTER XXXIX.—Jaundice and the liver and spleen in tropical diseases, 384.

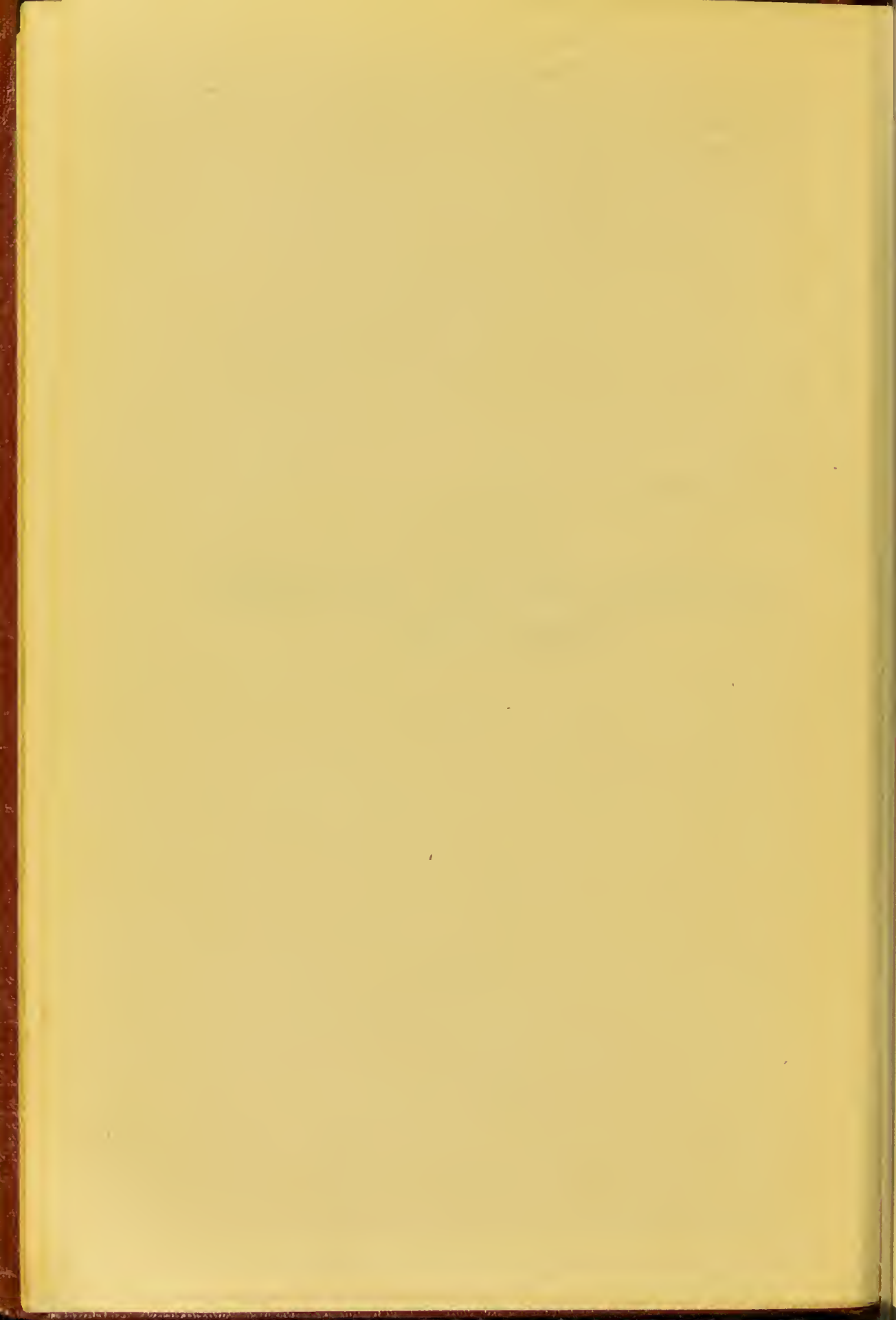
CHAPTER XL.—The urine and the genito-urinary apparatus in the diagnosis of tropical diseases, 388.

CHAPTER XLI.—The faeces and the alimentary tract in tropical diseases, 397.

CHAPTER XLII.—Neurological considerations in tropical diseases, 406.



PART I.
TROPICAL DISEASES AND THEIR
TREATMENT.



SECTION I.

DISEASES DUE TO PROTOZOA.

CHAPTER I.

MALARIA.

DEFINITION AND SYNONYMS.

Definition.—Malaria is a protozoal disease caused by three species of *Plasmodium*. In the clinically benign types of malaria we have that of benign tertian, due to *P. vivax*, with a tertian periodicity and that of quartan, due to *P. malariae* and showing a quartan or 72 hour periodicity. The clinically malignant type of malaria is due to *P. falciparum*, the parasite of malignant tertian or aestivo-autumnal malaria. The benign malarial fevers are characterized by a frank chill and well marked distinctions of cold, hot and sweating stages. In malignant tertian there is an indefinite or dumb chill with prolonged hot stage. Diagnostic of malaria are periodicity, parasites and splenic enlargement. The malignant tertian parasite is the one responsible for the so-called cerebral and algid manifestations of perniciousness. Man is the intermediate host of the parasite while the sexual cycle or sporogony goes on in some species of mosquito of the anopheline subfamily, the definitive host.

Synonyms.—Remittent Fever, Intermittent Fever, Ague, Marsh Fever, Paludism, Jungle Fever.

French: Paludisme. German: Wechselfieber.

HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION.

History.—Hippocrates, who considered malaria as intimately connected with bile, divided the disease into quotidian, tertian and quartan, differentiating such types of fever from continuous fevers. It is interesting to note that Celsus recognized two types of tertian fever, the one benign and similar to quartan fever, the other far more dangerous, with a fever occupying 36 of the 48 hours and not entirely subsiding in the remission, but being only mitigated.

In the time of Caesar views were expressed that swamp air might be the cause of malaria, especially that animals, so small that the eye could not follow them, might transmit diseases.

In the view of our present knowledge it is remarkable that Lancisi, in 1718, should have associated marshes with the development of gnats, which insects could not only introduce with their proboscis the putrefying organic matter but animalculae as well.

In 1638 Countess del Cinchon, the wife of the Viceroy of Peru, was cured of an intermittent fever by the employment of the bark of certain trees which bark was introduced into Europe in 1640. The origin of the name cinchona is thus explained.

While Morton in 1697 and Sydenham in 1723 noted the specific action of cinchona in certain fevers it remained for Torti, in 1753, by the use of cinchona, to clinically differentiate those fevers which were cured by cinchona from those which failed to yield to this specific. Quinine was not introduced until after 1820. Audouard, in 1803, was the first to draw attention to the splenic enlargement of malaria.

The views of Nott and Beauperthuis as to transmission of malaria and yellow fever by insects are considered under the latter disease.

In 1847 Meckel announced that the dark color of malarial organs was due to a pigment and in 1848 Virchow noted that this pigment was contained in cells. In 1875, Kelsch observed pigmented bodies in malarial blood and in 1880 came to the conclusion that these pigmented cells were characteristic of malaria.

The year 1880 is the most important one in the history of malaria for on November 6, 1880, Laveran, at Constantine, first saw the parasites of malaria. He not only noted the findings of spherical pigmented bodies but also of crescents and in particular the flagellation of the male gamete which demonstrated to him that these were living bodies. When these bodies were demonstrated to various Italian authorities, in 1882, they were thought by them to be degenerated red cells.

It may be stated that at this time the Italians, influenced by the work of Pasteur, were convinced that an organism, *Bacillus malariae*, reported by Klebs and Crudeli (1879) to have been isolated from water and soil of malarious districts, was the cause of malaria. This bacillus was said to be cultivable on ordinary media and to be capable, when injected into man, of producing malaria.

By 1885 the Italians were convinced that the bodies discovered by Laveran were the cause of malaria and Marchiafava, by staining with methylene blue, noted the ring forms and the increase in size up to that of the sporulating parasites. To Golgi we not only owe the discovery that the malarial paroxysm coincides with the period when the sporulating forms (merocytes) simultaneously reach maturity but also the exact working out of the cycle of quartan malaria. He even showed three stages of development of the parasites in a triple quartan. It may be stated that Golgi, Marchiafava and Celli are the ones to whom we owe our first knowledge of the existence of different species of parasites for different kinds of malaria. In these investigations they showed that as a rule they could reproduce a certain type of malaria by injecting the blood of such a case of malaria into a well man. Gerhardt, in 1884, was the first to produce malaria by the injection of malarial blood. Laveran insisted all this time that there was but a single species of malaria. About this period a great deal of research was carried on as to the origin of malarial parasites and it was found

that many animals harbored parasites similar to the malarial parasites of man. In 1891 the chromatin staining method of Romanowsky was introduced.

Our present exact knowledge as to the existence of 3 species of malaria is largely due to the careful examinations made by Koch of fresh and stained malarial blood preparations.

In 1894 Manson formulated the hypothesis of the mosquito transmission of malaria. He based this upon the fact that the flagellation of the male gamete does not take place for several minutes after the removal of the blood from the peripheral circulation. He also suggested that larvae might feed upon infected mosquitoes dying upon the water and thus acquire the disease.

Ross then had mosquitoes feed upon the blood of malarial patients which contained crescents and observed flagellation take place in the stomach of the mosquito.

Metschnikoff from observation of the parasites in the brain capillaries at the autopsy of a malarial case considered them to be coccidial in nature. Pfeiffer, studying

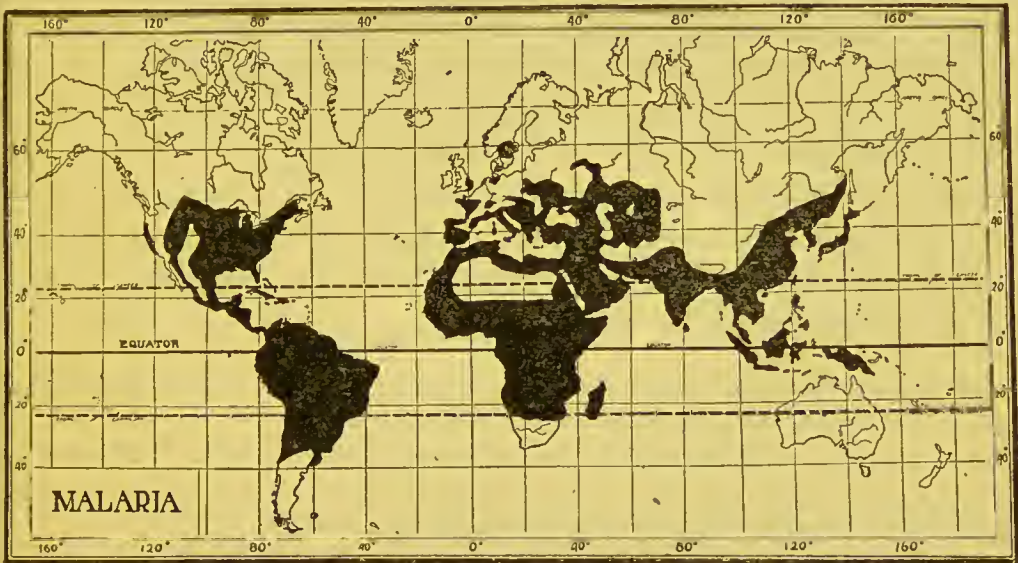


FIG. 1.—Geographical distribution of malaria.

the Coccidia, showed a differentiation into male and female forms and MacCallum, working with a malaria like disease of birds (*Halteridium*), observed the fecundation of a female parasite by the flagellum like process of the male.

In 1898, in India, working with a malarial disease of sparrows (*Proteosoma*), Ross infected 22 out of 28 healthy sparrows by mosquitoes which had previously fed on sick sparrows. He noted in the culicine mosquito employed for transmission the same cycle of development as that subsequently worked out for human malaria, in anopheline mosquitoes, by Grassi and Bignami, in Italy.

Koch's great work in connection with malaria was to demonstrate that the malaria like infections of other animals had no part in the causation of human malaria and that the malarial parasite could only circulate between man and certain mosquitoes.

In order to demonstrate conclusively the connection between infected mosquitoes and malaria Sambon and Low lived for three of the most malarious months of 1900,

in one of the most malarious sections of the Roman Campagna, in a mosquito screened hut and did not contract malaria.

Infected mosquitoes were also sent to London from Italy and allowed to feed upon Doctor P. T. Manson and Mr. George Warren. After a period of incubation these volunteers came down with typical malaria with parasites in the blood.

In 1911 Bass first cultivated the parasites of malaria.

Geographical Distribution.—Malaria is so widely distributed over all parts of the tropical and subtropical world that it would require too much space to give its geographical distribution other than as given in the accompanying chart. The malaria belt may be said to extend from 60° N. to 40° S. Many of the islands of the Pacific are exempt.

ETIOLOGY AND EPIDEMIOLOGY

Etiology.—There are at least three species of animal parasites which produce human malaria, *Plasmodium vivax*, the cause of benign tertian, *P. malariae* of quartan and *P. falciparum* of aestivo-autumnal. These parasites belong to the haemamoeba type of the order Haemosporidia, of the class Sporozoa and of the phylum Protozoa.

This type of Haemosporidia is characterized by invasion of red cells, amoeboid movement, pigment production and the extrusion of flagellum like processes from the male sporont after the blood is taken from the animal and allowed to cool.

Other Haemosporidia which are very important in diseases of domesticated animals, but not for man, are those of the piroplasm type.

These parasites of the red cells do not produce pigment and do not "exflagellate." It is to parasites of this type that some authorities have ascribed the cause of black-water fever, a condition undoubtedly connected with malaria.

It has been thought proper by some to consider the malarial parasites as belonging to two genera, the genus *Plasmodium*, characterized by round sexual forms and including *P. vivax* and *P. malariae* and the genus *Laverania*, characterized by crescent shaped sexual forms and including but one species *L. malariae*, that of aestivo-autumnal malaria.

Craig recognizes a quotidian form and a tertian form for the aestivo-autumnal parasite, while Manson follows the view that three different species of crescent bearing parasites are concerned in malignant infections; one, of tertian periodicity, *Laverania malariae*, and two, of quotidian periodicity, *L. praecox*, a pigmented form, and *L. immaculata*, a form in which pigment is only observed in the crescent formation and does not exist in the ring form schizonts. Stephens has noted a parasite which has more nuclear material than *P. falciparum* (*P. pertenuis*).

Other Haemosporidia of the haemamoeba type are found in birds, monkeys, bats, squirrels and possibly in reptiles, (the parasites of reptiles, while intracorporeal and pigment producing, do not exflagellate). Of particular interest is the so called bird malaria or *Proteosoma*, a parasite very similar to the human malarial ones.

The life cycle of this parasite was demonstrated before that of the malarial parasites of man.

Although Koch in his work showed that these malaria like parasites of other animals were not infectious for man, Fermi has recently carried out well controlled experiments, by feeding laboratory bred anophelines on the blood of various animals showing such infections, and subsequently on men, with invariably negative results. Accumulated experience shows that man is not susceptible to any of the animal malarias and that the three human species can only exist in man as an intermediate host and in certain species of anopheline mosquitoes as definitive hosts.

In the United States, *Cellia albimana*, *C. argyrolarsis*, *Anopheles crucians*, *A. quadrimaculatus* and *A. pseudopunctipennis* are efficient transmitters of malaria. Rather remarkable is the experience of Beyer in New Orleans that *A. crucians* will only transmit *P. falciparum* while *A. quadrimaculatus* will transmit *P. vivax* and *P. malariae*, but not *P. falciparum*.

A. punctipennis, of the United States, is not an efficient host for any species of malaria.

A species which may be the chief transmitter in one country may be unimportant, though present, in another country. Thus *Cellia albimana* is the chief malarial transmitter of Panama although *C. argyrolarsis* is present. In Brazil the conditions are reversed, probably due to *C. albimana* thriving best where slightly brackish pools of standing water abound, as in Panama.

In India the species which seem most active in transmitting malaria are *Myzomyia culicifacies* and *M. listoni*; while in Africa, *M. funesta* is very efficient.

In Europe *A. maculipennis* and *A. bifurcalus* are important.

While anophelines are usually rural or at any rate preferring the suburbs of cities yet we can differentiate between domesticated and wild anophelines, these latter keeping away from man and consequently not playing a transmitting role.

Another factor in the becoming of an efficient host appears to rest in the feeding habits of such anophelines, one which is voracious and fills and then ejects by rectum the blood taken from the malarial patient is more apt to be a transmitter than a species less greedy.

By an efficient host is meant a species in which full development of the parasite takes place.

Malaria can be transmitted by subcutaneous or intravenous injection of the blood of a patient with the disease into a well person, the same type being reproduced.

Such a method of transmission is only of scientific interest and the regular method is as follows: An infected anopheline at the time of

feeding on the human blood introduces through a minute channel in the hypopharynx the infecting sporozoite of the sexual cycle.

When man is at first infected by sporozoites we have starting up a nonsexual cycle, which is completed in from forty-eight to seventy-two hours, according to the species of the parasite. The falciform sporozoite bores into a red cell, assumes a round shape and continues to enlarge (schizont). Approaching maturity, it shows division into a varying number of spore-like bodies. At this stage the parasite is termed a merocyte. When the merocyte ruptures, these spore-like bodies or merozoites enter a fresh cell and develop as before.

At the time that the merocyte ruptures it is supposed that a toxin is given off which causes the malarial paroxysm.

Rosenau, by injecting intravenously filtered blood, taken from a patient at the time of sporulation of the parasites caused a malarial paroxysm. No parasites developed later. Another man who received a small amount of unfiltered blood showed a slight paroxysm and four days later showed parasites in his blood. Hence the parasite will not pass through the pores of a filter.

The cycle goes on by geometric progression from the first introduction of the sporozoite, but it is usually about two weeks before a sufficient number of merocytes rupture simultaneously to produce sufficient toxin for symptoms (period of incubation). This cycle is termed schizogony. It is considered that there must be several hundred parasites per cu. m.m. sporulating to be capable of producing symptoms.

After a varying time, whether by reason of necessity for renewal of vigor of the parasite by a respite from sporulation, or whether from a standpoint of survival of the species, sexual forms (gametes) develop. Some think that sporozoites of sexual and nonsexual character are injected at the same time. It is usually considered, however, that sexual forms develop from pre-existing nonsexual parasites. The developing gametes are often termed sporonts.

These gametes show two types: the one which contains more pigment, has less chromatin, and stains more deeply blue is the female—a macrogamete; the other with more chromatin, less pigment, and staining grayish-green rather than blue is the male—a microgametocyte. When the gametes are taken into the stomach of the Anophelinae, the male cell throws off spermatozoa-like projections, which have an active lashing movement and break off from the now useless cell carrier and are thereafter termed microgametes. These fertilize the macrogametes and this body now becomes a zygote. This process can be observed in a wet preparation under the microscope. There is first seen a very active movement of the pigment of the male

gamete and finally long delicate bulbous tipped flagellum-like processes are thrown off (exflagellated) and push aside the red cells by their progressive motion. MacCallum saw a female *Halleridium* fertilized by the microgamete, after which it was capable of a worm like motion (vermiculus).

By a boring-like movement the vermiculus stage of the zygote goes through the walls of the mosquito's stomach, stopping just under the outer epithelial layer of the stomach or mid-gut. It continues to enlarge until about the end of one week it has grown to be about 57μ in diameter and has become packed with hundreds of delicate falciform bodies. Some only contain a few hundred, others several thousand.

In some of his observations Darling has noted that the zygote of benign tertian malaria grows larger and more rapidly than that of aestivo-autumnal and that the

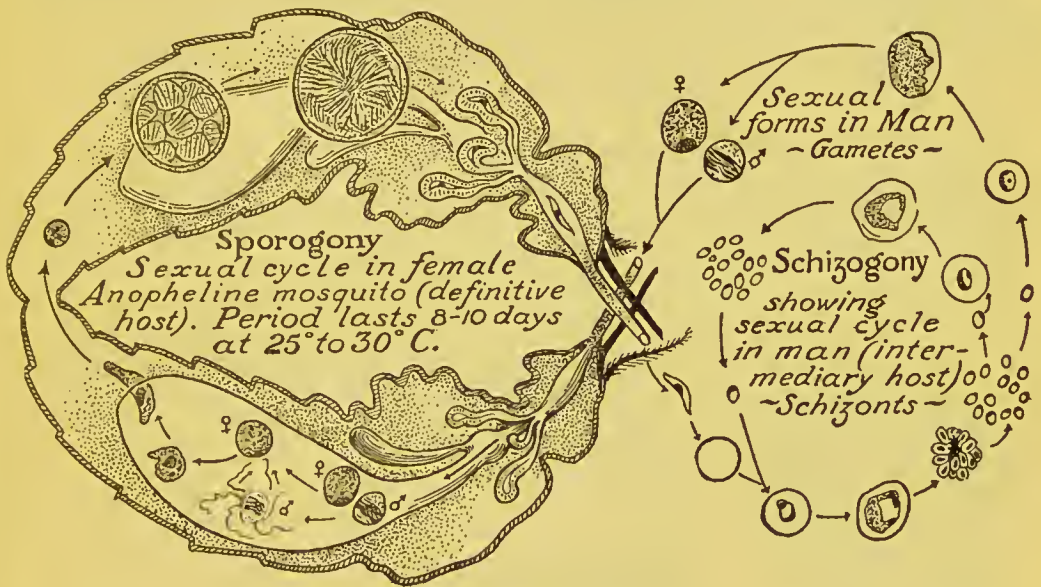


FIG. 2.—Sexual (sporogony in mosquito) and non sexual (schizogony in man) cycle of the malarial parasite.

The sporogony diagram to the left shows in lower portion the fertilization of the female gamete by the microgamete. The vermiculus stage of the zygote is shown boring into the walls of the mosquito's stomach to later become the more mature zygote packed with sporozoites as shown in the upper diagram of the developmental processes in the mosquito's stomach.

pigment is clumped rather than in belts or lines as with aestivo-autumnal. Darling has also noted that mosquitoes do not tend to become infected unless the gamete carrying man has more than 12 gametes to the cu. m.m.

The capsule of the mature zygote ruptures about the 10th day and the sporozoites are thrown off into the body cavity. They make their way to the salivary glands and thence, by way of the veneno-salivary duct, in the hypopharynx, they are introduced into the circulation of the person bitten by the mosquito, and start a nonsexual cycle. As the sexual life takes place in the mosquito, this insect is the definitive host and man is only the intermediate host. The cycle in the mosquito takes about 10 to 12 days.

It must be remembered that only certain genera and species of Anophelinae are known malaria transmitters; thus Stephens and Christophers, in dissecting 496 mosquitoes of the species *M. rossi*, did not find a single gland infected with sporozoites. With *M. culicifacies*, however, twelve in 259 showed infection.

This is one method of determining the endemicity of malaria or the *malarial index*. There are two other methods: 1. by noting the prevalence of enlarged spleens, and 2. by determining the number of inhabitants showing malarial parasites in the blood. This index is best determined from children between two and ten years of age, as children under two show too high a proportion of parasites in the peripheral blood while those over ten years of age show too great an incidence of enlarged spleens.

As before stated there are three species of malarial parasites: 1. *Plasmodium vivax*, that of benign tertian-cycle, forty-eight hours; 2. *Plasmodium malariae*, that of quartan-cycle, seventy-two hours; and 3. *Plasmodium falciparum*, that of aestivo-autumnal or malignant tertian-cycle of forty-eight hours.

Variations in cycles may be produced by infected mosquitoes biting on successive nights, so that one crop will mature and sporulate twenty-four hours before the second. This would give a quotidian type of fever. In aestivo autumnal infections anticipation and retardation in the sporulation cause a very protracted paroxysm, lasting eighteen to thirty-six hours; this tends to give a continued or remittent fever instead of the characteristic intermittent type.

Plasmodium Vivax.

In fresh, unstained preparations, taken at the time of the paroxysm or shortly afterward, the benign tertian schizont, or non sexual parasite, is seen as a grayish white, round or oval body, whose outlines cannot be distinctly differentiated from the infected red cell. They are about $1/5$ of the diameter of the red cell and are best picked up by noting their amoeboid activity. In about 18 hours fine pigment particles appear and make them more distinct. After 24 hours the lively motion of the pigment and the projection of pseudopod-like processes, in a pale and swollen red cell, makes their recognition very easy. When about 30 to 36 hours old the amoeboid movement ceases. Approaching the merocyte stage the pigment tends to clump into one or two pigment masses and one can recognize small, oval, highly refractile bodies within the sporulating parasite.

The gametes or sexual forms do not show amoeboid movement, but the fully developed gamete, which is generally larger than the red cells, has abundant pigment, which has an active "swarming" motion. The male gamete is more refractile, is rarely larger than a red cell and shows yellow brown, short rod like particles of pigment. About 15 minutes after the making of a fresh preparation these male gametes

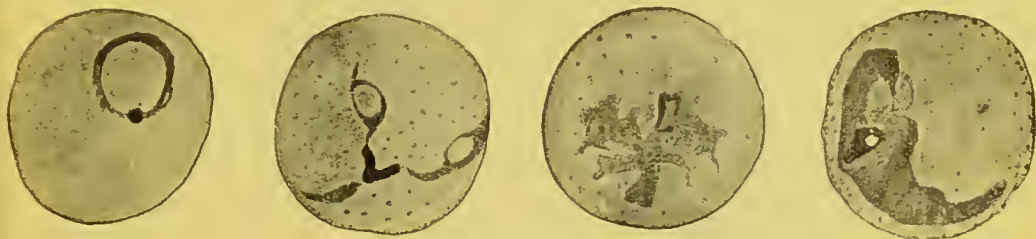


FIG. 3.—*Plasmodium vivax*. (Benign tertian.) Development of schizonts of nonsexual cycle in peripheral blood of man. Red cell swollen and stains feebly. Note Schüffner's dots. $\times 2200$. (MacNeal after Doflein.)

throw out 4 to 8 long, slender, lashing processes, which are about 15 to 20 mikrons long. These spermatozoon-like bodies now break off from the useless parent cell and with a serpent like motion glide away in search of a female gamete, knocking the red cells about in their passage through the blood plasma.

The female gamete is larger than a red cell, is rather granular and has more abundant dark brown pigment than the male.

In dried smears, stained by some Romanowsky method, as that of Wright, Leishman or Giemsa, we note small oval blue rings, about $1/5$ of the diameter of the infected yellowish-pink erythrocyte. One side of the ring is distinctly broader than the rather fine opposite end, which seems to hold a round, yellowish brown dot, the chromatin dot, and has a resemblance to a signet ring. These small tertian rings of the non sexual parasites (schizont) are seen about the time of the commencement of the sweating stage of the paroxysm. Two chromatin dots in the line of the ring are rare as is also true of more than one ring in a red cell.

When the parasite is about 24 hours old we note that it contains much pigment and has an amoeboid or multiple figure of 8 contour, is about $3/4$ the size of a red cell and that the infected red cell is about $1\frac{1}{2}$ times as large as in the beginning and presents a washed out appearance. It is an anaemic looking cell. We also note, as characteristic of a benign tertian infection, reddish yellow dots in the pale red cell, which are known as Schüffner's dots. These, practically, are characteristic for benign tertian.

A few hours before the completion of its 48 hour cycle the contained pigment begins to clump, the chromatin to divide and, finally, we have a sporulating parasite, in which the 16 to 20 small, round, bluish bodies, with chromatin dots, are irregularly distributed over the area of the merocyte.

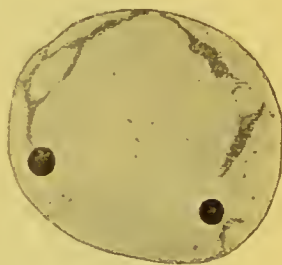


FIG. 4.—*Plasmodium vivax*. (Benign tertian.) Double infection of a red blood cell which is enlarged and shows Schüffner's dots. $\times 2200$. (MacNeal after Doflein.)

The gametes, or sexual parasites, show a thicker blue ring and have the chromatin dot in the center of the ring. The pigmentation of the half grown gametes is more marked than that of schizonts of equal size. The shape of the gametes is not amoeboid, as is that of the 24 to 36 hour old schizont, but round or oval. The full grown gametes have the pigment distributed and the chromatin in a single aggrega-

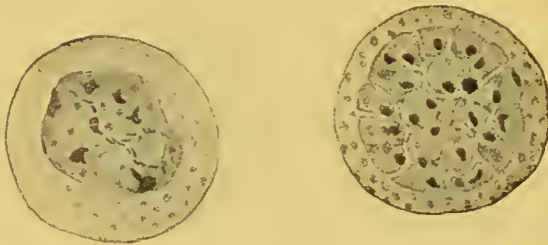


FIG. 5.—*Plasmodium vivax*. Mature schizont and merocyte. Found in the blood just before and at onset of chill. $\times 2200$. (MacNeal after Doflein.)

tion—just the opposite of non sexual parasites. The male gamete stains a grayish green and has a very large amount of chromatin, usually centrally placed. The female gamete stains a pure blue, has only about $1/10$ as much chromatin as plasma, with the chromatin often placed at one side. The pigment of the female gamete is dark brown while that of the male is yellowish brown.

Plasmodium Malariae.

In fresh preparations the young quartan schizont has only slight amoeboid movement and, as development proceeds, the rather dark



FIG. 6.—*Plasmodium malariae*. (Quartan.) Development of nonsexual parasite in blood of man. $\times 2200$. (From MacNeal after Doflein.)

brown, coarse pigment tends to arrange itself peripherally about the band shaped or oval parasite.

The infected red cell shows but little change. At the end of 72 hours the rather regular daisy form of the merocyte is more distinct than that of the benign tertian merocyte.

The distinctions between the male and female gametes are similar to those of the benign tertian gametes. In Romanowsky stained smears it is difficult to distinguish the young quartan schizont from the benign tertian one but, after 24 hours, the tendency of the quartan schizont to assume equatorial band forms across a red cell of normal size and staining characteristics and without Schüffner's dots makes the differentiation easy. In the fully developed sporulating parasite or merocyte the 8 merozoites assume a regular distribution giving it a daisy appearance.

The gametes show practically the characteristics of the benign tertian ones but are smaller.

Plasmodium Falciparum.

The young schizont of malignant tertian is extremely difficult to detect in fresh preparations, there being noted early in the rather long

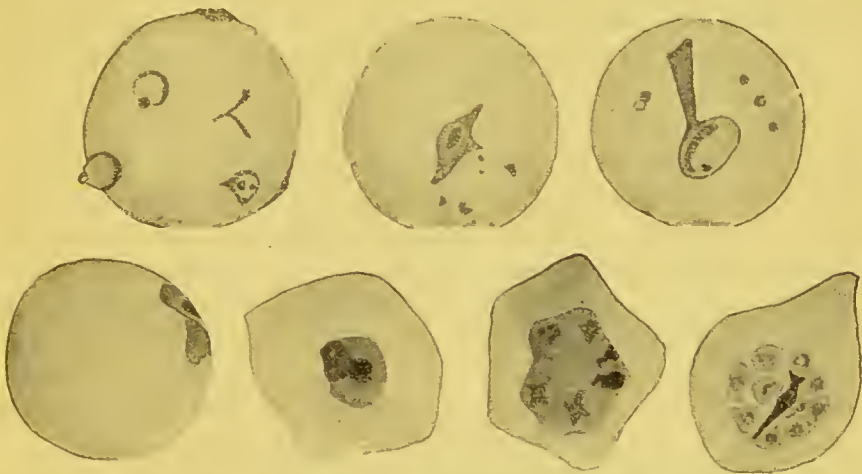


FIG. 7.—*Plasmodium falciparum*. (Malignant tertian.) Nonsexual cycle in blood and internal organs of man. Note multiple infections of single red cell. (From MacNeal after Doflein.)

continued, hot stage, only small craterlike dots, about $1/6$ of the diameter of a red cell which, however, show an active amoeboid movement.

Later on in the hot stage these ring like dots enlarge to become about $1/3$ of the diameter of a red cell, most often occupying the periphery of the infected red cell. About this time, or at the very commencement of the pigmentation, the schizont containing red cells disappear from the peripheral circulation so that the further development is rarely observed in blood specimens.

The infected cell is brassy in colour and shrunken in shape—it shows evidences of degeneration. The gametes appear as crescent shaped bodies, which are absolutely characteristic of malignant tertian, the male gamete being more hyaline and delicate while the female one is more granular and larger.

In Romanowsky stained preparations we see, while the fever is sustained, small hair like rings, with geometrical outline, with frequently two chromatin dots in one end of the ring and a single red cell often showing two or more of these young rings. The rings are often seen as if plastered on the periphery of the red cells or as if having destroyed a

UNSTAINED SPECIMEN (FRESH BLOOD).

	<i>P. vivax.</i> (Benign tertian.)	<i>P. malariae.</i> (Quartan.)	<i>P. falciparum.</i> (Malignant tertian) (Æstivo-autumnal.)
Character of the infected red cell.	Swollen and light in color after eighteen hours.	About the size and color of a normal red cell.	Tendency to distortion of red cell rather than crenation. Shriveled appearance. (Brassy color.)
Character of young schizont.	Indistinct amœboid outline. Hyaline. Rarely more than one in r.c. Active amœboid movement. One third diam. of r. c.	Distinct frosted glass disc. Very slight amœboid motion.	Small, distinctly round, crater-like dots not more than one-sixth diameter of red cell. Two to four parasites in one red cell common. Shows amœboid movement until appearance of pigment.
Character of mature schizont.	Amœboid outline. No amœboid movement.	Rather oval in shape. Sluggish movement of peripherally placed coarse black pigment.	Only seen in overwhelming infections. Have scanty fine black pigment clumped together.
Pigment.	Fine yellow brown rod like granules which show active motion in one-half grown schizont. Motion ceases in full-grown schizont.	Coarse almost black. Shows movement only in young to half-grown schizont.	Pigmented schizonts very rare in peripheral circulation except in overwhelming infections. Tend to clump as excentric pigment masses.

STAINED SPECIMEN

	<i>P. vivax.</i> (Benign tertian.)	<i>P. malariae.</i> (Quartan.)	<i>P. falciparum.</i> (Malignant tertian) Æstivo-autumnal.)
Character of infected red cell.	Larger and lighter pink than normal red cell. Shows "Schüffner's dots."	About normal size and staining.	Shows distortion and some polychromatophilia and stippling. Rarely we have coarse cleft-like reddish dots—Maurer's spots.
Character of young schizont	Chromatin mass usually single and situated in line with the ring of the irregularly outlined blue parasite.	Rather thick round rings which soon tend to show as equatorial bands.	Very small sharp hair-like rings, with a chromatin mass protruding from the ring. Often appears on periphery of red cell as a curved blue line with prominent chromatin dot. Frequently two chromatin dots.
Character of half-grown schizont.	Vacuolated looped-like body with single chromatin aggregation. Schüffner's dots.	More marked band forms stretching across r.b.c.	Not often found in peripheral circulation. Chromatin still compact.
Character of mature schizont.	Fine pigment rather evenly distributed in irregularly outlined parasite.	Coarse pigment rather peripherally arranged in an oval parasite.	Very rarely seen in peripheral circulation in ordinary infection. Pigment clumps early.
Character of merozoite.	Irregular division into fifteen or more spore-like chromatin dot segments.	Rather regular division into eight or ten merozoites—Daisy.	Sporulation occurs in spleen, brain, etc. Rarely in peripheral circulation. Eight to ten chromatin staining merozoites. (In culture 32.)
Character of macrogamete.	Round deep blue. Abundant, rather coarse pigment, chromatin at periphery.	Round, similar to <i>P. vivax</i> but smaller.	Crescentic, deep blue, pigment clumped at center, chromatin scanty and in center.
Character of microgametocyte.	Round, light green-blue, pigment less abundant, chromatin abundant and located centrally or in a band.	Round like <i>P. vivax</i> .	More sausage-shaped than crescent. Light blue. Pigment scattered throughout. Chromatin scattered.

rounded section of the rim of the red cell. As the fever declines the rings tend to disappear from the peripheral circulation. The infected red cells often show polychromatophilia and distortion.

In old aestivo-autumnal cases, or those with severe infection, we may see adult rings and merocytes, which latter are smaller than those of benign tertian, show from 16 to 32 irregularly placed merozoites and a sharply clumped mass of pigment.

The gametes are the striking crescent shaped bodies and these show the distinctions of blue staining for the female, with lighter gray green staining and abundance of chromatin for the male. The chromatin staining of crescents does not stand out so well as that of the round form gametes of benign tertian and quartan.

As regards differentiation of species and cycle the examination of stained smears is more satisfactory and definite, as well as less time consuming. Still, one obtains many points of differentiation in the fresh preparation and should study such a preparation while carrying out the staining of his dried smear.

There are certain questions connected with the life of the malarial parasite in man which are of interest.

1. It is usual to consider the parasite as developing within a red cell and in this position to destroy the red cell. Rowley-Lawson, however, thinks that the parasites are exclusively extracellular and that they adhere to the red cells by loop like pseudopodia which encircle a portion of the red cell and digest the haemoglobin of such an area.

2. There are several views as to the etiology of relapses in malaria. These views are taken up under relapses.

3. Nature of the toxic material thrown off by the parasite at the time of simultaneous sporulation. Rosenau's experiments tend to show that there is a fever producing toxin thrown off at this time. Other authors have thought that a haemolysin and an endotheliolysin were thrown off at the same time. Brown considers that the pigment produced by the parasite, in its metabolism of the haemoglobin of the red cell, may act as a haemolysin, he having found that intravenous injections of hematin were capable of producing marked anaemia. It is well known that a far greater number of red cells are destroyed in a paroxysm than would be accounted for by the actual percentage of red cells destroyed by parasites. The endothelial cells take up actively this malarial pigment or haemozoin and are damaged or destroyed thereby. Haematin injections also tend to destroy leucocytes and platelets.

4. There has been an idea that sporozoites might enter the ovaries and ova as well as the salivary glands so that a second generation of mosquitoes might transmit malaria. There is no proof that such a method is ever operative.

5. There has been some question as to the possibility of congenital malaria. Heiser has recently reported the case of an infant which showed crescents in its blood by the end of one week from birth. The mother showed the same infection and the child must have been infected through the placental circulation.

6. As to cultivation of malarial parasites. Bass takes from 10 to 20 c.c. of blood from the malarial patient's vein in a centrifuge tube which contains 1/10 c.c. of 50% glucose solution. A glass rod, or a piece of tubing extending to the bottom of the centrifuge tube is used to defibrinate the blood. After centrifugalizing there should be at least 1 inch of serum above the cell sediment. The parasites develop in the upper cell layer, about 1/50 to 1/20 inch from the top. All of the parasites contained in the deeper lying red cells die. To observe the development, red cells from this upper 1/20 inch portion are drawn up with a capillary bulb pipette.

Should the cultivation of more than one generation be desired, the leukocyte upper layer must be carefully pipetted off, as the leukocytes immediately destroy the merozoites. Only the parasites within red cells escape phagocytosis. Sexual parasites are much more resistant. Bass thinks he observed parthenogenesis. The temperature should be from 40° to 41° C. and strict anaerobic conditions observed. Aestivo-autumnal organisms are more resistant than benign tertian ones. Dextrose seems to be an essential for the development of the parasites.

Bass considers that *P. vivax* has a disc like structure which enables it to squeeze through the brain capillaries while adult schizonts of *P. falciparum* have a solid oval form which causes them to be caught in the capillaries.

The Thompsons have rather simplified the method of Bass. They draw 10 c.c. of blood into a test tube containing the usual amount of glucose solution. They then defibrinate the blood by stirring with a thick wire for about 5 minutes and remove the wire with the adhering clot. They then pour this defibrinated blood into several small sterile test tubes, which should contain at least a 1 inch column. Rubber caps are adjusted over the cotton plugs and the tubes placed in the incubator. They note the tendency of cultures of *P. falciparum* to agglutinate which is not true of *P. vivax*.

They think this agglutination the great cause of the plugging of capillaries in pernicious malaria. They note 32 merozoites as maximum number in sporulation of *P. falciparum* while *P. vivax* has usually 16 or more, but never as many as 32.

This would explain the shorter incubation period of malignant tertian. The pigment of *P. falciparum* clumps much earlier in the developing schizont than that of *P. vivax* and is much coarser and more discrete.

While Bass thought he noted parthenogenesis in cultures others have failed to observe any evidence of it.

7. As to immunity. There is no real immunity to malaria, it is a continuance of the infection, but the parasites are not in sufficient numbers to give rise to fever. If, however, the patient become chilled or fatigued or otherwise depressed, fever results.

This apparent immunity is also kept up by reinfection, because if natives leave the locality for a length of time they lose it. Patients who show this apparent immunity to one form of malaria have no such resistance to the other types.

8. Causes of perniciousness. This is taken up under perniciousness in malaria.

9. Effect of quinine on malarial parasites. It is usually thought that the merozoites at the time of being thrown off from the merocyte are most vulnerable, while the gametes are only slightly affected, if at all. Still, the young forms from which gametes develop are destroyed. Quinine causes parasites to disappear from

the peripheral circulation and produces degenerative changes in such parasites as may remain. Bass thinks that quinine makes the red cell permeable to the lytic action of serum. Anaemia may cause degenerative changes in parasites similar to that from quinine.

The Anopheline Mosquito.

The ova of culicine mosquitoes are usually deposited in a scooped out raft like mass of about 250 eggs set vertically. The raft is easily seen with the eye being about $1/5$ inch long. The anopheline eggs are oval in shape with pleated air cell projections laterally. They are laid upon the surface of the water, to the number of about 100, in star triangle or ribbon patterns. The egg stage is 2 to 4 days but shorter, however, in the tropics.

The larval stage is the most important one to be acquainted with because in this stage one can most readily distinguish the anopheline or possible malaria transmitter from a culicine species. One can more readily and quickly make a survey for anophelines by examining the collections of water for larvae than in any other way. The anopheline larvae seems to prefer the surface, on which it lies flat and out of the water. To keep it from turning over on its long axis, it has little rosette like hair tufts on the dorsal surface of the 5 or 6 middle abdominal segments (palmate hairs). There are feathered lateral hairs projecting from thorax and abdominal segments. The head is very small in comparison with the thorax and can be rotated with lightning like rapidity. There is no projecting breathing tube or syphon from the next to the last abdominal segment, as is characteristic of *Culex*, *Stegomyia* or any other culicine genus.

In addition, culicine larvae do not float parallel to the surface of the water, but hang suspended at an angle, with only the tip of the syphon pushed upward to the surface. The lateral hairs or bristles are not feathered and the head is much larger than that of the anopheline larvae. It is the fact of the surface position of these anopheline larvae which enables them to worm their way over film layers of water or between blades of grass, in grass or rush studded pools or swamps.

In the pupal stage it is rather difficult to differentiate species of mosquitoes from each other, so that, other than to recognize that the bloated shrimp like body is a mosquito pupa, is unnecessary.

It is impossible for an entomologist to differentiate mosquitoes without recourse to elaborate keys and tables. It is a comparatively easy matter, however, to decide as to whether the mosquito is a probable malaria transmitter or not.

While certain characteristics of the male are used to separate the Aedinae from other subfamilies, yet it is only with the female that we concern ourselves in differentiating the Culicinae from the Anophelinae. Therefore, it is first necessary to distinguish the male from the female. If the antennae have not been torn off, this can be decided by the highly adorned plumose antennae of the male, those of the

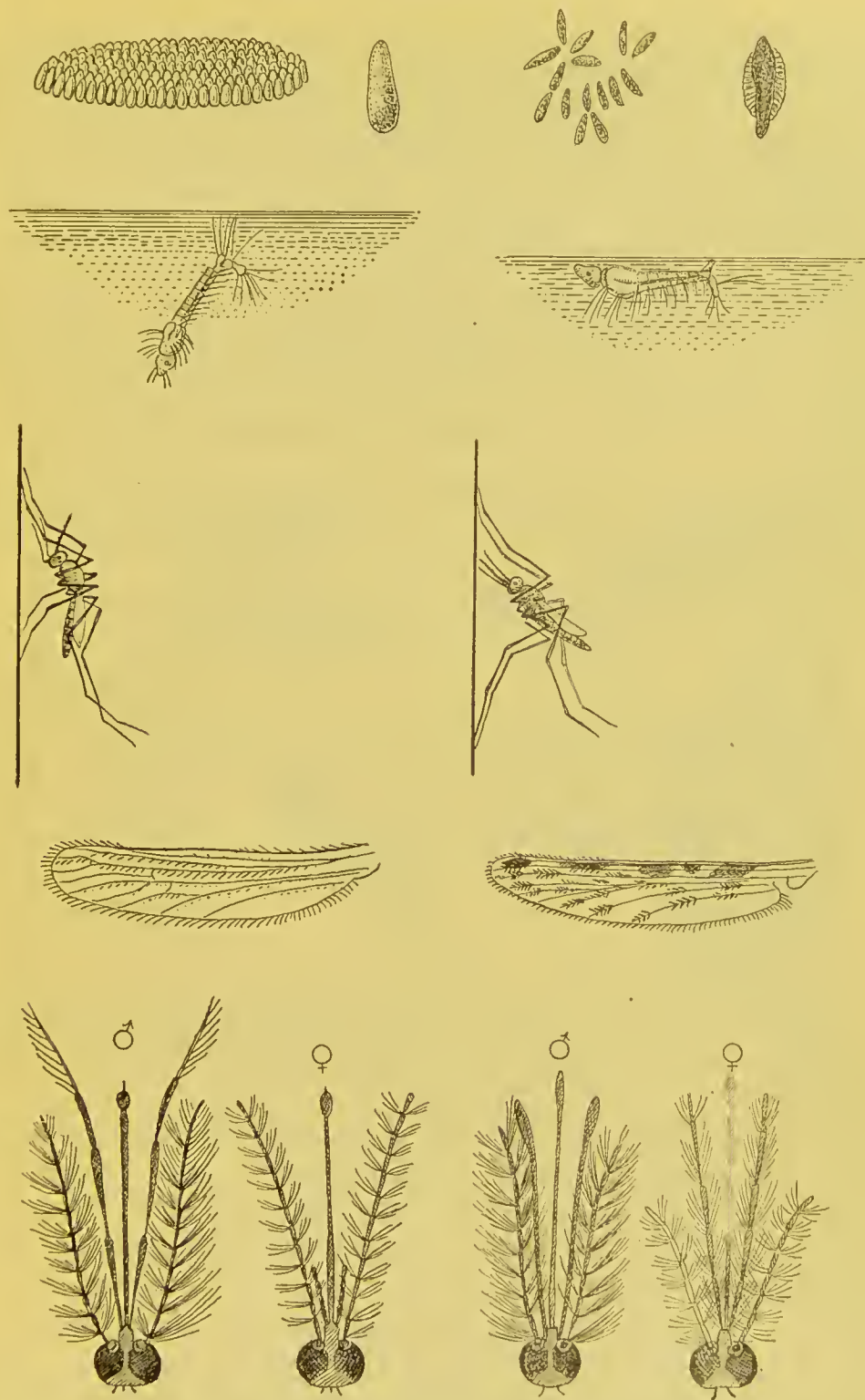


FIG. 8.—In the above figure note the culicine egg raft, 45° angle position of syphonate larva, parallel attitude of resting mosquito, non bulbous palpi of male and short palpi of female as contrasted with the anopheline star or ribbon arrangement of eggs, horizontal attitude of asiphonate larva, bradawl attitude of resting mosquito, spotted wings, bulbous palpi of male and long palpi of female mosquito. (From Jordan after Kolle and Hetsch.) MacNeal.

female being sparsely decorated with short hairs. The palpi of the Anophelinae tend to be clubbed, while those of *Culex* are straight. If the antennae have been broken off, look for the male claspers at the end of the abdomen. Having determined that the insect is a female, we then proceed to place it either in the subfamily Culicinae or Anophelinae by a study of the relative length of the palpi to the proboscis. If the palpi are shorter than the proboscis, it belongs to the Culicinae, if as long or longer, to the Anophelinae. The palpi of the female Megarrhinae are also long, but the proboscis is curved.

Having settled on the subfamily, we separate the genera by considering such points as character and distribution of scales on back of head, wings, thorax and abdomen; banding of proboscis, legs, abdomen, and thorax, shape of scales on wings, and location of cross-veins.

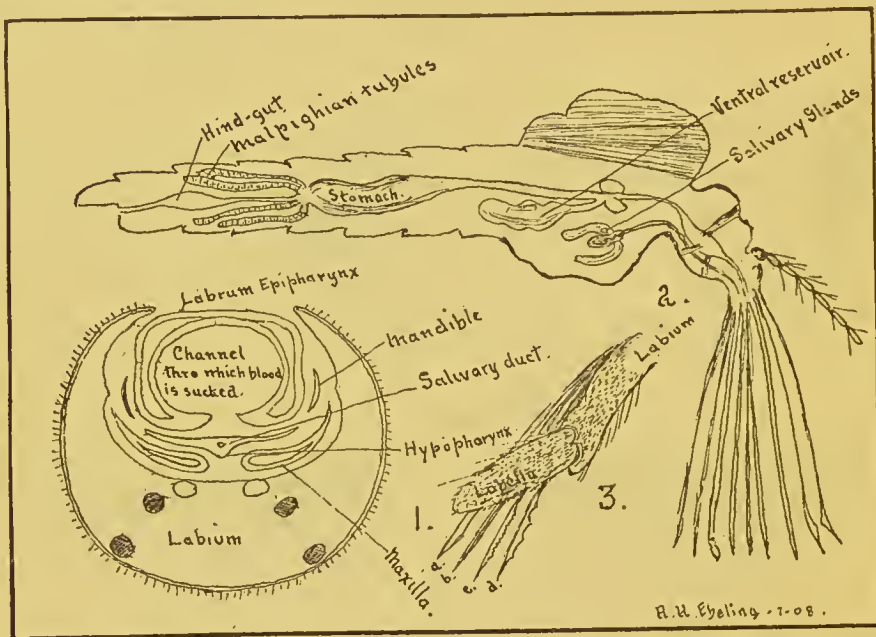


FIG. 9.—Anatomy of mosquito. 1, Cross section of proboscis of mosquito; 2, anatomy of mosquito, longitudinal section; 3, tip of proboscis of mosquito; a, labrum-epipharynx; b, hypopharynx; c, mandible; d, maxilla.

The female alone bites man, the male feeding on fruits and flower juices. The female absolutely requires blood for the development of her eggs after fertilization by the male mosquito.

The anopheline mosquito bites at night or towards evening and selects some dark place or dark colored wall to sleep against during the day. Hence the advantage of a buff colored wall interior. It is well to remember that the malarial incidence may be kept down by killing the mosquitoes inside of a house by striking them with a folded paper or piece of wire gauze on a handle (fly swatter).

It is not a bad plan to have a dark colored surface in a room to attract them and make their destruction easy.

Anophelines do not like wind and seek protection of underbrush. Some anophelines get accustomed to feeding exclusively on animals. Mosquitoes may hibernate through the winter and possibly cause new infections the following Spring. Cases of malaria in the Spring are however usually due to relapses.

The malarial zygote will not develop in the stomach of the mosquito if the temperature is below 16° C. It would seem that the zygote of *P. malariae* will develop at a lower temperature than that of the other two species, *P. falciparum* requiring the highest temperature.

The mosquito does not seem to suffer from her malarial infection—quite different from the serious affection that filariasis causes in the mosquito.

Epidemiology.—This matter has been largely considered under the historical and etiological discussions.

It may be stated however that the requirements for the spread of malaria are 1. Men who have sexual forms of the malarial parasite in their peripheral circulation. 2. Efficient anopheline hosts and 3. An atmospheric temperature above 60° F. (16° C.).

Pools containing a border growth of grass or rushes are often selected by anophelines for depositing eggs. The small fish or tadpoles, which prey on the larvae, cannot work their way through the obstacles and, again, petroleum oil cannot be easily distributed in a network of grass. Anophelines of different species and of different countries seem to vary in their selection of bodies of water for depositing their eggs. We should not generalize but go out and search for breeding places.

PATHOLOGY AND MORBID ANATOMY

The pathological lesions are those connected with the destruction of enormous numbers of red cells, not only each infected red cell being destroyed but others not so parasitised. There has been an idea that at



FIG. 10.—Digestive tract of *Anopheles* the stomach of which is covered with numerous zygotes or oocysts of *Plasmodium falciparum*. c, cloaca; mt, malpighian tubules; o, oocyst; s, stomach; sb, sucking bladders or pumping organ; sg, salivary glands. (MacNeal from Doflein, modified after Ross and Grassi.)

the time of sporulation and rupture of the merocyte a pyrogenetic toxin was given off and that along with this there were haemolysins and endotheliolysins. Following Brown we are justified in thinking that the malarial pigment (melanin or haemozoin) can act as a haemolysin and by being taken up by endothelial cells bring about their degeneration with associated capillary haemorrhages. All three factors—red cell destruction by parasites, haemolytic action on red cells and capillary haemorrhages lead to anaemia.

The brain has a leaden hue caused by the black pigment. As discussed under pernicious manifestations the blocking of the capillaries may be explained in several ways. When examining sections of a malarial brain one often encounters punctiform haemorrhages.

The spleen is enlarged and the surface dark. In acute cases it may be diffuent instead of hard, as in ague cake. Microscopic sections show a striking absence of pigment in the Malpighian corpuscles, the haemozoin being pushed off into the surrounding spleen pulp. Bone marrow is dark from deposit of pigment. In the liver the endothelial and Küpfer cells are packed with black pigment. The parenchymatous cells do not contain this pigment but may show grains of a yellow pigment, haemosiderin, which gives the iron reaction. Haemozoin, although it contains iron, does not give this reaction. Haemozoin is soluble in alkalis, but not in alcohol while haemosiderin is soluble in alcohol but not in alkalis.

The splenic blood is more rich in haemozoin than that of the other vessels, this indicating the spleen as the place of destruction of infected red cells or as the nursery for the development of malarial parasites. As a matter of fact splenectomy may cure an old malarial cachectic.

The finding of pigmented mononuclears or pigmented parasites in a cross section of a blood vessel makes for a diagnosis of a malarial infection.

Malarial manifestations are common in tropical autopsies and one must be very chary about reporting malaria as the real rather than contributing cause of death.

There is usually a marked increase in large mononuclears in malaria and if this is noted along with a leucopenia it is very suggestive. Melaniferous leucocytes only occur in malaria.

The kidneys may show degenerative changes and the presence of urobilin in the urine is an important indication of latent malaria.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

Clinically, we have two types of malarial paroxysms, (1) Those presenting a cold stage, followed by a hot stage, with a terminal sweat-

ing stage. Such attacks are brought about by the benign infections which include the benign tertian and the quartan. Owing to the fact that in such paroxysms the temperature makes a critical fall to normal or subnormal readings such fevers are frequently designated intermittent fevers. While these benign infections rarely or never exhibit pernicious manifestations, they may, equally with the more dangerous aestivo-autumnal parasite, lead to the production of malarial cachexia, in which the clinical manifestations are similar whether produced by a benign or malignant species.

(2) Those in which the alternation of cold, hot and sweating stages is lacking. There is not the frank well defined chill of the former group, so that the term dumb chill is frequently applied. With the possible exception of the first paroxysm the temperature tends to remain well above normal giving a continuous, or at any rate a remittent type of fever, instead of the intermittent temperature curve of the benign infections. Clinically there is a resemblance to typhoid fever.

Such malarial fevers are caused by the small hair like ring parasite with its crescent sexual forms. There are many designations for this species of malarial parasite of which the best recognized are: malignant tertian, subtertian, aestivo-autumnal and tropical. It is preeminently the malarial fever of the tropics and, from its appearing in temperate climates chiefly in the late summer and through the autumn months, received from the Italians the designation aestivo-autumnal.

Such fevers were called subintra by Torti because the succeeding paroxysm set in before the completion of the long continued preceding one. This type of fever was greatly dreaded.

Depending in great part on the number of sporozoites introduced by one or more infecting anophelines at the time of biting we have with quartan fever (8-12 merozoites) a period of incubation of approximately 3 weeks, for benign tertian (16-24 merozoites) 2 weeks and for malignant tertian (32 merozoites in culture) 8 to 12 days. These periods however may be much longer.

There may be prodromata of the nature of malaise, vague muscular pains, headache and anorexia, possibly showing a periodicity in their appearance or intensity.

It is only when a sufficient number of parasites sporulate simultaneously and pour out into the circulation sufficient toxic material to cause a well marked paroxysm that such occurs—with less poison we may only have vague suggestions of an attack of ague.

In a large proportion of cases there are no prodromata, they begin with a sudden onset.

Malarial paroxysms show a preference for the forenoon or at any rate tend to occur in the early afternoon, rather than in the evening.

When there are two generations of tertian parasites, each maturing on successive days, we have a paroxysm every day—a quotidian fever. Such a tertian infection is called a double tertian. In quartan infections, with the 72 hour cycle of development, if we have two generations of parasites sporulating on succeeding days, but with an apyretic day intervening, we have a double quartan. If three generations of quartan parasites sporulate on three successive days we have a triple quartan infection. When two species of parasites are present in the same case we have a mixed infection. Mixed infections of malignant tertian and benign tertian are the

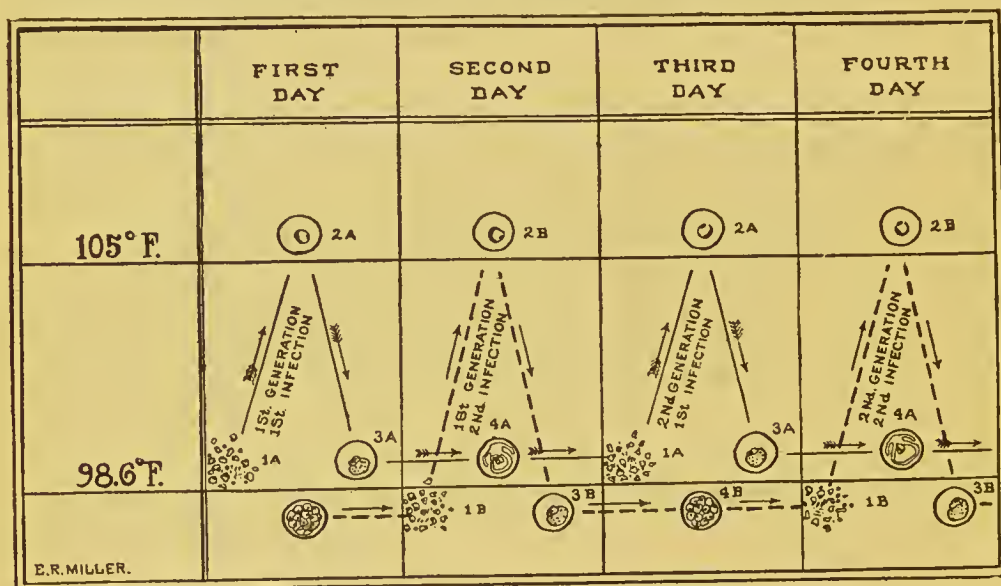


FIG. 11.—Diagram of the temperature chart of a double tertian malarial fever showing the succeeding development of two generations of parasites, causing thereby a quotidian fever.

most common, next those of quartan and malignant tertian and very rarely those showing quartan and benign tertian. All three species have been found in a single individual.

A Typical Benign Tertian or Quartan Paroxysm.—(Other than for the difference in periodicity the paroxysms of these two malarial infections are alike.)

The ague attack generally commences with malaise and slight headache, frequently accompanied by yawning and stretching. Chilly sensations give way to actual chill with shaking body and chattering teeth, face pinched and bluish and cutis anserina.

The pulse is frequent, small and of rather high tension, there is

increased frequency of urination and nausea and vomiting may be present.

Notwithstanding the fact that the rectal temperature is steadily rising five or six degrees during this cold stage there is a desire on the part of the patient to cover himself with all the wraps obtainable.

The cold stage, which usually lasts from 20 to 60 minutes, is succeeded by the hot stage.

At first there is a feeling of slight relief from the misery of the chill but this is soon lost sight of in the increasing headache and feeling of intense heat.

The previously welcome blankets are cast aside. The face now becomes flushed and the pulse more full. Nausea and vomiting are apt

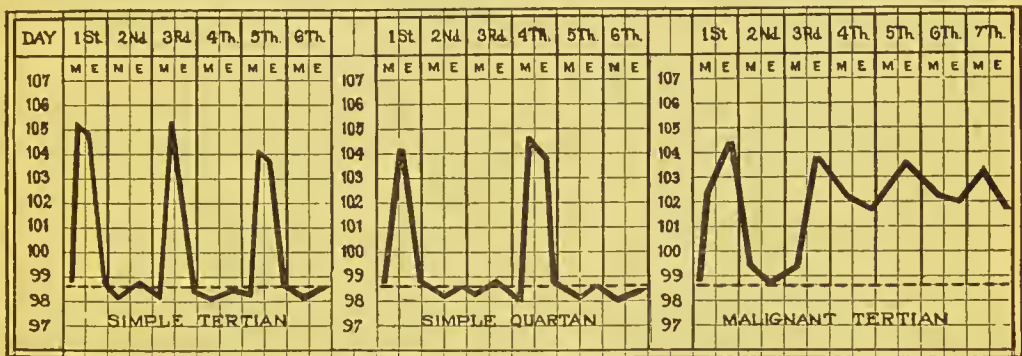


FIG. 12.—Typical fever charts of the 3 types of malaria.

to become more prominent in this stage. It is at this time that the patient may become slightly delirious. A sense of tension or even pain may be experienced in the region of the spleen, which organ will be found tender even if not already palpable. Herpes about the nose and lips is almost as common as in lobar pneumonia.

The fever remains high, from 105° to 106° F. and continues so elevated for from 4 to 6 hours to be succeeded by the sweating stage. In this the dry skin becomes moist and perspiration breaks out first on the forehead to be followed by a more or less marked profuse sweating of the entire body. The pulse becomes slower, the temperature falls rapidly and the patient falls asleep to awake slightly exhausted but feeling well. This feeling of well being continues during the fever free day which is often referred to by a malarial patient as "my good day." The sweating stage lasts usually about 4 hours so that the entire paroxysm of cold, hot and sweating stage occupies approximately 8 to 12 hours.

Blood examination will show the parasites of the benign infection to be in the peripheral circulation during the entire apyrexial period. During the paroxysm we have a moderate leucocytosis and during the afebrile period a leucopenia with an increased percentage of large mononuclears.

Billet thinks that quartan paroxysms can be distinguished from benign tertian ones by their showing a less abrupt fever rise and a more rapid fall of temperature with a shorter duration of the paroxysm, 4 or 5 hours as against 8 to 12 hours for benign tertian.

A Typical Malignant Tertian Infection.—The characteristic features of the paroxysm are slight chilliness instead of a frank chill, prolonged and intensified hot stage, lack of marked terminal sweating and a tendency to exhibit a continuous or at least remittent fever curve instead of the distinct intermittence, with an apyrexial period, of the benign infections during which the patient experiences a sense of well being.

The temperature of a malignant tertian paroxysm may fall to normal during the first attack but succeeding attacks only show the tertian periodicity by an exacerbation of the more or less continuous fever.

The paroxysm lasts from 20 to 36 hours instead of 10 hours.

To explain the continuous type of fever it is often stated that anticipation and retardation are characteristic of malignant tertian infections. This simply means that the new paroxysm tends to come on before the tertian periodicity of 48 hours has expired and, having appeared, tends to delay its termination. At any rate there is an extreme irregularity in the course of the paroxysm. These attacks are often termed "dumb chills" and are greatly dreaded.

The onset is insidious, occurring as a rule in the forenoon or early afternoon, with rarely a chill but only chilly sensations. The headache and backache are severe, the face is flushed, the pulse quickened and the thirst urgent.

The patient feels more prostrated and ill than does one in a benign paroxysm and there is a distinct tendency to delirium. Nausea and vomiting may be prominent features of an attack. At times an apathetic state may suggest typhoid fever. In these malignant malarial attacks the spleen is palpable and very tender. There is also a sense of weight in the region of the liver.

In a blood examination one is not apt to find any other parasites than the young hair like ring forms which begin to appear a few hours after the onset of the paroxysm. The rings may be observed to broaden, but prior to that development in which pigment would appear in the ring, the parasite containing red cell is caught in the capil-

laries of spleen or other organs. The finding of young ring forms while fever continues is suggestive of a malignant tertian infection.

In the absence of quinine administration the finding of parasites is to be expected in benign tertian and quartan infections but with the tropical parasite a smear may fail to show any organisms where a few hours previously a blood examination would have shown a large percentage of infected red cells in every field of the microscope.

Relapses.—Relapses are distinct features of malarial diseases, the tendency being most marked in quartan and least so in malignant tertian. A relapse after an interval of two years is very rare in malignant tertian but periods as long as 9 years may intervene between attacks of quartan fever.

Relapses are intimately associated with conditions which tend to lower the body resistance, so that exposure to cold or wet or hot sun may bring on an attack. Alcoholic or venereal excesses, as well as errors of diet, may be provocative. Persons returning home from the tropics often experience relapses as they approach the cooler climate of the temperate zone. It has been well stated that the old resident of the tropics owes his condition of health rather to education than acclimatisation—experience has taught him discretion.

There are three explanations of relapses of which the one supported by Ross and Bignami seems more reasonable and is that the disappearance of non sexual parasites is only apparent and that they continue their cycle but in insufficient numbers to excite symptoms.

Schaudinn thought that, either spontaneously or as the result of treatment, there was a disappearance of the non sexual forms and the male gametes, the female gametes however surviving and, eventually, through the process of parthenogenesis, producing a set of spores or merozoites which set up a non sexual cycle.

Craig thinks that as the result of the conjugation of two young schizonts a more resisting parasite is evolved, which under favorable circumstances for its development may start anew a non sexual cycle.

Malarial Cachexia.—As the result of repeated attacks of any type of malaria a condition of anaemia and physical and mental incapacity may be produced. The skin has a dirty earthy hue, particularly of the face, and the sclerae show a yellowish tinging. The patient is sensitive to the slightest cold and is the victim of mental depression with deterioration of memory or at any rate lack of concentration. The spleen is enlarged as may also be the liver. Twisting of the pedicle of the spleen or its rupture from even slight blows may necessitate surgical intervention.

There is anorexia and alimentary tract disturbances. A very important feature of malarial cachexia may be the occurrence of haemorrhages, particularly serious being those from the retinal vessels.

It is probable that hookworm infection has frequently been confused with the anaemia of malarial cachexia as in both of these conditions we may have a high grade anaemia with swelling about the ankles, palpitation of the heart and shortness of breath. Some authorities have recently called attention to splenic enlargement in hookworm disease, but this is not generally accepted. There may also be ascites in malaria. Urobilinuria is an important sign in malaria where other causes for red cell destruction are excluded.

Pernicious Manifestations of Malaria.—These grave manifestations arise almost exclusively in the course of malignant tertian infections.

As explanations of perniciousness are given (1) the very large number of red cells infected and destroyed by the malarial parasites (2) the throwing off at the time of sporulation of the merocyte of a large amount of toxic material owing to the presence of such a large number of disintegrating merocytes, and (3) from the plugging of the capillaries of important internal organs by adult parasites. This may arise as the result of (a) the sporulating parasites acting as emboli, being too large to pass the lumen of the capillary (b) from degenerative changes or distension with pigment of the endothelial cells lining the capillaries or (c) as the result of an ovoid shape on the part of the malignant tertian parasite there is an inability to pass through capillaries which the flattened benign parasites can do by infolding (Bass) or (d) resulting from the tendency of malignant tertian parasites to agglutinate.

It is customary to divide pernicious malaria into the following divisions—1. Cerebral, 2. Algid, 3. Bilious Remittent and, possibly, also 4. Pneumonic and 5. Cardiac types.

Blackwater fever is often included in the grouping but would appear to be best considered as a separate disease although almost surely brought about by malaria.

We do not understand why in one case sporulating parasites should plug the capillaries of the central nervous system, with the production of conditions resembling well recognized nervous diseases, while in another case the damage is done the intestinal mucosa, pancreas or lungs. At any rate these pernicious manifestations of malaria should always be kept in mind when a case of sudden cerebral involvement or acute abdominal disease shows itself in a patient in a malarious country and a blood examination should be promptly made.

Cerebral Manifestations of Pernicious Malaria.—Various authorities give different clinical pictures but the more commonly accepted types are (1) the hyperpyrexial, when the symptoms are those of heat stroke, with a temperature going up as high as 110° F. or even higher. Such patients rapidly become comatose and as a rule die.

(2) The delirious and comatose forms are apt to be associated, the comatose condition ensuing upon a delirious state. Cases belonging to this group may arise from a typical malignant tertian infection in which the headache and restlessness may have been unusually marked. The pulse is full and fast with sighing respiration and flushed face. There may be rigidity of the neck muscles.

(3) Such terms as epileptiform, tetanic, aphasic, cerebellar and bulbar have been applied to malarial manifestations and are self explanatory.

Algid Manifestation of Pernicious Malaria.—In such cases we have a small thread like pulse and a cold clammy skin surface. There are signs of collapse. The respiration is slow and shallow and the voice weak. It is customary to consider some of these cases, when there is vomiting and diarrhoea, with painful cramps of the legs and scanty or suppressed urine, as of choleraic type, while other cases, with blood and mucus in the stools and marked abdominal pain are termed dysenteric.

When haemorrhages from the intestines or stomach are marked features of an attack the cases are termed haemorrhagic and, if a prostrating, collapse producing sweat be a characteristic feature, they are called diaphoretic.

Cases have been observed when the excessive sporulation was apparently taking place in the pancreas giving the symptomatology of acute haemorrhagic pancreatitis.

Bilious Remittent Fever.—This is the most common and the least dangerous of the pernicious manifestations but tends to rapidly produce malarial cachexia. It sets in with marked nausea followed by bilious vomiting and bile rich stools. Jaundice shows itself by the second day; earlier than in yellow fever, but much later than the rapidly appearing jaundice of blackwater fever. The urine shows bile pigment and a yellow foam.

Other recognized types are when, with the symptoms of a broncho-pneumonia, we find an element of periodicity and a response to quinine—the so called pneumonic type.

Again, usually in elevated regions, dilatation of the right heart and death have been noted as occurring in cardiac types of pernicious malaria.

Masked Malaria.—While as a rule one should not accept such a diagnosis, unless the possibility of some other explanation than malaria is excluded, yet there are manifestations, chiefly neuralgic, gastro-intestinal or in the form of varied skin eruptions which at times show periodicity and which respond to treatment with quinine.

Symptoms in Detail

General Appearance.—In the cold stage of the benign infections the face is pinched and blue to become decidedly flushed when the hot stage sets in. In malarial cachexia there is an earthy color with the pigmentation more marked about the face and knuckles. In the algid forms of pernicious malaria the skin is pale, cold and clammy, in a measure simulating cholera. Herpes labialis is very common in the benign infections, but less so in the malignant tertian ones. Jaundice is a feature of bilious remittent fever.

The Temperature.—Even in the cold stage the temperature is steadily rising and may have reached 105° F. or higher by the time of onset of the hot stage. It remains elevated during the 4 to 6 hours of the hot stage and then falls rapidly to normal during the sweating stage. The paroxysm tends to occur in the forenoon or early afternoon. Intermittent fever curves are characteristic of benign infections. In malignant tertian a prolonged hot stage (15 to 36 hours) is a marked feature. The onset also is more gradual and the fever tends only to remit or may remain continuous over several days but even with such a chart there are apt to be indications of slight rises every other day.

In the hyperexial form of cerebral perniciousness the temperature may rise to 112° F. and the case resemble sunstroke. In the algid forms the axillary and rectal temperatures are usually elevated.

The Circulatory System.—The pulse is small, rapid and of high tension in the cold stage to become full and bounding in the hot stage. A cardiac type of perniciousness in which the right heart dilates has been referred to.

The Alimentary Tract.—Nausea and vomiting are common manifestations of malarial paroxysms and in bilious remittent fever the bilious vomiting is an especially distressing feature.

So called choleric and dysenteric manifestations of perniciousness of the algid type are rarely observed.

The Respiratory System.—There may be a slight bronchitis in ordinary types of malarial fever. In the cerebral types of perniciousness the breathing may be markedly altered—even of Cheyne-Stokes character.

A broncho-pneumonia which shows a periodicity and responds to quinine is often considered as a pernicious type of malaria.

The Nervous System.—In both the benign and malignant infections headache is a marked feature and is accentuated during the hot stage. There may be a "flighty" condition in the hot stage of benign tertian and quartan but in aestivo-autumnal infections there may be actual delirium.

Delirious and comatose states are prominent features of cerebral pernicious attacks. At times there may be an apathetic condition suggesting typhoid fever.

Almost any type of central nervous system disease may be simulated as the result of focal sporulation so that we have aphasic, epileptiform, hemiplegic, bulbar and other clinical types. Neuralgic manifestations are features of latent malaria. Some loss of memory may be apparent after severe malaria.

The Special Senses.—Plugging of the retinal arteries may lead to blindness which may be either transient or lasting. The discs are greyish red instead of white as is the case with quinine amblyopia. The ringing in the ears is connected with the quinine treatment.

The Genito Urinary System.—In the cold stage there is apt to be frequent urination with increased secretion. Later on, there is a scanty febrile urine.

Albuminuria is rather common in aestivo-autumnal attacks and true nephritis occurs in about 2% of cases.

Plehn attaches great importance to the examination of the urine for urobilin as showing malarial infection when parasites cannot be found. The pigment particles in urinary sediment (Uriola) do not give reliable information. Bile in the urine is an important sign of bilious remittent fever.

The Liver and Spleen.—There is very little of importance to note in connection with the liver except tenderness and jaundice in bilious remittent fever. The spleen, however, is the organ in which centers the infection and its tenderness and enlargement are of special diagnostic value in malaria.

Even in comatose conditions pressure on the spleen may bring about indications of pain. The liability of rupture of the friable spleen of aestivo-autumnal infections is a real danger and the patient should not expose himself to injury.

The Blood Examination.—This is of prime value in the recognition of malaria, and one should examine both fresh blood preparations and stained films as well. More information is gotten from the stained films but we should also avail ourselves of the different characteristics of the 3 malarial species, which can be noted in a preparation made by taking up a small drop of exuding blood on a cover glass and allowing it to drop on a slide and run out without any pressure on the cover glass.

The crescents, when found, show a malignant tertian infection but there may also be present one of the benign parasites. A stained film should be used to identify malignant tertian young ring forms.

Pigmented rings are rarely observed in aestivo-autumnal fever, such parasites being caught in the capillaries as they enlarge to the stage where pigment begins to be present. Flagellated forms only develop in fresh blood preparations, 15 to 20 minutes after the taking of the blood. Of the greatest differential value is the swollen pale infected red cell of benign tertian, the normal red cell of quartan and the distorted shrunken red cell of malignant tertian.

Large mononuclears and transitionals containing phagocytised pigment (melaniferous leucocytes) are pathognomonic of malaria—the pigment however must be in the leucocyte and not free. There is a leukocytosis during the malarial paroxysm with a leucopenia and increase in the large mononuclears during the apyrexial period.

DIAGNOSIS

In the diagnosis of malaria the special points to consider are (1) Presence of malarial parasites (2) Periodicity (3) Splenic enlargement (4) response to quinine therapy (5) the presence of melaniferous leucocytes and (6) a high large mononuclear percentage when leucopenia is present. In the examination for parasites one should not only consider the species of parasite present but, as well, the stage of development and the presence of the sexual forms. Quartan and tertian periodicity is only found in malaria, but quotidian periodicity is a feature of a host of diseases.

There are very few tropical diseases which have not been mistaken for malaria and many of these have been considered as of malarial etiology before the discovery of the real cause.

Of the cosmopolitan diseases; typhoid fever, septic conditions, including malignant endocarditis, tuberculosis, influenza, pyelitis and even syphilis are to be considered in a diagnosis of malaria.

As regards tropical diseases, kala azar, Malta fever, liver abscess, filariasis, trypanosomiasis, leprosy, relapsing fever and yellow fever are to be thought of in differential diagnosis.

As was noted under the discussion of the pernicious manifestations of malaria, scores of diseases may be simulated by the sporulation of the malarial parasite in certain organs or areas of organs.

With malarial cachexia we must in particular keep from mistaking it for hookworm disease or other secondary anaemias due to intestinal parasites.

Kohlbrugge's recommendation to have patients suspected of malaria climb mountains and drink copiously of cold water, in order to bring on a relapse, is of value in the diagnosis. (Effects of fatigue and refrigeration.) It must always be borne in mind that quinine causes the parasites to disappear from the peripheral circulation.

The laboratory diagnosis of malaria has already been fully gone into in the section on etiology and that on blood examination under the heading of symptoms in detail.

The evenly spread stained film undoubtedly gives more accurate information as to species and stage of cycle than any other method. Still one should always examine a fresh specimen and if the parasites are very scarce, a thick film preparation. The thick film methods of Ross and James are given under the chapter on the blood in tropical diseases.

PROGNOSIS

The prognosis in benign tertian and quartan is most favorable when proper treatment is instituted, as such infections are never fatal in first attacks. Not only may malignant tertian kill in a first attack but it leads rapidly to a cachexia while the cachexia following upon benign infections is more gradual.

It is the tendency to perniciousness which makes us dread malignant tertian as we can never be sure that a paroxysm may not develop cerebral or algid manifestations and these show a very high death rate, even when promptly treated.

The great importance of malaria is rather its invaliding tendency and by thus reducing the powers of resistance it makes the death rate from intercurrent diseases higher. Tropical malaria does not seem to affect the native as it does the European but the high death rate of infants among the natives is undoubtedly largely connected with this disease.

PROPHYLAXIS AND TREATMENT

Prophylaxis.—There are three methods in the prevention of malaria, all of which may be combined, as was the case in the Canal Zone region of Panama. These are: 1. Destruction of anopheline mosquitoes. 2. Protection of the individual from the bites of mosquitoes and 3 Quinine prophylaxis.

It may be stated that it is frequently advisable to carry on the mosquito warfare without regard to the question of the kind of mosquitoes destroyed. In general terms the malarial mosquito breeds in the suburbs of towns or in districts more distinctly rural, while the transmitter of the more dreaded yellow fever, prefers breeding places in the immediate vicinity of city houses.

Bentley has recently noted that, with improvement in agricultural methods and utilization of marshy lands, malaria tends to disappear as much from the physical improvement and thereby greater resistance of the people as from the destruction of mosquitoes by the draining of the swamps. The resulting greater prosperity makes better food and shelter obtainable.

1. *Destruction of Mosquitoes.*

Such measures may be directed either towards the larva or fully developed insect.

(a) Measures against larvae. When practicable permanent measures should be preferred to temporary ones and when agricultural development goes along with drainage of swamps the cost is repaid. The doing away with mosquito breeding places may be accomplished by filling in pools or by making ditches with smooth sloping sides to carry away the water. These ditches require a great deal of attention to prevent their filling up with tropical vegetation and thereby adding to breeding places. Subsoil drainage with tiled drains is better. Care should be exercised that public works operations do not raise the level of the subsoil water.

Anophelines tend to breed in sluggishly moving streams or in stagnant pools especially where there is a luxuriant growth of weeds or grass, and are not apt to be found in rapidly flowing streams, hence the necessity for constant care of ditches and the like to prevent their becoming obstructed by vegetation or silt. When filling in

or drainage is not practicable the method of oiling the surface of the pool with crude petroleum is to be recommended. One uses about $1\frac{1}{2}$ pint for every 100 sq. ft. of surface and the process should be repeated every two weeks.

Winds are apt to blow away the surface coating of oil and it is difficult to oil the surface of a pool filled with grass. Wise recommends crude carbolic acid, using 1 ounce to 16 cubic feet of water.

There are many enemies of mosquito larvae, such as tadpoles, water-beetle larvae and various small fish such as "millions."

Terni suggests the using of such fish as carp and tench which have a food value as well as a larvicidal one.

(b) Measures against the mosquito. The clearing away of grass and brush from around houses exposes the mosquitoes to the sun in which they cannot live long.

When inside the house they may be destroyed by sulphur fumigation, one or two pounds of sulphur for each 1000 cubic feet and with an exposure of two hours.

Pyrethrum powder, which is set on fire with a little alcohol, may be burned, using 2 pounds per 1000 cubic feet, and an exposure of 4 hours. This does not certainly kill the insect and the stupified mosquitoes should be swept up and burned.

Giemsa's spray is now considered an excellent measure for killing mosquitoes in rooms. The composition is as follows: Pyrethrum tincture (20 parts powdered pyrethrum blossoms to 100 parts alcohol) 580 grams. Odorless potash soap, 180 grams, Glycerine, 240 grams. Before using it dilute with 20 times its own weight of water, and spray the walls of the room with a spray pump.

The use of a small square of wire gauze on a handle (fly swatter) to kill mosquitoes as they rest on a wall is of great value in keeping them down in a screened house.

2. Protection of the Individual.

The house should be thoroughly screened with copper wire screens which should have 18 meshes to the inch. Mosquitoes can pass through a 15 mesh screen. Screen doors should always open outward and close automatically with spring hinges.

As malarial mosquitoes bite chiefly towards evening one should not expose himself after sunset.

Houses should be far removed from native habitations.

Mosquitoes prefer the lower floors of a house so that the upper stories are preferable.

Mosquito nets at night, with protection by veils for the face or coverings for the hands and ankles, when going out of the house, are well known measures.

It is stated that Emin Pascha always carried a mosquito net and never suffered from malaria. He thought that the cause of malaria was too large to go through the net.

Even when mosquito nets are intact and well tucked in there is the weak point

that a person sleeping on a narrow cot is apt to put his arm or leg against the net, in which case the mosquitoes readily bite the skin presenting at the open spaces.

Oil of citronella is often used to keep away mosquitoes.

3. *Quinine Prophylaxis.*

The ease of application of quinine prophylaxis, as compared with the more permanent methods of mosquito destruction and screening, appeals to the sanitarian, especially in the tropics.

It is just as easy to give quinine to a man in the tropics as it is in temperate climates, but when one considers the propositions of draining tropical swamps and shutting off circulation of air on a torrid night with fine wire gauze in the windows and closely woven mosquito nets around the bed, the question is decidedly different. In consequence, the tendency is for the average man to despair of accomplishing anything in the way of mosquito destruction and screening and to seize eagerly on the inferior alternative, that of quinine prophylaxis.

Ronald Ross presents this matter concisely and to the point when he states that it is not a good policy to substitute a measure which does not exclude infection, but is merely extirpative in some cases, for positive prevention. From this it will be seen that unless it is clearly recognized that quinine prophylaxis may in some cases extirpate, but does not prevent, there might be a tendency to adopt this measure and neglect the two proper ones.

As regards the relative merits of quinine prophylaxis and protection from mosquitoes Celli gives the following figures:

Treatment	Infected
Mosquito protection plus quinine prophylaxis. . .	1.75 per cent.
Mosquito protection alone.	2.5 per cent.
Quinine prophylaxis alone.	20. per cent.
No protection at all.	33. per cent.

With quinine prophylaxis, there is the possibility of producing an immunity to quinine on the part of the parasites which have been introduced by infected mosquitoes and held in check by the prophylactic but not curative dose of quinine. Later on when the quinine prophylaxis is discontinued the parasites begin to multiply vigorously and seem to possess an immunity to quinine.

As an instance of this, 398 marines served in 1906 for about one month on the Isthmus of Panama during which time they were given 9 grains of quinine daily as a prophylactic.

During this month there was only an occasional case of malaria among the men. At the end of the month 298 of the original 398 returned aboard ship and sailed for the North. Two days later 20 cases of malaria developed, followed the next day by 53 and the day following that by 45. The medical officer then resumed 10 grain prophylactic doses for those not down with malaria but notwithstanding this there were 215 acute malarial paroxysms, some of them of pernicious type, among the 298 men.

It was noted that these men did not respond satisfactorily to quinine treatment even when the drug was administered intramuscularly.

Bignami thinks that malarial relapses may be connected with insufficient initial treatment so that quinine resisting forms survive and later, when some factor lowers the patient's resistance, active multiplication of parasites, which are not readily destroyed by quinine, follows.

While quinine prophylaxis may not be desirable on board ship, where one is in a position to readily recognize and treat the onset of malaria and to more or less efficiently carry out mosquito protection methods, or in a wealthy seaport, where sufficient interest in and funds for draining and screening exist, yet on military expeditions or exploring trips in tropical or subtropical countries it is the only practical method of keeping a force efficient.

Of course one should also utilize mosquito nets as assisting in protection from malaria and as effective for yellow fever, dengue and filariasis.

There are innumerable methods of carrying out quinine prophylaxis among which may be noted.

(a) Celli's method. In this there is given 3 grains of quinine each morning and 3 grains each night. Taken in this way Celli thinks that harmful effects from quinine are avoided, that quinine immunity does not occur and that there is no danger from quinine haemoglobinuria. For children he recommends the tannate in chocolate tablets.

(b) In 1909 Bertrand and other members of a French Commission recommended two consecutive doses of 5-10 grains every 7th and 8th day for benign infections and two consecutive prophylactic doses of 10 to 15 grains every 3rd and 4th days where malignant tertian was prevalent.

(c) Ziemann gives 15 grains every 4th day with the idea that the quinine is entirely eliminated in four days. Nocht gives about 12 grains on two succeeding days of each week in divided doses of 2 or 3 grains instead of the entire amount in one dose.

Koch gave 15 grains on 10th and 11th days.

(d) Castellani's method of 5 grains daily and a double dose once a week is the one I recommend.

In addition to quinine prophylaxis for those not infected we also have quinine disinfection for native or other carriers of malaria. For these infected persons Koch recommends 15 grains on 2 or 3 successive days of each week, the course to be continued for three months.

Treatment.—Cinchona bark was first introduced into Europe in 1640 and has its name from Countess Cinchon, wife of the Peruvian Viceroy, who was cured of a fever by this bark in 1638.

Much of our knowledge of the therapeutics of cinchona bark is due to Torti. In giving the drug he used a large dose the first day and the same for the subsequent

two days. After that he administered smaller doses for a week and then still smaller doses for two or three weeks. Quinine was not introduced until 1820.

At present quinine or some salt of the alkaloid is used in malaria instead of preparations of cinchona.

The most important untoward manifestations of cinchonism are the very common scarlatiniform, eczematous or urticarial rashes, gastric disturbances and vertigo. Impairment of vision may be brought about by quinine and quinine haemoglobinuria is a recognized possibility. In quinine amblyopia the pupils do not react to light and the optic disc is very pale, thus distinguishing the impairment of vision due to the plugging of the retinal vessels by the malarial parasite, in which condition the pupils do react to light and the disc is a greyish red.

The cheapest and most generally obtainable salt is the sulphate. It is only soluble in 720 parts of water and contains 74 per cent of alkaloid. The opinion now prevails that this is one of the most objectionable forms for the administration of quinine. It is frequently obtained in pill or tablet form and it must not be forgotten that such preparations may be almost stone-like and pass through the alimentary tract without absorption. If used it is best to give it in acid solution made by dissolving 5 grains of quinine sulphate in one teaspoonful (1 dram) of water with one drop of concentrated hydrochloric acid.

There now seems to be a tendency to use the alkaloid itself instead of its salts, it having been found that the alkaloid and its very insoluble tannate are absorbed from the digestive tract equally as well as the soluble salts. Quinine is almost insoluble in water (1-1750) and hence has less bitter taste than the soluble salts. It is also less haemolytic so that it may be used with greater safety where blackwater fever is feared.

Euquinine or ethylcarbonate of quinine contains 81 per cent quinine, and is only soluble in 1-12,000 parts of water, hence its comparative tastelessness. It is expensive.

Quinine tannate contains only about 30 per cent of quinine and is soluble in 1-800 parts of water. It is often given to children in chocolate tablet form. It can often be taken by those who suffer disagreeable effects from other salts. The dose should be 2 1/2 times that of quinine sulphate.

Until recently the bimuriate, which is very soluble in water (1-1), has been considered the most desirable salt for hypodermic injections or oral administration. At present, owing to its extensive use in local anaesthesia and incident availability, quinine and urea hydrochloride is to be recommended for intramuscular use. It contains 60 per cent of quinine and is soluble in an equal amount of water.

Methods of Administration

By Mouth.—This is the usual method and is the one to be preferred in all cases where other methods of administration are not necessitated.

It is usual to give the quinine in capsules or cachets, the pills and tablets being often so hard that they do not dissolve in the alimentary tract.

The method usually in vogue in military services is to give quinine sulphate in acid solution. This method is trying to the stomach.

By Subcutaneous Injections.—This method is liable to be followed by necrosis and abscess formation or fibrous indurations. Quinine and urea hydrochloride is preferable either for subcutaneous or intramuscular injection. James has recommended very dilute solutions for subcutaneous injections (1-150). There are practical objections to this method. It is usual to give about 1 gram (15 grains) of a soluble salt in 10 c.c. of water. The present view is that subcutaneous injections deserve condemnation.

Intramuscular Injections.—Many prefer this method to the subcutaneous.

It is best to inject the solution into the gluteal muscles above the ischial tuberosities.

Of course in the use of quinine salts through the medium of the hypodermic needle everything must be aseptic and the skin of the patient painted with iodine.

Intravenous Injections.—Bass and many others think that when quinine cannot be administered by mouth it should be given intravenously. Not only is there the objection of inflammatory reactions or necrosis when the drug is given subcutaneously or intramuscularly but the absorption of the drug is so slow that the patient may die before we obtain the desired effect. Ross condemns the subcutaneous method and recognizes the advantages of the intravenous method over the intramuscular one when rapidity of action is desirable.

In giving quinine intravenously Bass thinks that 10 grains at one time is sufficient and that a 20 grain dose is not without danger.

When used in cerebral malaria he repeats the 10 grains intravenously in 8 hours if the drug cannot then be given by mouth. Bass thinks that theoretically amyl nitrite might relax the cerebral capillaries which are obstructed by parasite infected red cells and thus enable the quinine in the circulation to reach such cells.

The best known method of administering quinine intravenously is that of Bacelli. In this method 1 gram (15 grains) of a soluble salt of quinine is given in 10 c.c. of water.

MacGilchrist has shown experimentally that such a strength of quinine (1-10) will coagulate blood serum.

In my opinion this is a dangerous method and should not be used. There is no doubt as to the necessity for using the intravenous channel in cerebral or algid types

of perniciousness when intramuscular injections do not give results. The generally accepted method is to use a salvarsan technique with a dilute solution of quinine, giving 1 gram (15 grains) of some soluble salt of quinine in 250 c.c. salt solution. MacGilchrist considers the very soluble acid salts as haemolytic and prefers to give quinine base—3 pints of a solution of the alkaloid, containing about 12 grains.

Some authorities recommend the administration per rectum of a soluble salt of quinine in about three times the usual dose by mouth or hypodermically. It is considered applicable in cases where there is marked vomiting. It certainly is the least satisfactory way of giving quinine.

Dosage and Length of Treatment.—In Panama the standard treatment is to give from 3 to 5 grains of calomel followed by 2 ounces of 50 per cent magnesium sulphate.

So soon as the diagnosis is made give 15 grains of quinine 3 times daily (45 grains in 24 hours) and continue such treatment for a week or until the temperature has been normal for 5 or 6 days. Then give 10 grains 3 times daily for ten or twelve days.

Tonics of iron arsenic and strychnine are valuable in treating the anaemia, but it is not advisable to add small doses of quinine to such tonic mixtures.

In Nocht's method we give the quinine in small doses repeated several times in the day, as 3 or 4 grains given 5 or 6 times daily. Such treatment is thought advisable when there is a tendency to haemoglobinuria or when giving quinine to pregnant women.

There is frequently hesitancy in giving quinine to pregnant women but unless the malaria is controlled the patient will be apt to abort. Potassium bromide is thought to control the ecboic influences of quinine.

In a benign malarial infection Manson prefers to wait until the hot stage has been passed and the patient is beginning to perspire, his idea being that the headache and other symptoms are aggravated and that very little advantage is gained by treatment during the early part of the paroxysm. He gives 10 grains at the onset of the sweating stage and afterwards 5 grains, 3 or 4 times daily, for the following week. He then gives a daily tonic containing arsenic and iron, with a quinine treatment every 7th day for about 2 months.

For regularity he advises the quinine treatment on Sunday giving a dose of salts in the morning followed by three 5 grain doses during the day.

Manson notes the danger of large doses of quinine as producing not only serious disturbances of sight and hearing but pronounced cardiac depression as well.

There are many who speak highly of Warburg's tincture in treatment. It is both laxative and sudorific. The dose is one half ounce (15 c.c.) which contains about 5 grains of quinine sulphate and 4 grains of extract of aloes. As a rule it is better to give the quinine and the laxative as such.

More recently the tendency has been to give large doses of quinine, not only for its greater curative value but, as well, for the prevention of relapses. Craig however states that in his experience with aestivo-autumnal infections he has yet to see a single case, in which treatment was promptly instituted, that did not recover with a daily treatment of 30 grains.

Drugs Other than Quinine.—Salvarsan and neosalvarsan have been extensively used and with some success in benign infections but without material effect in malignant tertian ones.

Some have thought that salvarsan aided the specific action of quinine.

It has been claimed that radium and X-ray treatment, when directed to the spleen, assist the action of quinine.

Methylene blue, next to quinine, has been considered as the most valuable drug. It is given in 2 grain doses every 4 hours.

Surveyor has recommended picric acid in the treatment of malaria in doses of 2 grains two or three times daily.

Recently hectine, a remedy somewhat similar to the cacodylates, has been strongly recommended by the French. It is given intramuscularly in 2 grain doses. It is said to be valuable when there is a leucopenia as it has a tonic action. It has been recommended to combine this treatment with quinine.

It is said to be a good substitute for quinine in blackwater fever.

CHAPTER II

BLACKWATER FEVER

DEFINITION AND SYNONYMS

Definition.—Blackwater fever is a disease of disputed etiology but recently there has seemed to be rather general agreement that it is connected with repeated attacks of malaria. It is prone to affect the old European residents of parts of the tropics where malignant tertian is rampant.

On the basis of lowered integrity of the red cells, by reason of repeated attacks of malaria, we may have extensive lysis of the red cells following the administration of a dose of quinine or as the result of refrigeration, excessive exposure to the sun or great fatigue.

Clinically we have a prostrating chill of asthenic type associated with early jaundice and the passage of porter-colored urine—haemoglobinuria.

Synonyms.—Haemoglobinuric Fever, Bilious Haemoglobinuric Fever, Haemorrhagic Malarial Fever.

French: *Fievre Bilieuse Hemoglobinurique*. German: *Schwarzwasserfieber*.

HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION

History.—There is no reasonable doubt that the explanation of the fact that blackwater fever was first brought to the attention of the medical world, by Lebeau and other French naval surgeons, in Madagascar, in 1850–1853, was due to the confusion of this disease with the bilious remittent type of pernicious malaria as well as with yellow fever. Even after the clinical picture was well recognized, disputes as to the nature of the coloring matter of the characteristic urine were frequent, some considering that the dark colour, which we now know to be due to haemoglobinuria, was due to a haematuria or that the colour was due to bile.

It was first described in the U. S. by Cummings of Louisiana in 1859. Other American physicians during the next ten years described the disease from various other Southern states.

Veretas noted the presence of the disease in Greece, in 1858.

It is rather remarkable that the disease was not noted by so keen an observer as Torti, if it existed in his time, and Manson states that it is strange that it should not have been recognized in India if it had existed there prior to recent times. Some

think that its introduction into Africa has been of recent occurrence. There are two explanations of the recent greater prominence of the disease in Africa and other tropical areas, where malignant malaria prevails extensively, which are (1) that there has been a great influx of susceptible Europeans into such areas during the past 20 or 30 years and (2) that the more frequent and excessive dosing of malarial patients with quinine is responsible.

Geographical Distribution.—It is in tropical Africa that the disease is of prime importance as a cause of death and invaliding. Here it prevails chiefly in West, Central and East Africa from about 12° N. to 12° S. latitude. It is less frequent in Northern Africa although a considerable number of cases have been reported from Algeria. It is unknown in Egypt, a country where malaria is very rare in Europeans.

In India it occurs in several districts and Stephens states that in the Duars (Bengal) he saw more cases in a fortnight than he had seen in the same time in Africa. In Europe it occurs chiefly in Southern Italy, Sicily, Sardinia and Greece.

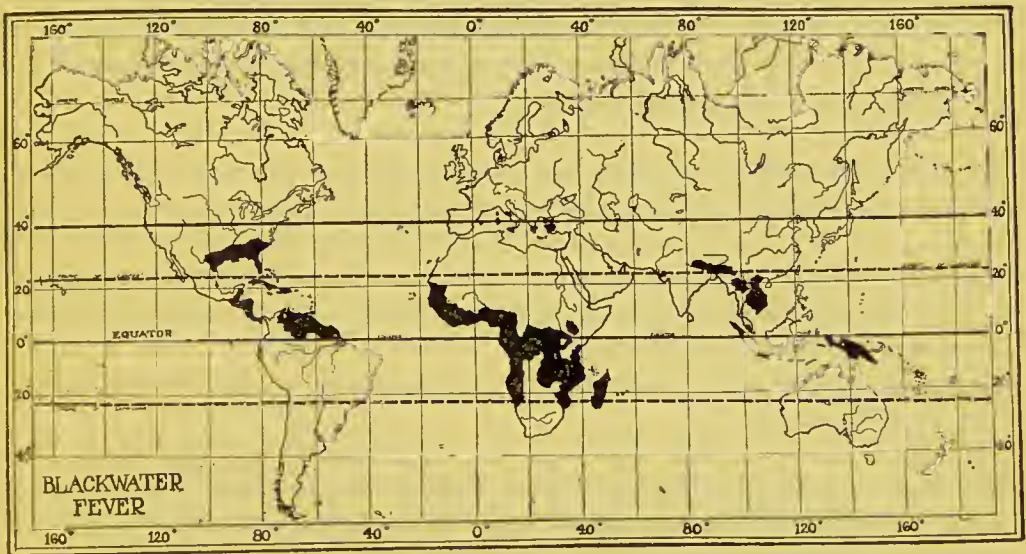


FIG. 14.—Geographical distribution of blackwater fever.

It is common in Central America and Northern South America, especially in the regions of the Amazon basin, in Brazil.

In the U. S. it is chiefly found in the most malarious sections of Arkansas, Mississippi, Louisiana, Texas, Alabama, Georgia, Florida and South Carolina. It would seem that it is becoming more rare in the Southern States.

As a result of malarial prophylaxis among the Americans working in the Panama Canal Zone it has almost disappeared among them although still common among the white Europeans in the same region who neglect quinine prophylaxis and mosquito protection.

ETIOLOGY AND EPIDEMIOLOGY

Etiology.—There seem to be cases where from very heavy infection with the malignant tertian parasite, as from 12 to 20 percent of the

red cells, one can expect the appearance of a more or less dark urine, the colour of which is due to haemoglobinuria. Such cases give support to the old view that haemoglobinuric fever was simply a type of pernicious malaria. Brem has proposed for such cases the designation, pernicious malarial fever with haemoglobinuria.

The idea as to etiology which now seems most generally accepted is that blackwater fever occurs almost solely in those who have resided for considerable periods of time in districts where malignant tertian malaria is very prevalent and intense and who have repeatedly suffered from such malarial attacks. Rarely blackwater fever may be connected with benign tertian infections or exceptionally with quartan ones. As a result of the damage done the patient by the malarial attacks there is a tendency on the part of his red cells to haemolysis which may be due to the production of a hypothetical autolysin or to anaphylactic sensitization, as has been suggested recently.

Malaria is the predisposing cause and the exciting cause may be any of a number of different factors capable of lowering body resistance such as the occurrence of another malarial attack, the administration of quinine, particularly of the acid salts of quinine in rather large doses, refrigeration, as brought about by ones clothes becoming wet and then later being subjected to the chilling influence of a sea breeze, to excessive fatigue or dietetic or alcoholic excesses.

Quinine administration, particularly if associated with refrigeration, is the most common exciting factor.

As regards the association of malaria and blackwater fever Stephens, in a study of 390 cases of blackwater, found that 73% of the cases showed malarial parasites on the day preceding the haemoglobinuria, 47.5% on the day of the attack and 23% on the day following the appearance of the dark urine. Other workers give higher figures as 95, 70 and 20 percent.

Where one utilizes the methods of examining for increased percentage of large mononuclears or for melaniferous leukocytes, in those cases not showing malarial parasites, the percentage of evidence of malaria is greatly increased. It is necessary to understand that a small percentage of cases diagnosed as blackwater fever do not show evidences of malaria at autopsy and cases are recorded where blackwater has attacked persons who have never had malarial fever, such instances, however, being exceptional.

The Quinine Theory.—This idea as to the causation of blackwater fever first originated with Veretas, in Greece, in 1858. Later Tomaselli supported this view in Italy and more recently it was advocated by Koch. Just as in connection with the influence of Koch's great prestige much harm was done in prophylaxis against bovine tuberculosis so in this matter of quinine in the causing of blackwater the influence was unfortunate because many persons with severe malaria now refuse to take the specific quinine for fear of bringing on haemoglobinuria.

It may be stated that quinine alone, even in doses which are capable of producing

profound toxic effects such as disturbances of sight and hearing, weak heart and collapse does not, other than exceptionally, cause haemoglobinuria. It has even been stated that quinine base and quinine tannate tend to prevent haemolysis, haemoglobinaemia and haemoglobinuria. Blackwater fever may develop without the previous administration of quinine.

Theory as to Acidosis with a Damaged Liver Plus Malaria and Acid Salts of Quinine.

MacGilchrist has recently advanced the idea that blackwater fever is brought about by an acidosis in one with a damaged liver plus malaria and the administration of acid salts of quinine. He thinks that one can safely give the quinine when alkalis are being given and that quinine base is protective against haemolysis.

Theory as to Its being Caused by a Piroplasm.

Sambon has thought by reason of the clinical resemblance of blackwater to certain haemoglobinuric diseases in cattle, dogs and sheep that such a cause might be operative. These parasites of the red cells are easily discernible in the animal infections but have never been seen in blackwater fever.

The Chlamydozoal Hypothesis.

Leishmann has recently noted appearances in the large mononuclear cells of the blood of blackwater patients of certain cell inclusions which he thought to be of chlamydozoal nature and that these chlamydozoa might be etiological factors. Such appearances may not only be absent in marked cases of blackwater but may be seen in conditions other than blackwater fever.

Epidemiology.—There seems to be a concensus of opinion that when malaria is kept in check by proper and persistent quinine prophylaxis or by other antimalarial measures blackwater fever becomes mild in character or even non-existent. It is those who are careless about quinine prophylaxis or those who expose themselves to depressing influences as cold, wet, excessive fatigue or alcoholic debauches in whom blackwater shows itself. Some have thought syphilis might be a factor.

PATHOLOGY AND MORBID ANATOMY

As a result of the excessive destruction of red cells the liver cannot convert the great amount of haemoglobin outpouring into bile pigment so that haemoglobinaemia and haemoglobinuria result. It has been estimated by Ponfick that if $\frac{1}{6}$ of the red cells are destroyed the liver is unable to dispose of the liberated haemoglobin and haemoglobinuria results. A damaged liver would be less competent. Various discussions as to autolysins and complement content of serum have arisen.

As a rule we have the pathological findings which go with malaria. As peculiarities of blackwater noted by Whipple and others may be mentioned congestion of the kidneys with purple coloured pyramids. In the spleen the Malpighian bodies are

prominent and sharply outlined. Very striking are the necroses of the Malpighian corpuscles of the spleen and focal necroses of the liver. Whipple considers that this speaks for a powerful circulating toxin in blackwater fever which is not present in malaria.

The anuria is thought to be mechanical and due to the plugging up of the tubules by haemoglobin casts.

The urine shows a reddish to black colour and has a sediment made up of granular debris with haematoidin crystals and only rarely a red cell. It is not a haematuria. The absorption bands of methaemoglobin are usually noted spectroscopically. Urobilin and albumin are present in large quantities.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

A Typical Case.—In a person who has lived in an intensely malarious region for one or two years or even long after he has left such districts and who has had several malarial attacks, there comes on what is considered as another malarial chill, which may or may not be definitely connected with some resistance lowering influence, as exposure to tropical sun or rain, or indulgence in dietary or other excesses, or following in 1 to 6 hours the accustomed dose of quinine. This chill, however, is more prostrating than those formerly experienced and upon passing his urine the patient notes its reddish to black coffee colour and himself makes the diagnosis of blackwater fever. The attack comes on suddenly with a very severe chill, marked prostration and pain over the region of the kidneys. The temperature in a typical case rapidly goes up to 104° to 105° F. Nausea and bilious vomiting come on early with epigastric distress. Almost as pathognomonic as the haemoglobinuria is the early and intense jaundice. This comes on within a few hours or almost simultaneously with the haemoglobinuria and usually lasts for two or three days after the haemoglobinuria and fever have ceased. Itching of the skin of this jaundice is not noticeable.

The spleen and liver are enlarged and tender. Albuminuria comes on with the haemoglobinuria and shows from $1/10$ to $4/10$ of one percent of albumin by weight.

The pulse is rapid, 110 to 120, from the first but soon becomes feeble and of low tension. In severe cases the very rapid almost thready pulse, with pallor and cold extremities, may resemble a severe haemorrhage. Epistaxis is not uncommon. A very unfavorable symptom seems to be hiccough. Another frequent cause of death and the one against which we chiefly direct our therapeutic measures is anuria with subsequent uraemic symptoms.

The mind is usually clear throughout an attack, the patient showing restlessness and marked anxiety.

In mild cases the fever course and haemoglobinuria is over within 24 hours leaving the patient far more prostrated than would a malarial paroxysm. In severe cases, however, the fever runs a remittent course over several days, with more marked haemoglobinuria and jaundice.

Symptoms in Detail

Fever Course.—This resembles that of a malarial paroxysm and may be intermittent in character or last several days as a remittent fever. The rigor which accompanies the febrile rise is intense.

The Liver and Spleen.—As a result of the marked blood destruction the liver is unable to dispose of the haemoglobin outpouring and icterus, which usually comes on in a few hours and is intense, is almost constant together with epigastric distress, bilious vomiting and tenderness and slight enlargement of the liver. The spleen is also somewhat enlarged and quite tender.

The Circulatory System.—At first the pulse is rapid with tension but soon it becomes weak, compressible and of low tension. In severe cases it may have a rate of 150 or more or even become thready.

The Genito-urinary System.—The dark coloured urine is pathognomonic of the disease and gives it its name. The reddish to almost black colour is due to haemoglobin and not to bile. There is but rarely a red cell to be found in the granular debris with occasional haemotoidin crystals which forms the urinary sediment, hence it is haemoglobinuria and not haematuria. Albumin is present in large amount and comes on with the onset of haemoglobinuria. Casts are abundant and urobilinuria is marked. As a result of the blocking up of the renal tubules with haemoglobin casts pain over the loins and anuria may occur. There may be vesical tenesmus.

The Blood.—Cases have been reported where as many as 2,000,000 red cells have been destroyed within 24 hours, so that rapid and marked anaemia characterizes the disease. The blood is thin and the serum tinged. The degenerative changes of the red cells are not as commonly seen as one would expect but this is probably due to the fact that degenerated cells are first destroyed in the excessive haemolysis. Hb percentage reduction generally parallels the reduction in red cells. Melaniferous leucocytes may be found and during the leucopenia, which follows the paroxysm, the large mononuclears and transitionals may be increased to 20%. There is a reduction in the alkalinity and coagulability of the blood.

DIAGNOSIS

Clinical Diagnosis.—An unusually asthenic prostrating paroxysm, similar to that of a malarial chill, but with more intense rigor, during which haemoglobinuria, early jaundice and marked bilious vomiting are features, makes for a diagnosis of blackwater fever.

The two diseases which are most likely to be confused with blackwater fever are yellow fever and bilious remittent malarial fever.

	Blackwater Fever	Yellow Fever	Bilious Remittent
Onset.....	Sudden but as- thenic with marked rigor.	Sudden but sthenic for 2 or 3 days.	Comes on more slowly.
Urine.....	Haemoglobin- uria. Pink foam to urine. Albuminuria from first day.	No blood in urine before 3rd or 4th day and then haematuria. Albumin from 2nd day.	Bile in urine. Yellow froth on shaking urine. Albuminuria slight and not common.
Icterus... ..	Early and in- tense. Comes on in a few hours.	Does not appear before 3rd day and gradually in- tensifies.	Jaundice develops slowly about 2nd day.
Spleen.....	Somewhat en- larged and ten- der.	No enlargement of spleen.	Splenic enlarge- ment is marked; may have ague cake.
Pulse.....	Rapid from start and becoming more so as dis- ease progresses.	Stationary pulse with rising tem- perature or fall- ing pulse with stationary tem- perature. (Fa- get's law).	Pulse not so rapid as in black- water.
Vomit.....	Early marked bilious vomiting.	Mucus like fol- lowed by black vomit about 4th day.	Bilious vomiting and gastric dis- tress less than in blackwater.
Evidences of Malaria.	Usually present as parasites or melaniferous leucocytes or in- creased large mononuclear percentage.	Negative unless yellow fever oc- curs in a mala- rial case.	Some evidence at some time al- most always ob- tainable.

Laboratory Diagnosis.—Other than the noting of evidences of malarial infection, rapid reduction in red cell count and haemoglobin percentage there is little information to be derived from the blood which is thin and shows delayed coagulation time. It is difficult to make good blood smears. In the urine we note the granular sediment of debris of red cell destruction with at times haematoidin crystals. Spectroscopically we get absorption bands of methaemoglobin and more rarely oxyhaemoglobin.

Albumin is present in quantity and urobilin is usually present in large amount. One can examine the urine for blood by the haemin-crystals, guaiac or benzidin tests.

The serum shows hæmoglobinæmia and may show reduced alkalinity.

PROGNOSIS

So far as statistics go the mortality rate would appear to be influenced by the delicateness of the tests used for determining the presence of haemoglobinuria. When a diagnosis is only made with the presence of marked haemoglobinuria, showing porter coloured urine, the mortality rate is of course higher than when slight haemoglobinuria is taken into consideration.

In cases treated with quinine, Deaderick, in statistics of various authorities, gives a death rate of 25.9%, in cases not so treated, of 11.1%.

Marked and persistent vomiting and hiccough are very unfavorable signs. In particular, however, it is anuria that gives us our greatest concern in the care of a case. A severe attack is followed by a marked anæmia and convalescence is usually protracted.

PROPHYLAXIS AND TREATMENT

Prophylaxis.—The view now generally entertained is that where malarial prophylaxis is properly carried out there will not be any blackwater fever. In persons who have had a previous attack of blackwater fever quinine prophylaxis should be with quinine tannate or quinine base, avoiding the acid salts of quinine.

In particular any exposure to chilling influences or conditions which lower resistance should be avoided. As blackwater fever is more prevalent among those who have been for 2 or 3 years in highly malarious, tropical regions than among recent arrivals, the former should exercise the greater care as to errors in diet, alcoholic excesses, exposure to wet and irregularity in quinine prophylaxis.

Treatment.—There is less unanimity of opinion as to the advisability of giving quinine during an attack of blackwater fever than exists as to any other therapeutic measure.

Of course if it be true that quinine base is devoid of haemolytic influence the fear of increasing haemolysis by giving quinine would not have to be considered. At any rate any red cells containing parasites will surely be destroyed in the general haemolysis and with them their contained parasites, so that it does not seem reasonable to give quinine during the first day or two of the attack. Quinine, if given, should not be by mouth for fear of increasing the nausea and vomiting. The majority of authorities hold that if parasites persist after two or three days from the onset quinine is indicated. Some give quinine during the first day if parasites are present but otherwise they withhold quinine.

Absolute rest in bed and good nursing are the prime considerations in treatment.

The patients should be freely given alkaline waters, as Vichy or water containing 30 grains of bicarbonate of soda to the pint. Cracked ice often tends to lessen the nausea and vomiting. Albumin water or barley water may be retained better than milk or broths. As the condition is so asthenic one cannot disregard the nourishment of the patient during the first two or three days as is true of the sthenic first stage of yellow fever.

Saline enemata are of particular value and may suffice in mild cases. In severe cases subcutaneous or intravenous saline injections are necessary. Sorel recommends the intravenous injection of lactose or glucose solutions in quantities of about 300 cc. (Crystallized glucose 47 grams, water 1,000 cc. or C. P. lactose 92.5 grams, water 1,000 cc.) He also uses these sugar solutions as enemata. Dry cupping or hot fomentations over the loins are the usual remedies in threatened suppression of the urine. If blackwater fever should be shown to be accompanied by diminished alkalinity of the serum then the intravenous injection of a one or two percent solution of bicarbonate of soda would be indicated. Some have recommended calcium lactate in doses of 20 grains every 4 hours. There is little evidence however to indicate that it is of value.

Hearsey advocates a mixture in which there is contained 10 grains of bicarbonate of soda and $1/30$ grain of bichloride of mercury in each dose, to be given every 2 hours.

Cholesterin has been given in 15 grain doses in suspension in thick milk every 4 hours with the idea that it is anti-haemolytic. The dose is repeated 2 or 3 times.

CHAPTER III

THE TRYPANOSOMIASSES

DEFINITION AND SYNONYMS

Definition.—African trypanosomiasis is an important protozoal disease of Central and West Africa, due to a flagellate, *Trypanosoma gambiense*, and transmitted by a tsetse fly, *Glossina palpalis*. The trypanosome undergoes a developmental cycle in the fly which does not become infective until after about 20 days. The period of incubation is about 2 or 3 weeks after which an irregular fever with approximately normal morning temperature and high evening rise appears, attended with a rapid pulse rate at all times. This is called the stage of trypanosome fever and may show trypanosomes in the peripheral blood. Later on the glands enlarge and gland juice shows trypanosomes. With the appearance of a fine tremor of the tongue, a state of apathy or lethargy, known as sleeping sickness, sets in, attended with trypanosomes in the cerebro-spinal fluid. Gradually increasing mental deterioration marks the almost invariable course to death. A more virulent type of trypanosomiasis is found in Rhodesia.

In Brazil there is a disease caused by a flagellate, *Schizotrypanum cruzi*, which resembles a trypanosome and is transmitted by a bug, *Lamprophya megistus*. The disease runs an acute course with a high fever and great mortality in infants showing chiefly manifestations of involvement of brain or thyroid gland. In adults it runs a chronic course showing neurological manifestations or signs of myxoedema or even Addison's disease.

Synonyms.—Sleeping sickness; Negro lethargy. French: *Maladie du sommeil*. German: *Schlafkrankheit*. For the Brazilian trypanosomiasis, *Schizotrypanosomiasis*; Chaga's disease.

HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION.

History.—In describing sleeping sickness, in 1903, Winterbottom brought out the importance of enlargements of the posterior cervical glands (Winterbottom's sign).

In 1880 Evans had found a trypanosome in the blood of horses affected with surra and several years afterwards Bruce discovered that nagana, a fatal disease of cattle, was due to a trypanosome, *T. brucei*. In 1890 Nepveu found a trypanosome in the blood of a man in Algeria but owing to vagueness of description the discovery did not attract attention.

In 1901, Forde found a parasite in the blood of a patient in the River Gambia Colony who had a fever and in 1902 Dutt on recognized the parasite as a trypanosome and gave it the name *T. gambiense*. In 1902, Castellani, finding a trypanosome in the cerebro-spinal fluid of a patient with sleeping sickness, brought about the establishment of the connection between the trypanosome in the blood (trypanosome fever) and the trypanosome in the cerebro-spinal fluid (sleeping sickness). In 1903, Bruce and Nabarro reported that this disease was spread by a tsetse fly, *Glossina palpalis*.



FIG. 15.—Geographical distribution of African trypanosomiasis.

In 1910 Stephens and Fantham brought forward the existence of a more virulent trypanosome, *T. rhodesiense*.

Geographical Distribution.—The disease exists on the West Coast of Africa, from Senegal to Mossamedes. It is also present in the Congo basin and particularly in Uganda. The more virulent form is found in Rhodesia.

ETIOLOGY AND EPIDEMIOLOGY

Etiology.—The African trypanosomiasis follow infection with two species of trypanosomes; the more virulent type of the disease, occurring in South Central Africa, being due to *Trypanosoma rhodesiense*, transmitted by *Glossina morsitans* and that of less severe type, but of

more general distribution, being due to *T. gambiense* and transmitted by *Glossina palpalis*. The very important *Trypanosoma brucei*, which is the devastating agent in the African horse, dog and cattle disease, nagana, is also transmitted by *Glossina morsitans* and there exists the opinion that this trypanosome is identical with *T. rhodesiense*.

These trypanosomes are blood flagellates and are typical of the Binucleata in possessing two chromatin staining areas, the larger and more centrally situated mass being the tropho or macronucleus and the smaller, but more deeply staining one, the kineto or micronucleus (Blepharoplast). Trypanosomes have a fusiform or fish shaped body which stains blue. Near the less pointed, non flagellated end, usually called the posterior end, is the deeply stained blepharoplast. Behind this is a vacuole and, taking origin from this part of the trypanosome, is the flagellum. This borders an undulating membrane attached to the body and then, carried along to the other extremity, projects free as a long, whip like flagellum.

In fresh preparations the body of the trypanosome progresses in the direction of its flagellated end, although occasionally it will be observed to move in the opposite direction.

T. gambiense varies much in length and breadth. The normal type, as found in the blood, varies from 14 to 20 microns, while longer forms, 20 to 24 microns, are growth ones and, in the longest ones (23 to 33 microns), we have those preparing to divide longitudinally. The normal short forms are the ones from which the development takes place in the tsetse fly. In width these flagellates are from 1.5 to 2 microns. The blepharoplast is oval and the nucleus situated about the center.

With *T. rhodesiense* the nucleus is typically located almost adjacent to the blepharoplast. As a matter of fact it may require the passage of this trypanosome through rats to bring out these "posterior nuclear forms," the nuclear location being at times almost entirely that of *T. gambiense*. In addition to the characteristic of nucleus being near the blepharoplast, this trypanosome is more virulent for laboratory animals than *T. gambiense*, agreeing in this respect with the more severe clinical course in man.

When the tsetse fly, *Glossina palpalis*, feeds on a man in whose peripheral circulation there are normal type trypanosomes we have an accumulation of such forms in the middle and posterior portions of the gut. From the 8th to the 18th day long, slender forms develop and pass forward into the proventriculus. None of the intestinal forms can cause infection when injected into animals. These proventricular types work their way into the salivary ducts and thence into the salivary glands, where further development takes place. Here we have shorter forms developing, which are similar in morphology to the normal blood type. It is at this stage that the fly becomes infective by the passing of these trypanosomes down the salivary ducts and through the channel in the hypopharynx to the subcutaneous tissues of the person bitten. High temperatures, 75 to 85 degrees F., are favorable to develop-

ment, while low temperatures, 60 to 70 degrees F., are inimical to development, but do not kill the ingested trypanosomes. This explains the long period which at times elapses before a fly becomes infective. Under favorable conditions a fly becomes infective in 20 to 34 days and remains infective the rest of its life, up to 185 days. The infection is not transmitted to the pupa. This is an inoculative, cyclical or indirect type of infection. It is usually considered that a tsetse fly whose proboscis



FIG. 16.—*Glossina palpalis* in natural resting position with wings outstretched (MacNeal after Doflein.)

has just been contaminated with trypanosome blood is capable of transferring the infection for a few hours. This would be a mechanical or direct method of infection and such power for infection only lasts for a few hours.

When tsetse flies feed on animals infected with trypanosomes only from 2 to 6 percent become infective. Again, it has been shown that



FIG. 17.—*Glossina morsitans* before and after feeding. Lateral view. (From Doflein after Austin.) MacNeal.

where the wild animals on which tsetse flies feed may show an infection of from 16 to 50 per cent yet not more than 2 out of every 1000 tsetse flies, caught and tried out on susceptible animals, show themselves infective.

Both of the human trypanosomes of Africa have been cultured by using the N.N.N. medium in which rat's blood was substituted for that of the rabbit. Human blood will also serve as a substitute. Growth however is not constant.

Epidemiology.—Practically the only method of transmission of the disease is by infected tsetse flies. The female gives birth to a single, yellowish brown, motile larva, which is almost as large as the mother and which, upon reaching the ground, bores its way into a coarse, sandy soil for a depth of about 2 inches and then becomes a pupa. The larval stage in the mother lasts about two weeks and the pupal stage about a month.

The tsetse fly is much like *Stomoxys*, but has a branching of the feathering of the arista, long palps, a bulb to the proboscis and a characteristic upbending of the fourth longitudinal vein to meet the mid-cross vein. The female deposits her larva near a shady place upon loose, dry, sandy soil. Moisture and sunlight are not favorable for pupal development, the sun being particularly injurious, so that pupae, buried only an inch deep and away from shade, are killed. This fact has been utilized in prophylaxis by cutting down the trees. The trouble is that the bush growth which soon follows is favorable as shade for the pupae.

Male and female flies bite and transmit the disease. They bite in the daytime, usually from 9 A.M. to 4 P.M., and will bite in the sunlight.

With a view to eradication of the disease certain areas have been depopulated, but upon examining the flies caught in the district a year or more later, infected flies have been obtained. This would indicate some other reservoir than man. It is now generally conceded that the trypanosome strain in the antelope is the same as *T. rhodesiense*, both being transmitted by *G. morsitans*. Taute, however, believes them different as he not only injected blood containing such trypanosomes into himself, with negative result, but also allowed flies which had fed on antelopes, which were infective for laboratory animals, to feed on himself, likewise with negative result. It is a well known fact that men in good condition are refractory to trypanosome infection so that this courageous experiment does not prove the antelope strain to be different from the human one.

One measure that has been proposed is to kill off the big game from a certain area with a view to depriving the flies of their main source of infection.

The probabilities of an animal reservoir for *T. gambiense* however is not so well settled. Many think that we may have trypanosome carriers and that such persons in the enjoyment of health may act as reservoirs of the virus. Koch suggested that crocodiles were important factors in the life of the tsetse flies and recommended the destruction of the crocodile eggs.

Koch noted the infection of 15 women in a fly free district and considered their infection as coming from sexual intercourse with their husbands, who had returned home from fly districts where they had contracted trypanosomiasis.

This same method of infection of prostitutes has quite recently been brought to notice by Bernard.

It will be remembered that dourine, a trypanosome disease of horses, is transmitted by the sexual act.

All observations however indicate that the spread of the disease is almost exclusively through the medium of the tsetse fly. Professor Franchini was infected in his laboratory by a strain which was supposed to be *Trypanosoma brucei*.

PATHOLOGY

The chief pathological findings are the enlargements of the lymphatic glands. The dura mater may be adherent in places and the pia mater may show areas of thickening. The cerebro-spinal fluid is increased in amount. The pathological process is a chronic polyadenitis which is followed by a chronic inflammation of lymphatics of brain and spinal cord. We have a meningo-encephalitis in which the most characteristic feature microscopically is a wide spread perivascular infiltration of small round cells surrounding the vessels of the pia-arachnoid of both brain and cord. The process is most marked about vessels of pons and medulla. The nerve cells are but little affected other than those of the bulbar nuclei.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The Period of Invasion.—After an incubation period which may be as short as 10 or 12 days, following the bite of an infective tsetse fly, the trypanosomes may be found in the blood or in gland juice. One case has been reported where an official of the Belgian Congo showed trypanosomes less than 4 weeks after his arrival in the colony. His first symptoms were noted about ten days after his arrival.

In natives, trypanosomes may be present in the blood for long periods of time during which they may do heavy work; thus 7 of Koch's 52 native porters showed trypanosomes. In Europeans however the course of the disease is rarely so insidious but rapidly enters upon the next stage.

The Period of Trypanosome Fever.—Although fever may be absent in natives until the onset of the period of sleeping sickness, yet in Euro-

peans there are usually noted febrile paroxysms, lasting for a few days, and followed by afebrile periods varying from a few days to 2 or 3

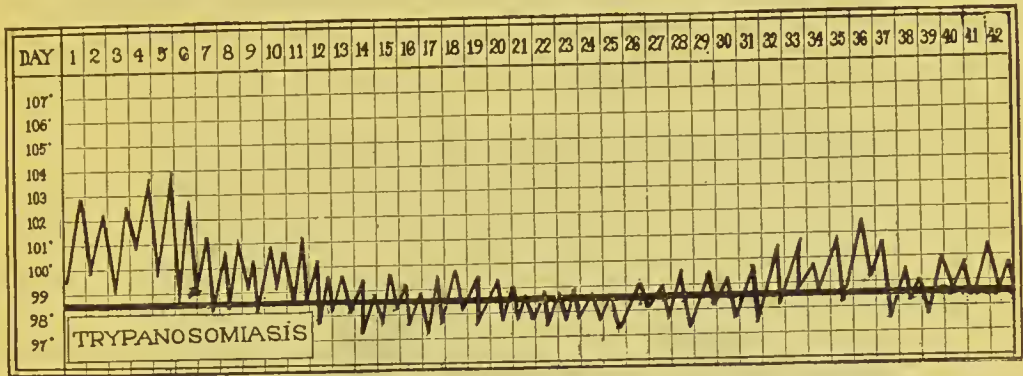


FIG. 18.—Temperature chart of trypanosome fever.



FIG. 19.—Swelling of the glands of the posterior cervical triangle—Winterbottom's sign. (Ruge and zur Veith after Koch.)

weeks. The temperature curve is of a markedly remittent type, approaching normal in the morning and going up to 103° F. or higher in

the evening—a wide daily range. Very characteristic is a low tension rapid pulse which often is as rapid when the temperature approximates the normal as when it is higher. Early in the disease there are evidences of involvement of the nervous system, as shown by headache, insomnia, difficulty of concentration for mental work and cardiac



FIG. 20.—Cases of typanosomiasis showing the oedema especially about eyes. (Ruge and zur Verth after Koch.)

instability. Very important are the glandular enlargements, particularly of the glands of the posterior cervical triangle (Winterbottom's sign), which upon puncture may show trypanosomes when the blood examination fails to reveal them. The glands are discrete, soft, painless and may show but very slight enlargement. Oedematous swellings, especially about eyes or joints or in localized areas upon the trunk,

may be rather prominent in some cases. In Europeans pinkish erythematous rings may make one think of syphilis. These erythematous patches are not visible on the skin of natives. A dryness of the skin is rather constant and pruritus is often present.

Recently great prominence has been given to a deep hyperaesthesia, which shows itself as a lively pain, often retarded, after some slight blow upon a bony projection of the body. Kérandel, who suffered from trypanosomiasis, noted that the fear of striking against objects became with him an absolute obsession. It is called the Kérandel sign. It is only during this first stage, when the trypanosomes are only to be found in the blood or gland juice that the disease would appear to be curable. Upon the appearance of the trypanosomes in the cerebro-spinal fluid (2nd stage) we have practically a hopeless prognosis.

The Period of Sleeping Sickness.—In this stage the mentality becomes more weakened. The native from being happy and willing to work becomes morose and apathetic. This change of disposition is frequently the first thing to be noted in a patient by his family. There is a tendency to gaze into the distance. The speech is rather low and tremulous like that of a tired, sleepy child. The tongue especially shows a decided tremor which may also be present in the lips and hands.

The gait is one of weakness and apathy—a shuffling gait. The reflexes may be exaggerated. Romberg's sign may be present but the Argyll-Robertson pupil has not been noted. There may be an alternation of periods of crying and laughing which with the occasional exhibition of intention tremor and rarely nystagmus may make one think of multiple sclerosis. The patient tends to sleep even when lying in a bright sunlight. Again he may go to sleep with a morsel of food in his mouth. Notwithstanding the apparent stupid state the patient, when aroused, will answer fairly intelligently but with apathy and retardation. The hebephrenic and catatonic manifestations of dementia praecox may be exhibited in some cases.

Finally the patient becomes weaker and more emaciated. The pulse becomes rapid and feeble, the blood pressure being extremely low. The mouth becomes dry, the teeth covered with sordes and bed sores develop. There may be convulsions. The coma and general weakness become more marked and the patient dies. Frequently terminal pneumonias or dysenteries bring about the end.

The Symptoms in Detail

The Nervous System.—Headache and lack of mental concentration may be early features of the disease. Deep hyperaesthesia, or Kérandel's sign, often present. Patients tend to be morose and apathetic. Tremor of tongue and lips rather constant features about the commencement of the stage of sleeping sickness. Early insomnia gives way to the drowsiness that characterizes the second stage. There is very little disturbance of sensory or motor functions until near the end. Epileptiform convulsions may be late manifestations. Coma deepens and the end approaches.

The Temperature Curve.—The febrile paroxysms, which may not be present in natives until the sleeping sickness stage, show great irregularity of course and a marked remission in the morning. The fever may be absent for several weeks to return later. Trypanosomes are more apt to be present in the peripheral circulation during the fever than when the temperature is normal.

The Circulatory System.—The pulse tends to run from 90 to 120 beats per minute and is fast even without fever. The tension is low and the systolic pressure tends to be extremely low during the later stages of the disease.

The Lymphatic System.—Most important in diagnosis are the enlargement of the lymphatic glands, especially those of the posterior cervical triangle (Winterbottom's sign). Other enlarged glands may be the supraclavicular, epitrochlear and axillary glands. The inguinal glands suffer enlargements so frequently as the results of wounds and infections of the foot that their enlargement is of less diagnostic value. The natives of certain parts of Africa not only attach great diagnostic importance to gland enlargement but they imagine they cure the disease by removing the glands with various primitive cutting tools. The glands are not painful, do not become matted together and rarely suppurate. Our best means of diagnosing trypanosomiasis is by withdrawing gland juice with a syringe and examining the smears.

The Skin.—Erythematous areas may be present in Europeans. Localized oedemas are rather marked features. The skin may be very dry and itch markedly.

Other Manifestations.—The spleen may be enlarged, the respirations may be more rapid than normal and the blood show a secondary anaemia. In a blood examination the large mononuclears show an increase with a normal white count.

DIAGNOSIS

When the glandular enlargement is distinct, with the erythema and headache, there is much that suggests syphilis. Another point of confusion is that positive Wassermann tests are often obtained in sleeping sickness.

The increase in large mononuclears goes with malaria, kala azar and syphilis as well as with trypanosomiasis so that such findings are of little assistance in differential diagnosis.

An early history of attacks of fever, with marked fluctuation of temperature, associated with rapid pulse, even with the apyrexial morning fall, is suggestive. Then with the glandular enlargements we think immediately of laboratory examinations. As with pellagra the history is very important in the diagnosis of trypanosomiasis.

For the laboratory diagnosis we may use peripheral blood with some thick film method. The examination of preparations from the peripheral blood is usually very discouraging. Very much better results (in fact some prefer this method to any other) can be obtained by taking 10 to 20 c.c. of blood in about 25 c.c. of citrated salt solution,

centrifuging two or three times and examining the sediment of the third centrifugalization. Dutton and Todd prefer to centrifuge citrated blood and to collect the leucocyte layer for examination as is done in opsonic work.

The English workers usually prefer the gland puncture method, using a sterile but dry hypodermic needle. Water in the needle distorts both leishman bodies and trypanosomes.

In the sleeping sickness stage trypanosomes can almost constantly be found in the cerebro-spinal fluid.

Some prefer to inoculate susceptible animals, particularly the guinea pig or monkey, with blood or gland juice from the suspected case. A very satisfactory material is an emulsion from an excised gland which may be inoculated intraperitoneally into white rats. The further course, after animal inoculation, is the examination of the blood of these animals for trypanosomes. Usually at the time the guinea pigs die we find numerous trypanosomes.

Other tests are (1) Trypanolysis, when unheated suspected serum and trypanosomes are incubated together for one hour. Normal serum may occasionally cause disintegration and treated cases give it in only about 45% of cases. Unfavorable untreated cases give it in about 80% of cases.

(2) The so called autoagglutination test is not of much value. In this the red cells of the blood of a trypanosomiasis case come together in clumps when one makes a wet preparation. It is not a rouleaux formation. (3) The attachment test is made by making a mixture of inactivated serum, leucocytes and trypanosomes and allowing them to be in contact for 20 minutes. A positive test shows attachment of the trypanosomes to the leucocytes.

PROGNOSIS

If the patient cannot be removed from the infected district or cannot receive the atoxyl or atoxyl-tartar-emetic treatment the prognosis is almost surely that of a prolonged but fatal end.

There is very little hope of cure if the disease has gone on to the sleeping sickness stage.

PROPHYLAXIS AND TREATMENT

Prophylaxis.—The question of depopulation of districts and destruction of the big game therein, when the area is infested with *Glossina palpalis*, has been fully considered under epidemiology.

Isolation, in the fly free districts, of infected natives has not proven a very practical measure but that of rendering their peripheral blood free of trypanosomes by atoxyl injections would seem more desirable. In this we aim to cure the patient as well as render him safe to others.

The most practical measure is that employed in Uganda of clearing the plant and tree growth for at least 15 feet from the streams of water, it having been noted that the tsetse flies confine themselves to a narrow strip not more than 15 feet from the water's edge. The tsetse fly requires considerable moisture for its existence.

The catching of flies in traps or with a sticky lime does not offer much encouragement.

As regards personal prophylaxis, white clothes are to be worn as the tsetse fly, along with mosquitoes, prefers dark coloured garments. The legs should be protected by leggings and possibly one could consider the wearing of gloves or veils. As a matter of fact, however, the heat of the tropics precludes these latter measures. As the fly only bites in the day time one should choose the night for going about, if practicable.

Treatment.—The general opinion is that trypanosomiasis is only curable at a time prior to the appearance of trypanosomes in the cerebro-spinal fluid. Consequently, the stage of sleeping sickness offers little chance of cure by treatment.

Such cases have been treated with injections of 10 c.c. of 1 to 1000 solution of neosalvarsan into the spinal canal, after withdrawing about 15 c.c. of spinal fluid, but without appreciable curative effect. The first drug to offer hope of cure was sodium arsanilate, atoxyl, which contains about 26% of As. This is best given in doses of about 0.5 gm. (7 1/2 gr.) in about 15 c.c. of sterile distilled water intramuscularly. Several cases of optic neuritis were reported but the drug is still a standard treatment.

Probably the best treatment is one in which three doses of atoxyl are followed by from ten to fifteen daily injections of 0.1 gm. (1 1/2 gr.) of tartar emetic. The course is repeated after an interval of three weeks. It is advisable to give a hypodermic of caffeine a few minutes before the tartar emetic to lessen depression. Kerandel received the atoxyl-tartar emetic double treatment and ascribed his cure to the tartar emetic. Tartar emetic is also given intravenously 0.1 gm. in 100 c.c. water.

Intravenous injection of arsenophenylglycin, in doses of about 1.0 gm. (15 gr.) intravenously has been highly recommended. Recent reports from German East Africa state that of 35 treated with this drug 6 died of the effects of the drug. Salvarsan and neosalvarsan have been used but apparently without particular success.

A combination of treatments in which salvarsan, sodium salicylate and ethylhydrocuprein (a quinine derivative) have been used has been favorably reported by Morganroth where the action of a single drug was of little value.

Very remarkable claims in experimental animals have been made for "trixidin," a preparation of antimony trioxide which is given intramuscularly. Even inunctions

with this preparation have been quite successful in curing infected mice. In larger animals abscess formation is an objection.

Very favorable reports have recently been made from the use of galyl and ludyl, arsenical compounds. The former has the number 1116 and the latter 1151.

BRAZILIAN TRYPANOSOMIASIS

General Considerations.—In 1909, Chagas reported the finding of a flagellate in the intestines of *Conorhinus megistus* or, more properly, *Lamus megistus*. He was also able to transmit the flagellate to laboratory animals and could culture it on blood agar.

In investigating the matter of the importance of this flagellate, *Schizotrypanum cruzi*, in Minas Geraes, Brazil, where the above named bug was present in great numbers in the cracks of the houses of the poor, he associated this flagellate infection, which he at first considered trypanosomal, with a disease of the children of that section.

The bug is a vicious feeder and, from its biting chiefly about the face, has been called *barbiero* or *barber* by the natives. Both the male and female of *Lamus* bite and can transmit the disease and although the parasite is not transmitted hereditarily the nymph is capable of sucking blood and becoming infected.

It requires several months for the insect to go through the egg, larval and pupal stage to maturity. Some consider this bug to belong to the genus *Triatoma*. The insects may live for more than a year and tend to remain in the same house where they may have become infected but leave such house if it be abandoned by man. Brumpt thinks that the bedbug may also transmit the disease.

S. Cruzi is found in the blood of children during the acute febrile stage but at other times in children, and as a rule in adults, it is rarely present in the peripheral blood. The early blood forms are narrow and very motile. They increase in size and slacken in motility when they become about 20 mikrons long. *S. cruzi* is characterized by a very large blepharoplast. Dividing forms are never seen in the blood. The common site of multiplication is in the cells of the voluntary muscles and heart and also in the cells of the central nervous system, adrenals, thyroid and bone marrow. In these tissues the flagellate takes on a rounded form and undergoes binary division. Continued division converts the infected cell into a cyst. It is this process going

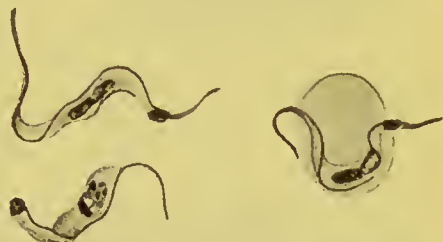


FIG. 21.—*Schizotrypanum cruzi* in blood of child with acute type of Brazilian trypanosomiasis. (MacNeal from Doflein after Chagas.)

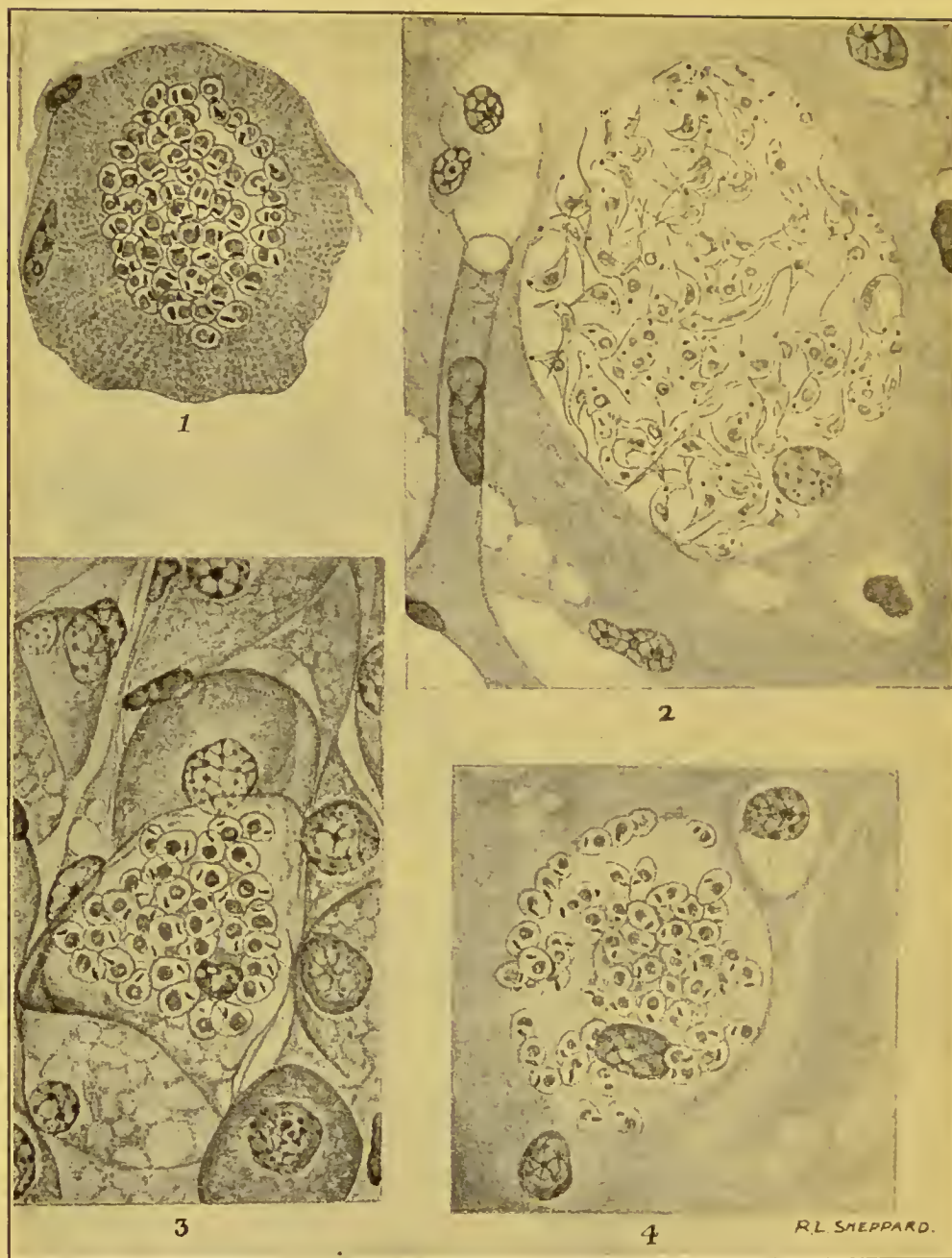


FIG. 22.—*Schizotrypanum cruzi* developing in the tissues of the guinea-pig. 1. Cross-section of a striated muscle fibre containing *Schizotrypanum cruzi*: Note dividing forms. 2. Section of brain showing a *Schizotrypanum* cyst within a neuroglia cell, containing chiefly flagellated forms. 3. Section through the suprarenal capsule, fascicular zone. 4. Section of brain showing a neuroglia cell filled with round forms of *Schizotrypanum*. (From Low, in *Sleeping Sickness Bulletin*, after Vianna.)

on in various important structures that accounts for the extreme variation in symptomatology and pathology.

Chagas thinks that the gametes for the cycle in *Lamus* arise from parasites developing in the lungs of the vertebrate host. Flagellated parasites enter the lungs, lose the flagellum and become oval in shape, later on dividing into 8 parts. These assume an elongated form and enter the red cells of the host. The forms taken up by *Lamus* multiply in the intestine and then pass to the salivary glands after about 8 days. The bug is then infectious when it bites. Brumpt notes that infection may occur from inoculation of the faeces passed by the bug, especially through the conjunctiva.

Symptomatology. *Acute types.*—This form of the disease usually occurs in children under one year of age. The period of incubation is about 10 days. It is attended by a high continued fever which may show a slight morning drop. There is marked puffiness of the face and enlargement of the thyroid. The lymphatic glands and spleen are also enlarged. The case may give the picture of a meningitis in which form the disease is exceedingly fatal.

Chronic Types.—The type of the disease as seen in adults is mainly chronic. They often show enlargement of the thyroid and manifestations of myxoedema. The lymphatic glands are enlarged. Where the adrenal is attacked we have the syndrome of Addison's disease.

In the cardiac types there are present various forms of cardiac irregularities.

In the cerebral types various neurological manifestations may be noted.

An irregular fever may accompany the signs of involvement of the various important organs.

The disease is attended by a marked anaemia.

In the laboratory diagnosis of those cases not showing the flagellates in the blood the usual method is to inoculate a guinea pig with the blood and in about 2 weeks *S. cruzi* may be found in the blood of the animal. The parasites may not appear, however, in the blood, when one should resort to culturing the guinea pig's blood or more surely examine sections of muscle of the animal for the forms in the muscle cells undergoing binary division.

Prophylaxis and Treatment.—Other than destroying the bugs by sulphur fumigation or whitewashing there is little to note. The bugs show a liking for leather articles, as old harness.

There is no treatment known.

CHAPTER IV

THE TROPICAL RELAPSING FEVERS

DEFINITION AND SYNONYMS

Definition.—There is a group of tropical fevers more or less identical clinically with European relapsing fever and caused by spirochaetes closely allied to *Spirochaeta recurrentis* (*Spirillum obermeieri*). It seems probable that the relapsing fevers of East and West Africa are caused by a single species, *S. duttoni*, which is transmitted by a tick, *Ornithodoros moubata*, while that of Northern Africa is caused by another species, *S. berbera*, which is transmitted by lice, either *Pediculus vestimenti* or *Pediculus capitis*. Another species of spirochaete, *S. carteri*, is supposed to cause the relapsing fever of India and it seems probable that its transmission is brought about by infected lice. Besides the above species of spirochaetes others have been reported, as *S. novyi* for American and *S. persica* for Persian relapsing fever. The view taken by Nuttall, that these various names, may be of convenience in the study of relapsing fevers but that there is no adequate morphological difference to justify them as species, seems worthy of acceptance. It has been shown that the separation of these spirochaetes on the basis of susceptibility of laboratory animals and cross immunity reactions is untenable. Agglutination of certain strains by their specific sera, however, is a reliable means of separation. As with European relapsing fever, these fevers are characterized, by a sudden onset, intense frontal headache, and pain of back and limbs. This fever remains high for 3 to 5 days and falls by crisis, to be succeeded by an apyrexial interval of approximately one week. There may be several of these alternating febrile and afebrile periods. The spirochaetes are in the peripheral circulation during the febrile period but not in the afebrile one. The spleen is enlarged and tender. Cases showing jaundice seem more grave.

Synonyms.—Febris recurrens. Tick fever. French: Typhus recurrens. German: Rückfallfieber.

ETIOLOGY AND EPIDEMIOLOGY

Etiology.—Relapsing fevers are caused by organisms generally considered as protozoal in their nature and belonging to the flagellates.

The generic name *Spiroschaudinnia* is preferred by some to the more commonly accepted *Spirochaeta*. East and West African relapsing fevers, or tick fever, is caused by *S. duttoni* and the transmission is through the bite of an argasine tick, *Ornithodoros moubata*. Not only does the tick itself become infected by the taking in of blood containing spirochaetes but likewise transmits the infection to its progeny. Leishman considers that when the spirochaetes are taken into the alimentary tract of the tick there is a breaking up of the spirochaetes into small granules which reach the Malpighian tubules. They also invade the ovary and the ova. It was thought that these granules were the infecting agents and that they were excreted in the fluid of the coxal glands or passed out with the faeces. More recently it has been claimed that these granules have no relation to the infection, which is due to spirochaetes as such. At any rate this infection of man seems to be the contamination method, the material from faeces and coxal glands being rubbed into the wound made

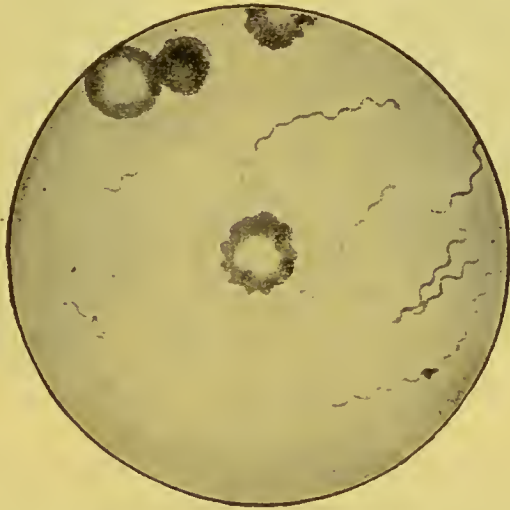


FIG. 23.—Spirochaetes of relapsing fever from blood of man. (Kolle and Wassermann.)

by the tick bite. The ticks hide in the cracks about the old native huts and bite the sleeping inmates. There may be quite a local reaction at the site of the bite. *Spirochaeta duttoni* has been cultured by Noguchi, by utilizing his methods for culturing the organism of syphilis. In such cultures he has noted longitudinal division rather than transverse, this fact rather favoring a protozoal as against a bacterial nature. This spirochaete is from 24-30 microns long, about 0.45 microns broad and has a corkscrew motility. It is readily transmissible to a number of laboratory animals, as white rats, etc. The spirochaete of Northern African relapsing fever, *S. Berbera* causes the disease as seen in North Africa and Egypt. It is transmitted by lice, Nicolle and others having shown that the spirochaetes make their way from the alimentary tract to the body cavity of the louse. They have

shown that the bite alone of an infected flea is innocuous and also that the faeces are non-infective, when injected into monkeys. Emulsions of infected lice, however, when rubbed into wounds, produce the disease in monkeys.

It is by crushing the flea, by scratching or otherwise, that the spirochaetes contained in the coelomic fluid reach and penetrate the wound of the bite. This is therefore a contaminative method of infection. Mackie has shown that the Indian relapsing fever, which is caused by *S. carteri*, is probably transmitted by the louse, and it is probable that the conditions under which the infection takes place are similar to those occurring with *S. berbera* infections. With the Euro-

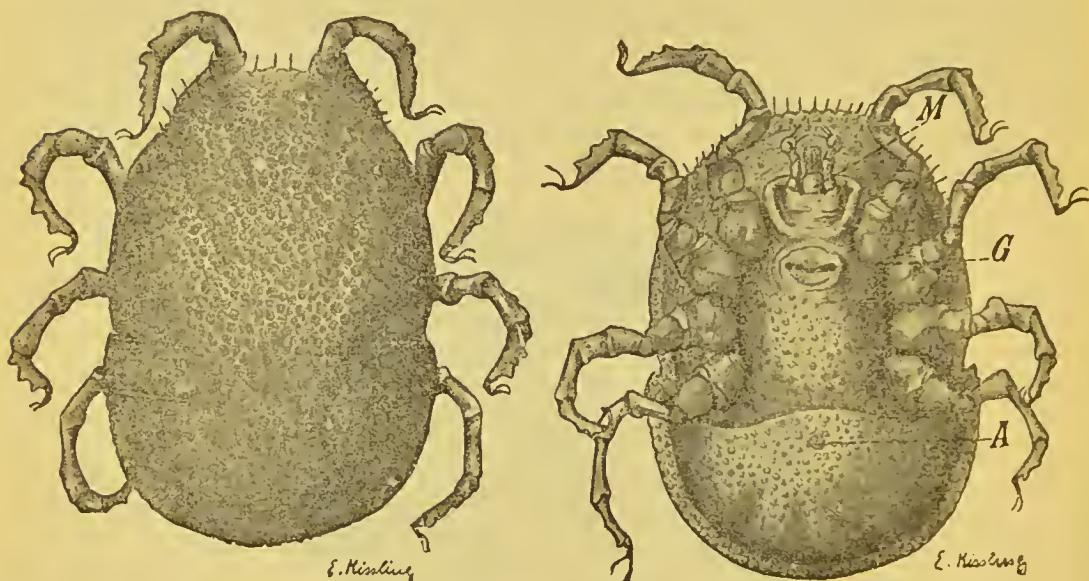


FIG. 24.—*Ornithodoros moubata*. (Murray from Doflein.)

pean relapsing fever, bedbugs have been suggested as transmitting agents. The probabilities however are that this infection is caused by lice.

A relapsing fever of Persia is transmitted by a tick of the genus *Ornithodoros*. There is great variation in the description of the different spirochaetes, and frequently measurements are given for short forms and long forms. They also vary from wave like lines to corkscrew spirals. Again, different species have different types and different activities of movement. As a rule they are about $20 \times .4$ microns.

Epidemiology.—With tick fever the epidemiology rests upon the life history of the tick *O. moubata*. This tick infests the rest houses along the route of travel, hiding in the crevices of floors and walls during the day and coming out at night to bite the sleeping inmates. The

feeding occupies a long time, more than an hour. Both sexes bite man. The female lays about 100 eggs, from which a nymph emerges in about 20 days. The larval stage takes place in the egg. Shortly after emerging the nymphs suck blood. An important fact is that the female transmits the spirochaete to its ova, so that these nymphs may transmit the disease.

Natives seem to suffer severely from tick fever in childhood but in adult life possess a sufficient degree of immunity so that the disease shows itself in a very mild form in those harboring spirochaetes. Ticks can be infected by these carriers. In some of the rest houses 50% of the ticks may be infected. While the tick does not tend to leave its habitation it may be transported in the bundles of native porters. The transmitting agent of the North African relapsing fever and probably of the Indian type is the louse. The body louse deposits about 75 eggs in the clothes of the host, which hatch out in about 4 days and become adults in about 2 weeks. The head louse deposits its eggs or nits on the hair of the host's head.

PATHOLOGY AND MORBID ANATOMY

The spirochaetes disappear from the peripheral circulation during the apyrexial period. The relapse is probably due to the existence of resistant strains which are not destroyed by the lytic substances, developed during the attack. The spleen is enlarged and soft. There are frequent infarctions. The spirochaetes are found phagocytized in the macrophages of the spleen and elsewhere. Parenchymatous degeneration of kidney and heart muscle, and especially of liver may be noted.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

After a period of incubation of from 7 to 10 days the disease sets in rather suddenly with marked headache and general body pains. The temperature quickly rises to 104° – 105° F. and remains elevated during this primary febrile period, except for slight morning remissions. Vomiting is quite a feature of this disease and may be bilious in character. There may be rather marked praecordial oppression and a bronchial catarrh. The pulse in particular and the respiration in less degree are accelerated. Herpes and epistaxis may be noted. The bronchial manifestations seem to occur chiefly in the first febrile accession. The spleen is somewhat enlarged and tender. Spirochaetes are found in the peripheral circulation during the febrile accessions but not during the apyrexial intervals. A rather marked leucocytosis is a feature of the

disease. After about four days the fever falls by crisis, often below normal, and possibly with great prostration and cardiac weakness. A critical sweat is a feature of this rapid fall of temperature. During the afebrile period, which lasts from 3 or 4 days to 8-10 days the patient feels much better and his appetite and strength return. With the onset of the second pyrexial wave the severe symptoms of the first days are repeated, as with the first febrile period. This second one terminates by crisis.

There may be as many as 10 of these febrile recurrences, although there are usually only 4 or 5. In natives there is usually only one febrile period, this probably being due to an immunity resulting from an attack in childhood. In the relapsing fever of North Africa the attacks are less severe and the number of relapses rarely exceeds three. A fever of Egypt, generally known as the bilious typhoid of Griesinger, is believed to have been a form of relapsing fever. In this there was marked bilious vomiting with great tenderness of the liver, late jaundice, albuminuria, and a high death rate. The symptoms rather suggest yellow fever but this disease has never been reported from Egypt. In the relapsing fever of Asia there is a marked tendency for the patient to collapse at the time of the crisis. There are rarely more than two relapses and in probably 25% of cases there is no relapse. There seems to be a greater tendency to liver complications in the Asian types than elsewhere and such cases form a large part of the death rate from this disease. Bilious vomiting and jaundice, with a typhoid like state and the occurrence of various inflammatory complications, especially parotiditis, are noted.

The Symptoms in Detail

The Temperature Curve.—This is the chief point in the clinical diagnosis of relapsing fever. The onset of the first febrile accession is abrupt and the temperature rapidly rises to 104° F. or higher. After a continued high temperature for 3 or 4 days the fever drops by crisis, which is at times productive of collapse. Following an apyrexial period of 4 to 8 days we have a second febrile accession and there may be several of these wave like alternations of fever and apyrexia.

The Nervous System.—Very marked frontal headache is a striking feature and the pains in back and limbs may be of great severity. There may be apathy but, on the whole, the mind is clear.

The Digestive System.—Anorexia and vomiting are features of the febrile periods to cease in the fever free periods. In some types bilious vomiting may be marked.

The Circulatory and the Respiratory System.—The pulse rate is much accelerated, and there may be some praecordial distress. A bronchial catarrh is frequently present in the first febrile paroxysm.

The Liver and Spleen.—Splenic tenderness and moderate enlargement are fairly constant features. The liver may suffer severely in the so called bilious typhoid and marked jaundice may ensue with a typhoid state.

The Blood Examination.—This is the most important point in diagnosis. The

spirochaetes, which are only found in the peripheral circulation during fever periods, are not so numerous in tropical relapsing fevers as in the European forms. When spirochaetes are scarce it is more satisfactory to examine Romanowsky stained specimens, especially with the Giemsa staining. The spirochaetes show a varying number of undulations. There is no chromatin staining in the line of the spirochaetes. The disease shows a well marked polymorphonuclear leucocytosis, with at times an increase of large mononuclears. This latter however may, be connected with malaria or amoebiasis.

DIAGNOSIS

The disease most likely to be confused with relapsing fever is malaria and for this differentiation the finding of the parasites of either disease is of first importance. Dengue may be suspected, but the leucopenia, lack of splenic tenderness, lack of tendency to vomiting and presence of post orbital pains should differentiate. As there is a leucocytosis in both relapsing fevers and smallpox, and similar headache and backache, confusion might exist were the parasites not found and the spleen show no change. Yellow fever has many features in common with the bilious type of relapsing fever, but there is no leucocytosis in yellow fever, and there is no characteristic albuminuria and slow pulse in relapsing fever. Influenza has many points in common with relapsing fever.

Typhus fever shows a less abrupt onset and the marked mental symptoms (stupor) and dark macular eruptions about the trunk, on the 4th to 6th day, should differentiate. If the case is first seen in the apyrexial period one may take a drop of blood from a case showing spirochaetes and one from the suspected patient. After incubation for 30 min. the spirochaetes should lose motility and agglutinate if the case be one of relapsing fever (Lowenthal's Reaction).

PROGNOSIS

The mortality is usually given as about 5 per cent with the exception of the very serious form in which jaundice is present when the death rate may exceed 50 per cent.

Since salvarsan and neosalvarsan have been found to be practically specifics in the treatment of the disease the mortality has been reduced to exceedingly low figures.

PROPHYLAXIS AND TREATMENT

Prophylaxis.—The sole question is the avoidance of places infested with ticks, bed bugs and lice. In Africa, the habitations of the natives,

where infected ticks may hide themselves in cracks in floors and walls, are to be especially avoided. As the tick feeds at night a night light is of value.

Treatment.—We have in salvarsan, or neosalvarsan, a specific. Neosalvarsan, being less toxic is better adapted to the treatment of the icteric type of the disease. Atoxyl has practically no value in treatment.

CHAPTER V

THE LEISHMANIASES

DEFINITION AND SYNONYMS

Definition.—Under this designation we group three diseases, two of which are general infections and one a cutaneous affection. It is now thought that the visceral leishmaniasis of adults or Indian kala azar and that of young children or infantile kala azar are one and the same disease. The cutaneous leishmaniasis or oriental sore is grouped with the others solely by reason of its cause, being a protozoon of the same genus, *Leishmania tropica* for the skin leishmaniasis, and *L. donovani* for the visceral one. Most authorities assign to infantile kala azar a distinct species, *L. infantum*.

The visceral leishmaniasis are characterized by a chronic course, marked splenic enlargement, progressive anaemia and emaciation together with leucopenia. The cutaneous leishmaniasis can only surely be differentiated from other tropical sores by the finding of the leishman bodies from smears made from the granulomatous tissue of the sore.

Synonyms.—Dum-Dum Fever, Tropical Splenomegaly (for Indian Kala-Azar), Splenic Anaemia of Infants, Potos (for infantile Kala-azar), Oriental Sore, Biskra Button, Bagdad Boil, Bouton d'Orient, Aleppo Boil, Granuloma Endemicum (for the Eastern cutaneous leishmaniasis), Espundia, Bubas Braziliana, Uta, Forest Yaws (for the American cutaneous leishmaniasis).

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS OF HISTORY, ETIOLOGY AND RELATIONSHIP

History.—In 1869 the English medical authorities in India became familiar with a very fatal disease among the natives of Assam but regarded it as a very malignant form of malaria. The native designation for the disease was kala-azar. In 1889 Giles investigated this disease and finding hookworm ova in almost all the cases he came to the conclusion that it was ancylostomiasis.

Rogers (1896) and Ross (1898) after studying the disease were of the opinion that it had to do with malaria, the former regarding it as a malignant form of malaria and the latter that it was malaria plus some secondary infection.

Owing to the very similar temperature charts and misled by agglutination tests of the serum of kala-azar patients, which he regarded as showing agglutinins for the *Micrococcus melitensis*, Bently, in 1902, claimed that kala-azar was a malignant form of Malta fever.

In 1903 Manson suggested that the disease might be caused by a trypanosome, the absence of malarial parasites and non-response to quinine being against the then usually accepted malarial etiology.

A few months later in the same year, 1903, Leishman reported findings which he considered as degenerated trypanosomes in the spleen pulp of a soldier who died in 1900 at Netley Hospital of dum dum fever. Although first noting the peculiar bodies in 1900, at the time of making the autopsy, he was at a loss to explain their significance but in 1903, while examining a trypanosome infected rat, he came to the conclusion that there was a similarity in the parasites of the two infections and published his paper entitled "On the possibility of the occurrence of trypanosomiasis in India."

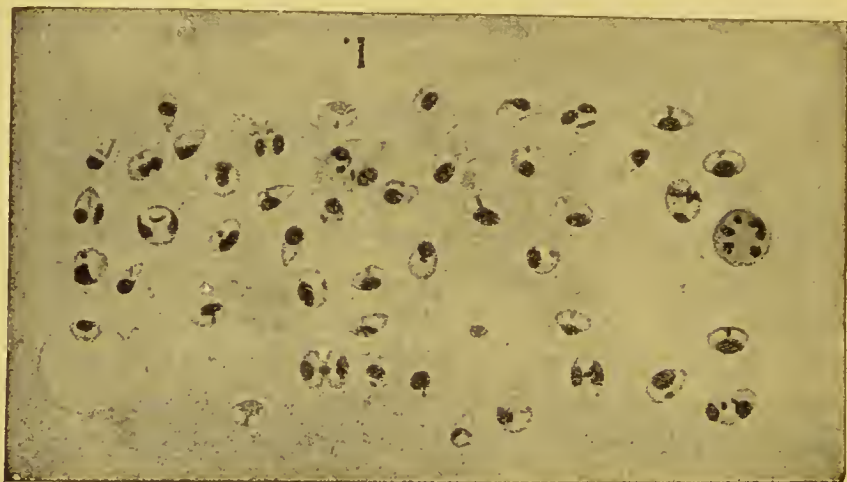


FIG. 25.—*Leishmania donovani*. Smear from juice after puncture of spleen of case of Indian Kala-azar. (MacNeal from Doflein after Donovan.)

In July, 1903, Donovan reported the finding of similar parasites in material from splenic puncture of cases of dum dum fever and taken during life.

There was much discussion as to the true nature of these leishman or leishman-donovan bodies, Lavarán regarding them as piroplasms while others thought them to be trypanosomes.

In 1904 Rogers succeeded in cultivating these parasites in citrated salt solution and noted that the cultural forms were those of flagellates. In 1903, Wright, of Boston, found similar parasites in the granulation tissue of a tropical ulcer in a little Armenian girl.

In 1905, Pianese found leishman bodies in smears from liver and spleen of children dying with infantile splenic anaemia in Italy. About the same time Lavarán in

examining spleen smears made by Cathoire from an infant dying of an undetermined disease in Tunis found these bodies. Later investigations have shown this infantile leishmaniasis to be rather prevalent in the Northern part of Africa and Southern part of Europe.

Quite recently it has been determined that not only is the classical oriental sore a form of leishmaniasis but, as well, certain skin ulcerations found in South and Central America, such as espundia and uta in Peru, boubas in Brazil and forest-yaws in the Guianas.

Etiology.—The parasites which cause a general infection in kala-azar and leishmania infantile splenic anaemia but a local one in oriental sore are usually separated as distinct species, *Leishmania donovani* for kala-azar, *L. infantum* for infantile splenic anaemia and *L. tropica* for oriental sore.

These parasites are grouped with the hæmoflagellates and occur in their vertebrate hosts exclusively as small, oval, cockle-shell shaped bodies, measuring 2.5×3.0 mikrons. The protoplasm stains a faint blue and contains a rather large trophonucleus which is peripherally placed and gives the appearance of the hinge of the cockle shell. Besides this macronucleus we have a second chromatin staining body which is often rod shaped and set at a tangent to the larger nuclear structure. It is called the blepharoplast or micronucleus and stains a more intense reddish than the rather fainter stained pinkish macronucleus. One or more vacuoles are common in the cytoplasm.

Some consider these non flagellated bodies, which are usually found packed in endothelial cells of spleen, liver, lymphatic glands and bone marrow, as resting stages, the flagellate existence occurring in some other host than its vertebrate one. Patton has carried on an immense amount of experimental work with the bed bug and has noted the development of flagellate forms from the 5th to the 8th days in bugs which fed on kala-azar patients showing leishman bodies in their peripheral circulation. If the bugs are allowed a second feeding after the infecting blood meal the flagellates disappear within 12 hours, so that for full development in the bed bug a single feeding is requisite. He states that the flagellate forms change to post flagellate ones by the 12th day. At the same time, although much evidence exists in favor of the bed bug as host for the flagellate forms, it has not been shown experimentally that the bed bug is definitely connected with the transmission of the disease.

Donovan is disposed to incriminate *Conorhinus rubrifasciatus* as the transmitting agent and furthermore he feels that there has not been sufficient investigation of mosquitoes along this line.

In the regions where leishmaniasis of infants occurs there is also found a similar disease of dogs and Basile has claimed that the disease is transmitted from dog to dog by the dog flea. As the dog has been regarded by some as the reservoir of the virus so naturally the transmission of the disease from dog to child through the flea has been considered. Wenyon, however, tried to infect two young dogs with

great numbers of fleas which had previously fed on dogs infected with canine leishmaniasis and at autopsy, 5 or 6 weeks later, was unable to find parasites in smears from spleen, liver or bone marrow and did not succeed in obtaining cultures from this material inoculated into tubes of N. N. N. medium.

As regards oriental sore Wenyon has found that bed bugs and *Stegomyia* will feed from the sores and take up parasites which develop into flagellate forms in the gut of the insects.

Proof of transmission by these agents however is lacking and others are inclined to suspect the house fly or some species of moth midge.

In Brazil there exists some evidence that the cutaneous leishmaniasis found there may be transmitted by species of the tabanid family.

It must be understood that there is always a suspicion that the flagellate forms noted in arthropod experiments may be those of non pathogenic herpetomonad or crithidial species as such forms are common in arthropods and are difficult to distinguish from the flagellate stage of leishman bodies.

Very definite is our knowledge of the cultural forms of *Leishmania*. Rogers first cultured material from splenic juice of kala-azar patients in 10% sodium citrate solution at a temperature of 17° to 24° C. The medium was slightly acidulated with citric acid. There was no satisfactory development at blood temperature. In 48 hours the oval parasites have developed into herpetomonad flagellates, from 20 to 22 mikrons long by 3 1/2 mikrons broad, with a 20 mikron flagellum which takes origin from the blunt anterior end of the body near the blepharoplast. The peripheral blepharoplast and centrally placed macronucleus are at a distance from one another as opposed to the approximation of the crithidial blepharoplast to the centrally placed nucleus in a body with pointed anterior end.

Formerly it was thought that there were differences in the 3 species of *Leishmania* from the standpoint of growth on various culture media, *L. donovani* not growing on N. N. N. medium while *L. infantum* grew well on N. N. N. medium but not in citrated blood. It is now known that both species will grow on these two media.

It is absolutely essential in culturing *L. donovani* or *L. infantum* that the blood agar or citrated blood be sterile, as any bacterial contamination prevents growth. With the parasite *L. tropica*, however, bacterial contamination does not inhibit development and statements have even been made that growth is favored by a staphylococcal symbiosis. *L. tropica*, it would seem, will develop into flagellated forms in cultures at 28° C. while it will be remembered that Rogers in his original experiments failed to obtain other than commencing signs of division at 27° C., 22° C. being the temperature necessary for the development of flagellate forms.

L. tropica from South American cutaneous leishmaniasis seems to grow more luxuriantly on N. N. N. medium than does that of oriental sore of Asia and Africa.

While differences in development on different culture media may obtain not only with different species but with different strains of the

same species, it would appear that such variations cannot be utilized as a means of separating the three species.

With animal inoculations we formerly thought that the parasite of kala-azar could be differentiated from that of infantile leishmaniasis by the fact that dogs could not be infected with *L. donovani*, while they were susceptible to infections with *L. infantum*. Recently Donovan and Patton have successfully inoculated dogs with kala-azar splenic material. Patton found the parasites in the liver, spleen and lymphatic glands as well as bone marrow of the inoculated dogs. Consequently we cannot separate the two visceral leishmaniases from a standpoint of susceptibility of the dog. Monkeys are susceptible to both diseases.

As regards separating oriental sore from the visceral leishmaniases Gonder has shown that white mice may be infected with both kala-azar and oriental sore, there being produced in each case a general infection with the presence of parasites in spleen and liver. A point of difference, however, is that the oriental sore mice develop lesions on feet, tail and head which was not observed with the kala-azar mice. There are some reasons for thinking that in human cutaneous leishmaniasis a generalized infection may precede the local manifestations.

A very interesting point is that the dogs in India never show a natural infection with *L. donovani* while in the regions where *L. infantum* is responsible for human infections the natural infection of dogs is not uncommon, indeed many think the dog the reservoir of virus for both *L. infantum* and *L. tropica*. It has been suggested that the dogs of India, where kala-azar prevails, may be immune.

As regards morphology it is usually stated that the parasites of the 3 species of *Leishmania* are practically identical. In cultures it has been noted that the flagella of *L. tropica* are longer and more twisted than those of *L. infantum*. Again it has been observed that the parasites of the Oriental and South American skin lesions may at times show a flattened or band like trophonucleus instead of the constant round or oval one of the visceral leishmaniases.

Escomel has reported the finding of flagellated *Leishmania* in the South American sores.

Relationship.—Within the past year the view has been generally accepted that Indian kala-azar and infantile kala-azar are one and the same disease, the points of difference between *L. donovani* and *L. infantum* which had been advanced from cultural and animal inoculation standpoints having been disproved.

It has been suggested that the Mediterranean basin may have been the original focus of visceral kala-azar and that it spread thence to India by way of Greece and the Russian Caucasus, cases having been reported from districts which would join the two foci.

Just as children bear the brunt of malaria in old malarious districts and adults suffer in places in which the disease has been more recently imported so by analogy

we may consider the disease as of more recent introduction in India. We now know that visceral leishmaniasis is widely distributed in China, north of Yangtse, as well as in the Sudan and quite recently a case of kala-azar has been reported from South America, in an Italian, who had lived in Brazil from 1897 to 1910.

In the Mediterranean basin there is a natural canine leishmaniasis and some think the human form may be contracted from the dog through the medium of the flea. This dog kala-azar exists in two types, one acute and the other chronic.

Some entertain the view that the virus of oriental sore is that of a modified visceral leishmaniasis and there has been experimental work along the line of determining whether the cutaneous infection immunized against the visceral or vice versa as with vaccinia and small pox.

Manson has suggested that as oriental sore is common in camel-using countries it might be that a passage through the camel lowered the virulence of the parasite as passage through the bovines does variola, so that such an infection was of a mild type.

More recently there has been some evidence to indicate that oriental sore may simply be a manifestation of a visceral infection as shown in Gonder's work with mice and from the fact of the long period of incubation in oriental sore with the appearance in some cases of general symptoms as well as the cutaneous ones.

The South American leishmaniasis differ clinically from oriental sore in that, following the primary lesions, ulcerating granulomatous processes of nasal and buccal cavities frequently set in subsequently, at times even after the primary manifestations have healed.

VISCERAL LEISHMANIASIS

General Considerations.—There are two types of kala-azar, as the visceral leishmaniasis is termed, one the Indian kala-azar, which prevails in Assam, Madras, Indo-China, China and the Sudan and characterized by a subacute or chronic febrile course and splenomegaly in older children or adults and the other, the infantile type, which in over 90% of cases occurs in children under 4 years of age.

This infantile type, which occurs chiefly in the countries bordering the Mediterranean, is usually stated to be caused by *Leishmania infantum* while the adult type is said to be caused by *L. donovani*. If, as is now thought, the two parasites are identical it will be necessary to drop the name *L. infantum*.

Epidemiology.—Whether Indian kala-azar is transmitted by the bed bug or infantile kala-azar by the flea are points which have not been experimentally proven. It must be admitted that epidemiological evidence supports the bedbug transmission view for the former. Rogers, investigating the disease in Assam, found that the usual

history in the villages was that someone with the disease came to a village and subsequently other cases appeared. It was shown that where a village escaped while others near at hand suffered there was a history of non-intercourse with the infected villages. The natives took extreme steps to eradicate the infection, it having been reported that the Garos even burned the patients as well as their huts. All evidence shows that the infection is contracted by sleeping in an infected house. House epidemics and family epidemics are often noted.

There is little to support the view that it is a contact infection as such does not occur in hospitals where verminous insects are absent. By isolating the sick and moving the uninfected to new houses, only a short distance away, there is no spread of the disease. The disease practically appears only in those Europeans who live with or among natives.

In view of the fact that *Leishmania* may be found in the intestinal ulcerations or in the kidneys there have been suggestions that the disease may be spread through the medium of faeces or urine. There is not the slightest evidence that the parasites could live in water which they might contaminate and the view that some sort of transmitting host might take up parasites from the faeces or urine is improbable, as the parasites have never been found in faeces or urine.

The fact that a distance of 300 yards seems to suffice for permanent protection of the uninfected excludes from consideration such transmitting agents as the mosquito or house fly.

The tendency of some to incriminate soil factors can be explained by the well known fact that bed bugs can live for months without food being ready to bite those entering an infected house even after long disuse as a habitation of man.

Infantile kala-azar may possibly be connected with the disease in dogs and may be transmitted by the agency of the flea but there is nothing like the evidence for this view that obtains for the bed bug theory in Indian kala-azar.

PATHOLOGY

At autopsy there is noted marked emaciation with greatly enlarged spleen and liver, dropsical effusions and ulceration of the large intestine. The spleen is often enormously enlarged, rather firm but quite friable. The liver may at times show cirrhosis but the usual change is a distention of the endothelial cells of the intralobular capillaries with great numbers of parasites, as many as 100 or more parasites being at times found in a single cell. Not only do the endothelial cells of the liver contain parasites but those of the spleen, particularly the cells lining the lymph sinuses, the lymphatic glands and bone marrow. The parasites are present in the intestinal ulcerations of the terminal stages. Less frequently they are found in kidneys, adrenals, testicles, pancreas and

lungs. The mesenteric and prevertebral lymph glands are swollen. The bone marrow is red.

When the phagocytic endothelial cells rupture the parasites are taken up by other cells and if by large mononuclear or polymorphonuclear cells may appear in the peripheral circulation. In possibly 80% of cases the parasites may be found after prolonged search in smears of peripheral blood. The leucopenia and large mononuclear increase are the blood features.

Symptomatology

Indian kala-azar.—As a rule the period of onset is rather indefinite. There may be a history of daily rigors, so that malaria is suspected, but it is found that the fever does not respond to quinine. The fever is usually of a low remittent type, rarely a low continued fever, in which the temperature does not exceed 101° F. At times however in

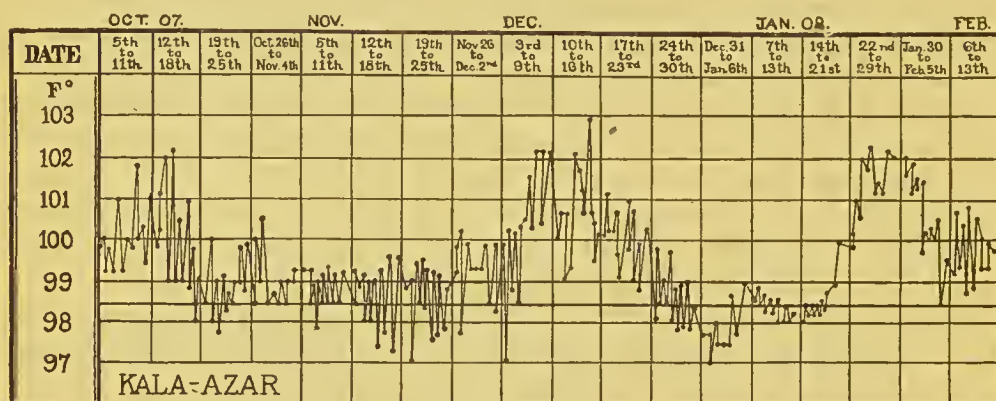


FIG. 26.—Fever chart of a case of kala-azar reported by Bassett-Smith. This chart shows how easily one might confuse the temperature curve of this disease with that of Malta fever.

the early stage the remittent fever is of a high type, the temperature reaching 104° F. Rogers attaches particular importance to the fact that 4 hour charts will show a double or even triple rise of fever in the 24 hours instead of the single one in typhoid fever. The patients also show a striking absence of typhoid malaise and apathy often stating that they feel well when the temperature may approximate 104° F. The febrile accessions last from 2 to 6 weeks to be followed by periods of apyrexia and apparent improvement. Then follow further waves of fever and apyrexia so that the fever chart may resemble that of Malta fever.

The spleen begins to enlarge early in the disease and has usually reached the level of the umbilicus by the third month. The liver does not usually become distinctly enlarged until about the sixth month.

The course of the disease in India is chronic often covering a period of one or two years. In the Sudan, however, Bousfield noted that the symptoms ran an acute course, the average duration being only about 5 months. He rarely encountered chronic cases with greatly enlarged spleen.

As the disease progresses anaemia and emaciation become marked so that the bulging spleen and liver in a dusky or earthy coloured, skeleton like native (black fever) makes a striking picture. The lymphatic glands of cases in North China show enlargement.

The marked leucopenia, with accompanying decrease in the polymorphonuclears (the bacterial phagocytes) makes septic infections and pneumonia especially common in the course of kala-azar. These complications frequently bring about a fatal termination so that we do not get the typical terminal cachexia with emaciation, exhaustion, dry brittle hair, petechiae, oedema and ascites. Symptoms referable to intestinal ulcerations, such as diarrhoea or dysentery, are often noted at the end.

Infantile kala-azar.—The symptoms on the whole are similar to those of the adult type of kala-azar and differ only to the extent that might be expected in a disease occurring in very young children instead of in those older.

The onset is insidious with some fever and gastro-intestinal upset. The spleen enlarges, the child becomes apathetic, anaemic and emaciated. Irregular attacks of fever occur and the child often suffers from epistaxis, bleeding from the gums or hæmorrhages into the skin. According to Nicolle a peculiar pallor of the skin is characteristic. Ulcerations of the intestines and noma may bring about a fatal termination. The liver does not enlarge to the extent that the spleen does. The finding of the parasites is necessary for the distinction of this infantile splenomegaly from those of other origin. The lymphatic glands are not usually enlarged.

Symptoms in Details

Onset and Fever Chart.—The disease commences in a rather indefinite manner, often with gastro-intestinal symptoms or possibly daily rigors. The fever chart is that of a remittent fever with rather marked oscillations and in particular a double rise in the 24 hours, which Rogers regards as pathognomonic. The absence of a high continued fever and this double daily rise assists in differentiating typhoid. Waves of fever separated by apyrexial periods often simulate the fever chart of Malta fever.

The Spleen, Liver and Lymphatic Glands.—The splenic enlargement, which may reach the umbilicus by the third month, is the most characteristic clinical

sign of kala-azar. The diagnosis was formerly made by spleen puncture but owing to many fatalities the liver puncture is to be preferred, although the results of such exploratory examinations are often negative, the liver being involved to a less extent than the spleen and rarely showing appreciable enlargement before the third month.

Cochran has brought forward the importance of examining smears from excised lymph glands for the parasites and others have shown that gland puncture is of value. The glands in the infantile type of the disease often do not show enlargement.

The Blood.—Marked anaemia is only found in the later stages and the colour index is about normal. The number of red cells rarely falls below 2,000,000.

Leucopenia is characteristically marked, this having been below 2,000 in 62% of Rogers' cases. This authority considers the finding of 1 white to 1,000 red cells, in a case of fever, very significant of kala-azar.

There is also an increase in the large mononuclear percentage which would aid in differentiating typhoid.

The coagulability of the blood is decreased and this may be a factor in the fatal results which at times follow spleen puncture.

Parasites are found in the peripheral circulation in about 80% of cases, after prolonged search, and may be phagocytized by either large mononuclears or polymorphonuclears.

The Sudan commission found that the alkalinity of the serum of their patients was diminished.

Respiratory and Circulatory Systems.—There is very little that is constant, the lungs being quite normal in 90% of Rogers' cases. The pulse rate is rather variable, although usually accelerated.

DIAGNOSIS

Clinical Diagnosis.—Cases of kala-azar are usually diagnosed as malaria and it is in the lack of response to quinine that we have our best point of differentiation.

Malta fever shows a rather similar succession of febrile and afebrile periods but the spleen of the former rarely shows marked enlargement and the bronchial catarrh, sweatings, transient joint swellings and neuralgic manifestations are characteristic of Malta fever. Kala-azar may show muscular pains and slight sweatings and the differentiation has at times only been made by the laboratory diagnosis.

Typhoid and the paratyphoids are best differentiated clinically by the presence of a continued fever, the absence of a double daily rise and the existence of a more marked apathy.

The recent statements that hookworm disease may show enlargement of the spleen would make this a condition to differentiate. Hookworm ova and an eosinophilia indicate ancylostomiasis but there is always the question here as with malaria as to the existence of kala-azar and some other affection.

Laboratory Diagnosis.—The leukemias can be easily differentiated by the blood picture, an important matter because the spleen of

spleno-myelogenous leukemia is very friable and the danger from splenic puncture is far greater in this condition than in kala-azar. Banti's disease with its leucopenia shows a rather similar blood picture and can only be surely differentiated by the finding of leishman bodies in kala-azar.

Malta fever, typhoid and the paratyphoids are best differentiated by blood cultures or agglutination tests.

Until recently it was recommended that for diagnosis our best procedure was to make a splenic puncture. Manson and others have pointed out the dangers from splenic puncture in kala-azar and have rather preferred puncture of the liver, although recognizing that the chances of obtaining parasites from a liver puncture, are less than from a splenic one.

Statistics have been given where a mortality approximating 1% has followed spleen puncture. Bousfield, however, using an all glass syringe with a 1-1/2 inch needle did not have a fatality in 120 spleen punctures.

For diagnosis the spleen or liver juice, rather than pure blood, is smeared on a slide and stained by some Romanowsky method, preferably that of Giemsa.

Cultures on N. N. N. medium can also be made.

One should always first examine a smear of the peripheral blood for parasites in polymorphonuclear or large mononuclear leucocytes. The Sudan Commission found leishman bodies in the peripheral blood of 13 out of 15 cases so examined, but rarely did they find more than one parasite-containing leucocyte to a slide.

Quite recently Wenyon and others have noted the desirability of culturing the peripheral blood in N. N. N. medium. Diagnosis may be made in this way, provided one wait from 2 to 3 weeks before reporting negatively as to the presence of flagellated *Leishmania* in the cultures. As before stated, strict asepsis and a room temperature are requisite for flagellate development.

It has been noted that artificial pustulation might assist in diagnosis by giving a multitude of polymorphonuclear leucocytes for examination for phagocytized *Leishmania*.

Cochran has recently noted the advisability of excising a lymphatic gland and making gland smears to examine for *Leishmania*. Others have reported success with gland puncture as utilized in the glands of trypanosomiasis.

PROGNOSIS

Kala-azar is a chronic disease in the great majority of cases although both the adult and infantile types may show cases rapidly running to a

fatal termination. Marked intestinal disturbance makes for a bad prognosis as does also a low large mononuclear percentage. A marked leucopenia is a bad sign particularly when associated with such low polymorphonuclear percentages as ten to twenty. Rogers notes that in children the polymorphonuclears several times did not give more than 5% of the total leucocyte percentage.

The mortality is usually given as about 95% although Rogers states that he has reduced this to 75% by large doses of quinine. Patients often succumb to complicating septic conditions or pneumonia.

PROPHYLAXIS AND TREATMENT

Prophylaxis.—The best results in India have been obtained by abandoning infected houses and establishing new ones for the non-infected villagers, which need not be more than 300 yards from the old ones, thus showing that mosquitoes and flies are probably not concerned in transmission. Measures directed against the bed bug seem to offer the best chance of success. Often, however, the bugs are so deeply located in cracks of thick walled houses that they may not be reached by sulphur fumigation. Flaming of such crevices with a plumber's lamp has been recommended.

Treatment.—Rogers has recommended quinine in doses of 60 to 70 grains daily, claiming thereby to have reduced the mortality of the disease to 75%.

Castellani recommends a combination of quinine and atoxyl, while Manson has reported success with atoxyl in 2 cases, giving 3 grains intramuscularly every other day.

Salvarsan has been tried, but without much success, as is also true of X rays. Some have tried cinamate of soda with the idea of increasing the leucocytes.

If the blood serum shows a lessened alkalinity the intravenous injection of solutions of bicarbonate of soda should be tried.

Recently hectine has been recommended in infantile kala-azar.

CUTANEOUS LEISHMANIASIS

General Considerations.—There is good reason to believe that much that was written about oriental sore prior to our knowledge of its etiology referred to tuberculous, syphilitic and other ulcerative skin lesions. As regards the work done in the investigations as to etiology Cunningham, in 1885, described deeply staining bodies in cells which were larger than lymphocytes. Later, in 1901, Firth confirmed the find-

ings of Cunningham, but considered the bodies as degenerative changes in the cells rather than entertaining the view of Cunningham that they were parasitic protozoa. The name *Sporozoa furunculosa* was given these parasites. As previously stated, Wright, in 1903, using his modification of the Romanowsky stain, found round or oval bodies, from 2 to 4 μ in diameter, packed in the cytoplasm of endothelial cells, in smears from an oriental sore in a child from Armenia. He called the parasites *Helcosoma tropicum*.

As the result of our knowledge that such lesions are caused by leishman bodies, *Leishmania tropica*, we have been forced to include among such sores clinical types entirely different from the classical oriental sore of Fayrer or Tilbury Fox. Even

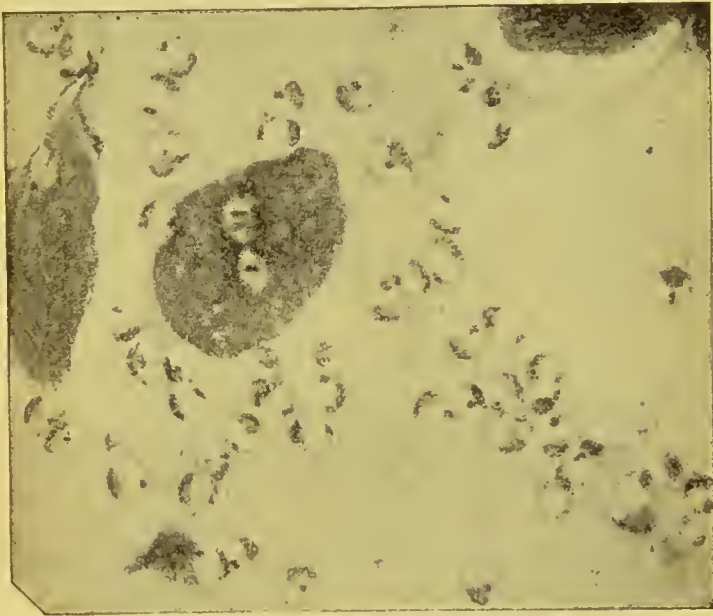


FIG. 27.—*Leishmania tropica*. Smear from granulation tissue of Delhi boil on oriental sore. (MacNeal from Doflein after J. H. Wright.)

a keloid type of lesion described by the workers in the Sudan is known now to be caused by leishman bodies. In 1909 leishman bodies were demonstrated in ulcerative processes from Brazil and since that time we have divided cutaneous leishmaniasis into two groups, according to geographical distribution, that of the East, or oriental sore and that of the West, or American leishmaniasis.

Oriental sore is found chiefly in North Africa, Asia Minor, Syria, Persia and India and more recently cases have been reported from Italy and Greece and New Caledonia. American leishmaniasis is found chiefly in Central America, Brazil, Peru and the Guianas.

Epidemiology.—There is nothing definite known as to the epidemiology of cutaneous leishmaniasis. The fact that oriental sore almost

always occurs on the uncovered parts of the body would suggest transmission by some insect as the house-fly or mosquito rather than by the body louse, flea or bed bug, these latter showing no special preference for the uncovered skin. There has been a great deal written about the origin of the disease in drinking water, various inorganic constituents having been incriminated as factors.

In certain places, as Delhi, oriental sore has decreased among the British troops with the discontinuance of the use of water from certain city wells. We know that oriental sore is rather easily inoculable, it having been stated that certain people of Bagdad inoculated their children in order to insure against the possible appearance of the sore on the face with the resulting scar disfiguration. Wenyon found that the virus would not pass through the unabraded skin.

The disease is most prevalent about the end of summer and in the autumn. It is a disease of towns. Some have thought that it might be transmitted through the medium of the laundry. Not only can man be infected by inoculation but this is also possible with monkeys and dogs when a scarified area about nose or over eyebrows is inoculated with virus from a sore.

The lesions are similar to those in man but last a shorter time.

It has been suggested that the dog may be the reservoir of this virus as well as for that of infantile kala-azar. There is some experimental evidence to show that an animal which has recovered from a visceral leishmaniasis is immune to a cutaneous one.

The natural infection of man with oriental sore produces a rather lasting immunity.

As regards the American sores there is a great deal of difference of statement as to the probable transmitting agent. These sores seem to occur in forest regions where clearing of the trees is going on. Brumpt thinks the fact that dogs, which are susceptible as well as monkeys to inoculation with the American leishmaniasis, are often bitten by ticks without the production of the sore, is against the view that ticks act as transmitting agents. He rather favors a tabanid fly and in a case reported by Darling the patient incriminated a tabanid fly.

The disease seems to occur naturally in the dog in the infected regions.

Pathology.—In oriental sore there is an infiltration of the corium and its papillae with plasma and lymphoid cells as well as with large phagocytic cells packed with leishman bodies which Wright regards as endothelial cells. There is atrophy of the epidermis.

In the keloid type of leishmaniasis noted by the Sudan Commission epithelial cell nests were characteristic although there was no other evidence of epithelioma.

In the American leishmaniasis there is rather constant involvement of the lymphatic glands and often lymphangitis. Histologically the appearance is rather that of granulation tissue with occasionally giant cells.

Symptomatology

Oriental Sore.—Wenyon inoculated a scarified area on his arm which became infected with pyogenic organisms but eventually healed. It was thought that this inflammation would destroy any *Leishmania* which might have been present. About 6 months later he became ill and had fever up to 103° F. for a week with malaise and gastro intestinal upset. At this time a small red papule was noted upon the site of the original scarification which subsequently enlarged and was found to contain leishman bodies.



FIG. 28.—Oriental sore—(Ruge and zur Verth after Cardamatis.)

The period of incubation is usually given as about 2 months, although in some instances it may be as short as a week. Usually the earliest appearance of the sore is similar to that of a mosquito bite. The papule continues to enlarge, becoming purplish in colour with a glazed surface. It somewhat resembles an inflamed acne lesion. Growing larger, the surface of the blind boil like lesions now becomes covered with brownish scales and, either from scratching of the rather pruriginous spot or from the development of vesicles, it becomes covered with a yellowish crust, beneath which is an ulcer with raised edges and discharging a thin offensive pus.

The ulceration does not generally occur before the third or fourth month. The ulcer is painless and may be an inch or more in diameter. Healing comes on in about 7 to 10 months, the yellowish unhealthy granulations giving place to healthy

pink ones. The sore tends to run a course of about one year, hence the French designation *bouton d' un an*.

According to Weber's statistics about 85% of the sores were located on the upper or lower extremities and about 10% on the face, while the trunk served as the location for only about 5% of the sores. There are generally 2 or 3 sores.

According to Déperet and Boinet the number of sores to a case was one sore in 30%, 2 to 4 sores in 50% and from 4 to 20 in about 20% of cases.

American Leishmaniasis.—Under a number of names such as espondia, uta, bubas and forest yaws there has been found in many parts of Central and South America an ulcerating sore, more or less resembling oriental sore, but associated with ulcerating granulomatous lesions of nasal and buccal mucosae.

The lymphatic glands and lymphatics are commonly affected.

Just as with oriental sore one or more pruriginous papular lesions appear on the uncovered parts of the body. In a few days it develops a pustular summit. This undergoes ulceration and after several months or even after the primary lesions have healed nodules make their appearance in nose and mouth.

These ulcerate and form fungoid granulations. Even the larynx may be involved. The nasal septum and other cartilaginous portions of the nose are often destroyed and the overlying tissues become swollen and often eroded by ulceration, so that the patients present the appearance of similar cases where syphilis, tuberculosis or leprosy may be the cause.

The patients suffer from fever, joint pains, bronchitis and general symptoms. After a long period of 10 to 20 years during which they often die of some intercurrent affection, there may be a terminal cachexia.

Diagnosis.—The diagnosis in either oriental sore or in American leishmaniasis can only be surely made by the finding of *Leishmania*, either by scrapings from the edges of the ulcer or by culturing in N. N. N. medium the blood from the immediate site of the sore. Cultures were once obtained from the blood of a finger where the sore was located on the arm of the same side but usually the parasites are absent from the peripheral circulation. Gland puncture in American leishmaniasis may give positive findings of parasites.

Prophylaxis and Treatment.—Knowing that the application of material from a sore to a scarified surface will bring about infection,

it would seem advisable to cover any abrasions or open wounds with flexible collodion or other protectives so as to prevent flies, which may have fed on oriental sores, from having access to the wound.

It has been recommended to paint the spot of insect bites with tincture of iodine.

Atoxyl and salvarsan have been tried in oriental sore and American leishmaniasis without any particularly striking curative results. Attempts have been made to excise the early lesions but unless one goes well beyond the infected area, severe recurrences may result. Bier's passive congestion method has been tried without success.

An expectant treatment is usually resorted to, the crusts being softened and removed with antiseptic fomentations with subsequent disinfection of the ulcer with bichloride or potassium permanganate solution and the application of some antiseptic ointment or powder. Thorough cauterization with pure carbolic acid followed by rapid neutralization with alcohol can be tried. The injection of killed cultures of *Leishmania* does not seem to have been effective.

Wenyon has had good results from an ointment of equal parts of methylene blue, lanoline and vaseline in an American sore.

CHAPTER VI

DYSENTERY

DEFINITION AND SYNONYMS

Definition.—The designation dysentery refers to a symptom complex of (1) small, frequently passed mucous or muco-sanguinolent stools and (2) pains connected with spasm of the sphincter ani (tenesmus) or intestinal gripings (tormina).

The condition may be set up by numerous causes but of these two so outnumber the others that it is usual to have in mind either bacillary or amoebic dysentery when the term is employed.

Synonyms.—The Bloody Flux, French: Dysenterie. German: Ruhr.

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

As will be noted in the sections dealing with amoebic and bacillary dysentery our present knowledge of these conditions is of recent date. There was so much that was etiologically, epidemiologically and clinically contradictory that the subject was impossible of elucidation until the existence of a group of dysentery bacilli was generally accepted, following the reporting, in 1898, by Shiga, of his bacillus of dysentery.

Although Hippocrates was the first to accurately describe the disease we now know as dysentery yet there is good ground for believing that the disease existed in Egypt and India for centuries before Christ.

Many of the older writers failed to differentiate between conditions which showed admixtures of mucus and blood in the stools from those which contained blood alone, a combination which the authorities of the past century considered essential for diagnosis. It is interesting that with a better knowledge of etiology we are now recognizing as of dysenteric nature diarrhoeal conditions in which there is an absence of the typical stool of dysentery.

Our views as to the etiology and epidemiology of bacillary dysentery have been fairly definite for at least 10 years, while those relating to amoebic dysentery, notwithstanding the important researches of Kartulis, Councilman and Lafleur, Schaudinn and others have remained rather chaotic until very recently.

By the term dysentery we understand a symptom complex of more or less characteristic stools and more or less characteristic pains.

As a rule the stool is composed of one or more teaspoonfuls of greenish yellow or dirty brown mucus, the altered blood being intimately admixed with the mucus, or we may have a whitish to greyish muco-purulent mass with streaks or flecks of blood on the outside. These mucoid masses may be found suspended in serous, sanguineous or more or less feculent discharges and are usually small in amount and passed with much frequency.

The terms tormina and tenesmus are the ones used to designate the characteristics of the pains of dysentery, tormina for the griping colicky pains, which center about the umbilicus or run in the direction of the large intestine, and tenesmus for the painful spasmodic contractions of the sphincter ani to which is due the sensation of lack of ability to complete the act of defecation leading to straining and justifying Manson's description "glued to the commode."

It is usually stated that the nearer the dysenteric process is to the rectum, the greater the tenesmus and the nearer to the caecum, the greater the tormina.

The modern classification of dysenteries is based on etiology rather than upon clinical manifestations.

Owing to the great importance of the two main kinds of dysentery, amoebic, or that caused by *Entamoeba histolytica*, and bacillary, or that caused by some strain of *Bacillus dysenteriae*, we shall consider them separately from the other causes of the dysenteric symptom complex.

A. Dysenteries caused by animal parasites.

1. Amoebic dysentery (*Entamoeba histolytica*).
2. Flagellate dysenteries (*Lamblia intestinalis* and *Trichomonas intestinalis*).

While in adults these intestinal flagellates usually cause only a diarrhoea, with at times marked nervousness, they may produce dysenteric symptoms in young children. The onset in children under 3 years of age may be insidious and attended with fever. The stool contains much mucus with only a little blood.

In diagnosis it is important to recognize the encysted *Lamblia*. These are oval cysts, about $10 \times 7\mu$ and show a curved central line, with two lateral dots. When stained these dots show as chromatin areas. The vegetative *Lamblia* has 4 pairs of flagella, is about 15μ long and has a tumbling motion. Calomel alone or calomel and ipecac give good results at times. Enemata of organic silver salts may be of benefit.

3. Ciliate dysenteries (*Balantidium coli*).

While other ciliates may cause a severe type of dysentery it is very exceptional that others than *Balantidium coli* do so. This ciliate is from 60 to 200 mikrons long by about 50 to 70 mikrons broad. It is a commensal of hogs and the disease in man is usually found in those having the care of hogs. These ciliates may be found in the faeces of persons apparently well but in such cases symptoms will eventually

appear. The parasites multiply in the submucosa and the pathologic process is similar to that observed in the large intestine in amoebic dysentery.

Ipecac, emetine, arsenic and quinine appear to be of little value in the treatment, but Walker considers the organic silver compounds, as protargol, etc., of value. Methylene blue enemata (1-3000) and 2 grain pills by mouth have been recommended.

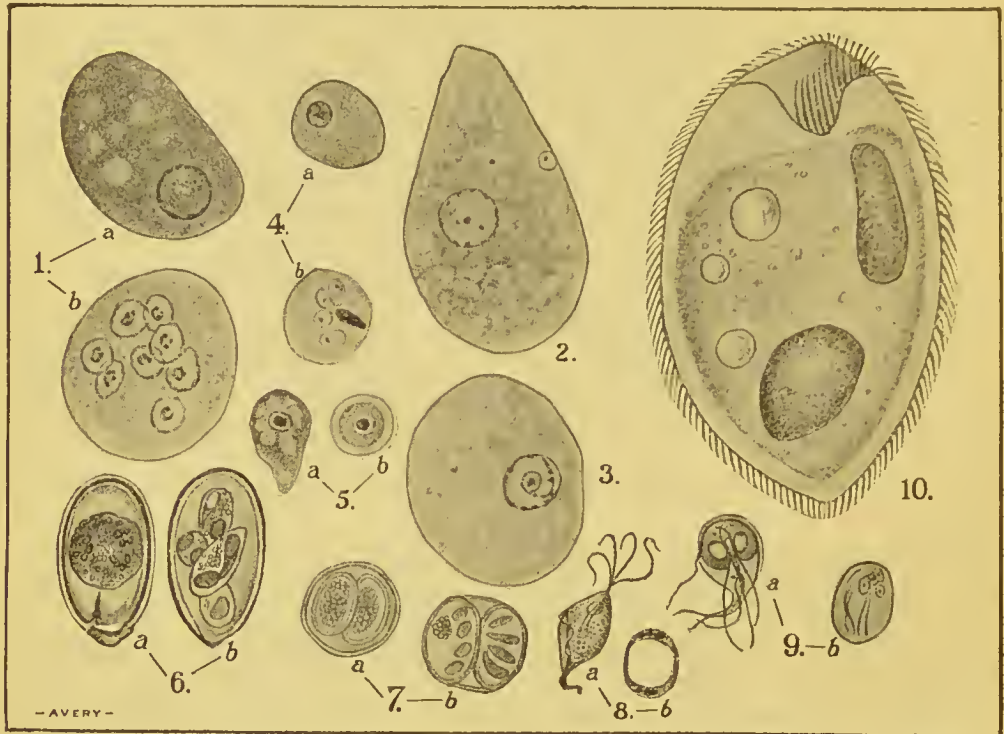


FIG. 29.—Important pathogenic Protozoa of the intestinal tract. (1a) Motile *E. coli*. Note large amount and peripheral arrangement of chromatin in nucleus. (1b) Encysted *E. coli*. Note larger size than *E. histolytica* cyst, 8 ring form nuclei and absence of chromidial bodies. (2) Motile *E. histolytica* from acute dysenteric stool. Note histolytica nucleus with scanty chromatin. (3) Tetragera type of *E. histolytica* from case of chronic dysentery. Note greater amount of chromatin and central karyosome with centriole. (4a) Preencysted *E. histolytica* from carrier. Note small size and heavy peripheral ring of chromatin in nucleus making this feature of chromatin in nucleus similar to the larger *E. coli*. (4b) Encysted *E. histolytica* from dysentery convalescent. Note small size, 4 ring nuclei and a dark chromatin staining mass, "chromidial body." (5a and 5b) Motile and encysted cultural amoebae from Manila water supply. (6a and 6b) Oocyst and sporozoite production in 4 spores of *Eimeria stiedae*. (7a and 7b) Oocyst with 2 sporoblasts and oocyst with 2 spores containing 4 sporozoites of *Isospora bigemina*. (8a and 8b) Vegetative and encysted *Trichomonas intestinalis*. (9a and 9b) Vegetative and encysted *Lamblia intestinalis*. (10) *Balantidium coli*. Illustrations of amoebae from Walker—others from Doflein.

There are also dysenteric manifestations noted in the terminal stages of kala-azar (*Leishmania donovani*) and in algid pernicious malaria (*Plasmodium falciparum*).

These conditions are taken up under the diseases kala-azar and malaria.

In addition to the protozoal causes above noted we may have dysenteric symptoms following infections with trematodes, especially *Schistosoma mansoni* and *S. japonicum*.

In 1902, Brumpt noted the finding of a nematode, *Oesophagostomum brumpti*, in the large intestine of an African native, which caused dysenteric symptoms and, more recently, another species, *O. stephanostomum*, has been reported as causing a fatal dysentery in a Brazilian at Manaos.

There have also been reported cases with dysenteric manifestations which were apparently connected with intestinal myiasis.

B. Dysenteries caused by bacteria.

1. Those caused by either the more toxic, non acid mannite strain of Shiga, or the less toxic, acid mannite strains of the Flexner group.

2. Morgan has reported as the cause of certain bacillary dysenteries a bacillus known as B. Morgan No. 1. It is motile, produces indol, and in glucose bouillon gives a very slight amount of gas. It does not change mannite and does not produce a primary acidity in litmus milk. This organism is a frequent cause of summer diarrhoea of children. Flies from houses with such cases often show Morgan's bacillus.

3. In Japan, dysentery-like epidemics of a very fatal disease, termed ekiri, occur among young children. The organism is very motile, producing gas and acid in glucose, but not in lactose media. It is reported at times to show indol production. Apparently a member of the Gärtner group.

4. Spirillar dysentery. LeDantec has reported a type of dysentery which shows the presence of great numbers of spiral forms. These are Gram negative and non cultivable. It is in question whether they belong to the bacteria. There is no fever in this type of dysentery.

5. Other bacterial causes. Cases of dysentery have been reported as caused by *B. pyocyaneus*, streptococci, atypical *B. coli* and organisms of the Gärtner group.

C. Dysenteries resulting from mechanical irritants or poisonous substances.

A very interesting form of poisoning which gives rise to serious illness or death and is attended with marked abdominal pain and manifestations of dysentery is that reported from North China through the use of short lengths of bristles which are given mixed with the food.

Various irritant metallic poisons as arsenic, antimony and mercury may give rise to dysenteric symptoms. In cancer and syphilis of the rectum there may be a suspicion that the process is an ordinary dysenteric one.

Intussusception shows marked tenesmus with bloody rather than muco-sanguineous stools.

While dysenteric symptoms may be present in the terminal stages of various chronic diseases, especially tuberculosis and cardiac affections, yet it is in chronic nephritis, leading to uraemia, that we may see symptoms of a marked catarrhal or even diphtheritic colitis.

CHAPTER VII

AMOEBIIC DYSENTERY

HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION

History.—Lambl, in 1859, was the first one to note the presence of amoebae in man, these being found in the stools of a child affected with diarrhoea. It was Lösch, however, who, in 1875, first accurately described the parasite which he found in the intestinal ulcerations as well as in the stool of a patient with chronic dysentery and was able to produce dysenteric ulcerations in the dog, by injecting amoebae containing faeces into the dog's rectum.

In 1879 Grassi noted the encysted forms of amoebae, but as he found them in well people, he denied their pathogenic importance. Cunningham found amoebae in the stools of cholera patients and Perroncito in those of typhoid cases, both of these authorities, however, viewing the question of their pathogenicity as did Grassi.

This was the general attitude of the medical mind until Koch, in 1883, while investigating cholera in Egypt, was impressed with the striking penetration of amoebae in the walls of intestinal ulcers and considered that this fact favored the view that amoebae were pathogenic.

Kartulis continued the work of Koch and in 1886 published his findings in 150 cases of dysentery, noting the presence of amoebae in the stools of all these cases. In 1887 he noted the presence of amoebae in liver abscess. In 1891, Lutz noted that amoebae in dysentery contained red cells. In the same year Councilman and Lafleur came to the conclusion that there were two species of amoebae in man, one harmless and the other, which was found in the submucosa of intestinal ulcers, pathogenic. Casagrandi and others put forward the view that amoebae only acted as carriers for bacteria but in 1893 Kruse and Pasquale injected all the bacterial species isolated from a dysenteric stool into a cat's rectum with negative result. Hlava and Kartulis first produced dysenteric lesions in cats by injecting, per rectum, amoebic stools. Kruse and Pasquale produced dysentery in cats by injecting per rectum bacteria free pus from a liver abscess which however contained amoebae.

A stumbling block as to the connection between amoebae and dysentery was the fact that many cases of typical dysentery failed to show amoebae. In 1898 Shiga settled this matter by reporting a group of bacilli which were concerned in the production of dysentery. His findings were confirmed all over the world and the distinction gradually obtained of cases of dysentery from bacillary as well as from amoebic infections.

In 1903 Schaudinn reported the existence of two species of amoebae, one harmless

and named *Entamoeba coli*, the other pathogenic and named *E. histolytica*. In 1907 Viereck described a pathogenic amoeba which, by reason of its four nuclei in the encysted stage, he called *E. tetragena*.

As the result of the work of Hartmann, Whitmore, Darling, Wenyon and the recent conclusive findings of Walker we now hold the view that Schaudinn was working with *E. tetragena* and not with a separate species, so that by the law of priority we must drop the name *E. tetragena* and accept *E. histolytica*.

Geographical Distribution.—Amoebic dysentery seems to be especially prevalent in Indo-China, China and the Philippines, as well as in parts of India. It is also very common in Egypt and Northern Africa. In South America, especially Brazil, it is common as is also true of the West Indies and Central America. It is an important disease in the Southern States of the United States, as well as in Italy and other parts of Southern Europe. On the whole it is probable that it exists in greater or less degree in most of the tropical and subtropical parts of the world.

ETIOLOGY AND EPIDEMIOLOGY

Etiology.—For a long time the authorities in Manila held that it was impracticable to differentiate between a pathogenic and non-pathogenic species, taking the view that the principal factor in the production of dysentery was that of symbiosis between amoebae and suitable bacteria, it having been thought that they observed in cultures of amoebae evidences of both symbiosis and antagonism on the part of amoebae to certain species of bacteria. They furthermore were convinced that pathogenic amoebae could be cultured on a medium of about 1/10th the strength of ordinary nutrient bouillon or agar and that dysentery could be produced by such cultural amoebae. Such views had an important bearing on epidemiology as it was thought that where amoebae could be cultured from green vegetables, fruit, or water supply there was positive evidence of the possibility of infection with amoebic dysentery from such a source.

The above views are no longer entertained and, due to Walker, working in Manila with experiments on man, we now know that cultural amoebae are without effect in the production of dysentery and that there are certainly two species of amoebae having man for a host, the one pathogenic, *Entamoeba histolytica* and the other a harmless commensal, *Entamoeba coli*.

Schaudinn, in 1903, described the pathogenic amoeba, which he named *E. histolytica*, as follows: 1. Distinct, highly refractile and

tenacious ectoplasm. He considered this tough external portion of the cytoplasm as the explanation of the ability of the pathogenic amoeba to bore its way into the intestinal submucosa. 2. Eccentric nucleus which was indistinct by reason of little chromatin. 3. Reproduction by peripheral budding in which small aggregations of chromatin reached the periphery of the cytoplasm and, enclosed in a resistant capsule, broke off from the parent amoeba and constituted the infecting stage.

For the nonpathogenic *E. coli* he noted, 1. No distinction between a granular endoplasm and refractile ectoplasm. 2. Centrally placed and sharply outlined nucleus, rich in chromatin and 3. Encystment with the formation of eight nuclei, which nuclei or amoebulae form the infecting stage.

The pseudopodia of *E. histolytica* are actively projected as long finger-like processes which show the ectoplasm quite distinctly, while the pseudopodia of *E. coli*, are lobose and sluggishly projected and show a uniformly opaque greyish colour.

In 1907 Viereck and later Hartmann recognized a pathogenic amoeba with four nuclei in its encysted form, to which was given the name *E. tetragena*.

All authorities now consider that Schaudinn made an error in observation as to the existence of peripheral budding for *E. histolytica*, so that we recognize but two types of encystment, one with a larger cyst and thicker cyst wall, with eight nuclei and an absence of chromidial bodies—*E. coli* and the other, smaller, with a thin cyst wall, four nuclei and chromidial bodies in the encysted stage, the pathogenic amoeba, *E. histolytica*. Synonym. *E. tetragena*.

In the vegetative stage the human amoebae are best differentiated by the nuclear structure. In *E. coli* the nucleus is vesicular with a thick nuclear membrane and the chromatin chiefly deposited on the under surface of the nuclear membrane. In haematoxylin stained specimens this chromatin often seems deposited in quadrant aggregations.

For the pathogenic amoeba we recognize a *histolytica* type of nucleus' which is found in dysenteric stools and a *tetragena* type, which is found in diarrhoeal or more or less normal stools.

The *histolytica* nucleus has a thin nuclear membrane and is poor in chromatin while the *tetragena* nucleus has more chromatin, showing radial projections from the inner surface of the nuclear membrane and a loose central karyosome, which contains a central chromatin dot or centriole, with a clear halo surrounding it.

Animal experimentation upon kittens with *E. coli* by Schaudinn, Craig and Wenyon have been unsuccessful as to production of dysenteric manifestations. On the other hand all of these experimenters produced typical lesions and dysenteric manifestations in kittens injected rectally or fed with material containing pathogenic amoebae.

Wenyon as previously stated produced a liver abscess in one of his experiments.

Darling has been so successful in his experimental work with kittens that he compares the colon of a kitten to a test tube and suggests the procedure of rectal injections of material containing amoebae as a means of differentiating the two human amoebae.

On the other hand Walker was unable to infect kittens and monkeys with material containing pathogenic amoebae and he makes the statement that such failures would indicate the greater susceptibility of man to infection, as he was able to infect 17 out of 20 men with one feeding of such material.

Recently Walker and Sellards have published a most important paper.

The experiments were made in men who had been under observation for years at Bilibid Prison, whose food was cooked and the water they drank distilled. Moreover, there were complete records of examination for intestinal parasites, including entamoebae. They were under complete control and the existence or possibility of natural infection with amoebae was reduced to a minimum. All the men fed pathogenic amoebae were volunteers and each signed, in his native dialect, an agreement to the conditions of the experiment.

The first series of experiments was with cultural amoebae, in order to refute statements that amoebae cultivated from water or other nonparasitic sources, as well as from dysenteric stools, are capable of living in man parasitically or of producing dysenteric symptoms. Twenty feeding experiments were made by Walker and Sellards with cultures of amoebae without the development in a single instance of dysentery or the finding of such amoebae in the stools upon microscopical examination. In 13 cases they recovered the amoebae in cultures from the feces from the first to the sixth day, but never afterwards. They stated definitely that cultural amoebae are nonpathogenic.

The next experiments were with *Entamoeba coli*. In the 20 cases fed with material containing *Entamoeba coli* there was a uniform failure to recover them culturally and in no instance was dysentery produced. Seventeen became parasitized as the result of a single feeding in from 1 to 11 days, the entamoebae being found in the stools and persisting in their appearance in the stools for extended periods. They concluded that *Entamoeba coli* is an obligate parasite, non-pathogenic, and can not be cultured.

The third series of 20 feedings, carried on by Walker alone, was with *Entamoeba histolytica*. The material was mixed with powdered starch or magnesium oxide and given in gelatin capsules. In these experiments they obtained tetragena cysts in the stools of men fed only motile *Entamoeba histolytica*, and motile *Entamoeba histolytica* in the stools of men who were fed only tetragena cysts and, finally, an alternation of motile *E. histolytica* and tetragena cysts in the stools of a man having a recurrent attack of amebic dysentery.

Seventeen of the men became parasitized after the first feeding; 1 required three feedings, and 2, who did not become parasitized at the first feeding, were held as

controls. The average time for parasitization was nine days. Only 4 of the 18 parasitized men developed dysentery, which came on after 20, 57, 87, and 95 days, respectively, after the ingestion of the infecting material.

In 4 cases fed with material from acute dysenteric stools or from amoebae-containing pus from liver abscess, and containing motile amoebae, there was no resulting dysentery, the 4 cases of experimental dysentery resulting from feeding of material from normal stools of carriers.

As regards the cases which became parasitized, but did not develop dysentery, it is suggested that the amoebae live as commensals in the intestine of the host and only penetrate the intestinal mucosa and become tissue parasites when there occurs depression of the natural resistance of the host or as the result of some lesion of the intestine. That the pathogenic amoebae are more than harmless commensals, however, is shown by the fact that they alone, and not the nonpathogenic *Entamoeba coli*, are capable of penetrating a possibly damaged intestinal mucosa.

Epidemiology.—The old idea that water, fruit or vegetables, from which one can isolate amoebae upon culture, are sources of infection must be abandoned, as such cultural amoebae are known to have no pathogenic relation to man.

The chief factor in the spread of amoebic dysentery would seem to be the encysted amoebae in the stools of convalescents or healthy carriers rather than the motile ones in dysenteric stools. This probably explains the endemic rather than epidemic characteristics of the spread of amoebic dysentery because if the innumerable vegetative amoebae in dysenteric stools were equally operative with the more sparsely eliminated cysts there would be epidemics of amoebic dysentery similar to those of bacillary dysentery.

Our present view is that the carrier is the chief factor in the spread of amoebic dysentery and when such an individual has to do with the preparation of food he becomes a particular source of danger.

Vegetative amoebae undergo disintegration in a short time after the stool is passed so that they are probably rarely concerned in amoebic infections but the resisting cysts may be washed from a dried stool into a water supply or even be transported in dust to lodge on unprotected food stuffs.

Flies may possibly act as transmitting agents.

PATHOLOGY

Wenyon thinks that the pathogenic amoebae work their way into the tubular glands of the intestines and multiply and subsequently, either by pressure of their pseudopodia or through the disintegrating action of some toxic substance elaborated by them, they force their way into the underlying submucosa. In this location they produce a gelatinous, oedematous necrosis, which shows a marked absence of

polymorphonuclears, but a proliferation of connective tissue cells. The process is regenerative rather than inflammatory.

Small hemispherical elevations of the overlying mucosa mark the location of the deeper lying necrotic process. With the multiplication of the amoebae and the extension of the necrotic process in the submucosa we have thrombi formed in the terminals of the portal vein and possibly in those of the mesenteric arteries, which in the former case may result in emboli being swept up the portal vein to lodge in the liver and form a starting point for a similar necrosing process there or, as the result of interference with the blood supply of the overlying mucosa, cause this to undergo necrosis and be cast off as a slough, leaving an oval or irregular ulcer with deeply undermined edges and a floor formed by the muscular coat. The ulcers may be no larger than a pin's head or they may be 1 or 2 inches in diameter or by coalescence be still larger. The gelatinous necrosis in the submucosa always extends beyond the limits of the necrosis of the mucosa, thus explaining the undermining. At times the muscular coats of the intestines are involved thus leading to a slough which involves all coats except the serous one. Bacterial infection, with coagulation necrosis of the mucosa overlying the amoebic process, is also responsible for some of the tissue destruction.

The amoebic ulcerations rarely extend above the ileo-caecal valve but may involve the entire large intestine. Rogers and Lafleur found the lesions most often in the caecum and ascending colon, often limited to this area.

The appendix was involved in 7% of the Manila autopsies. Often mild cases may only show lesions in the caecum. When there is a tendency to perforation the omentum will often be drawn over to the location of the threatened perforation. There is often thickening of the intestine in one place with cicatricial contraction of the lumen and thinning in another, so that there is an appearance of great irregularity.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY.

The great majority of cases of amoebic dysentery run a chronic course with periods of improvement alternating with recurrences of pains and dysenteric stools. The onset in such cases is very insidious and the patient may complain more of diarrhoeal than dysenteric manifestations. Such patients often give a history of passing three or four pultaceous stools daily and complain of tenderness in the region of the caecum or along the course of the large intestine. One may determine some thickening of the colon in a thin subject.

Fever is absent and there are very few of the toxic manifestations which often accompany bacillary dysentery, such as headache, nausea and a mildly delirious state. There is progressive loss of weight and strength with the development of

neurasthenic symptoms. The skin becomes dry and earthy and we have the picture of a more or less marked secondary anaemia. It is in these cases that we should be on the look out for greyish green or greyish brown mucoid masses which can usually be found during an exacerbation. Sloughs of the gelatinous like necrosis in the sub-mucosa usually contain amoebae.

Such cases usually show a moderate leucocytosis in which the percentage of large mononuclears is increased and a very important point is that with tenderness about the caecum, plus a leucocytosis, one may diagnose appendicitis and operate on a normal appendix. Autopsy records however have shown that the appendix is not infrequently invaded by amoebae but in some of these cases, other than finding amoebae in the lumen of the appendix, I have been unable to note any change.

Besides the more common insidious chronic type we may have amoebic dysentery setting in quite acutely with severe griping and frequent scanty greyish green to reddish brown mucoid stools.

Such cases may show anorexia and nausea with some fever but there is not present the manifestations of toxæmia one associates with a severe case of bacillary dysentery in the tropics.

Very confusing cases are those in which a bacillary dysentery sets in upon an amoebic one and this possibility should always be thought of when a severe bacillary dysentery does not respond to serum therapy or an amoebic one to emetine.

Gangrenous lesions may occur in amoebic dysentery although more common in bacillary infections. Such cases will show extreme prostration and even give the clinical picture of cholera.

Complications.—By far the most important and serious complication of amoebic dysentery is liver abscess, which occurs in about 20% of cases. This condition is treated of separately. Besides liver abscess quite a number of cases of amoebic abscess of the brain have been reported, 26 such cases occurring in Egypt alone. These abscesses almost always occur in those cases which have developed liver abscess and may appear after the liver abscess has healed.

The pus of such abscesses is viscid and blood tinged, resembling liver abscess pus. The amoebae are found in the abscess wall. The symptoms are those of brain tumour, meningitis not occurring. Necrotic processes of skin and muscles have also been reported in which amoebae have been found.

Perforation of the large intestine is not rare, Strong having noted 12 perforations in 77 autopsies. These usually occur in the region of the sigmoid flexure.

Adhesions are common complications of amoebic dysentery.

DIAGNOSIS

Clinical Diagnosis.—In the clinical diagnosis it is well to remember that many cases of chronic tropical diarrhoeas are really due to amoebic ulcerations of the intestines.

We can as a rule differentiate bacillary from amoebic dysentery by the more sudden and acute onset of the former together with fever and other evidences of toxæmia.

Again the number of stools in bacillary dysentery is usually greater and the amount of each stool less in quantity. The stool of bacillary dysentery is of a milky whiteness from the large number of pus cells, while that of amoebic dysentery is more viscid and tinged with disintegrated blood giving it a greyish green or brown color. The mucopurulent mass in bacillary dysentery may be flecked or streaked with blood. The therapeutic results following emetine injections are of value in diagnosis. Gangrenous types of dysentery are similar whether due to bacillary or amoebic infection. Chronic dysentery of bacillary origin is much like amoebic dysentery clinically.

Laboratory Diagnosis.—In the fresh specimen of the milky mucopurulent mass of bacillary dysentery one observes large numbers of pus cells and particularly very large phagocytic cells which greatly resemble amoebae. Upon staining with Gram's stain one may find numerous Gram negative bacilli in the cytoplasm of the cell.

The large cells which resemble amoebae are often vacuolated, thus intensifying the similarity. They are non motile, however, and do not show the small ring nucleus which is so characteristic of the vegetative human amoebae. The nucleus of the confusing cells is also larger, approximating one fourth the size of the cell.

For bringing out the nuclear characteristics of human amoebae Walker recommends fixation of thin moist smears in sublimate alcohol (absolute alcohol 1 part, sat. aq. sol. bichloride 2 parts) for 10 to 15 minutes. These smears are then well washed with water and stained with alum haematoxylin for five minutes. The nuclear characteristics are noted under etiology. With vegetative amoebae I have obtained beautiful results with vital staining which can best be done by tinging the feces emulsion with a 1% aqueous solution of neutral red. I have also had good results by emulsifying the faeces in a drop of 1 or 2 percent formalin and then adding a drop of 2 percent acetic acid. The mixture is then tinged with either neutral red or methylene green.

For distinguishing the encysted form of *Entamoeba coli* one can obtain beautiful results by emulsifying the faeces in Gram's iodine solution. Owing to the glycolytic reaction given by *E. coli*, the round amoeba, with its 8 nuclei stands out very distinctly.

For diagnosing the 4 nucleated cyst of the pathogenic amoeba one gets better results with haematoxylin as this brings out not only the 4 nuclei but the chromidial bodies as well. It was formerly customary to recommend the administration of salts prior to examining for amoebae. Walker warns that such a procedure gives us amoebae which are difficult to differentiate, the nuclear characteristics of *E. coli* and the tetragenous nucleus of *E. histolytica* being much alike as they both contain much chromatin. In a dysenteric stool the histolytica

type of nucleus, containing but little chromatin, does not resemble the nucleus of *E. coli*.

He prefers the examination of formed stools obtained without a purgative.

Walker also notes the advantages of examining a specimen with a $\frac{2}{3}$ inch objective as encysted amoebae are easily picked up. In opposition to the usual recommendation of text books to report only on motile amoebae, he recommends the making of a differential diagnosis on non-motile encysted forms. This however is now generally accepted by experienced workers as true.

As differentiating the two entamoebae Walker gives the following table:

MOTILE STAGE

A. <i>Entamoeba histolytica</i>	B. <i>Entamoeba coli</i>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Appearance hyaline. 2. Refractiveness more feeble. 3. Movements active in the fresh stool. 4. Nucleus more or less indistinct. 5. Chromatin of nucleus scanty. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Appearance porcelaneous. 2. Refractiveness more pronounced. 3. Movements sluggish. 4. Nucleus distinct. 5. Chromatin of nucleus abundant.

ENCYSTED STAGE

A. <i>Entamoeba histolytica</i>	B. <i>Entamoeba coli</i>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Cyst smaller. 2. Cyst less refractive. 3. Cyst usually contains elongated refractive bodies known as "chromidial bodies." 4. Nuclei never more than 4. 5. Cyst wall thinner. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Cyst larger. 2. Cyst more refractive. 3. Cysts do not contain "chromidial bodies." 4. Nuclei 8, occasionally more. 5. Cyst wall thicker.

PROPHYLAXIS AND TREATMENT

Prophylaxis.—The main consideration is a knowledge of the importance of the carrier problem, the stools of all persons preparing food in localities where amoebic dysentery is prevalent should therefore be examined for the 4 nucleated cyst of the pathogenic amoeba. It must be remembered that while emetine controls the dysenteric manifestations of amoebiasis it does not seem to cause the disappearance of the parasite, so that patients who have had amoebic dysentery tend to become carriers.

As a matter of fact there is a question as to the possibility of the emetine treatment acting as a factor for the increase of carriers.

Vedder considers that while emetine will kill the amoebae deeply placed in the submucosa it has no effect on the more superficially located cysts and suggests that it may be possible to treat carriers by colonic irrigations with quinine or silver salts.

Treatment.—The emetine treatment may now be considered as the specific one for amoebic dysentery. In Brazilian ipecac about 72% of the total alkaloids is emetine so that it is better than Carthagena ipecac which contains only about 40% of emetine. Emetine was recommended for dysentery as long ago as 1817, but owing to the impossibility of differentiating between bacillary and amoebic dysentery, until recently, this method of treatment was little advocated.

In 1910 Vedder found that emetine was practically without power in its action on dysentery bacilli but that it would kill amoebae, even in dilutions of 1 to 100,000. He also found that deemetized ipecac was quite inert in its action on amoebae.

In 1912, Rogers, who had for years been an ardent advocate of the ipecac treatment of amoebiasis, took up the treatment of amoebic dysentery and its liver complications with emetine. Reports from all over the world now attest the value of this drug in the treatment of the acute manifestations of amoebiasis but unfortunately note the inefficacy of this treatment on the encysted forms of amoebae.

It is usual to give from $\frac{1}{3}$ to $\frac{2}{3}$ grain of emetine hydrochloride, dissolved in sterile saline, by hypodermic injection into the subcutaneous tissues. Some now give as high as 1 grain daily for about 10 days, but Vedder prefers $\frac{1}{3}$ grain repeated 3 times daily. In these doses there is practically no nausea.

It was found by Baermann and Heinemann that subcutaneous injections of from 2 to 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ grains daily caused indisposition and anorexia. The subcutaneous injections are less painful than the intramuscular ones.

Rogers has used emetine intravenously in doses of 1 grain without bad effect.

Vedder calls attention to the fact that the minimal fatal dose of emetine is several times less when administered to rabbits intravenously than when given subcutaneously, so that after seeing rabbits die with what was apparently centric paralysis immediately after intravenous doses of comparatively small amounts of emetine hydrochloride he would hesitate before administering 1 grain intravenously in a human case.

Low has treated cases successfully with keratin coated tabloids of emetine hydrochloride, giving $\frac{1}{2}$ grain every night. Vedder has not obtained satisfactory results with the drug by mouth.

Before the introduction of emetine the usual treatment was with ipecac.

It was customary to give 20 to 50 grains of powdered ipecac in capsule, cachet or keratin coated pills to a patient with an empty stomach and who had had a dose of morphine or laudanum about 20 minutes before the time for giving the ipecac. The salol coated ipecac pills are generally used in America. The patient should be in bed and should try to yield to the soporific influences of the opiate. Any flow of saliva should be removed with gauze as its swallowing would provoke nausea. Some use a mustard poultice to the epigastrium. It is remarkable the change which this treatment will effect in the number and character of the stools.

Many drugs have been recommended for colon irrigation of which the favorite is probably quinine muriate in dilution of 1 to 1000 or 1 to 2500. Inject two or three pints slowly by gravity. Protargol in 1 to 500 solution is better than silver nitrate in 1 to 2000. Emetine enemata do not seem to be of much value.

In very serious cases, particularly when gangrenous change in the mucosa may be present, the operation of appendicostomy seems indicated, following which a catheter is inserted and the large intestine irrigated with a one percent solution of bicarbonate of soda to wash away the mucus and later with a boracic acid solution of 1 to 125 or 1 to 10,000 of potassium permanganate.

In a discussion as to certain surgical considerations in connection with appendicostomy Müller notes that the right rectus incision is to be avoided on account of danger of gangrene from pressure of rectus on the stitched up appendix. He also thinks that appendicostomy is much safer than caecostomy on account of the frequent thinning of the walls of the caecum. For irrigation he prefers a 1 to 500 solution of collargol.

In treating dysentery cases rest in bed and the use of a nonirritating diet are advisable.

CHAPTER VIII

LIVER ABSCESS

HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION

History.—Although Hippocrates noted the method of evacuating abscess of the liver by caustics there was very little known about the condition until during the last century.

The history in connection with the finding of amoebae in liver abscesses is of very recent date (1887) and is taken up under the history of amoebic dysentery.

Geographical Distribution.—Concisely one may state that the distribution of liver abscess is in relation to the existence of amoebic dysentery and is particularly prevalent in those centers of amoebic infection where there are many white men having little knowledge of the conditions necessary for the maintenance of health in the tropics.

In liver abscess, as with blackwater fever, it is education rather than acclimatization that brings about a diminution of these tropical diseases.

For several years subsequent to the American occupation of the Philippines amoebic dysentery and liver abscess were common but in more recent years liver abscess has become rare in Americans and amoebic dysentery much reduced in prevalence.

More temperate living results in less storing up of fat in the liver and an organ more resistant to infection.

ETIOLOGY AND EPIDEMIOLOGY

Etiology.—The dislodgment of amoebae containing material from amoebic intestinal ulcerations and the plugging of the portal capillaries by such emboli gives us the starting point of a liver abscess. The exciting cause is *Entamoeba histolytica* which in the liver continues the same production of a gelatinous necrosis as is carried on in the submucosa of the large intestine or appendix.

The pathogenic amoeba is fully described under amoebic dysentery.

As to obtaining a history of amoebic dysentery in liver abscess cases we have the following statistics:

500 cases with dysentery findings in 60%	(Kartulis).
444 cases with dysentery findings in 59%	(Zancarol).
500 cases with dysentery findings in 85%	(Kelsch and Kiener).
63 cases with dysentery findings in 90.5%	(Rogers).
38 cases with dysentery findings in 85%	(Seamans hospital autopsies).

Amoebic liver abscess is exceedingly rare among children and probably 10 times less common among women than men.

Of 40 cases of liver abscess Waring noted intemperance in 67.5% and authorities generally insist upon the importance of the abuse of alcohol as a predisposing factor.

Natives of India very rarely develop liver abscess but it has been noted that when they begin to follow the customs of Europeans, as to eating and drinking, such lesions become more common in them.

As to the proportion of cases of amoebic dysentery which give rise to liver abscess only the statistics of those who have differentiated between bacillary and amoebic dysentery are of any value. Such statistics would indicate that about 20% of the cases of amoebic dysentery are complicated by liver abscess.

Liver abscess may be present without demonstrable lesions in the large intestines, such lesions having healed or the intestinal involvement having been so slight as not to have caused other than microscopic changes.

It is a well known fact that liver abscess may set in years after a patient has left the tropics and years after the occurrence of any dysenteric manifestations.

PATHOLOGY

There seems little doubt but that the amoebae in the thrombosed terminals of the portal vein are carried by way of the upward current into the liver where they lodge in the liver capillaries, Councilman and Lafleur having found amoebae in such emboli.

Another view is that the amoebae may wander across the abdominal cavity and enter the liver in this way. This seems as improbable as that view which considers a possible entrance by way of the bile duct. Bile is toxic to amoebae and it would be difficult to explain their presence in the small intestines.

In 639 cases Roux found the abscess in the right lobe in 70% of the cases.

Other statistics give about 75% for the right lobe, 10% for the left lobe, 4% for the lobus Spigelii and in about 10% of cases abscesses are found in both right and left lobes.

In 562 cases Zancarol found a single abscess in 60% of the cases.

In 288 cases Waring found a single abscess in 61.5%, double

abscesses in 11.5% and multiple abscesses in 27%. The favorite site of liver abscess is the superior and posterior part of the right lobe and near its surface.

The abscesses vary enormously in size some being no larger than a walnut while others may contain a quart or more of pus, exceptionally as much as a gallon. The pus is typically of a chocolate color and contains degenerated liver cells, granular debris and often haematoidin and Charcot-Leyden crystals. There is an absence of polymorphonuclears. It may however be creamy in color.

In Strong's cases about 50% of the abscesses showed bacteria upon culturing, the organisms noted being staphylococci, streptococci, *B. coli* and *B. pyocyaneus*.

The walls of liver abscesses are rather shaggy and the amoebae are found deeply located.

It is probable that the necrotic process, set up by the amoebae, begins in the interlobular capillaries although it may at times begin within the lobule.

Microscopically, the necrotic abscess wall shows amoebae in its depths but necrosis of the surrounding tissue beyond the zone of the amoebae is noticeable which would suggest the elimination by the amoebae of some toxic substance. There is an absence of polymorphonuclear infiltration around the abscess.

If the liver abscess is not treated by emetine or with this drug and some surgical procedure the tendency is for rupture to occur and Cyr's statistics show that of 159 cases rupture occurred as follows: lungs 59, pleural cavity 31, peritoneal cavity 39, intestines 8, stomach 8, vena cava 3, kidneys 2, bile ducts 4, pericardium 1 and externally 2.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

Although the statistics would indicate that a history of amoebic dysentery has been obtained in only from 60 to 90 percent. of cases of liver abscess yet, when we consider that amoebic lesions of the large intestines have been frequently noted at autopsy in those who had never shown symptoms of dysentery during life, we are forced to believe that amoebic lesions of the appendix or large intestines are necessary factors in the production of liver abscess. Consequently, a history of amoebic dysentery is one of the most important points to consider in the making of a diagnosis of tropical liver abscess.

There is also much evidence to be obtained from statistics and otherwise to support the view that the amoebic infection of the liver is only possible in a person whose liver has been functionally impaired. To this condition the designation tropical congestion of the liver or simply TROPICAL LIVER has been applied. There is much to support the view that, in the tropics, the intestines and liver take the place of the thoracic organs in being subject to congestion. In temperate climates excesses

and exposure to debilitating influences result in coryza or pneumonia. In the tropics we have diarrhoea and congestion of the liver. Tropical liver is recognized by vague digestive troubles, high coloured urine, loss of energy, irritability, with a sensation of fullness in the region of the liver which is generally described by the patient's statement that he feels his liver. There may be pain referred to the right shoulder and the liver may be tender on palpation.

By the discontinuance of alcohol and highly spiced foods, with treatment by phosphate of soda or sodium sulphate, together with general care of the health, the patient may recover completely.

Rogers recognizes a condition which he terms the pre-suppurative stage of amoebic hepatitis in which the amoebae from dysenteric lesions have lodged in the portal terminals of the liver but in which abscess formation has not taken place.

At this stage we have a leucocytosis in which the polymorphonuclears are but little increased in percentage with a low remittent fever. At this time Rogers considers that the disease may be cured by emetine or ipecac and liver abscess avoided.

A Typical Case of Liver Abscess.—Following a case of amoebic dysentery, during the period of convalescence or subsequently, a rather irregular type of fever is noted, which shows an evening rise with sweatings which tend to become colliquative. From a marked feeling of weight in the region of the liver there may later develop marked tenderness or pain upon palpation of the liver. Of importance is the fact that there is no associated splenic enlargement. In the majority of cases the right side of the liver enlarges in an upward direction. A tape-measure will often show enlargement of the right side. Pain referred to the right shoulder is often complained of when the abscess is located in the upper convex part of the liver but, when nearer the inferior concave surface, there may be pain referred to the region of the appendix. When located in the left lobe the symptoms may be considered as of gastric origin.

There is a marked tendency to splint the liver so that the patient tends to lie towards the right side and when walking applies his right arm and forearm to his side, which led Koch to remark, "It is as if he carried his abscess under his arm." The right rectus often shows rigidity.

Auscultation of the base of the right lung reveals a moist crepitation which together with a dry cough (*tussis hepatica*), the fever, evening sweats, anaemia and emaciation may suggest tuberculosis.

Insomnia is a marked feature in many cases. Jaundice is rare, but an earthy colour or subicteroid tinging is often noted. The superficial veins may be enlarged.

The respirations are shallow as deep inspiration tends to cause pain. It must be remembered that cases of liver abscess have been reported where there were practically no symptoms.

The urine is scanty and high coloured, frequently with a marked increase in the ammonia nitrogen. Urobilin may be present in considerable amount.

There is a rather constant but low leucocytosis of from 12 to 20 thousand, which shows only about 70 per cent. of polymorphonuclears with an increase in large mononuclears up to 10 to 15 percent.

The final proof is the obtaining of the chocolate coloured or anchovy sauce like pus by exploratory puncture. This pus does not contain pus cells but only granular débris, cholesterin crystals and is bacterio-

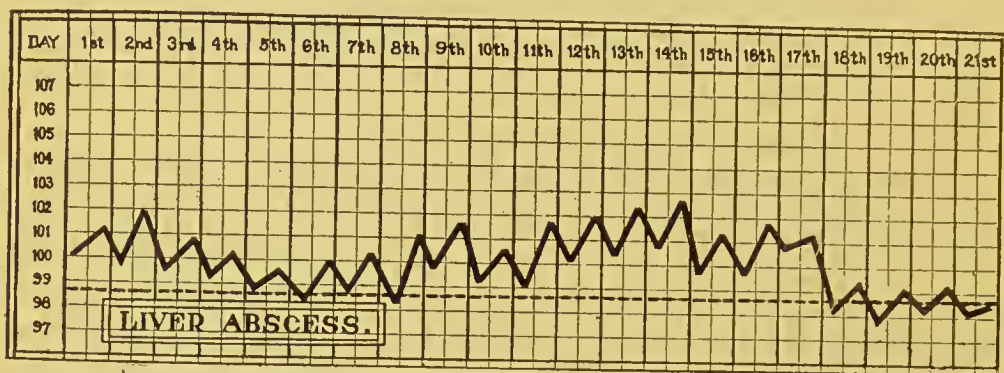


FIG. 30.—Temperature chart of liver abscess.

logically sterile. The amoebae, being in the abscess wall, are not apt to be found when pus is at first withdrawn. Owing to the tendency of liver abscess to rupture into the lungs the first indication of the true nature of a prolonged hectic fever may be obtained when the characteristic pus is expectorated by the patient.

Attended with progressive emaciation and exhaustion the patient, as a rule, after a prolonged illness, dies, unless operative procedures cure him or some intercurrent disease brings about his death.

Symptoms in Detail

Onset and the Fever Chart.—The onset is at times so insidious that there may be no symptoms and yet a liver abscess be found at autopsy. Usually following convalescence after amoebic dysentery an irregular fever sets in which becomes hectic in character. Profuse sweats accompany the evening rise. The morning temperature is frequently normal and there may be frequent apyretic intervals.

The Respiratory System.—Crepitation at the right base, a dry cough (tussis hepatica) and shallow respirations are features of the disease.

The Nervous System.—Pains in the right shoulder are connected with irritation of the branches of the phrenic nerve.

The patient is irritable and often complains of insomnia.

The right rectus tends to be somewhat rigid and decubitus is dorsal or toward the right side.

The Liver and Spleen.—The liver is tender and as the abscess in nine-tenths of the cases is located in the right lobe and generally towards the upper convex surface we have an enlargement upwards. There is very rarely any jaundice.

The urine shows an excess of urobilin and of nitrogen eliminated as ammonia. When the abscess is in the left lobe the condition is apt to be considered as some gastric disturbance. The spleen, as a rule, shows no enlargement.

Examination of the Blood.—There is usually a moderate leucocytosis with a normal polymorphonuclear percentage and increase in the large mononuclears.

DIAGNOSIS

Clinical Diagnosis.—Of greatest importance is a history of a previous dysentery although it must be remembered that liver abscess may

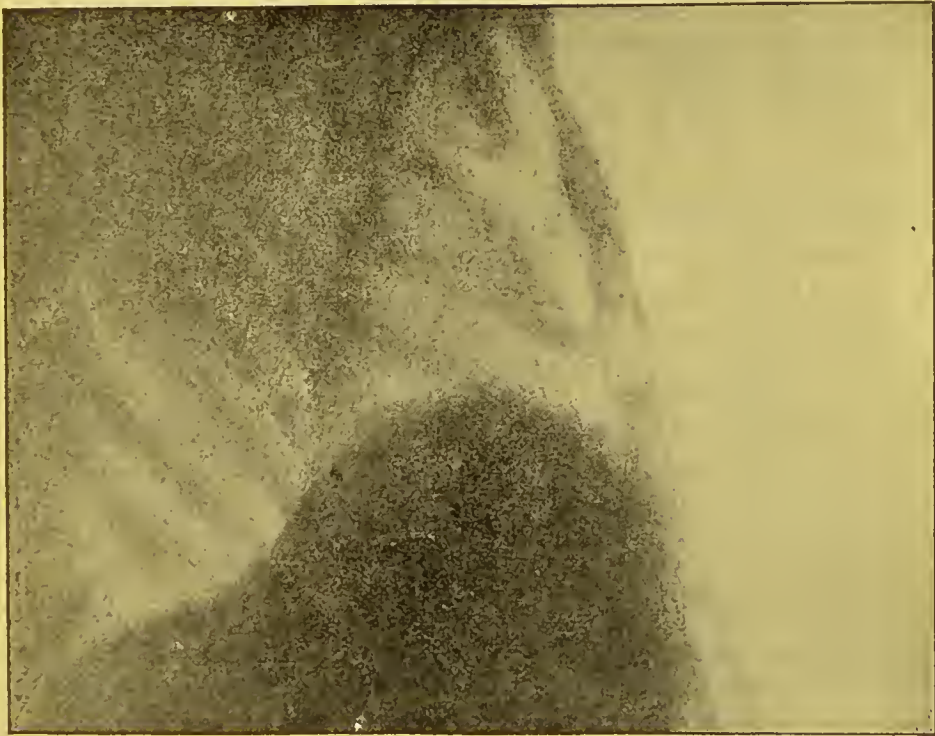


FIG. 31.—Liver abscess. X-ray photograph taken from the side and showing upward enlargement of liver. (Ruge and zur Verth after Bécclère.)

appear in one who has never had dysenteric symptoms. Fever of a hectic type with crepitation at right base, pain and upward enlargement

of the liver are most significant. The X-ray may confirm the diagnosis of upward enlargement which may be as high as the angle of the scapula. The majority of conditions causing enlargement of the liver give a downward enlargement. The amelioration of symptoms by giving emetine hypodermically for 2 or 3 days is diagnostically exceedingly important. Syphilitic gummata may give the picture of liver abscess, especially as regards the fever and loss of weight. Iodide of potash is said to be of use in differentiating as it controls the fever of syphilis. The gummatous enlargement however is irregular and projects downward.

In suppurative cholangitis and cholecystitis we get a history of biliary colic, jaundice and usually a marked point of tenderness at the tip of the 9th rib and a tumour in the region of the gall bladder. Abscess of the left lobe may give the symptoms of gastric trouble.

In differentiating empyema we usually have a history of pleurisy or pneumonia.

Suppurating hydatid cyst which may be confused with liver abscess is most surely differentiated by finding echinococcus hooklets.

Tuberculosis is often thought of, particularly when a liver abscess ruptures through the lungs. Malaria is also usually suspected. Abscess in the kidney or perinephritic region may be very confusing. In an abscess of the abdominal wall an exploring needle does not move up and down with respiration as it does when penetrating a liver abscess cavity.

Laboratory Diagnosis.—The chocolate coloured pus of a liver abscess, when there has been no bacterial contamination, shows an absence of polymorphonuclears and does not at first show amoebae. These appear in the pus coming from the drainage tube about the 3rd day. Cholesterin and haematoidin crystals may be found in the granular débris of a fresh drop of pus used for examination for amoebae.

Liver abscess usually shows a moderate leucocytosis with a normal polymorphonuclear percentage and an increase of large mononuclears and transitionals to about 12 to 20 percent.

According to Schilling-Torgau we may have a perfectly normal white count and polymorphonuclear percentage and yet have evidence of the presence of liver abscess in his modification of Arneth's index, so that in an apparently normal differential count we may find that $1/2$ or more of the polymorphonuclears are of a less mature type and in cases where there are many immature polymorphonuclears we have indications which force a very cautious or unfavorable prognosis.

Thus a differential count of 33% band form polymorphonuclears and 39% of normal nucleated ones would make us give a cautious prognosis while one with 1% myelocytes, 22.5% immature polymorphonuclears, 21% band form nucleated ones and 30% of normal ones would make for a very bad prognosis. We have a displace-

ment to the left. Normally there are 63% of normal polymorphonuclears, 4% of band form and no immature ones or myelocytes.

One may find an iodophilia in liver abscess.

Of the functional liver tests we may determine the ammonia quotient, the percentage of N eliminated as ammonia being increased in abscess of the liver. The same is true of the lipase test. Probably the most specific test for disturbances of the hepatic function is that for urobilinogen. The test is made by adding 5 to 10 drops of Ehrlich's aldehyde reagent to 5 c.c. of perfectly fresh urine when a positive reaction gives a fine cherry red colour.

PROPHYLAXIS AND TREATMENT

Prophylaxis.—The prophylaxis is the same as that for amoebic dysentery plus avoidance of anything which reduces the functional power of the liver, such as overfeeding, alcoholic excesses, etc.

Treatment.—Leaving out of consideration the presuppurative stage of amoebic hepatitis which, according to many authorities, responds to injections of emetine, it may be stated that the treatment of liver abscess is entirely surgical and such treatment should be instituted the moment the diagnosis is made. The earlier a liver abscess is drained the less run down will be the patient, the more rapid the convalescence and the better the prognosis.

Until recently surgical authorities condemned severely the trocar and canula method of operation, but with the introduction of emetine there are now those who believe that such a procedure may suffice and a more radical operation not be necessitated.

Prior to introducing the trocar and canula the usual procedure is to use an aspirating needle of about $\frac{1}{8}$ inch bore and 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ inch length. If the needle happens to be longer it should not be passed deeper than 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ inches, in a person with a 32 inch chest, in order to surely avoid the vena cava. If there are no distinct localizing signs the needle should first be introduced in the 8th or 9th interspaces in the anterior axillary line and pushed backward, inward and slightly upward. Manson recommends at least 6 punctures before abandoning exploration. Cantlie does not think that a moderate degree of haemorrhage from the puncture of the liver will do harm in a case which is simply a liver congestion. One should always be ready to operate in case pus be found in the exploring needle. Leaving the needle in situ a small skin incision is made and a 4 or 5 inch by $\frac{3}{8}$ inch trocar and canula introduced along the line of the needle. Withdrawing the trocar some of the pus is allowed to escape through the canula and there is then introduced a 6 \times $\frac{1}{2}$ inch piece of strong rubber drainage tubing, one end of which has lateral fenestrations but a closed tip in order that a long steel pin may put the tubing on the stretch so that it passes the smaller lumen of the canula.

The canula is then slipped out over the tubing and the external stretched end of the tubing released so that the contracting rubber fills the puncture. The steel pin

used for introducing the rubber tube is then withdrawn and the tubing transfixed close to the skin with a safety pin.

After the cavity has drained of pus a dressing is applied. There are some who advocate aspiration alone without subsequent drainage. The dressing should be changed frequently and a connecting tube, draining into an antiseptic containing bottle should be attached to the tube in the cavity in order to obtain a syphoning action. Some aspirate and inject into the cavity about 2 ounces of 1 to 1,000 emetine solution.

Some report favorably from the use of 1 to 1,000 quinine irrigations. At present the hypodermic use of emetine will probably obviate the necessity of any irrigation.

There are those who think that a preliminary aspiration, followed by incision, after a few days of improvement in general condition, is the best method in serious cases.

It is usual to recommend a general anaesthetic when introducing the aspirating syringe or trocar and canula. Local anaesthesia with quinine and urea hydrochloride, however, will usually suffice and lessen the dangers of shock in bad cases. When a rib has to be resected ether anaesthesia is indicated.

Newman has recently warned against the use of the small aspirator for diagnosis, pointing out that it is unreliable and that the diagnosis should be made by other diagnostic aids, including hypodermic use of emetine. He notes the occurrence of death from internal hæmorrhage, the interference of the needle with the surgical incision and, further, the obscuration of the field of operation by pus where no adhesions exist and, finally, the danger of general peritoneal infection from a leak. He notes that the cavity may be under tension and that the pus may force itself along the track of the needle. He recommends incision and packing with gauze where adhesions do not exist and the exploration of the liver with dressing forceps instead of cutting into the liver with the knife.

USUAL OPERATION FOR LIVER ABSCESS

Either a vertical incision about the middle of the right rectus (Bevan) or a Kocher incision, parallel with the costal margin, may be used. The latter incision favors hernia if prolonged drainage is required. The hand is introduced into the abdominal cavity and the liver palpated. Often the borders of the site of a liver abscess give a hard feeling on palpation. If adhesions are not present the area should be packed off with gauze and the cavity opened by a dressing forceps, haemostat or thermo-cautery. It is often advisable to introduce a trocar and canula and to drain off the excess of pus.

Where the abscess is situated far back or high up in the liver the transpleural route is to be preferred to the abdominal one. Make a 3 or 4 inch incision over the 9th rib with its center in the line of the angle of the scapula. Excise about 2 inches

of rib subperiosteally. An assistant presses a roll of gauze against the tissues above the line of incision to prevent air entering the pleural cavity. Later the upper flap may be sutured to the endothoracic fascia. Even if the pleural cavity should be opened and air enter no serious result will follow although it is an accident to be avoided if possible. The diaphragm is now cut through and the liver exposed and after packing gauze around the area to be opened, the abscess cavity is entered and drained as previously described.

McDill prefers to resect 2 or 3 inches of both 9th and 10th ribs in the midaxillary line. The muscle wounds made in resection are then closed by catgut. This movable wall is now forced against the diaphragm with a roll of gauze pressed inward by an assistant. A 3 inch incision is now made through this bone free wall near the upper border of the 11th rib, going through diaphragm and exposing the liver. The edges of the wound in the thoracic wall and diaphragm are now clamped together by hæmostats to close off the pleural cavity. Later catgut sutures are substituted for the forceps. The liver often bulges into the wound. Finding the abscess by a palpating finger as a rather firm area in a less resistant liver surface we introduce a forceps or aspirating needle or trocar and proceed as above noted.

There are indications that the use of emetine subcutaneously may make the more radical operations unnecessary. In a recent symposium on liver abscess many of the papers would indicate a preference for aspiration without drainage coupled with emetine subcutaneously.

Rogers, in a recent article, notes that a case of liver abscess was cured by emetine without any form of operation.

SECTION II

DISEASES DUE TO BACTERIA

CHAPTER IX

BACILLARY DYSENTERY

HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION

History.—Epidemics of dysentery have been noted since ancient times, the wide spread and fulminating nature of such outbreaks in times of war and famine having impressed observers in all ages. The disease is mentioned in the Ebers Papyrus (1600 B. C.).

Herodotus referred to an epidemic of dysenteric nature in the Persian Army and Hippocrates described the dysenteric syndrome. It has been known in India since remote times.

While the etiology of amoebic dysentery was thoroughly investigated and its connection with amoebae fairly well established during the decade from 1880 to 1890 it was not until 1898 that Shiga isolated the causative organism of bacillary dysentery. It is true that Chantemesse and Widal drew attention to a bacillus isolated from large intestines, mesenteric glands and spleen of cases of tropical dysentery but the organism was not clearly differentiated from *Bacillus coli*. Celli isolated an organism which coagulated milk and produced gas in glucose media. This organism which Celli called *B. coli dysentericus*, differs culturally from *B. dysenteriae*.

Geographical Distribution.—Bacillary dysentery differs from the amoebic form in that it tends to appear in extensive epidemics spreading over temperate as well as tropical and subtropical parts of the world.

It is peculiarly liable to follow the movements of armies in any part of the world and like typhoid fever its distribution is one of hygienic rather than geographical influence.

Infections with various strains of dysentery bacilli are important factors in morbidity among infants and young children in whatever part of the world the question has been investigated. The disease is prone to prevail in lunatic asylums whether in temperate or tropical parts of the world.

ETIOLOGY AND EPIDEMIOLOGY

Etiology.—During a very fatal epidemic of dysentery in Japan Shiga isolated an organism, *Bacillus dysenteriae*, from dysenteric stools of 36 cases, which bacillus he found to be agglutinated by the serum of the patients. He reported this work in 1898. In 1900, Kruse, isolated an organism from patients in an epidemic of dysentery in Germany which corresponded to that of Shiga. In 1900, Flexner,

Strong and Musgrave, working in Manila, not only encountered an organism similar to that of Shiga but also an organism of wider fermentative action. Dysentery has resulted from accidental laboratory infections and Strong produced dysentery in a prisoner condemned to death through ingestion of cultures.

In 1903, Hiss and Russell isolated an organism from a fatal case of diarrhoea in a child to which they gave the name "Y."

On the whole, dysentery bacilli correspond culturally with the typhoid bacillus except in showing slightly weaker fermentative action on carbohydrates. The main point of difference however is their absolute non-motility.

The characteristic of nonmotility is of greatest differentiating value and the reports of slight motility are probably from misinterpretation of molecular movement as motility. The dysentery bacilli do not form those thread or whip-like filaments so characteristic of typhoid cultures and are somewhat plumper. The dysentery bacillus is not found in the blood and hence is not eliminated in the urine. It is found in mesenteric glands. In dysentery patients agglutination phenomena do not show themselves until about the tenth day from the onset. Hence, this procedure is of no particular value in diagnosis. It is of value, however, to identify an organism isolated from the stools at the commencement of the attack, using serum from an immunized animal or a human convalescent for the agglutination test.

Butler has suggested taking serum from dysentery convalescents, noting the strain involved, and preserving it by taking up with filter paper as recommended by Noguchi for the Wassermann haemolytic amboceptor. This I consider very valuable as it is very difficult to immunize rabbits with a Shiga strain on account of its great toxicity.

There seems to be only moderate agglutination power in the serum of convalescents from Shiga strains. Flexner strains give higher agglutinations, but early in convalescence the serum is not apt to have a titre of more than 1-50.

Dysentery bacilli produce a coagulation necrosis of the mucous membrane of the large intestine and occasionally of the lower part of the ileum. Polymorphonuclears are contained in the fibrin exudate.

It was formerly thought that these lesions were of local origin, but the present view is that toxins are produced which, being absorbed, are eliminated by the large intestine with resulting necrosis. Flexner, by injecting rabbits intravenously with a toxic autolysate, produced characteristic intestinal lesions. The toxin withstands a temperature of 70° C. without being destroyed. The toxin may cause joint trouble.

There are two main types of dysentery bacilli:

1. Those producing acid in mannite media—the acid strains (Flexner-Strong types).

2. Those not developing acid in mannite (Shiga-Kruse types). Ohno finds that fermentative reactions do not correspond to im-

munity ones. Thus an acid strain used to immunize a horse may produce a serum more specific for a nonacid strain. The Shiga type is very toxic in cultures, while the Flexner type seems to be less so.

Lentz recognizes 4 types of dysentery bacilli for the differentiation of which he uses mannite, maltose and saccharose bouillon with litmus as an indicator.

	Shiga-Kruse	Flexner	Strong	"Y"
Mannite.....	Blue	Red	Red	Red
Maltose.....	Blue	Red	Blue	Blue
Saccharose.....	Blue	Blue	Red	Blue

The following table gives the more important cultural characteristics of the intestinal bacilli which might be confused with the various strains of dysentery bacilli.

	Motility	Milk (coagulation)	Litmus Milk		Glucose	Maltose	Lactose	Mannite	Saccharose	Glucose neutral red bouillon	Russell's Medium		Indol
			1st day	3d day							Butt	Slant	
<i>B. fæcalis alkaligenes</i> ...	+	-	Alk	Alk	O	....	O	O	O	O	O	O	-
<i>B. typhosus</i>	+	-	A	A	A	....	O	A	O	O	A	Alk	-
<i>B. dysenteriae</i> (Shiga-Kruse).	-	-	A	Alk	A	O	O	O	O	O	A	Alk	-
<i>B. dysenteriae</i> (Flexner-Strong).	-	-	A	Alk	A	A	O	A	O	O	A	Alk	-
<i>B. dysenteriae</i> "Y"....	-	-	A	Alk	A	O	O	A	O	O	A	Alk	+
<i>B. Morgan</i> No. 1.....	+	-	O	O	A G	....	O	O	O	G	.....	.....	+
<i>B. paratyphosus</i> A....	+	-	A	A	A G	....	O	A G	O	G	A G	Alk	-
<i>B. paratyphosus</i> B....	+	-	A	Alk	A G	....	O	A G	O	G Fl	A G	Alk	-
<i>B. enteritidis</i> . (Gaertner.)	+	-	A	Alk	A G	....	O	A G	O	G Fl	A G	Alk	-
<i>B. coli</i>	+	+	A	A	A G	....	A G	A G	O	G Fl	A G	A	+
<i>B. lactis ærogenes</i>	-	+	A	A	A G	....	A G	A G	A G	G Fl	A G	A	-
<i>B. cloacæ</i>	+	+	O	A	A G	....	A G	A G	A G	G Fl	A G	Alk	+
<i>B. proteus vulgaris</i>	+	..	O	Alk	A G	....	O	.....	.....	G	A G	Alk	-

Of the above tabulated non-spore bearing, Gram negative intestinal bacilli only *B. lactis aerogenes* shows capsules and only *B. cloacae* and *B. proteus vulgaris* liquefy gelatin. In the table + = positive, - = negative, O = no change, A = acid, Alk. = alkaline, G = Gas and Fl. = fluorescence in neutral red bouillon.

Epidemiology.—There is probably no disease, with the possible exception of cholera, where those attending a patient are so liable to have their hands contaminated with infectious material.

The terrible frequency of the stools and the tendency of the mucilaginous mucoid mass to become smeared over the buttocks and clothing of the patient make it onerous for an attendant to carry out methods of personal protection. In a family, where the mother may have to care for a sick child, and prepare food for the other children and herself, the opportunities for the spread of the infection in the family are great. In military barracks, as well as in other institutions where large numbers make use of the same water closet accommodations, the chances of contamination of the seat by a patient responding to the frequent and imperious demands for evacuation are most probable, with subsequent transference of the infectious material to others. Bacillary dysentery is peculiarly an institutional disease and tends to spread in jails, orphan asylums and the like.

Not only is there the danger from a patient ill with bacillary dysentery but as well that from the convalescent or chronic carrier. Such carriers are particular sources of danger where they take part in the preparation of food for others. It is now thought that the striking prevalence of the disease in insane asylums is associated with the difficulty of making such patients observe the proper care of their hands as well as their persons. A carrier is a particular source of danger in such an institution.

Friedmann has recently noted an outbreak of dysentery due to the Shiga type of bacillus which was instituted by a soldier returning to barracks from a furlough. There resulted 86 cases in the man's regiment of which 49 belonged to his own squadron. The spread of the disease was traced to the latrines. The epidemic was suppressed by the enforcement of the most rigid rules of cleanliness especially as regarded washing of the hands after leaving the latrines.

The stools of the convalescents were examined and no man was discharged from hospital until his stools were negative for dysentery bacilli upon 3 successive tests in 14 days.

Isolation of the bacilli from convalescents was obtained in 40 patients only for periods under 14 days while with 27 others such carrying of bacilli lasted from 2 weeks to one month.

As the dysentery bacillus does not invade the blood stream we do not find it in the urine so that to a certain extent the dysentery bacillus carrier is less dangerous than the typhoid one.

There have been reports of isolation of Flexner and "Y" type bacilli from monkeys and rabbits but there is nothing to indicate that any other host than man is of importance.

Flies are undoubtedly of as much importance in the spread of bacillary dysentery as of typhoid.

The possibility of infection through the medium of soiled clothes, sent out for washing, is to be thought of.

There have been several instances of transference of the disease by the water supply.

In times of war, with large forces of soldiers, bacillary dysentery tends to become the most important disease encountered by military surgeons. During the Civil war there were 285,000 cases of dysentery in the federal army.

It is possible that infectious material may be disseminated as dust and thus contaminate food.

PATHOLOGY

Injection of dysentery bacilli into the peritoneal cavity of guinea pigs causes a muco-sanguinolent diarrhoea with congestion of and haemorrhage into the caecum. There is also a haemorrhagic peritoneal exudate.

In the rabbit lesions similar to those in man are obtained as well as paralysis of the limbs.

It is therefore thought that there are two toxins concerned in the pathology of bacillary dysentery, one a neurotoxin which may cause a peripheral neuritis or joint trouble and the other which acts on the lower bowel, especially the caecum, with the production of congestion and coagulation necrosis of the mucosa.

In man we have an acute inflammation of the mucosa of the large intestines and, in the tropics, we frequently find the lower third of the ileum involved as well. In amoebic dysentery the process rarely extends beyond the ileo caecal valve. A catarrhal process with hyperaemia and sero purulent exudate is first noted, to be succeeded by fibrin formation in the mucosa, a process of coagulation necrosis. When the process invades the ileum there is no involvement of Peyer's patches. Virchow noted the greater intensity of the process in the region of the rectum, sigmoid flexure and ileo caecal valve.

As a rule, however, the entire large intestine is greyish red, looking like lustreless red velvet. Later on we may have irregular islands of greyish membrane formation surrounded by the red swollen congested gut. The solitary glands are usually swollen and may soften and ulcerate, having the submucosa as a base. Ulceration in bacillary dysentery is superficial rather than deep as with amoebic dysentery.

Microscopically we note marked congestion of the blood vessels of the mucosa and submucosa with dilated lymph spaces full of polymorphonuclear cells.

In the mucosa we find an outpouring of pus cells which are entangled, along with the glandular structures of the mucosa, in a fibrinous exudate which causes necrosis of the mucosa (coagulation necrosis).

In chronic bacillary dysentery, according to Rogers, the lesions are limited to the lower portion of the large gut and rarely extend above the descending colon.

In this region one finds serpiginous ulcerations separated by islands of mucosa. Willmore and Savage have noted autopsy findings of what was practically a large granulating surface over the whole large intestine, in cases which had apparently recovered, with the exception of a prolonged convalescence.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

Bacillary dysentery usually runs an acute course, rarely relapsing and but occasionally going on to a chronic condition. The period of incubation is usually from 2 to 7 days although accidental infection with bacilli in the laboratory has given an incubation period approximating 24 hours. Periods of incubation longer than a week can probably be explained as for cholera, such cases being in those who are healthy carriers, but by reason of some gastro-intestinal upset the quiescent bacilli take on pathogenic activity.

In the tropics the onset is usually rather sudden with malaise, abdominal pain and a diarrhoea, which only temporarily relieves such pain. This initial diarrhoea is soon followed by the characteristic dysentery stool and the pains, which tend to centre about the umbilicus, become continuous. There is usually loss of appetite and slight nausea and the patient may at times show a very slight tendency to flightiness. The mind however is usually clear. Fever of moderate degree is not uncommon and it may be quite marked-up to 104° F. Ingestion of food or drink or any movement of the body brings on a desire for stool.

The number of stools, which in mild cases number 15 to 30, may become excessive, even more than one hundred in 24 hours, and the tenesmus most torturing, so that excoriations around the anus and at times prolapse of the bowel intensify the distressing clinical picture. Vesical tenesmus tends to become present and the urine to be diminished in amount. There is a toxic effect on the heart so that the pulse tends to become accelerated and weak. Bacillary dysentery may show a moderate leucocytosis with increased polymorphonuclear percentage instead of a large mononuclear one.

In those cases where the process extends to the lower portion of the small intestine the general symptoms are much more severe although the tenesmus is less and the stools less frequent and more voluminous. They contain much blood and mucus mixed with feculent material. Shiga calls such cases enterodysentery.

In severe cases of the more typical dysentery or colodysentery, as designated by Shiga, the stools may change from the mucopurulent mass to a serous discharge which is very rich in albumin and of an albuminous odor. In such cases emaciation of the patient is very rapid. Such cases may show signs of collapse with cold clammy skin and the clinical picture one associates with cholera.

This serous fluid may contain the flesh like particles which the French liken to gut scrapings. During convalescence there may be an arthritis, which however does not impair the function of the joint.

In some epidemics of dysentery gangrenous manifestations have been common. This is a very fatal type and is recognized by the passage of dark brown serous discharges containing ashy grey to black sloughs or even tubules of gangrenous mucosa, the stool having a putrid odor. The general symptoms are pronounced, there being a dry glazed tongue, low muttering delirium with a thready pulse. It is the typhoid state.

It is usual to consider bacillary dysentery as a self limited disease, running on to convalescence within 10 days or 2 weeks.

Rogers has called attention to the importance of bearing in mind a chronic condition as well as the acute one. In these chronic cases the ulcerations are usually located in the descending colon, sigmoid flexure or rectum and give rise to frequent stools containing blood and mucus and causing a progressive loss of strength and weight. There is marked digestive disorder and the patient becomes weak, anaemic and neurasthenic.

DIAGNOSIS

In the presence of the dysenteric syndrome of tormina, tenesmus, frequent scanty stools of muco purulent or muco-sanguinolent character one must keep in mind the various conditions which may give rise to such manifestations of dysentery and not diagnose a bacillary dysentery until we have excluded tuberculous, cancerous and syphilitic processes as well as those connected with schistosome or other helminthic infections.

Clinical Diagnosis.—Amoebic dysentery is differentiated clinically from bacillary dysentery by the usual absence of manifestations of toxæmia and by its insidious onset and chronic course.

It is important however to remember that either bacillary or amoebic dysentery may show gangrenous manifestations and in such cases the clinical picture of

the typhoid state is the same whether the process is amoebic or bacillary. Fulminant bacillary dysenteries may greatly resemble cholera in its algid stage.

Tropical liver abscess is a complication exclusively occurring in the amoebic form of dysentery while joint manifestations and evidences of multiple neuritis may be noted in some epidemics of bacillary dysentery. Again, the toxins of the dysentery bacilli have a tendency to damage the myocardium. At present we consider the good effects of the administration of emetine as important in the diagnosis of amoebic dysentery.

It is important to remember that chronic dysentery may result from bacillary as well as amoebic infections, although a chronic process is more a feature of amoebic dysentery.

The muco purulent stool of bacillary dysentery is more of a milky whiteness and flecked or streaked with blood rather than the homogeneous, greyish brown, gelatinous mixture of disintegrated blood and mucus of the amoebic one.

Laboratory Diagnosis.—The chief point is to determine whether we are dealing with an amoebic or bacillary infection. While these two kinds of dysentery may coexist it is practical to consider a case in which amoebae with long, rapidly extruded, finger like pseudopodia and containing red blood cells are found, as one of amoebic dysentery.

A fresh specimen of the muco purulent stool of bacillary dysentery shows, in addition to pus cells, numerous large, phagocytic cells, which may show vacuolation and strikingly resemble amoebae. Such cells never show motility but, under conditions of lowered temperature of specimen or from prolonged standing and beginning disintegration, the amoebae too fail to show motility. If mounted in Gram's iodine solution these large cells show a much larger nucleus than that of amoebae and take the yellow staining of iodine more intensely. The best method, however, is to make a smear, fix it by heat and stain by Gram's method or with Loeffler's blue or dilute carbol fuchsin. These confusing cells stain easily and perfectly and in the Gram specimen we note the Gram negative bacilli in the cytoplasm. Giemsa's stain, with methyl alcohol fixation, or the usual Wright or Leishman technique answer equally well. On the other hand it is rather difficult to obtain satisfactorily stained amoebae in this way, it usually being necessary to fix moist thin smears of the stool with some bichloride fixative, as Zenker's fluid, and then carry out the staining with haematoxylin.

We should always examine a stool as soon after it is passed as possible.

If the microscopical examination indicates a bacillary infection we should take a small mass of the stool, wash it in sterile water and then drop it in a tube of sterile bouillon or salt solution. After emulsifying in this tube of bouillon we take up 2 or 3 loopfuls of the emulsion and deposit them on a poured plate, later smearing out with a glass rod, either by successive parallel strokes or by revolving the plate while

smearing the surface with the glass rod. It is in the first 2 or 3 days of an attack of acute dysentery that we obtain the best cultural results, often noting a pure culture of dysentery bacilli from proper material taken at the onset.

It has seemed to me that litmus lactose agar gives results more surely than the more restraining faeces plating media. Still I generally use Endo's fuchsin agar because it is always at hand for typhoid or paratyphoid culturing and gives good results. The dysentery bacillus colonies on this medium are like those of typhoid-greyish white. In England they prefer MacConkey's neutral red bile salt agar while others use the Conradi-Drigalski medium. On all these media the colonies resemble those of typhoid and the differentiation is most easily made by examining for motility. At the same time one not infrequently finds lack of motility in bacilli from colonies just isolated on Endo's medium which later on in subculture show motility and are found to belong to the typhoid or paratyphoid group. For the sure determination of dysentery bacilli or for differentiating the Flexner and Shiga strains one should carry out agglutination tests.

The isolation of dysentery bacilli from chronic cases or from convalescents is more difficult as a rule and agglutination tests may be more practical. A trouble is that an agglutinating effect may be connected with a prior infection.

Although some observers have noted the appearance of agglutinins in the serum of cases of acute bacillary dysentery within 3 or 4 days from the onset of the disease yet it is usual not to obtain agglutination with the patient's serum before the 10th day. With the Shiga strains agglutinating power in 1 to 50 is usually accepted as evidence of specificity but for Flexner strains we generally have a higher titre so that a dilution of 1 to 100 should be required for the test. Willmore and Savage tried heating serum to 56° C. for 30 minutes, but found that such a procedure was of no practical value with dysentery, thus differing from Malta fever serum where such a procedure is of value in destroying coagglutinins and thus increasing the specific action. The work of Ohno would indicate that we should trust to the acid producing effect on mannite for differentiating Flexner and Shiga strains rather than on agglutination because it was found that agglutinins for an acid strain were not always more specific for such strains than for non acid ones.

At the same time it is the rule for a Flexner type bacillus to show specificity for its serum and the Shiga type for the serum of the more toxic, non acid fast Shiga strain cases. The statement of Willmore and Savage that the differentiation of bacillary dysentery infections is a refinement of technique seems a proper view because with a polyvalent serum for treatment one only needs to know that the case is one of bacillary dysentery for proper treatment. Of course with a monovalent serum, effective only for the Shiga bacillus, one would have to determine whether the organism producing the dysentery was of that strain.

As a matter of fact it takes considerable time and laboratory skill to carry out reliable cultural and serological tests.

Butler's suggestion to take up the serum of dysentery convalescents on filter paper and using solutions of this dried serum from a known type of dysentery for

recognizing organisms plated out from faeces is very practical because it is most difficult to immunize rabbits for the production of a test serum with the toxic Shiga strains.

From a practical standpoint we can use the therapeutic polyvalent serum for agglutination and any organism recovered on the plate made from the faeces which agglutinates in 1 to 50 or 1 to 100 may be considered as diagnostic of bacillary as against amoebic dysentery. Often one does not see a case of dysentery until late in the disease and then, provided the condition is serious and the diagnosis points to a bacillary infection it would be better to inject the curative serum rather than await laboratory confirmation.

PROPHYLAXIS AND TREATMENT

Prophylaxis.—The ease with which water closet seats may be contaminated should make us pay great attention to their disinfection during an outbreak of bacillary dysentery. The same applies to the bed clothes of such patients sent out for laundering.

Great care should be given to the washing of one's hands prior to eating. The greatest care must be taken with rectal tubes when used for treatment. It is better to make an invariable rule to confine the use of a single tube to a single patient, as the rubber tubes are difficult to disinfect other than by boiling and such treatment, especially in the tropics, soon ruins the tube. For disinfecting tubes a 5% solution of liquor cresolis compositus is good. The tubes should be thoroughly washed of the disinfectant before using again. For disinfection of faeces one can use an equal portion of the above disinfectant to a similar amount of stool leaving the disinfectant to act on the stool at least one hour before emptying the receptacle. Soiled clothes should be disinfected in a 2 1/2% solution of the compound cresol solution. Flies must be kept in mind and water and milk supplies boiled. The carrier is of as great importance here as in typhoid or cholera, especially when assisting in preparing food.

Vaccination against dysentery does not seem to have made much headway owing to the very severe reactions following injections of killed cultures of the Shiga bacillus. By injecting such bacilli treated with an immune serum the reaction is less severe.

The serum alone is used almost exclusively for curative purposes.

Treatment.—In the treatment of bacillary dysentery absolute rest in bed is important to keep up the strength of the patient and also to protect the heart which tends to be more or less damaged by the toxic action of the Shiga bacillus. Some prefer to prop up the patient in bed considering a strict dorsal decubitus as undesirable. It is important to use sufficient covering on the patient to avoid chilling. A light wool blanket spread over the abdomen is often all that is needed in the tropics.

Some authorities deal with the subject of treatment without referring to any other means than the administration of serum. This probably is the proper attitude when the very fatal Shiga type infections are encountered. It must be remembered that certain epidemics, which as a rule are associated with the Shiga type bacillus, give a very high mortality (20 to 40%) while other epidemics seem associated with a less virulent strain of this bacillus.

At any rate when a case is seen early it would seem advisable to give about 2 grains of calomel in divided doses of $\frac{1}{4}$ grain every half hour and then follow it up with saline treatment. Most authorities recommend a preliminary dose of castor oil. During the first day or two enemata of normal saline, boric acid or $\frac{1}{2}\%$ sodium bicarbonate solution in 2 pint amounts would seem indicated as assisting the salines in the elimination of toxic material. After that time the tenesmus and rectal irritation make the use of the rectal tube too trying to the patient. I have used the Murphy proctoclysis method with a certain degree of success but this procedure cannot be kept up long.

The saline treatment is highly recommended by Buchanan who gives 60 grains of sodium sulphate every 2 or 3 hours until the dysenteric character of the stool disappears.

Bahr in the Fiji islands treated 53 consecutive cases, of which 41% had marked constitutional symptoms, with a mortality of 13.2%. He gave 1 drachm of sodium sulphate every hour for the first day and subsequently the same dose every 4 hours.

In a second series of 106 cases, of which 42% had marked constitutional symptoms, he treated 34 with salines plus the administration of capsules of cyllin. The remaining 72 cases received in addition to this treatment injections of a polyvalent serum obtained from the Lister Institute. The mortality in this series was 1.8%. He notes that 5 of the cases in this second series were of the severest type as evidenced by the gangrenous stools and toxic condition and yet not one of these five serum treated cases died. He notes that the stools of those who received serum injections became normal in 5 days for an average while for those treated with saline alone the average period was 8 days.

Bahr strongly recommends the combined treatment of salines and serum. In very severe cases Bahr used 50 to 70 c.c. of the serum but ordinarily 20 c.c. for adults and 10 c.c. or less for children.

Willmore and Savage think one obtains the best results by injecting from 80 to 120 c.c. of a polyvalent serum into the subcutaneous tissues of the flank or abdomen or intravenously. They think that anaphylaxis is less liable to follow a massive initial dose of serum.

In the use of serum Shiga recommends a dose of 10 c.c. for a mild case or two injections of 10 c.c. at intervals of 10 hours for cases of medium severity, while in very toxic cases he uses 60 c.c. in 3 daily doses of 20 c.c. each.

The best known sera are those of Shiga, Dopter and that prepared by the Lister Institute.

For the diet of cases of acute bacillary dysentery albumin water or barley water sweetened with lactose is to be preferred to milk, which is usually not well borne by such patients. Kendall has noted the value of sugar of milk in lessening the toxicity of various organisms. Tea sweetened with lactose is usually well borne. Meat juice expressed from a piece of lightly broiled steak is good. Willmore and Savage praise yaghurt.

In the tropics there are many brands of sterilized natural milk and these can be inoculated with a culture of *B. bulgaricus*.

In chronic bacillary dysentery Rogers recommends 1 to 1 1/2 pint enemata of albargin in strength of 1 to 500. Protargol seems to be equally efficient in the same strength. Owing to the effect of organic material on silver nitrate this salt does not seem so reliable as the organic silver compounds.

CHAPTER X

PLAGUE

DEFINITION AND SYNONYMS

Definition.—Plague is primarily a disease of rats or other rodents and is caused by a bacterium of the haemorrhagic septicaemia group, *Bacillus pestis*. The disease exists in the rodent in both an acute and chronic form. Acute plague of the rat is apt to be septicaemic so that when certain species of fleas which infest the rat feed on the blood of their host they ingest plague bacilli. These seem to multiply in the region of the proventriculus and cause thereby an obstruction to the stomach. As a result the flea makes vigorous and repeated but ineffectual efforts to feed. Regurgitation of the contents of the oesophagus occurs, thereby inoculating plague bacilli. When the rats die these fleas will attack man and cause human plague. The ordinary type in man is bubonic plague, characterized by extremely tender glandular enlargements. This form of the disease is thought to be exclusively transmitted from man to man by fleas or possibly bed-bugs. A second type is pneumonic plague which is a surely fatal pneumonia which is transmitted from man to man by droplets of sputum expelled in coughing. Either the bubonic or pneumonic types may become septicaemic or this form may exist from the start.

Plague shows a marked clouding of the consciousness from the onset and is characterized by toxic action on the heart and endothelial lining of capillaries.

Synonyms.—Oriental Plague, Black Death, Pestis. French: La Peste. German: Die Peste.

HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION

History.—Ancient writers were accustomed to apply the designation "plague" to any disease which was epidemic in character and attended with great mortality. This explains why the plague of Athens and that of Marcus Aurelius, which epidemics did not possess the characteristics of oriental plague, were so designated. There exist however writings which show that fatal epidemic diseases attended with buboes and prostration were noted prior to the Christian era.

It is probable that the biblical description of a disease among the Philistines which was attended with buboes and killed the mice of the field referred to plague.

In the 6th century, during the reign of Justinian, a disease which was unmistakably plague started from Egypt and reaching Constantinople caused the death of 10,000 persons in one day. It spread throughout the entire Roman empire.

The most noted epidemic of plague was that of the "Black Death" of the 14th century. The disease seems to have originated in the East, possibly in China, and eventually invaded Asia Minor, Egypt and Europe. The disease was called "Black Death" in Germany, on account of the petechial spots or "tokens" and in Italy, the "Great Mortality."

In the records of the epidemic we note that it was attended with great stupefaction, the sick losing their speech from palsy of the tongue. Others noted buboes of groins and arms while some noted a putrid inflammation of the lungs with the expectoration of blood. In the plague at Avignon it was noted that at first, for 6 or 8 weeks, the sick expectorated blood and that to come near them was certain death. Afterwards buboes appeared in groin and axilla and some of the sick recovered.

It was during this epidemic that quarantine became a recognized procedure in Europe. The adoption of a period of detention of 40 days probably originated in the medical idea that the 40th day was the last day of ardent diseases, this being one of the critical days. The lazarettos, where strangers were held in quarantine, appear to have first been established on some island near Venice, in 1485.

It has been estimated that one fourth of the population of Europe succumbed to the "Black Death" but estimates in certain parts of Europe would indicate a mortality approaching 70 per cent. of the inhabitants.

In 1665 occurred the Great Plague of London during which year it was estimated that approximately 60,000 out of a population of 450,000 died. It was thought that this epidemic was introduced from the Levant by way of Holland.

There was much plague in Europe in the 18th century but it would seem to have completely disappeared by 1841 and only to have returned with the present pandemic.

The plague epidemic with which all parts of the world are now so concerned is supposed to have originated in China, in the province of Yunnan, and from that center to have reached Canton, in 1894, causing the death of 60,000 people in a population of 1,500,000. In the same year it extended to Hong Kong and from that great seaport has spread over the entire world. India has suffered more than any other country, there having been years when the plague death rate exceeded 1,000,000.

In its spread it has invaded Europe, Egypt, South Africa, Australia, Japan, Philippine Islands, California and parts of Central and South America. It has recently made its appearance in New Orleans.

Geographical Distribution.—At present there are only two important foci of endemicity, one Mesopotamia and another in the region of the Himalayas (India, Thibet and Yunnan). There also seem to be less important centers in Uganda, in Africa and in the trans-Baikal region of Siberia.

ETIOLOGY AND EPIDEMIOLOGY

Etiology.—The bacillus of plague was first isolated by Yersin from a plague bubo, in 1894, at Hong Kong. It is true that Kitasato

reported a bacillus which he had isolated from the blood of a plague patient, on July 7th, 1894 (Yersin's report was made July 30th, 1894). Kitasato's bacillus was motile, Gram positive, coagulated milk and gave a turbidity in bouillon, characteristics which were just the opposite of those of the organism reported by Yersin.

As now recognized the plague bacillus, when in smears from pathological material, shows the form of an oval bacillus, the ends of which stain more intensely than the central portion (bipolar staining). When cultured on ordinary agar, the morphology is more rod shaped with a tendency to pleomorphism. If three percent. of NaCl is added to the agar, this pleomorphism is exaggerated, there occurring coccoid, rod shaped and various bizarre involution forms. A bouillon culture, upon the surface of which there has been deposited drops of oil or melted butter, shows a string like downward growth from the under surface of the oil globules. This "stalactite"

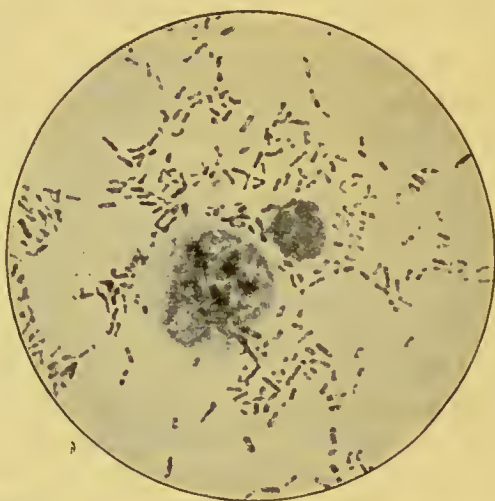


FIG. 32.—Pest bacilli from spleen of rat. (Kolle and Wassermann.)

growth is very fragile and is difficult to obtain. Ordinary bouillon cultures show a rather powdery deposit at the bottom. Gelatine is not liquefied. *Bacillus pestis* grows readily at room temperature as well as at 37° C., and one may be struck with the fact that colonies on agar plates may show variations in degree of development so that the suspicion of a contaminated culture may arise. Human plague material for cultures or smears is best obtained from the bubo prior to suppuration in bubonic plague, from the blood in septicaemic plague and from the watery sputum in pneumonic plague. With acute plague in the rat one finds marked injection of the subcuticular surface of an exposed abdominal flap; certain glands, especially the neck ones, show marked congestion, hæmorrhagic necrosis and periglandular infiltration; the pleural cavity contains much fluid; the liver has a yellow mottled appearance, while the spleen is enlarged. Smears from the spleen or affected glands, as a rule, show the bacilli in great numbers. Other organisms which may be obtained from plague suspected material are those of the proteus or colon group, which may

show bipolar staining, but culturally are quite different. Klein has noted that a non-motile rod, which gives a striking bipolar staining and named *Bacillus bristolensis*, may be mistaken for the plague bacillus. Its growth in bouillon is similar to that of *B. coli* and it coagulates milk.

An organism, *B. pseudotuberculosis rodentium*, resembles the plague bacillus in a striking manner but is without virulence for rats. It is virulent however for guinea pigs.

The crucial test for any plague material is the power of the plague bacillus to infect a rat or guinea pig, when the material is rubbed on the shaven skin of the animal. As a practical point it may be stated that cases showing a profusion of oval, bipolarly staining bacilli, in smears from glands or sputum, and with clinical manifestations of plague, are not likely to be other than plague; still, to be conservative, one should always inoculate animals cutaneously or subcutaneously.

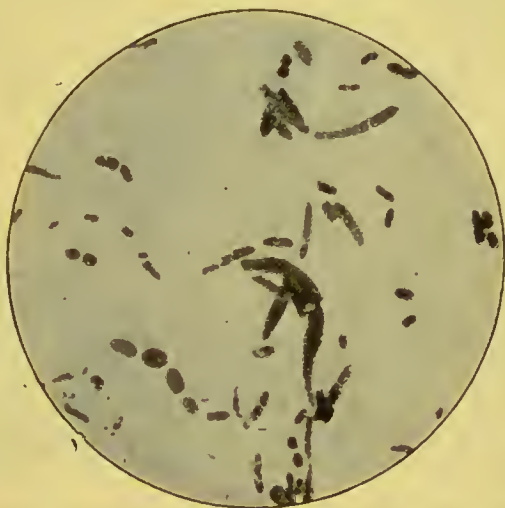


FIG. 33.—Plague bacillus involution forms produced by growing on 3% salt agar. (Kolle and Wassermann.)

Epidemiology.—Plague is primarily a disease of rats and man contracts his infection from these animals. With the exception of pneumonic plague which, under certain circumstances, is transmitted directly from man to man, plague infections originate from the bite of fleas which have become infected from feeding on the blood of plague rats. Infected fleas act as intermediaries in plague epizootics among rats. It is true that a rat might become infected from bites received in a fight with an infected rat or man might be infected through a cut on a finger while handling plague material, but such methods play but a small part in plague epidemiology.

In 1897, Ogata infected mice by inoculating them with an emulsion of crushed fleas taken from plague rats. In 1898 Simond showed that if a rat, dead of plague, were placed in a large bottle and a healthy rat confined in a small cage introduced into the bottle and suspended above the dead rat, so that there could be no contact between the dead and the living animal, the well rat would contract the disease. If however the fleas were removed from the dead rat, before the introduction of the caged rat, no infection took place.

By reason of claims that the rat flea would not bite man these convincing experiments were in a measure disregarded. The complete

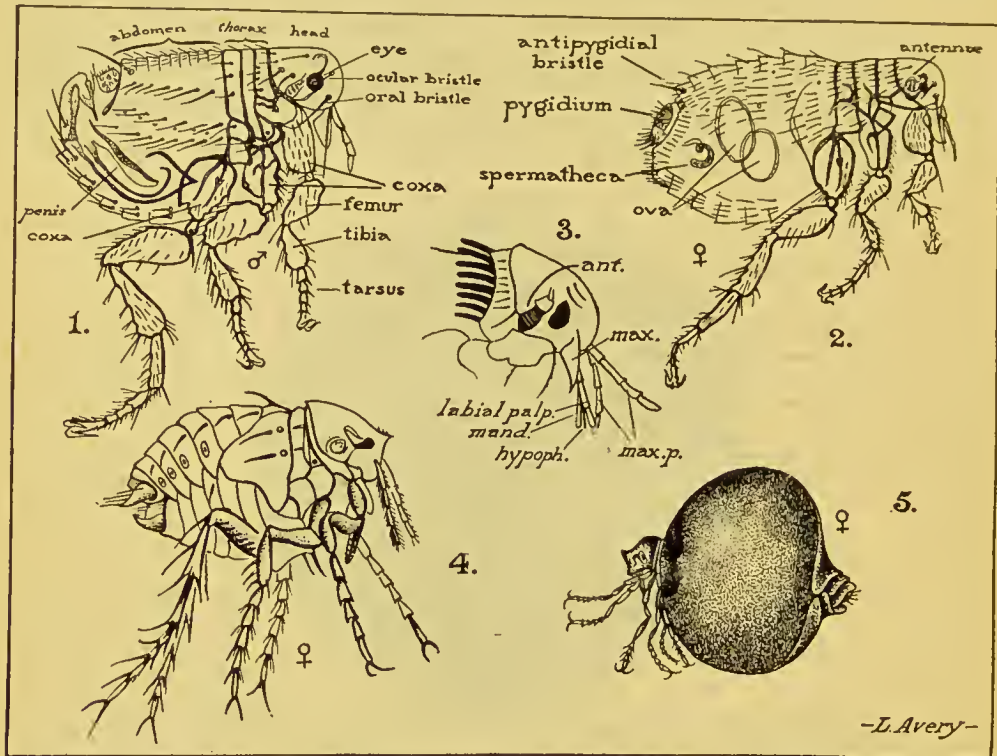


FIG. 34.—1 and 2, male and female *Xenopsylla cheopis*. 3, Head of *Ceratophyllus*. 4 and 5, male and egg distended female of *Sarcopsylla penetrans*.

Xenopsylla cheopis is the most important plague transmitter of the flea family as it is the common rat flea of India where there is so much plague.

Sarcopsylla or *Dermatophilus penetrans* is an important factor in a disabling skin disease, especially of the feet, in many parts of the tropics.

confirmation of the correctness of this view, as to transmission of bubonic plague, was brought about by the Indian Plague Commission. In a large number of experiments it was shown that when healthy and plague infected guinea pigs were confined together in spaces where there were no fleas, there were no plague infections of any of these well animals.

On the other hand in 35 experiments, when fleas had access to the spaces, plague infections were the rule. Again, guinea pigs in cages which were suspended only two inches above a plague flea infected floor, became infected, but other animals, which were suspended so high that the fleas could not jump up to them, remained well. Two cages, each containing a monkey, were placed in a plague flea infected room. One was surrounded with a protecting zone of 6 inches of "tanglefoot" fly paper, this being the limit of the distance a flea can jump, while the other cage was not so protected. The monkey in the cage without the sticky paper contracted plague while the second monkey remained well. It is only when there is a great incidence of plague among rats that we have outbreaks of bubonic plague in man, and it has been noted that the greater the epizootic, the more heavily infected was the blood of the sick rats with the plague bacilli. A flea with a stomach capacity of about $1\frac{1}{2}$ c.mm. could take in several thousand plague bacilli in a feeding on a rat whose blood was teeming with bacilli. There is a multiplication of the organisms in the flea, so that when it defecates, thousands of plague bacilli are deposited near the puncture wound made by the flea when subsequently feeding on a man. The infected faeces are rubbed into the wound by the man in scratching the site of the bite so that we have here an instance of a contaminative method of infection as contrasted with the inoculative method by the mosquito in malaria.

Bacot and Martin have shown that while infection may take place as the result of the faeces being rubbed into the wound made at the time of feeding yet the ordinary way is probably by regurgitation from the oesophagus of the flea at the time of feeding.

Upon taking in plague septicaemia blood the bacilli multiply about the site of the proventriculus as well as distending the oesophagus. This makes an obstruction to the entrance of the stomach resulting in starvation of the flea. This naturally makes the flea more voracious and in the ineffectual muscular efforts to take in blood, regurgitation of the contents of the oesophagus occurs, thereby infecting the person upon whom the flea is trying to feed. This obstruction apparently may be overcome in some way as the plague infected flea does not necessarily die. Still from lack of sufficient fluid such fleas are liable to be killed off if the relative humidity is low, as in dry weather.

Very interesting in this connection is the fact that Heiser found plague infected fleas in the desk of a European at Manila who died of plague. A mummified rat was found in one of the drawers of this desk, from which successful animal inoculations for plague were made. Heiser notes that data would indicate that these fleas probably remained alive 2 weeks after the death of the rat which brought about their infection. Another very striking finding during the same Manila plague outbreak (1912-1913) was that bedbugs found on the sleeping mat of a human victim of plague showed bipolarly staining bacilli.

The spread of plague epizootics among rats seems to be rather by the fierce brown sewer rat, *Mus decumanus*. The more delicate black house rat, *Mus rattus*, usually receives its infection from the sewer rat. When the rat dies the fleas leave the dead body and seek a new

host, preferably one similar to the one just abandoned. The sewer rat reaching the basement of houses and dying of plague is deserted by his fleas. These will attach themselves to the house rats which go from basement to roof of the house and later these dying are abandoned by the fleas which, in the absence of a rodent host, will feed on man and infect him.

Recently it has been found that a guinea pig set free in a house suspected of having plague fleas becomes infected if such fleas are present. The fleas would probably prefer the guinea pig to man and such a measure would in some degree be protective to man. It is however for the detection of plague infection that the measure is employed and the guinea pig is termed the "Plague barometer." In Madras there is practically an absence of *Mus decumanus*, although *Mus rattus* is present in numbers and the comparative freedom of the city from plague is striking.

The principal rat flea of the Orient is *Xenopsylla cheopis*. This flea is without combs like *Pulex irritans*, the human flea, but is of a lighter color and has an ocular bristle near the upper margin of eye and two bristles posterior to the antennae. In Europe and the United States *Ceratophyllus fasciatus* is the common rat flea. Many other species of fleas transmit plague and it is also possible that the bedbug may play a part in spreading infections from man to man. Verbitski has transmitted plague from man to the rat by infected bedbugs. In Siberia, a marmot, the tarabagan, is supposed to play the part of the rat in plague transmission. In California, the ground squirrel, *Citellus beecheyi*, has become infected and may transmit the disease by its flea, *Ceratophyllus acutus*. In the Tropics plague tends to prevail only at times when the temperature is between 10° and 30° C. It is the effect on the flea of cold weather which causes the disappearance of bubonic plague at such times. The bacillus of plague can withstand freezing temperatures. Sunlight and drying are the especially inimical factors for *B. pestis*.

The Indian investigators have called attention to the existence of a chronic plague in rats. In this we have chronic buboes, areas of necrosis in spleen and abscesses of the spleen. It is chiefly in the spleen that the lesions occur, thus differing from the acute plague in rats above described. Of 27699 *M. decumanus*, examined in Bombay, 0.57% showed signs of chronic plague.

In the necrotic material plague bacilli can be found in approximately one half of these rats although frequently the bacilli are non-virulent. It is possible that this chronic plague in rats may serve as the reservoir of infection which keeps up plague epizootics from year to year.

As regards pneumonic plague the origin of such epidemics is probably from pneumonia occurring secondarily in cases of bubonic plague. Provided the conditions are favorable, particularly as to moisture in the air of the room, the infection spreads directly from man to man as a

result of the droplets of heavily infected sputum being sprayed into the air in the act of coughing on the part of the patient. It is an instance of Flügge's droplet method of infection.

In the recent epidemic of pneumonic plague in North China, it was at first thought that the hunting of the tarabagan for its valuable skin, which led some of the Chinese to even capture tarabagans, possibly sick with plague, was the origin of the epidemic. This view is no longer held and we now know that the outbreak was independent of any disease in rats, tarabagans or other animals. Strong has shown that the bacillus which was isolated from these cases of pneumonic plague was identical with that isolated from cases of bubonic plague; its virulence was no greater and animals infected cutaneously or subcutaneously died of bubonic plague. Experiments by Teague and Barber, with emulsions of plague bacilli showed that with a room temperature of 32° C. plague bacilli were quickly destroyed when the air was comparatively dry. In such an atmosphere, saturated with moisture, the viability would be greatly prolonged. In the plague wards in Manchuria the extreme cold which prevailed, together with the saturation of the atmosphere of the unventilated rooms by the moisture of the breath of the patients, made conditions most favorable for the viability of the plague bacillus. They note that in the plains of India, although about 3 percent of bubonic cases assume a pneumonic type, yet epidemics of plague pneumonia do not occur; this is probably due to the fact that the higher temperatures and open rooms make evaporation occur 30 times more rapidly there than was the case in the plague wards in the bitter cold weather of the Manchurian winter. The possibility of carriers of plague bacilli in those who might go on to convalescence need not be considered, as practically all cases of plague pneumonia die. Other material from the patient than sputum does not seem to be a source of danger in the spread of plague, so that there is no need for the disinfection of urine and feces. There has recently been an outbreak of septicaemic plague in Ceylon in which there was an absence of plague in the rats. The infection was possibly transferred directly through bedbugs or human fleas. As a matter of experience the transference of plague from place to place generally occurs from infected rats or infected fleas which have been transported by ships. A case of bubonic plague in a ward with other patients would not be a source of danger provided there was freedom from fleas and a lack of development of secondary pneumonias. It is very doubtful as to infection ever taking place by way of the alimentary canal, although there is some evidence that rarely the tonsil may be primarily involved. Monkeys are very susceptible to plague and the possibility of an epizootic among them should be thought of during plague epidemics.

PATHOLOGY

It is rare that one finds the primary vesicle marking the site of entrance of the plague material. Thus in 13 cases where plague was contracted by direct cutaneous inoculation of those performing autopsies on plague victims only two showed evidences of local reaction as shown by the formation of a primary vesicle.

The chief points noted in a plague autopsy are 1. the marked involvement of the lymphatic system as shown by intense congestion and haemorrhagic oedema of the lymphatic glands. Not only are the glands tributary to the site of inoculation involved, thus forming the primary bubo, but there is secondarily more or less inflammatory change in all the lymphatic glands of the body. There is also a marked periglandular oedema, with haemorrhagic extravasations of the connective tissue surrounding the primary bubo, this mass being made up of a group of glands matted together by this periglandular exudate.

2. The destructive effect of a toxic product of the plague bacillus, which may be designated an endotheliolysin, upon the endothelial cell lining of blood vessels as well as lymphatic ones. This causes the extensive blood extravasations so characteristic of plague as shown by petechial spots not only of the skin but of the serous and mucous membranes as well.

There is a general congestion of all organs of the body.

The meninges of the brain are deeply congested and there may be haemorrhagic extravasations in the brain substance itself. The spleen is generally markedly congested and enlarged to 2 or 3 times its normal size. There is also active congestion of the liver.

The plague toxin has a marked effect on the cardiac muscle so that we usually find dilatation of the right side of the heart with fatty degeneration of the muscle fibers.

In a study of the pathology of primary pneumonic plague Strong noted pericardial and pleural ecchymoses with fibrinous pleurisy over the affected lung areas.

The process was at first lobular but later involved the entire lobe.

There was marked congestion of the bronchial mucosa with involvement of the bronchial glands. The larynx and trachea are also intensely congested. Microscopically there is a distension of the alveoli and bronchial passages with a haemorrhagic exudate. There is practically no fibrin in the alveolar exudate. The process seems to extend by continuity along the bronchi and bronchioles.

Plague bacilli pack the exudate found in the bronchi and bronchioles.

In a report on the autopsy findings of septicaemic plague in Ceylon, in cases where plague bacilli were demonstrated in smears and cultures from spleen and blood, Castellani noted that other than meningeal congestion and some splenic enlargement there was nothing abnormal.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

In a clinical study of plague it is customary to consider the disease as manifesting itself in a mild form (*Pestis minor*) and a severe form (*Pestis major*). *Pestis minor*, which is sometimes termed *Pestis ambulans*, is that form of plague in which there is only slight fever and comparatively little physical prostration or mental hebetude. These cases usually show moderate enlargement and tenderness of some group

of lymphatic glands. It is in this mild form of plague that we are most apt to find the primary vesicle or phlyctenule at the site of the flea bite. Ordinarily, man is so susceptible to plague that there is no reaction at the site of inoculation but in these mild cases there is an inflammatory reaction resulting in a vesicle or pustule, which may teem with plague bacilli. In such cases it is extremely important to search for such primary vesicles and examine for plague bacilli. It is usually stated that only about 5% of cases of bubonic plague show these vesicles. *Pestis major* can certainly be divided clinically and epidemiologically into two types, *pestis bubonica*, or bubonic plague, which is the common type of plague and *pestis pneumonica*, or pneumonic plague, the contagiousness of which is extreme and the mortality practically 100%.

Both of these types of plague tend to finally show an invasion of the blood stream with plague bacilli, the case then becoming one of septicaemic plague. Many authors, however, recognize an overwhelming plague septicaemia in which the manifestations of buboes or pneumonia are absent and such cases are designated septicaemic plague, or *pestis siderans*.

In all forms of *pestis major* there stand out the characteristics of rather sudden onset, rapidly rising but irregular fever, marked giddiness, great prostration, the mental state and speech of an intoxicated person and extreme weakness of the heart with a rapid weak pulse. Typhus fever alone shows an equal degree of early mental hebetude, so that it is stated that Clot Bey, who had seen much plague in Egypt, when elsewhere shown cases of typhus with parotid involvement, remarked "In Egypt one would call such cases plague."

A Typical Case of Bubonic Plague.—After a period of incubation of from 3 to 7 days the disease may set in quite abruptly, or after a prodromal stage, in which malaise, giddiness, mental hebetude and pains in the back and limbs may be present. With the onset of the attack the effects of the toxæmia upon the nervous system are the most striking. The patient has a pale, drawn, anxious countenance, with injection of the conjunctivæ toward the inner canthus.

The speech is thick and difficult, the gait is staggering, so that, with the stupid mental state and tendency to wander aimlessly about, one has the symptom complex of an alcoholic intoxication. After a few hours, or within a day, the fever begins to rise rapidly and is often associated with shivering attacks. The face now becomes hot and flushed, the pupils dilated, and the eyes rather staring. The temperature is as a rule from 102°, to 104° F., occasionally higher, with a tendency to rather marked remissions and, on the whole, of great irregularity of the fever curve. The pulse is rapid and shows early the indications of the extreme toxic effect exercised upon the

heart. Cardiac weakness is a marked feature of plague. About the second or third day the development of an extremely painful bubo practically gives the diagnosis.

About 70 per cent. of these buboes are of the inguinal region, the femoral glands being more frequently invaded than those above Poupart's ligament. The axillary glands are involved in about 20 per cent and the submaxillary and cervical ones in from 5 to 10 per cent.

There is a question whether the tonsil ever serves as the site of infection from which cervical buboes result. It would seem that the greater frequency of inguinal buboes is because a greater area of skin drains into these glands. There may be multiple buboes and it must not be forgotten that the lymphatic glands of any

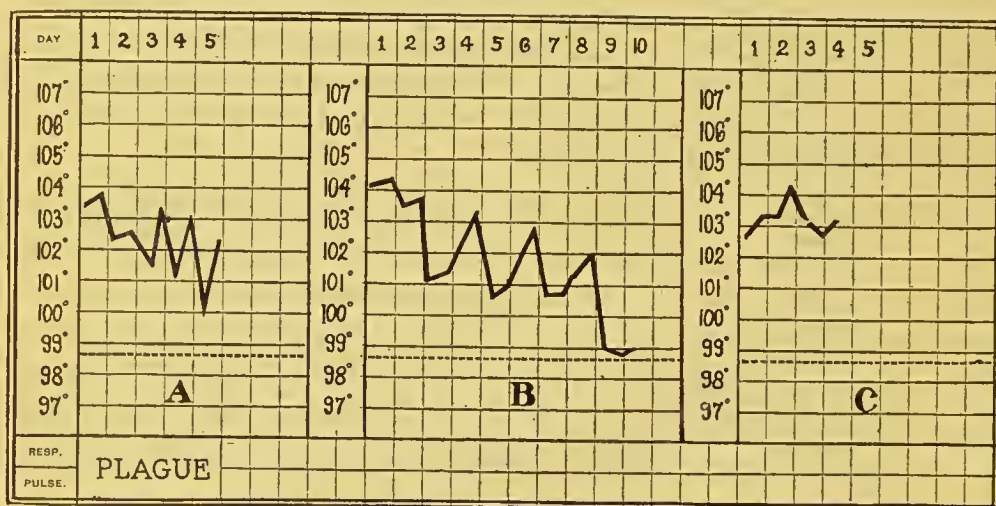


FIG. 35.—A, Temperature chart of fatal case of bubonic plague. B, Chart of case of bubonic plague going on to recovery but with suppuration of plague bubo. C, Chart of fatal case of pneumonic plague.

region may become enlarged. There may also be lymphangitis. Only one gland of a group may be involved or the whole group may show enlargement. Very characteristic for plague buboes is the oedema of the periglandular tissues, which is largely responsible for the great size of some of these buboes; they may vary from the size of an almond or walnut to that of a child's head. The patient tends to assume an attitude to relieve any tension on the very painful bubo. Particularly over these buboes, but at times elsewhere, the skin may show areas of inflammation, often several inches in diameter. Necrosis of this area occurs and a slough separates. These lesions are often termed carbuncles but are really not such, but only gangrenous patches of skin.

When these areas of cutaneous necrosis are a marked feature the designation of cellulo-cutaneous plague is at times given.

Petechiae or large purpuric spots may be conspicuous in some epidemics and it was from these "tokens," as they were called, that plague received the designation "black death." As the case progresses, the anxious countenance gives way to one of apathy, the control of speech and cerebration becomes more and more impaired and the patient may go into a typhoid state. Cases with buboes in the axillae give the gravest prognosis, as for example, 80% mortality for axillary, and 70% for inguinal. The buboes may suppurate towards the end of a week or they may undergo a slow resolution. Secondary broncho-pneumonia may develop



FIG. 36.—Axillary Bubo. (Reproduced from Simpson's Treatise on Plague, 1905.)
From Jackson's Tropical Medicine.

in the course of bubonic plague. Pulmonary congestion is however not infrequent and may cause dyspnoea, accelerated respiration and cough. Owing to the tendency to degeneration of the endothelial lining of capillaries, various haemorrhagic manifestations, other than those of the skin, may be observed, such as epistaxis, haematuria, etc. There is usually a rather marked leucocytosis in which the increase is chiefly of the polymorphonuclears.

A Typical Case of Pneumonic Plague.—Besides those cases where pulmonary involvement sets in during the course of an attack of bubonic

plague and which are classified as secondary plague pneumonias we have sporadic cases and epidemics when the clinical course of the disease is predominantly and primarily pulmonary.

Although the characteristics of pulmonary involvement, with expectoration of blood, were noted by many observers of the 14th century and later as manifestations of plague, yet in the present pandemic, which started in 1894, such cases were at first overlooked as being plague. The recognition of a primary pneumonic plague was made by Childe in 1897. The onset is sudden, with a rise of temperature to 103° F., or higher, during the first day. The marked physical exhaustion and clouding of the consciousness, characteristic of any type of *pestis major*, are intensified in pneumonic plague. In fact the occurrence of manifestations of such profound toxæmia in the presence of only slight physical signs, should make one suspicious. Crepitation over small areas, without demonstrable dulness on percussion may be the only signs. There is often early dyspnoea and rapid shallow respiration. Cough, with the expectoration of rather abundant watery sputum, which soon becomes blood stained or absolutely sanguineous, may be present by the second day.

There is never the rusty, tenacious sputum of lobar pneumonia. Herpes never appears, according to Childe. Heart failure is a very prominent feature of plague pneumonia.

It is fortunate that this watery sputum teems with bacilli early in the disease as smears from such sputum give an early and sure diagnosis of this terribly contagious and fatal malady. The knowledge that this infection is transmitted from man to man by the droplets of sputum expelled in coughing demands the protection by some form of mask of anyone coming near such a patient. Some observers noted splenic enlargement and tenderness over the superficial lymphatic glands. Strong has noted that the course of the disease rarely extends beyond the fourth day and that death is the invariable termination. As regards the clinical manifestations of septicaemic plague, if such be considered as a separate type, Choksy states that there is no clinical sign by which such a septicaemia can be recognized without the help of the laboratory, although the presence of a thready or imperceptible pulse in one showing the characteristic toxæmia of plague, should cause suspicion. The patient may be so overwhelmed from the start that there may be only a slight rise of temperature. Occasionally, plague bacilli may be recognized in blood smears, a finding that practically never obtains in any other bacterial disease. At the same time blood cultures are solely to be depended upon in diagnosis and even such examinations may be negative. Liston has noted that plague patients always die if more than 40 bacilli per c.c. are present in the blood. In a recent outbreak of septicaemic plague in Ceylon the only clinical manifestations were intense headache, and fever. The patients died within 48 hours. Until properly diagnosed bacteriologically the disease was thought to be pernicious malaria.

The Symptoms in Detail

General Appearance.—The face is at first drawn and pallid, the eyes injected and the expression one of fear or anxiety. As the temperature rises the pallor is

succeeded by a flushed and dry hot skin. Later on in the disease the expression is more one of apathy. The staggering gait and the tendency to wander give the impression of alcoholic intoxication.

Temperature Curve.—The fever course of plague is very irregular. The temperature usually rises rapidly to 103° to 104° F., but tends to exhibit marked remissions by the third day. After a fall, it may rise to a very high degree just before death. Cases which recover often show a fall by lysis.

Nervous System.—Very characteristic for plague is the intense and early involvement of the mental condition. The patient presents the characteristics of alcoholic intoxication, thick speech, lack of mental concentration and giddiness, which



FIG. 37.—Plague Carbuncle. (Reproduced from Simpson's Treatise on Plague, 1905.) From Jackson's Tropical Medicine.

causes a staggering gait. Later on an apathetic or stuporous state may ensue or there may be delirium.

Circulatory System.—The pulse is at first soft, dicrotic and rapid, 110 to 120 beats per minute. Later on, as the heart begins to show the toxic effects of the disease, the pulse becomes thready and irregular, to be followed by cardiac failure. There is a marked tendency to congestion of various internal organs and to haemorrhages from the capillaries.

Respiratory System.—Pulmonary congestion and even broncho-pneumonia may supervene in bubonic plague. In pneumonic plague, however, the lungs seem

to be the primary seat of the bacterial development. Plague pneumonia is characterized by intense toxæmia and few physical signs. The abundant, watery sanguineous sputum is loaded with plague bacilli. Dyspnoea and cyanosis appear early.

The Lymphatic System.—It is the presence of the plague bubo which differentiates bubonic plague. There is no relation between the size of the bubo and the severity of the attack. Axillary buboes are the most fatal. A characteristic of these buboes is their extreme tenderness, the pain causing the patient to draw up the legs or assume any attitude which will relieve tension upon the bubo. The size is mainly due to the periglandular infiltration or oedema, which causes the glands of a group to be matted together. Femoro-inguinal buboes are about 6 times as frequent as cervico-maxillary ones. There may be lymphangitis as well as lymphadenitis.

Cutaneous System.—The skin over the buboes often tends to become necrotic and slough off. This however may occur elsewhere and such lesions are termed "carbuncles." Capillary haemorrhages of the skin may cause petechiae and when the area is large they have been designated "tokens." In about 5% of cases there is a small vesicle or pustule at the site of the flea bite as an indication of reaction. The contents teem with plague bacilli. It is often termed the primary lesion.

The Liver, Spleen and Alimentary Tract.—The spleen may show enlargement and tenderness on deep pressure, as may also the liver, these organs being markedly congested. The tongue at first is coated, with clean tip and sides. Nausea and vomiting frequently occur and, as a rule, there is constipation. Haemorrhages from the bowel may occur.

DIAGNOSIS

Clinical Diagnosis.—It is well to remember that we have a sure and simple means of diagnosis by bacteriological means so that in the first cases during an epidemic we should rest the determination of the case as one of plague solely upon such methods.

One should be suspicious of any case of fever of rapid onset in which there is marked dulling of intellect and impairment of speech, as of one intoxicated, together with evidences of rapidly developing heart weakness. In septicaemic plague we practically have no other symptoms to guide us—there is not the exquisitely tender bubo of bubonic plague nor the abundant, watery, sanguinolent sputum of pneumonic plague.

Typhus fever probably more nearly resembles plague at its onset than any other disease. There is marked clouding of the consciousness and intense prostration as with plague and the eruption does not appear before about the 4th day.

An influenza pneumonia may show the general prostration and cardiac weakness of plague.

Malaria and septicaemic conditions may be confused with septicaemic plague. The sudden onset and prostration of relapsing fever may make one think of plague.

Many have thought climatic bubo a form of ambulant plague but the gradual onset, only slight tenderness of the swollen glands and slight prostration should

differentiate. Venereal bubo cases are apt to be regarded with suspicion during epidemics.

Markedly toxic cases of typhoid fever with an exceptionally rapid onset may give rise to confusion.

Laboratory Diagnosis.—If the patient has a bubo we should introduce a hypodermic syringe needle into the swollen, oedematous glandular mass in order to obtain some of the gland juice. Smear a drop of this on a slide, stain with Loeffler's blue or dilute carbol fuchsin and examine for bipolarly stained oval bacilli. When the bubo begins to soften we may not obtain plague bacilli.

In a case of suspected pneumonic plague we stain the smear of watery or thin blood tinged sputum as above.

The same procedure may be followed with a rather heavy blood smear of a drop of the 5 or 10 c.c. taken from a vein for culturing in a case suspected of septicaemia plague.

Plague is practically the only bacterial disease where there is likelihood of finding the causative organism in smears. In septicaemic plague the blood culture is the proper procedure and one should take 5 to 15 c.c. of blood in 15 to 25 c.c. of normal saline containing 1% of sodium citrate. This prevents coagulation and at one's leisure 1 or 2 c.c. can be added to tubes of melted agar and plates poured or other portions added to bouillon or 3% salt agar. This same blood emulsion can be used to inject guinea pigs subcutaneously or to inject them cutaneously by rubbing on the shaven surface.

In smears from material from buboes, from sputum, or in blood smears, as well as from blood or spleen smears from experimental animals, we obtain the typical morphology of a coccobacillus (1.5×0.5 mikrons) with very characteristic bipolar staining, there being an intermediate, unstained area. Very characteristic also is the appearance in these smears of degenerate types which stain feebly and show coccoid and inflated oval types. The presence of these involution forms associated with typical bacilli is almost diagnostic for one with experience. Inoculating tubes of plain agar and 3% salt agar with this same material, we obtain in plain agar cultures organisms which are, typically, small, fairly slender rods, which do not stain characteristically at each end and are not oval. The smear obtained from the salt agar presents most remarkable involution forms—coccoid, root-shaped, sausage-shaped forms, ranging from three to twelve mikrons in length, more resembling cultures of moulds than bacteria. Another point is that on the inoculated plain agar we are in doubt at the end of twenty four hours whether the dewdrop-like colonies are really bacterial colonies or only condensation particles. By the second day, however, these colonies have an opaque grayish appearance, so that now, instead of questioning the presence of a culture, we consider the possibility of contamination.

Blood cultures in septicaemic plague may show from 5 to 500,000 per c.c. Smears from the blood in such cases are positive in only about 17%.

The plague bacillus grows well at room temperature—its optimum temperature being 30° instead of 37° C., as is usual with pathogens. Next to the salt agar culture, the most characteristic one is the stalactite growth in bouillon containing oil drops on its surface. The culture grows downward from the under surface of the oil drops as a powdery thread. These are very fragile, and as the slightest jar breaks them, it is difficult to obtain this cultural characteristic.

While Klein states that *B. coli*, *Proteus vulgaris* and, in particular, *B. bristolensis* may be mistaken for plague bacilli, if bipolar staining alone be relied upon, yet it is *B. pseudotuberculosis rodentium* which may confuse an inexperienced worker. While this latter is only moderately pathogenic for rats yet the fact that rats may be immunized to *B. pestis* by inoculation with *B. pseudotuberculosis rodentium* brings up the suspicion of the identity of the two organisms. In diagnosing always use animal experimentation.

Albrecht and Ghon have shown that by smearing material upon the intact, shaven skin of a guinea pig, infection occurs. This is the most crucial test. Smear the material on a shaven surface about 1 inch square.

A pocket made by cutting the skin of a guinea pig with scissors and extended subcutaneously with scissors or forceps, into which a piece of the suspected plague tissue is thrust with forceps, is more practical than injecting an emulsion with hypodermic syringe.

Mice inoculated at the root of the tail succumb quickly. Rats, this being primarily a disease of rats, are of course susceptible.

When a guinea pig is inoculated with plague material the animal should be placed in a galvanized iron garbage can or other similar container and the opening covered with cheese cloth to prevent the fleas or other vermin which it might harbour from escaping. Again a 6-inch band of tanglefoot fly paper should be attached around the interior of the upper part of the can to further prevent escape of fleas. It must be remembered that every precaution must be taken in the laboratory to prevent the escape of plague infected fleas. The guinea pig usually dies in from 2 to 5 days and shows glandular enlargements, marked congestion of viscera with a swollen spleen, smears from which will show a profusion of plague bacilli. If guinea pigs are not available one may use white mice which die within 48 hours or white rats which live about as long as guinea pigs.

One of the most important points in fighting plague is the detection of plague in the rats and from noting the locality in which such plague infected rats were caught to direct our rat destruction efforts to that particular section of the city. These dead rats should be dropped into a bichloride solution or petroleum preparation in order to destroy the rat fleas. In the laboratory they are dissected and plague infected ones most easily recognized by the marked subcutaneous injection of the widely reflected skin flap. Oedematous or haemorrhagic glandular swellings are characteristic. The liver shows a yellowish mottling and the spleen is swollen and congested. There may be effusion into the pleural cavities. Material from the swollen glands or spleen should be stained, cultured and inoculated into animals as for a human case.

If glandular, splenic or other material from human or rat autopsies has to be sent to a distant laboratory the specimen should be placed in a strong salt mouth bottle containing 20% glycerine in water with 2% calcium carbonate.

Agglutination is not very practical owing to the frequent absence of agglutinins from the serum of plague patients. Then, too, there is a marked tendency to spontaneous agglutination on the part of the plague bacilli. Strong states that culturing at 37° C. lessens this tendency to spontaneous agglutination. Again, even when present, the titre of plague agglutinating sera is usually quite low so that one must work with dilutions of from 1 to 10 or 1 to 20.

PROGNOSIS

Pneumonic and septicaemic plague give an almost absolutely unfavorable prognosis, many stating that every such case dies.

As regards bubonic plague the mortality averages 75%. The Egyptian epidemic of 1900 gave an average mortality of 50%. The mortality in natives is much higher than that among Europeans, these latter often showing death rates under 25% while in the same epidemic natives show from 75% to 95% mortality. Plague pneumonia however is absolutely fatal for Europeans as well as natives.

PROPHYLAXIS AND TREATMENT

Prophylaxis.—In pneumonic plague it is the human patient and not the rat which has to be considered. The infection is spread by means of droplets of plague bacilli laden sputum which are sprayed from the mouth of the patient in the act of coughing. As a result any person entering a ward containing plague pneumonia cases is extremely liable to contract the pneumonic form of plague.

The attendants are protected by bag like masks or successive layers of gauze and cotton wool applied as bandages over face and neck. Motoring goggles make a good protection for the eyes and small rolls of cotton should be placed along the sides of the nose to absolutely prevent the possibility of bacilli being drawn down to the entrance of nose or mouth. These masks should not have any weak spot in their armor.

It has been noted that when secondary pneumonia develops in the course of bubonic plague in India, the Philippines, or other hot countries, it is not followed by primary plague pneumonia outbreaks. This is thought to be due to the fact that the windows are wide open and the relative humidity low, conditions which are the opposite of those which existed in Manchuria where the intense cold made the closing of windows necessary and where the air of rooms or wards was saturated with the moisture from the occupants. As the main consideration for the spread of pneumonic plague seems to be high relative humidity it would seem that hospital wards could be constructed so that the air supplied by artificial ventilation would be very dry.

The recent outbreak of septicaemic plague in Ceylon at a time when there was no plague noted in rats would indicate that other transmitting agents than infected rat fleas were operative. The most probable transmitting insects to be suspected would be the bedbug and human flea.

With bubonic plague, unless it should in its course become pneumonic or septicaemic, there is almost solely the question of the rat and its fleas. Many authorities consider that pure bubonic plague can be treated safely in a general ward of a hospital provided there is sure freedom from bedbugs or other verminous insects.

The various species of fleas which the rat may harbour may be attacked by the use of various petroleum preparations containing naphthalene. One preparation known as pesterine, which consists of kerosene 20 parts, soft soap 1 part and water 5 parts, the soap being dissolved in the water and the oil being gradually stirred into the hot mixture, is often recommended as a flea insecticide. A 5% solution of compound cresol to which naphthalene has been added is also of value.

As a matter of fact, however, it is best to attack the problem from the side of rat extermination which, it must be understood, is most difficult owing to the highly developed suspicious nature of the rat. A successful rat catcher or rat exterminator must have the mind of a detective.

The first measure in rat extermination is the regulation of the disposal of garbage. It is most important that only cans with securely fitting tops be used so that rats cannot secure any food from the contents of the can. Again no particle of food should be left accessible to the rat. Unless the ordinary food supply of the rat is denied him he will not eat poisoned bait or bait in traps. Again rats are not only carnivorous but will eat any kind of cereal or vegetable, in fact they will eat almost anything and in addition are cannibals. In a plague outbreak especial attention should be directed to flooring in stables, under surfaces of board walks, sealed-in attics of houses, wharves and sewers. Where sewers have catch basins at street openings the rat has a means of egress from the sewer. These sedimenting catch basins also serve as a breeding place for mosquitoes. It has been estimated that a sewer rat can jump 2 feet but not 3 feet.

In rat proofing houses, double walls should be eliminated and houses raised well from the ground—at least 18 inches. In plugging up rat holes with concrete we should add broken glass to the concrete. Sheets of galvanized iron driven down several feet have been used as a protecting barrier around grain elevators or warehouses. Concrete is the proper material to use in rat proofing.

Where rats are on board ship fumigations with sulphur dioxide, carbon monoxide or funnel gases are usually employed. Some cargo ships have a rat run built to extend fore and aft and leading to a receptacle in which the rats are caught. Rats naturally choose a tube or similar opening so they get into this little passageway which is so constructed that their return is obstructed. This scheme is used in setting traps, either covering the traps with hay and leaving a small opening or placing the trap under an inclined plank or placing it at the end of an iron or terracotta pipe.

Phosphorus paste made up with a glucose base and containing about 4% of phosphorus is spread on pieces of stale bread, 1 inch square and 3/4 inch thick. Whatever poison is used, whether strychnine, arsenic or phosphorus, it should be placed in boxes which have openings large enough to let the rats in but too small for domesticated animals.

Cats will very rarely attack the fierce sewer rat.

Many workers, during plague outbreaks, have tried to exterminate rats by impregnating bread or other bait with bacterial cultures. The best known of these viruses, as they are called, is that of Danysz. The organism is closely related to *B. enteriditis* of Gaertner and is supposed to bring about a fatal infection in the rats. As a matter of fact the cultures quickly cease to be virulent and their use has been generally abandoned. Simpson however thinks well of this measure and employed it with success in South Africa. He kept up the virulence of his cultures by frequent passage through animals.

In rat extermination it is advisable to employ Heiser's Manila plan. In this, the location in the city of the plague rats brought into the laboratory is noted and radiating lines made from such foci. Plague infected rats are rarely found more than a few squares from the focus. The periphery of the infected area is then considered as an outer zone for the fight and the house to house extermination is carried on towards the center of the area. If on the other hand one should start at the center and work peripherally the infected rats might be spread all over the city.

Prophylaxis by Immunization.—The best known bacterial prophylactic is that of Haffkine. Stalactite bouillon cultures are grown in flasks for 5 to 6 weeks. The organisms are then killed by heat at 65° C. for one hour. Phenol (1/2%) is then added and from 0.5 to 4 c.c. injected according to the age and size of the individual. Ten days later a still larger amount is injected. The reaction following these injections is apt to be quite severe.

Recent reports show that of 118,148 inoculated persons the plague incidence was approximately 8 per 1,000 while among 321,621 non-inoculated the incidence was 34 per 1,000.

The plague mortality in cases which had previously been inoculated was 40% while that among the noninoculated was 78%.

From the above it will be seen that incidence is reduced about 1/4 and mortality about one half as the result of the use of Haffkine's prophylactic.

Besides this killed culture other material has been used. Lustig and Galleotti used the nucleo-proteid from plague bacilli for subcutaneous injection. Kolle and Strong have recommended a vaccine of living but non-virulent plague bacilli. A higher degree of immunity seems to be conferred by this living vaccine but there are

certain dangers in the use of living organisms which outweigh the advantage noted above.

Yersin's antiplague serum, which is prepared by injecting horses at first with killed cultures and later with living plague bacilli, may be used as a prophylactic as well as in treatment. It must be remembered that this is a passive immunization as against the active one with Haffkine's prophylactic, hence the protection is very short, only 10 days or 2 weeks as against the more enduring immunity of a year or so following Haffkine's prophylactic. It must be remembered that anaphylactic manifestations may follow the repeating of the dose of Yersin's serum. It is probably advisable for one who is to be exposed to plague for a short time only to receive an injection of the serum. As regards pneumonic plague there seemed to be little protection attaching to either active or passive immunization.

Treatment.—It may be stated that the only treatment which has any curative value is that with antiplague serum. This would appear to be of considerable value in bubonic plague provided it is administered in the first day or two of the disease. It must be given in large amounts, from 50 to 100 c.c. or even to the extent of 250 c.c. Intravenous administration gives a better chance for success in desperate cases. In septicaemic and pneumonic plague the use of serum has been without result.

Salvarsan, as might be expected, has been tried but did not prove of any value.

Connor has reported success with the intravenous injection of one drachm of a dilution of one part of tincture of iodine in ten parts of sterile water. He gave 6 such injections to a severe case with good result.

In the way of symptomatic treatment one should use ice-bags to head and cold sponging to the body.

Morphine seems to be the best drug to calm the patient. Cardiac stimulants, especially strychnine, are indicated for the heart weakness so much a feature of plague. Some consider incision or enucleation of the bubo of value in treatment but it has always seemed to me that the going into the periglandular exudate might serve to set up a septicaemic condition when otherwise it might not supervene.

CHAPTER XI

CHOLERA

DEFINITION AND SYNONYMS

Definition.—Cholera is a disease caused by a spirillar type of bacterium, *Spirillum cholerae asiaticae*. The organism multiplies in the small intestines and, undergoing lysis, liberates an endotoxin, which is responsible for the desquamation of the epithelium of the mucosa and other manifestations of the disease. Cholera appears to be endemic in the delta of the Ganges and the various world wide epidemics can generally be traced to that source. The rice water stool of cholera teems with the spirilla and infections of water or food supplies can be traced to such a contamination. The importance of the cholera carriers has been thoroughly demonstrated from the time of the Hamburg epidemic of 1892. The clinical course of the disease is divided into a stage of evacuation, in which we have diarrhoeal discharges of rice water character along with very painful cramps of the muscles. Following increasing cyanosis we have almost a cessation of circulation often associated with anuria, the algid stage. With the return of activity of circulation and urinary secretion we have the stage of reaction.

Synonyms.—Cholera Asiatica.

HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION

History.—Although the word *χολέρα*, meaning flow of bile, is found in the writings of Hippocrates, it certainly does not refer to the disease we now recognize as cholera. The older writers noted the characteristics of bilious discharges in the disease they termed cholera, which could not apply to the bile free rice water discharges of what we now term cholera. Koch rather doubted the antiquity of cholera but Susruta, in India, in the 7th century, A. D., described a disease in which there was diarrhoea and vomiting, stabbing pains, cyanosed lips and nails, with sinking in of the eyes and weak voice.

Detailed accounts of the presence of cholera in India were published from the 16th to 18th centuries when the Portuguese, English and French were carrying on their wars of conquest in India. These wars naturally spread the disease all over India.

It is thought that true cholera did not exist in China until 1669 when it was carried there from India. It is first described from Japan in 1821 although an epidemic which devastated Tokyo in 1718 may have been cholera.

A great pandemic of cholera started in India, in 1817, extending over Asia but not invading Europe. The second great pandemic is of importance as being the first to invade Europe. It started in India in 1826 and advancing slowly reached Persia in 1829, going thence by way of Astrakhan to Russia, Sweden, Northern Europe and England. By 1832 it had spread over the whole of Europe.

In the same year, 1832, it reached Canada and thence spread to Fort Dearborn where it infected the soldiers who subsequently carried the disease down the Mississippi valley. It was also introduced into New York and spread thence South and West so that by 1836 cholera was present all over the U. S., not disappearing until 1838. It disappeared from Europe in 1839.

The next European outbreak or third pandemic lasted from 1846 to 1862 and was traced to India by way of land and sea, that by land following the caravan route by way of Persia and Russia and that by sea from Indian pilgrims going to Mecca and there causing the infection of Mahommedan pilgrims from Egypt and European Turkey. This pandemic reached the U. S. in 1848, starting at New Orleans and going up the Mississippi valley. Central and South America and the West Indies were also invaded by the third pandemic.

The fourth great pandemic invaded Europe by the usual routes and continued from 1863 to 1875. During its continuance there were two outbreaks in the U. S., one in 1867 and another in 1873.

That in 1873, when it was introduced into three widely separated parts of the country, was the last appearance of cholera in the U. S.

The fifth pandemic began in 1883 and affected particularly the Mediterranean seaports of France, Spain and Italy. It was during this epidemic, in 1883, that Koch, working in Egypt, discovered the cause of cholera, the *Spirillum cholerae asiaticae*.

A very serious outbreak of cholera, which originated in 1891, in pilgrims from the delta of the Ganges, reached Europe in 1892, almost a million deaths occurring in Russia. It was during this epidemic that cholera appeared in Hamburg and gave opportunity for those careful studies as to transmission of the disease to be later referred to.

It is usual to recognize a sixth pandemic which began in 1902 and spread over India, China and the Philippines. This pandemic continuing was a cause of great mortality among the soldiers of the recent Balkan war.

Geographical Distribution.—Practically every pandemic when studied can be traced back to India and particularly to the delta of the Ganges, which may be considered the enduring focus of the disease.

ETIOLOGY AND EPIDEMIOLOGY

Etiology.—The cholera vibrio, *Spirillum cholerae asiaticae*, was discovered by Koch in 1883 and is a short curved organism which, from its shape, is often called the comma bacillus. In addition to single spirilla there may be S shapes from attachment of pairs. In cultures in peptone solutions long filamentous forms may be seen which however are exceedingly rare in the rice water stools. A stained smear from a fleck of mucus gives the fish in the stream appearance. Besides comma shaped organism we may have coccoid or rod shaped forms. In old cultures marked pleomorphism is often seen.

It is Gram negative and stains best with a dilute (1-10) carbol fuchsin. There is a single terminal flagellum, which endows the organism with great motility, which

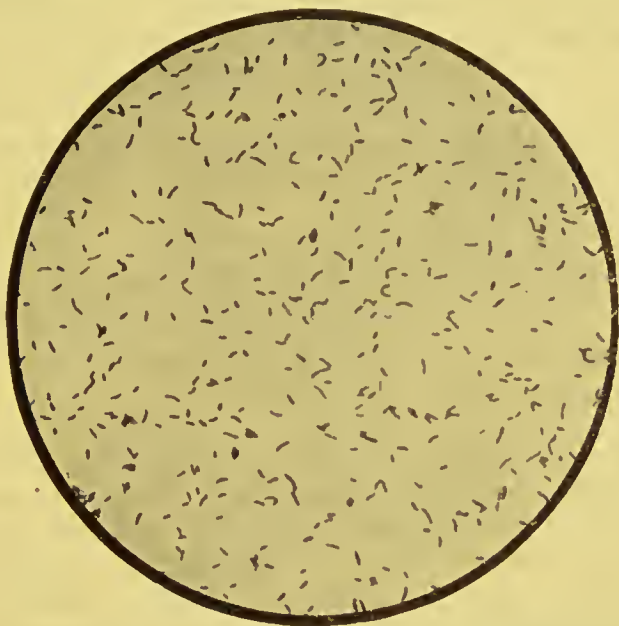


FIG. 38.—Cholera vibrios, short forms. (MacNeal from Kolle and Schurmann after Zettrow.)

may best be termed scintillating. It grows best on media with an alkaline reaction (-0.4%) and it is this tolerance for media of high alkalinity that permits the separation of the cholera spirillum from the ordinary fecal bacteria by the use of Dieudonne's alkaline blood agar or similar media. This is equal parts of defibrinated ox blood and $N/1$ NaOH 3 parts of which are added to 7 parts of nutrient agar. It thus has 20% of normal sodium hydrate, instead of the 1% acid reaction of the usual media. Unfortunately, other spirilla tolerate this high alkalinity. It is strongly aerobic and grows quickly and luxuriantly in the upper part of a tube of Dunham's peptone solution, this property enabling one to separate it from other organisms of feces by taking up loopfuls from the surface layer to plate out on agar of about 0 or -0.3%

reaction. When grown in peptone solution the cholera spirillum produces a nitroso body so that one obtains an indol reaction (cholera red) by simply adding 5 or 6 drops of concentrated H_2SO_4 .

When this test is employed it is necessary to determine whether the peptone used is suitable for the reaction. As a matter of fact this test is now rather discredited. Blood serum is digested. Recently much discussion has arisen as to the value of the haemolytic power possessed by noncholera vibrios on blood agar plates.

It is true that the digestive action which true cholera has on the red cells of the medium may give the appearance of a zone of haemolysis. Therefore, for the demonstration of this haemolytic action of noncholera spirilla, fluid blood media should be used. The El Tor spirillum, isolated from Egyptian pilgrims without symptoms of cholera, is haemolytic, but gives the immunity reactions of the true cholera vibrios.

Gelatine is liquefied and the stab shows an air bubble liquefaction at the summit of the stab. On gelatine plates a powdered glass centre with an encircling zone of liquefaction was formally considered characteristic of cholera, but at the present time gelatine cultures have been almost abandoned in practical work.

As a rule animals cannot be infected by feeding them cholera material unless the acidity of the gastric juice be neutralized and intestinal peristalsis checked by opium (procedure of Koch). Injected intraperitoneally, the cholera vibrio produces a fatal peritonitis. Recently monkeys have been infected after purgation with sulphate of soda and administration of bicarbonate of soda. They died in from 1 to 48 hours with symptoms of cholera.

There have been instances where cholera has been caused in laboratory workers by the accidental ingestion of cholera cultures; thus Orgel was infected from sucking up peritoneal fluid in doing Pfeiffer tests for bacteriolysis and died.

Emmerich and Pettenkofer swallowed cholera cultures, the former experiencing a severe attack of cholera and the latter a diarrhoea in which cholera spirilla were present. On the other hand similar experiments have resulted negatively but this is what should be expected from the epidemiological facts as to carriers.

The virulence of the cholera vibrio can be exalted by passage through guinea pigs—successive culturing of the peritoneal exudate of intraperitoneally infected animals alternating with inoculations. Such a fixed virus, the virulence of which cannot be exalted, is the material used by Haffkine in his cholera vaccine. The toxicity of cholera is supposed to be due to an endotoxin which is set free when the vibrios undergo disintegration when lying between the basement membrane and epithelial lining of Lieberkühn's glands. Others think the vibrios may enter the blood stream, to there be immediately disintegrated with toxin production. The usual idea, however, is that the cholera spirilla never invade the blood stream—they are confined to the alimentary canal. Macfadyen obtained the endotoxin by grinding the frozen spirilla. This toxin was destroyed by a temperature of 60°C .

The spirillum of cholera has but little resistance to disinfecting agents or to drying. It is also rapidly overgrown by putrefactive

bacteria and tends to disappear from sewage contaminated water in a short time. In stools the vibrio dies in about 1 or 2 days in summer and in about a week in winter.

The inoculation of animals by cholera cultures tends to produce an immune serum which is remarkable for its high agglutinating power, the titre at times going as high as 1 to 20,000. For agglutination tests in proving spirilla isolated from stools to be true cholera ones we use a serum of at least 1 to 4000 for its specific vibrio. Such a serum should agglutinate any true cholera spirillum in a 1 to 500 or 1 to 1000 dilution. The occurrence of bacteriolysis, when a small loopful of the culture emulsified in 1 c.c. of 1 to 1000 dilution of the immune serum and then introduced into the peritoneal cavity of a guinea pig, is the surest proof that a suspected organism is that of cholera.

This is shown when, upon removing a drop of the peritoneal fluid 15 to 20 minutes afterwards, there is noted an absence of motility and disintegration of the spirilla (Pfeiffer's phenomenon).

Complement fixation tests, using the rice water stools or peptone solution cultures as antigen, are of less value than those above noted. Agglutination is the practical test and is almost as specific as that for bacteriolysis.

Epidemiology.—Until recently our attention as to the methods of transmission of cholera was directed almost exclusively to the water and food supply, with a certain degree of consideration of danger from fomites, especially to that connected with clothing soiled by cholera discharges, it having been noted that those who wash such clothing showed a high incidence of infection. Later on the importance of flies in the spread of the disease was strongly insisted upon. At the present time we consider the cholera carrier the most important factor in cholera epidemiology and it is to the detection and isolation of such persons that we now chiefly direct our attention in the keeping out of a country of this dread disease.

It will be remembered that Pettenkofer and Emmerich insisted upon the factors of soil and ground water in the spread of cholera. Emmerich now admits that the spirilla excreted by carriers can produce cholera but that such transference never gives origin to epidemics. For this to take place he thinks that the vibrios excreted by a carrier must come in contact with a soil which has been impregnated with a suitable medium drawn to the surface from the deeper layers of the soil by capillary suction. In such medium the vibrios flourish and acquire the property of actively producing nitrites from nitrates.

Emmerich considers that the symptoms of cholera are those of nitrite poisoning so that only such organisms as possess this nitrite forming function in high degree can produce virulent outbreaks of cholera.

All facts in connection with the spread of cholera by land or water routes can be best explained by the cholera carrier; the individual who is excreting vibrios, while in

apparent health, being far more dangerous than the one excreting such organisms in the rice water stools of a well recognized case of the disease.

Water Transmission.—There are two types of outbreaks of cholera according as the general water supply is contaminated or when such contamination is localized to certain wells, cisterns or other non general supplies. In the former the onset is explosive and cases occur almost simultaneously and with equal distribution in all parts of the city, to disappear with almost equal suddenness. In the latter mode of infection cases will appear from day to day and often peculiarly localized to certain definite districts of a city or to certain definite users of a particular water supply.

As an example of the first type of outbreak the Hamburg epidemic of 1892 is most instructive.

During a period of only about two months cholera attacked about 17000 persons

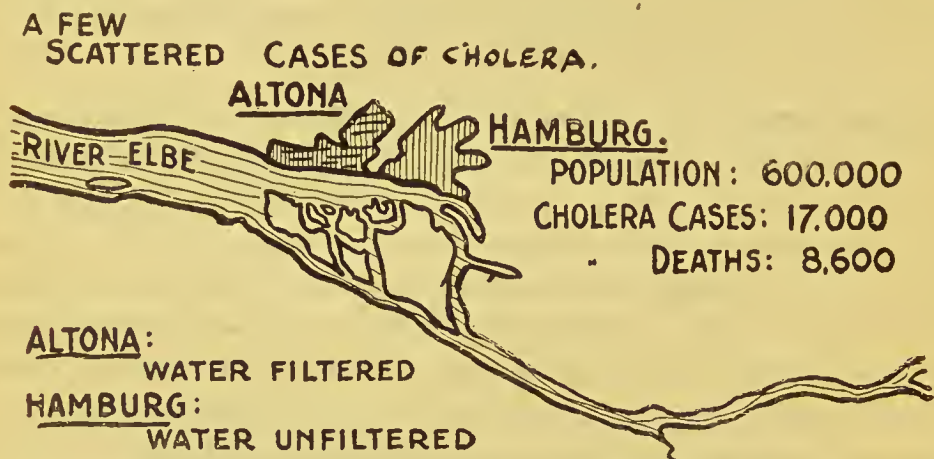


FIG. 39.—An instructive contrast between Altona and Hamburg before the latter filtered its water, having learnt its lesson from a sharp outbreak of cholera. (After G. E. Armstrong)

causing 8605 deaths in a city with a population of 600,000. This outbreak was attributed to the washing of their clothes in the water of the Elbe River by Russian immigrants who had come from cholera infected districts and among whom there undoubtedly were cholera carriers.

The water supply of Hamburg was taken directly from the river. The adjoining city of Altona, with a population of 140,000, is further down the river but filtered its water by a slow sand process. Although the water as taken from the river contained the sewage of Hamburg yet there were only 328 deaths or 2.1 per thousand as against 13.4 per thousand for Hamburg. There were many interesting points in connection with the exemption of certain places in Hamburg of which may be noted the instance of the entire freedom from cholera of a group of houses (Hamburg Hoff), with 345 occupants. This was the only section of Hamburg which was supplied with Altona water. As Hamburg and Altona are only separated by the width of a

street and hence, practically form a single city, the factor of food and contact transmission could easily explain the cases in Altona.

To illustrate the second type of water transmission we have the well known incident of the Broad Street pump.

This was about the first definitely proven connection between water and cholera. In 1854 it was noted that cholera was about ten times as prevalent in Golden Square as in other adjacent parts of London. Various factors, such as previous droughts, stagnation of lower strata of the atmosphere, sewerage defects and subsoil drainage were found to be the same in Golden Square as elsewhere. It was noted that the number of cases increased in the neighborhood of the Broad Street well. The employes of a cartridge factory where this well water was used gave a large number of cases while an adjoining brewery, which had a well of its own and served out beer to its employes, did not furnish a single case. Very striking was the case of a lady living at Hampstead, a section of London which was then free from cholera, who had acquired a liking for the water of this well and had brought out to her regularly bottles of water from the well. This lady drank some of the water on August 31 and was seized with cholera the next day. A niece drank of the same water and died of cholera as well as the aunt. A servant also contracted the disease but recovered.

Macnamara has noted the circumstance of a vessel of water, which became contaminated with cholera stools, but which at the time it was drunk by 19 persons did not show anything suspicious in odor, color or taste. One person was stricken one day afterwards, two on the third day and two others came down with cholera on the fourth day. It will be noted that only 5 of the 19 were attacked. A similar lack of susceptibility of a certain proportion of people, equally exposed, has been noted in all cholera outbreaks. It is probable that of those of the 19 who did not contract cholera there were developed cholera carriers.

Food Transmission.—Food contaminated by dejecta from cholera patients or carriers is dangerous in proportion to its condition of moisture. Drying and the development of inimical organisms are the two chief factors in destroying the cholera vibrio. Temperature and sunshine are operative in assisting the drying process.

Lettuce and celery are particularly dangerous because of the favorable condition of moisture in their folds and imbrications. Furthermore these vegetables are eaten uncooked and may have been fertilized with night soil (human excrement) which material, if containing cholera dejecta, would infect the plants. Milk is a splendid culture medium for cholera vibrios but, upon becoming acid, sterilizes itself of these vibrios. In sterilized milk, however, they live for extended periods, as long as 60 days and, even when such milk is contaminated by fecal material containing other organisms besides the cholera vibrio, the vibrios live much longer than they do in raw milk.

Milk is liable to be contaminated by flies which have been in contact with cholera stools. Water that has been boiled and food that has been cooked should subsequently be scrupulously protected from flies or other contaminating factors. Uncooked shell fish are peculiarly dangerous in cholera outbreaks.

Transmission by Carriers.—This is now universally recognized as the most important factor in the spread of cholera. Dunbar was the first to draw attention to the presence of virulent cholera spirilla in the faeces of apparently healthy persons during the Hamburg epidemic of 1892.

Since that time these observations have been generally confirmed. In some instances as many as 20% of those who have been in immediate contact with a cholera patient have become carriers, some showing symptoms of cholera but a larger proportion excreting cholera spirilla while continuing in health.

While cholera prevailed in Manila, McLaughlin found from 6 to 7 per cent. of carriers among healthy persons living in the infected districts.

Pottevin has recently reported that of 13,000 pilgrims examined 1.7 per thousand carried cholera vibrios. The carriers were especially common among the dysenteric patients. During the Naples epidemic of 1911 it was found that on the average 10% of healthy people in contact with cholera cases became carriers. It was estimated that 90% of the cases in this epidemic were infected by sick or healthy carriers.

Sergeant has recently reported the case of a healthy carrier who continued to excrete cholera vibrios for two months and during this time was in contact with 8 persons, 7 of whom became infected and 4 died. In Manila it was found that many of the children reported as dying of meningitis or infantile beriberi were cholera cases.

The vibrios are rarely excreted in the faeces of the cholera patients longer than 7 to 10 days. Frequently they disappear in 3 or 4 days.

With healthy cholera carriers the period of the continuance of vibrio excretion is equally short but cases have been reported where periods of from 3 weeks to 2 months have been noted. It is usually stated that 97% of carriers become vibrio free within a month.

Greig has found infection of the bile of the gall bladder or ducts in 80 cases in 271 cholera autopsies. While cholera spirilla are soon crowded out by intestinal bacteria, thus explaining the short period during which cholera spirilla are excreted by convalescents, this is not true when the cholera vibrio gets into the bile ducts or gall bladder. Greig found one cholera convalescent excreting cholera vibrios 44 days after the attack. Of 27 persons who had been in contact with cholera patients 6 were excreting cholera vibrios although apparently well.

A very important matter is that persons who fail to show cholera vibrios may begin to excrete such organisms after the administration of a purgative or following some intestinal disorder. In fact purgatives may set up an attack of cholera in a cholera carrier.

The spread of cholera is intimately connected with the great religious festivals

and pilgrimages of Oriental people. Not only do those of India keep up the dissemination of the disease there but pilgrims going from the delta of the Ganges to Mecca, carry the infection and transmit it to their fellow pilgrims from Egypt and Algiers.

The intimate commercial relations between Europe and Egypt and Algiers make the introduction of the disease into European ports an easy matter. Of particular importance is the fact that so many sick people make pilgrimages, these being peculiarly liable to act as carriers.

Lowered resistance, as from disease or from gastric disorder, increases the susceptibility to cholera. Errors in diet and in particular the effects of alcoholic excesses markedly predispose to infection.

PATHOLOGY

The cholera spirillum does not produce a soluble toxin, the toxic principle being intracellular. The organism rarely penetrates more deeply than just under the epithelial layer of the glands of Lieberkühn. As a result of the outpouring of the fluid into the lumen of the gut we have an increase in the red cells (7,000,000 per cu. mm.) and leucocytosis of from 12,000 to 50,000. The specific gravity of the blood is greatly raised, 1073 to 1078, and the alkalinity diminished. The blood pressure is markedly lowered, 60 mm. in very severe cases and 75 mm. in less severe ones.

The lower portion of the small intestines is the favorite location for the action of the endotoxin of cholera. Early and marked postmortem rigidity is a striking characteristic of the cholera cadaver. Muscular contractions, causing odd positions of the limbs, have at times given a basis for the idea that the victim had been buried alive.

Besides marked rigor mortis the emaciation, leaden hue of skin and shrivelled hands are noteworthy.

In opening up the body there is a striking dryness of all the structures. The dry and dark red muscles stand out prominently. The lungs are dry and shrunken. The right heart is full of a dark, jelly like, viscid blood. The leading changes are found in the abdomen. The omentum is dry, sticky and shrivelled looking. The intestines have a ground glass appearance with a lilac pink colour of the small intestines which is in contrast with the normal colour of the large intestines.

There is congestion of the affected intestinal mucosa and the lumen is filled with the alkaline rice water material. If the case is of some days standing we have a rather brownish, foul smelling bowel content. There is usually a parenchymatous nephritis and on section the medullary portion is much congested.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

A Typical Case of Cholera.—The so called prodromal or premonitory diarrhoea is not a feature of the onset of cholera gravis, the type of the disease which characterizes the cholera epidemic.

The period of incubation is usually from 1 to 5 days. Longer periods are possibly explained by some exciting intestinal disorder in a cholera carrier. The course of the disease is conveniently divided into a stage of evacuation, an algid one and a stage of reaction.

The Stage of Evacuation.—A profuse and frequent diarrhoea comes on without colic or tenesmus. In fact the stools are voided with a sense of relief as when an enema is gotten rid of. The striking feature, however, of these movements is the sensation of prostration which accompanies them. The fecal character of these diarrhoeal stools is soon lost and the typical rice water stool is now passed. This designation is very apt and the flocculi of intestinal epithelium, in a watery, slightly opaque fluid suggests rice water. The odour is slightly albuminous. Early in this stage cramps of the muscles set in. The muscles of the legs, especially the calf muscles and those of the feet are particularly liable to these very painful contractions which may cause the patient to cry out for relief. The muscles of the abdomen and back may also be involved as may at times the muscles of the entire body. Vomiting, at first of the contents of the stomach and later of rice water material, is a distressing feature to the patient and by reason of the manner in which it often gushes from the patient's mouth is liable to contaminate the attendants. Along with the excessive loss of fluid the tissues, especially of the face, become shrunk, the eyeballs with their congested conjunctivae sink back in the orbits, and the nose becomes pinched. The pulse becomes more and more feeble and there is a steady diminution in the secretion of urine. An increasing duskiness of the skin, which is cold and clammy to the touch, denotes the setting in of the algid stage.

Algid Stage.—In this stage there is almost complete cessation of circulation, even the incision of a vein is only followed by a drop of black tarry blood. Anuria is practically complete. The vomiting, purging and cramps may or may not subside and in the patient, with his great thirst, intense exhaustion and cadaveric appearance, with mental faculties fairly well preserved, we have an example of a living death. The temperature of the sodden, inelastic, clammy skin is

markedly depressed, even below 90° F., while the rectal temperature may approximate normal or be elevated. Some authorities consider a marked difference between the superficial and rectal temperatures as of bad prognosis.

The voice becomes husky and finally so feeble that the patient can only whisper and the breath feels cold.

The sodden shrivelled hands, as those of a washerwoman, are very characteristic. Thirst is intense.

The patient now falls into a listless, motionless state in which however the apathy is more apparent than real. The algidity may deepen and death ensue or the stage of reaction may set in. The algid stage may last from a few hours to 2 or 3 days.

Stage of Reaction.—The pulse returns, urine is again secreted and the duskiness and coldness of the skin give way to normal conditions and a favorable convalescence sets in. At other times, however, the rise of surface temperature and restoration of the circulation are not attended by urinary secretion.

In such cases a typhoid state ensues with accelerated respiration, dry, brown tongue and muttering delirium.

It is customary to divide the types of cholera cases into:

1. Cholera gravis. The type above described.
2. Cholerine. In this there is a more or less marked stage of evacuation with possibly the appearance of rice water stools. The urine however does not become suppressed and the algid stage is not entered upon.
3. Cholera sicca. This type of the disease is more apt to be seen in old or debilitated people. The patient dies of collapse without showing symptoms of vomiting or diarrhoea. At the autopsy one may find the bowels distended with rice water contents.

The so called cholera ambulans is simply another designation for the more or less ill cholera carrier.

Symptoms in Detail

General Appearance.—A typical case of cholera, with its cyanosed, drawn, pinched face, cold, clammy skin and the eyes deeply sunken in the orbits, makes a picture rarely seen in other conditions. The washerwoman's hands appearance should always be looked for.

Temperature Record.—The temperature of the skin surface is lowered from the normal while that of the rectum may be normal or even elevated. There may be a difference of 10 degrees or more between rectal and surface temperature. In the stage of reaction the temperature may continue to rise to high fever points and this so called hyperthermic type is very fatal.

Circulatory System.—The pulse is rapid and feeble in the stage of evacuation to become imperceptible in the algid stage. The circulation is practically at a stand-still so that only a few drops of black tarry blood, which does not coagulate readily, flow from a wound of a vein when giving an intravenous injection. The blood is concentrated and has a specific gravity of 1072 to 1078. The systolic pressure falls greatly, even to 60 mm. of mercury in a severe, or 75 mm. in a less serious case. The red cell count is increased to 7 or 8 million red cells per cu. mm. and the leucocyte count reaches 15,000 to 50,000.

Nervous System.—The mind is clear, even when the patient seems profoundly apathetic. The muscle cramps are characteristic of the disease.

DIAGNOSIS

Clinical Diagnosis.—It is customary to state that cholera nostras and infections with virulent meat poisoning bacteria of the paratyphoid group show bile in the intestinal discharges and not the typical rice water stools of true cholera. It must be remembered that these affections can at times show as marked muscular cramps, emaciation, cyanosis and weak voice as cholera so that only the bacteriological examination can differentiate.

Algid pernicious malaria generally shows a rather high axillary temperature and the stools are rarely so profuse as in cholera.

In ptomaine or mushroom poisoning the vomiting usually precedes the diarrhoea—the opposite of the order in cholera.

Acute intestinal obstructions may simulate but here we have fecal vomiting and constipation.

With irritant poisons as arsenic or antimony there is the metallic taste and the pains are chiefly abdominal and the stools rather dysenteric.

I have seen severe cases of bacillary dysentery which could not be differentiated clinically from cholera, and it is interesting to note that many cases of cholera occurring in the Balkan war were diagnosed as bacillary dysentery. In children cerebral manifestations are very common so that in the Philippines many such cholera cases were diagnosed as meningitis.

Laboratory Diagnosis.—It is well to first make a microscopical examination of the stool by taking one of the whitish epithelial flakes from the rice water material and making a straight smear which is then dried and fixed with heat. This may be stained best by a dilute carbol fuchsin (1 to 10). Methylene blue makes a good stain or more differential is that by Gram's method which shows the Gram negative spirilla stained by the bismark brown counter stain, giving the appearance of fish parallel to one another in a stream. According to Koch a diagnosis can be made in this way of one half the cases during an epidemic.

The scintillating motility of cholera spirilla may strike one in the examination of the stool in hanging drop.

Dunbar has a quick diagnostic method in which epithelial flakes from the stool are emulsified in peptone solution. Then on a slide, according to the method to be later described, is deposited a drop of 1 to 50 normal serum dilution and on the same slide a second drop of 1 to 500 dilution of cholera serum. A loopful of the suspected stool emulsion is rubbed up in each of these serum dilutions and we should have cessation of motility and clumping in the cholera immune serum provided the organisms in the stool are true cholera spirilla.

In case of an autopsy on a suspected case of cholera one should tie off, between double ligatures, at least 2 five inch sections of small intestines, one just above the ileo-caecal valve and one taken from about the middle of the ileum. These portions of gut should be dropped into sterile salt mouth bottles, well stoppered and sent to a bacteriological laboratory as soon as possible. As the cholera spirilla, when associated with faecal bacteria, tend to die off within 12 to 24 hours it would probably be advisable to inoculate an agar or blood serum slant with material from the ileum at the same time the sections of gut are removed. For diagnosis of a cholera carrier with a normal stool or a cholera suspect with a diarrhoeal one inoculate 2 or 3 tubes of peptone solution with 2 or 3 loopfuls of material from the stool. With suspected carriers who are constipated and to whom one should not give purgatives we may insert into the rectum a rubber tube or a throat swab in order to obtain material immediately. The cholera spirilla grow rapidly and being strong aerobes, they grow on the surface of the fluid so that by taking a loopful from the surface, we may in three to eight hours obtain a pure culture. Should there be a pellicle present, this should be avoided in transfer by tilting the tube slightly, so that the material near the surface be obtained without touching the pellicle. Inoculate a second tube from the surface of this first and, if necessary, a third (enrichment method).

Smear the three hour surface growth of a peptone culture on a dry agar surface in a Petri dish. From colonies developing make agglutination and, if desired, cultural tests. It is by immunity reactions and not by cultural ones that we identify cholera spirilla. The surface moisture of plates is best dried by the filter paper top.

The cholera colony is easily distinguished from the ordinary faecal bacterial colonies by its transparent, bluish-gray, delicate character. A practical quick method is to make smears from suspicious colonies, stain for one minute with dilute carbol fuchsin and if vibrios are present to make 2 vaseline rings on a single slide allowing ample space at one end for handling the preparation safely. Inside of one ring deposit with a platinum loop a drop of salt solution and inside the ring nearest the end which is to be held by fingers or forceps deposit a loopful of 1 to 500 or 1 to 1,000 dilution of cholera serum. The emulsion in the salt solution remains uniformly turbid and under a low power of the microscope ($\frac{2}{3}$ inch) shows a scintillating motility. The emulsion made into the drop of serum quickly shows a curdy agglutination and

upon examination with the $\frac{2}{3}$ inch objective shows clumping and absence of motility. Cover glasses placed over the two vaseline rings assist in the study of the preparation.

The best known selective medium for plating out cholera material is that of Dieudonne which is referred to under etiology. Apparently a more satisfactory medium is that proposed by Goldberger, this medium being transparent.

First prepare a 100% meat infusion by treating 500 grams of finely chopped lean beef with 500 c.c. water and after 3 hours strain the infusion, adjust reaction to neutral with 5.3% anhydrous sodium carbonate then add to each 100 c.c. 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ c.c. of the 5.3% anhydrous sodium carbonate, sterilize in Arnold for $\frac{1}{2}$ hour and filter. Next prepare a 3% meat extract agar and mix one volume of the alkaline meat infusion with 3 volumes of the hot melted 3% meat extract agar. Pour plates and cover with a piece of filter paper and place in incubator for $\frac{1}{2}$ hour until they are quite dry. The necessity for a surface without moisture applies to Dieudonne's and Krumwiede's alkaline egg media as well as this one. On this medium cholera grows well while faecal bacteria are restrained.

The cholera colony is clear, round and shows a brownish center but is without that striking bluish opalescence shown on ordinary agar plates.

While peptone solution is a more favorable enrichment medium and answers perfectly when cholera organisms are fairly abundant yet, when scarce, selective enrichment media may be desirable. Of these the best known is Ottolenghi's alkaline bile. Goldberger prefers an alkaline egg peptone solution made as follows: Shake up an egg with an equal quantity of water and add to this egg solution an equal quantity of a 5% solution of anhydrous sodium carbonate. Steam 1 hour. Then add 1 part of this alkaline egg medium to 9 parts of peptone solution, filter and sterilize.

Test for cholera red reaction. Add from three to five drops of concentrated chemically pure sulphuric acid to the first or second peptone culture after 18 to 24 hours growth. Some specimens of peptone do not give the reaction. At times we only get the cholera red when we have a pure culture of cholera.

PROGNOSIS

There is the greatest variation in the mortality in different epidemics as is true of most other epidemic diseases. At any rate 50% may be considered an average mortality.

Young children and old people give a very high mortality rate as is also true of alcoholics and those with kidney disease.

PROPHYLAXIS AND TREATMENT

Prophylaxis.—Of all the quarantinable diseases cholera is the one in which personal prophylaxis is apparently of greatest influence in protection from infection.

In the presence of cholera one should not only drink recently boiled water, which has been protected from the contaminating influence of flies, but all forms of uncooked food should be avoided. In the first rank of prohibited foods should be raw shell fish and uncooked salads. Such articles as lettuce and celery are particularly dangerous on account of the moisture retained. Fruits such as bananas and oranges can be made safe by covering them with boiling water for 2 or 3 minutes and subsequently peeling. Care must be taken that native servants do not put fish, which may have been contaminated with cholera infected water, on the ice in an ice box and through such a source to have the butter, etc., infected. The most scrupulous attention should be given the matter of the care of the ice box in the tropics.

If conditions are such that boiled water cannot be obtained the water may be treated with good quality chlorinated soda. As a stock solution we use 1 teaspoonful of chlorinated soda to 1 pint of water and of this 1 teaspoonful to 2 gallons of the water to be disinfected. Pottevin recommends 6 hours contact with hypochlorite of soda, 1 mg. per liter.

Besides care of the food and water ingested particular attention should be paid to the washing of the hands before eating and if in contact with cholera cases careful disinfection of the hands.

Experience in cholera epidemics has shown the importance of avoiding anything which might lower resistance. In particular are fatigue, excesses in alcohol or the taking of any kind of indigestible foods to be avoided. It must be remembered that the use of purgatives may set up cholera in a cholera carrier so that this possibility should be thought of.

Tea has been recommended as a prophylactic, as has also eucalyptus oil, 10 minims twice daily.

As acids have an inimical effect on the cholera spirilla some have recommended the use of acid drinks but as a matter of fact the best prophylactic is the normal gastric juice and there is a possibility that the use of such acid drinks might upset the digestion and thus defeat the object desired.

As to municipal measures for the control of a cholera outbreak the most important one is to diagnose cholera carriers, such cases often occurring in those associated with a cholera case. Such carriers should be isolated and their stools disinfected until at least 2 negative examinations show them to have ceased being cholera carriers. Of course a cholera case should be isolated and kept in a fly screened room.

For disinfection of stools one requires an equal amount of a 5% compound cresol solution which when mixed with the same amount of stool becomes a 2 1/2% solution. This should be in contact with the stool at least 1 hour before emptying the container. Chlorinated lime, 1 lb. to 4 gallons, makes a splendid disinfectant for stools—equal parts of this 1 to 16 chlorinated lime solution and stool.

Bed clothing or other material contaminated by vomitus or faeces should be

immersed in a 2 1/2% compound cresol solution. All food utensils should be disinfected by boiling.

Persons attending cholera cases should wear gowns and remove the same upon leaving the room. Particular care should be exercised in hand disinfection after attending a cholera case.

There is no danger from aerial conveyance of infectious material other than the possibility of ones coming within the danger zone of a vomiting patient. Therefore for disinfection of a room occupied by a cholera patient we need not use formaldehyde gas but washing of floors and lower part of walls with 2 1/2% compound cresol solution is sufficient. The stock solution of chlorinated lime, 1 lb. to 4 gallons, is suitable for mopping floors and walls.

Vaccination prophylaxis against cholera has been less used than has been the case with plague or typhoid fever. The anti-cholera sera have no practical value prophylactically and the same statement applies to the use of such sera in treatment of cholera.

Ferran, in 1885, was the first one to use cholera vaccines in prophylaxis. Haffkine, in 1893, adopted the use of a preliminary subcutaneous injection of an attenuated cholera organism to be succeeded later by one, the virulence of which had been exalted by passage through animals to a fixed virulence. (Pasteur's anthrax method.) He now only uses the fixed virulence vaccine. This vaccine is not killed by heat.

The statistics indicate quite a reduction in susceptibility on the part of vaccinated persons (probably 8 to 1) but only slight lessening of mortality rate. Of 5549 non vaccinated 198 contracted cholera and 124 died. Of 5778 vaccinated 27 contracted cholera and 14 died.

In the recent Balkan war Kolle's vaccine was employed with considerable success. This vaccine is killed by exposure to 58° C. for one hour. It was found that this vaccine was not only of value prophylactically but diminished case mortality as well, the vaccinated showing a 20% mortality as against a 34% one for the non-vaccinated.

Among, 72,653 soldiers, having 2 inoculations of this vaccine, the incidence of cholera was about 13 times less than among 14,332 who were not vaccinated.

There is much to indicate that Strong's cholera autolysate is of value prophylactically. In this cholera cultures are killed at 60° C. The killed culture is then allowed to digest itself in the incubator at 37° C. for three or four days (peptonization). The preparation is then filtered and from 2 to 5 c.c. of the filtrate is injected.

Treatment.—Many of the older authorities recommended the use of various astringent medications for the checking of suspicious diarrhoeas and most of these prescriptions contained opium in some form, such as lead and opium pills or aromatic sulphuric acid and laudanum.

In view of the fact that for the infection of animals Koch had to employ opium for checking peristalsis in addition to neutralization of gastric juice it would seem very undesirable to use opium by mouth. Calomel in divided doses and continued over 1 or 2 days, but not exceeding 7 or 8 grains, has been recommended.

At present the treatment which is thought to give the best results is the permanganate one proposed by Rogers. In this the patient is given calcium permanganate water ad libitum and 2 grain pills of potassium permanganate every $1\frac{1}{2}$ hour until the stools become more fecal in character. These pills are made up with vaseline and coated with a mixture of 1 part salol and 5 parts of sandarach varnish.

A great objection to any form of oral medication is the tendency to vomiting. This can in a measure be controlled by cracked ice or by a small hypodermic of morphia. The latter drug also relieves the very painful cramps.

One danger which must always be borne in mind in giving more than one dose of any drug subcutaneously is that with the slowing or cessation of circulation, coming on with the algid state, we have no absorption but, when the stage of reaction sets in and the drug, whether morphine or toxic stimulant, begins to be taken up, there may ensue a fatal poisoning.

However the views of authorities may conflict as to special forms of treatment there is universal acceptance of the employment of intravenous injections of fluid to combat collapse. Normal saline is the fluid usually used but Rogers recommends his hypertonic solution which consists of 120 grains of sodium chloride, 6 grains of potassium chloride and 4 grains of calcium chloride to the pint of water.

In the Phillippines the normal saline seemed to answer as well as the hypertonic solution.

Sellards had success in combating anuria, which is one of the most dangerous conditions encountered in cholera, and at the same time answered equally well with normal saline in relieving collapse, by giving 2% sodium bicarbonate injections.

There is a marked acidosis in cholera and this form of treatment seems indicated.

The objection to using sodium carbonate is that the salt has a lytic action on red cells in vitro and furthermore Sellards found that it tended to cause convulsions in one of his cholera cases. Sodium bicarbonate, even in 4 or 5% concentration does not have any haemolysing effect on the red cells. Of course it is true that in sterilization the bicarbonate tends to be converted into carbonate but Sellards found that by sterilization in an autoclave connected with live steam, at 7 pounds pressure, this was minimized, only about 25% of the bicarbonate being converted into carbonate after 1 hour.

If the temperature by rectum is about normal or slightly below, the temperature of the fluid should be 102° to 104° F. and one usually gives about 2 quarts.

Owing to the collapse of the veins it is usually necessary to cut down on them instead of inserting the needle through the skin as for salvarsan injections. The same apparatus as for salvarsan injections is suitable but with a somewhat larger container as we give from 1 to 2 quarts of fluid. At least 15 minutes should be taken up for the introduction of 1 quart of fluid.

To determine the necessity for intravenous infusion in cholera Rogers has recently recommended the employment of small bottles containing aqueous solu-

tion of glycerine with specific gravities varying from 1048 to 1070, increasing the specific gravity in each successive bottle by 2°.

An accurate urinometer will suffice to determine the specific gravity. Drops of blood from the cholera patient are deposited at the center of the surface of the fluid in the bottles from a capillary pipette. If the specific gravity of the blood is 1062 at least a liter of saline or sodium bicarbonate solution is needed. If 1066 at least 2 liters. Formerly he estimated the indications by blood pressure, considering a pressure of 80 in Europeans or of 70 in natives as indicating intravenous injections.

Hot water bottles should be used to keep up the body heat. No food should be given during the first 36 hours but after that time we may give broths or albumin water.

CHAPTER XII

MALTA FEVER

DEFINITION AND SYNONYMS

Definition.—Malta fever is a septicaemic condition due to the presence of the specific organism, *Micrococcus melitensis*, in the blood and various organs, especially spleen. It runs a protracted course, averaging 3 or 4 months but is attended with very slight mortality (2 percent.). The fever course resembles that of a typhoid fever with two or more relapses in that a step like rise of fever for 10 or 12 days is followed by a similar fall during the succeeding week or 10 days, an afebrile interval of a few days then ensuing, to be followed by a second or third or even tenth febrile wave with the separating days of apyrexia. The course of the disease may last for a year or more attended with progressive anaemia and manifestations of neurasthenia. Very characteristic are sudden swellings of various joints which subside in a few hours to entirely disappear in a few days. Neuralgic manifestations, especially sciatica, are prominent features of the disease. It is chiefly spread by the milk of infected goats and can best be prevented by boiling such milk.

Synonyms.—Febris undulans (from the wave like monthly accessions of fever). Mediterranean, Gibraltar or "Rock," Neapolitan, Cyprus fever (from the geographical distribution). Febris sudoralis (from the night sweats). Mediterranean phthisis (from the bronchitis, anaemia and night sweats resembling phthisis). Melitensis septicaemia. Febris melitensis.

HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION

History.—It is generally considered that a disease described by Hippocrates, in which there was an irregular febrile course without crisis but showing relapses and running a very prolonged course, was probably Malta fever.

In 1861 Marston showed on clinical and pathological grounds that the disease was different from typhoid fever.

In 1887, Colonel Bruce isolated the causative organism from the spleen at autopsy and established the demands of Koch's postulates by reproducing the disease in monkeys with cultures from the spleen and then recovering the organism from the monkeys.

Our present accurate knowledge of the epidemiology of Malta fever and its connection with the use of the milk of goats is due to the work of a Commission appointed to investigate the disease—1904 to 1907.

Geographical Distribution.—It is usual to consider Malta as the focus of the disease, with the cities of the Mediterranean shores showing quite a degree of infection. It is probable that the spread of the disease has been in part connected with the importation of Maltese goats, these animals being desirable on account of their superior yield of milk. It is now known that outside of the Mediterranean basin the disease exists in India East and South Africa as well as Northern Africa, China, North and South America and the West Indies.

Mohler has shown that the disease under the names of "slow fever" and "mountain fever" has existed in Texas and New Mexico for at least twenty five years.

ETIOLOGY AND EPIDEMIOLOGY

Etiology.—The causative organism, *Micrococcus melitensis*, is a small coccus, rather oval than round and about .4 mikron in diameter. In morphology it is quite variable and may occur in pairs or in short chains and is Gram negative. It emulsifies evenly and rapidly in a hanging drop preparation and is non motile. Possibly on account of its showing a rather active Brownian motion there has been a reporting of slight motility by some authorities. Very striking is the characteristic of very slow growth so that cultures on agar fail to show colonies before the fourth day.

These minute transparent colonies become somewhat opaque and about 1/10 inch in diameter by the tenth day. Gelatine is not liquefied and litmus milk is not altered. The optimum reaction of media is about +.75 to phenolphthalein and it grows best at the body temperature. It has great powers of resistance to drying so that it survives in dust for long periods.

Horses, cows, asses, as well as goats, are susceptible. It is very difficult to infect rabbits, mice and guinea pigs. Monkeys have been chiefly utilized in experimental work.

It would appear as if there were other organisms closely related to *M. melitensis* and a great deal is now being written as to confusing serum reactions from the use of *M. paramelitensis*.

Epidemiology.—Many experiments have failed to show any mosquito, biting fly or louse as a probable factor in the transmission of the disease. The infection is readily transmitted by subcutaneous inoculation so that in a case in goat or man, with the cocci in the per-

ipheral circulation, it is reasonable to suppose that a biting insect might transfer the infection by going directly from one animal to another. There have been several laboratory infections, but when we consider that of the great number of cases treated at Haslar hospital and elsewhere in England, and practically no infections among the friends or attendants it would seem as if usual methods of infection were inoperative. Urine showing bacterial contamination, when dried and mixed with dust, has caused infection and contaminated urine applied to the glans penis of a monkey caused the disease.

As a large proportion of the prostitutes of Malta showed infection and as *M. melitensis* was found in urine and vaginal discharges of many of these it is possible that sexual intercourse may be a factor in transmission.

The Commission noted many cases of Malta fever among the goat-herds. By agglutination tests it was found that one half of the goats showed agglutinins in their serum. Of 28 monkeys given infected milk 26 became infected. Very conclusive was the case of the "Joshua Nicholson" which ship carried 65 Maltese goats from Malta to the United States. Of ten of the crew who drank goats' milk on the voyage, eight became infected. It is reported, that when the goats reached the United States and were quarantined, a woman drank of their milk and became infected.

What may be deemed proof positive is the practical disappearance of the disease among the naval and military forces of Malta, as the result of boiling the milk, while still continuing among native civilians. Bassett-Smith has noted that in 1905 there were 798 cases among civilians and 245 naval cases. In 1907 there were 457 cases among civilians and only 12 cases in the naval forces.

There are however occasional cases which Shaw has considered as due to carriers. As the organisms are excreted in faeces as well as in urine, and as the course of the disease is so protracted, as well as the convalescence, it would seem that the carrier factor should be of more importance than facts would justify.

Mohler has noted that in Texas, where the disease has existed for twenty-five years, the Mexican goatherds boiled their milk and hence were rarely infected.

The souring of milk does not destroy the germs of the disease, hence transmission may be brought about by butter and cheese.

Malta fever was stamped out of Port Said by destroying all infected goats.

Infection may occur, 1. by the stomach atrium (usual), 2. contaminated dust reaching lungs, 3. by subcutaneous injection.

PATHOLOGY AND MORBID ANATOMY

The germs are found early in the blood and spleen; and are also present in lymphatic glands and kidneys.

The blood is most apt to contain them at the height of the fever curve and a striking feature is the appearance in waves of the organisms in blood, urine or milk. While serum immunity reactions are striking features, there is some question as to the conference of immunity by an attack.

At post-mortem we have an enlarged, congested, soft spleen with swollen Malpighian bodies. The kidneys may show a nephritis and the mesenteric glands be swollen. The intestines fail to show the characteristic lesions of typhoid fever.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

A Typical Case.—Following a period of incubation, varying from 10 to 15 days, headache, malaise and anorexia set in with a step like rise of fever from day to day. Constipation is the rule and there is an early tenderness and enlargement of the spleen. There is much to suggest typhoid fever in the gradual ascent of the remittent fever for about 10 or 12 days and the gradual descent during the succeeding 10 or 12 days. There is often a slight bronchitis, with cough, which, when associated with a profuse sweating at night, may suggest phthisis. Following the initial period of fever there is usually a short afebrile interval of a few days to be succeeded by a second, third or many of these febrile waves, thereby making one of the names, undulant fever, appropriate. Anaemia becomes marked and cardiac weakness, as shown by palpitation and rapid, irregular pulse, apparent.

The symptoms which aid us most in diagnosis are joint manifestations and neuralgic pains. These may come on quite early in the course of the disease or be delayed until succeeding febrile waves set in. Swelling and pain, but without redness, of a single joint may come on rather suddenly, to have the acute symptoms subside in a few hours and to be entirely normal in 3 or 4 days.

It is however the peripheral nerves, even more than the joints, for which the toxic effects of *M. melitensis* show a preference. The sciatic nerve seems to be most often involved and sciatica may set in suddenly and acutely, to pass off in 2 or 3 days, leaving a soreness over the course of the nerve and a tendency to recurrence. Orchitis may occasionally set in. There is usually albuminuria.

Insomnia is usually quite a prominent feature of the disease and there is a great tendency for nervous prostration to develop.

The usual course of the disease runs for 3 or 4 months but may last almost a year.

Besides the typical cases there may appear those with rather marked hyperpyrexia and cardiac failure, often referred to as the malignant type of Malta fever.

Even with occasional cases of this type the mortality does not run above 2 per cent. It should be stated that while not serious from a standpoint of mortality it is to be dreaded from the possibility of invalidism. The neuralgic pains, insomnia and mental depression render patients liable to the morphine habit.

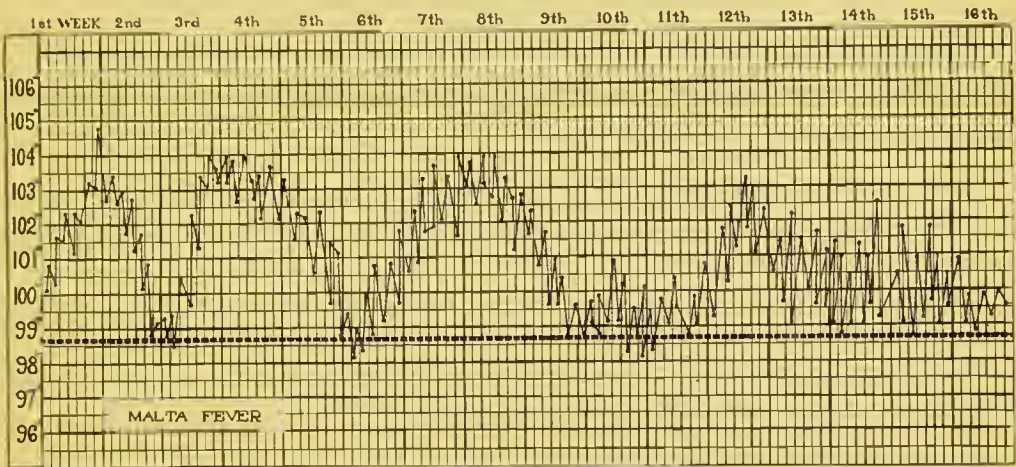


FIG. 40.—Temperature chart of Malta Fever. (After Scheube.)

SYMPTOMS IN DETAIL

Temperature Chart.—Except in the malignant form of the disease, when the temperature may be rather continuous, the fever course is a step like ascent with daily remissions for about 10 days and then a similar descent. Following an evening rise of temperature night sweats may be noted.

It is the wave like succession of such courses of fever, separated by afebrile intervals, that suggests the name undulant fever.

Circulatory System.—The disease shows rather a toxic effect on the heart as shown by palpitation and irregularity and rapidity of pulse rate. Anaemia is a rather marked feature.

Respiratory System.—A slight bronchitis with cough tends to suggest phthisis in those cases which show rather marked night sweats.

Nervous System.—The organism seems to have a selective action on the nervous system as shown by headache, various neuralgias, insomnia, apathy and neurasthenia. Sciatica is probably the most common peripheral nerve involvement.

Joint Symptoms.—Very characteristic are the sudden and painful swellings of various joints, especially hip, shoulder, ankle and knee. Not rarely the costosternal articulations may be involved. The acute symptoms subside in a few hours and the joints become normal in a few days.

Genito Urinary System.—Other than for albuminuria and the presence at intervals

of the causative bacteria in the urine, there is nothing of note, except the occurrence of orchitis in about 3 per cent of cases.

The Blood.—The white count is about normal or slightly reduced—6500 on the average. The cells of lymphocyte type tend to show an increase in percentage with a corresponding reduction of polymorphonuclears.

There is a secondary anaemia.

The spleen shows early enlargement and tenderness.

DIAGNOSIS

Clinical Diagnosis.—The diseases most apt to be confused with Malta fever are typhoid fever, malignant tertian malaria, liver abscess, influenza, phthisis and kala azar.

Besides the agglutination, complement fixation or blood culture aids, we rely upon the sudden onset of joint involvement or neuralgic manifestations as indicating Malta fever.

Usually the splenic enlargement about corresponds with that of typhoid fever but at times it may be so marked as to equal that of malaria or even kala azar.

The absence of rose spots as well as the marked apathetic state and the tendency to diarrhoea should aid in differentiating typhoid.

In kala azar the double temperature rise in 24 hours with the *Leishmania* bodies in spleen puncture material, instead of *M. melitensis*, are differentiating.

The short course and more sudden onset of influenza and the more marked pulmonary symptoms of phthisis should prove diagnostic aids.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS.—Eyre obtained cultures from blood from the 2nd to 300th day of the disease. He recommended the taking of at least 5 c.c. from a vein and that this be done at a time when the fever is at its maximum point—the days when the fever is at its maximum and in the evening of that day. By taking 20 to 30 c.c. in an equal amount of citrated salt solution, as described in chapter on blood examination, one should have as great success as had Eyre—158 positive in 235 cases, or 65.4 per cent.

It must be remembered that the colonies only appear about the 4th day, becoming quite distinct by the 10th day.

Agglutination is the chief reliance in diagnosis. As result of two infections in his laboratory Widal uses emulsions killed by 3/4 per cent of formalin. He uses the microscopic method in the test with dilutions not exceeding 1 to 200. Such emulsions keep for at least a year.

In connection with agglutination tests Nicolle recommends that the serum be separated at once and removed from the clot and Nègre has shown that by heating the serum to 56° C., for 30 minutes, reactions are not obtained with non specific sera.

Some workers prefer the macroscopic agglutination.

Complement fixation methods are of value but the application of such tests is confined to large laboratories.

PROGNOSIS

The mortality is usually reported as 2 per cent, but there have been epidemics where the mortality, owing to the frequency of the very fatal malignant type, has exceeded 10 per cent. It must be remembered however that the invaliding connected with the long course of the disease and protracted convalescence makes Malta fever a serious affection. Neurasthenia, susceptibility to neuralgias, cardiac weakness and formation of morphine habit may result from the disease.

PROPHYLAXIS AND TREATMENT

The danger from carriers seems slight but should be considered. Disinfection of excreta, in particular urine, is important.

Boiling of goat's milk or killing of infected goats is a prime consideration.

There is no specific treatment generally recognized as efficient. Recently, an anti-melitensis serum, from animals injected with the nucleo-proteid material from the organisms, has been used with some success.

Bassett-Smith recommends an autogenous vaccine, during the afebrile period, in doses of from 50 to 200 millions. He also thinks yeast in 2 drachm doses to be of value. Phenacetin or aspirin may be given, but the heart weakness makes extensive use of these analgesics dangerous.

The diet should be that for any acute disease but the protracted course makes it necessary to have regard to an adequate food value.

Some recommend moderate use of alcoholic stimulation but this treatment is questionable.

Cold sponging and local applications to joint or nerve involvements are indicated. Morphine should be employed with great caution.

CHAPTER XIII

LEPROSY

DEFINITION AND SYNONYMS

Definition.—Leprosy is a very chronic, almost incurable disease, with a protracted period of incubation (2 to 10 years), which sets in with indefinite prodromata of malaise, irregular febrile attacks associated with sweating and somnolence. In nerve leprosy there may be vague manifestations of neuritis as prodromata. There are two well recognized types of the disease. The type characterized by granulomatous proliferations in corium and subcutaneous tissues as well as lymphatic glands is known as nodular or skin leprosy and shows spots and nodular infiltrations, chiefly about lobes of ears, alae of nose and region of eyebrows, with falling out of hairs of eyebrows and bearded region, and also involves extensor surfaces of forearms, dorsal surfaces of hands and feet. The palms of hands and soles of feet are almost never invaded. The other type is known as nerve or maculo-anaesthetic leprosy and is characterized by nerve thickenings, flat anaesthetic spots, chiefly of the covered region of the body, muscular palsies and atrophies, with trophic changes leading to contractures and mutilations. When the two types are associated we have mixed leprosy.

The disease is caused by an acid fast bacillus, which has not surely been cultivated or inoculated into animals with pathogenic result, and which is found in extraordinary ^{FI}abundance in the granulomatous sub-epithelial tissues of nodular leprosy and in scanty numbers or not at all in the perineurium and endoneurium of the ulnar, facial or perineal nerves.

Synonyms.—Lepra. Elephantiasis Graecorum. Leontiasis. Satyriasis. French: La Lèpre. German: Aussatz.

HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION

History.—There are those who consider India as the home of leprosy, a condition corresponding to the disease having been described in the Rig Veda, of date of 1400, B. C.

Others regard Egypt as the original focus, a disease similar to leprosy having been described in the "Ebers papyrus" of date of about 1300, B. C.

Any one reading chapter xiii, Leviticus, must be convinced that the disease there described as leprosy was of a different nature. We find statements to the effect that where the hair in the spot is white and the spot deeper than the skin of the flesh that it is leprosy; again, if there be a white or red rising it is not leprosy, but if lower than the skin it is leprosy. At the same time other references in the Bible would indicate that leprosy was more or less prevalent among the Jews of that period.

It is very probable that the ancients confused leprosy with many other diseases where ulceration and nodular disfigurement were conspicuous features.

From the fact that leprosy was called the Phoenecian disease it would seem that Asia was the real home of the disease.

It is well established that leprosy was introduced into Europe, from Egypt, in the first century, B. C., by the returning legions of Pompey.

As a result of the crusades, leprosy was spread widely over Europe by the crusaders, so that in the 14th century the disease was so prevalent, that it required

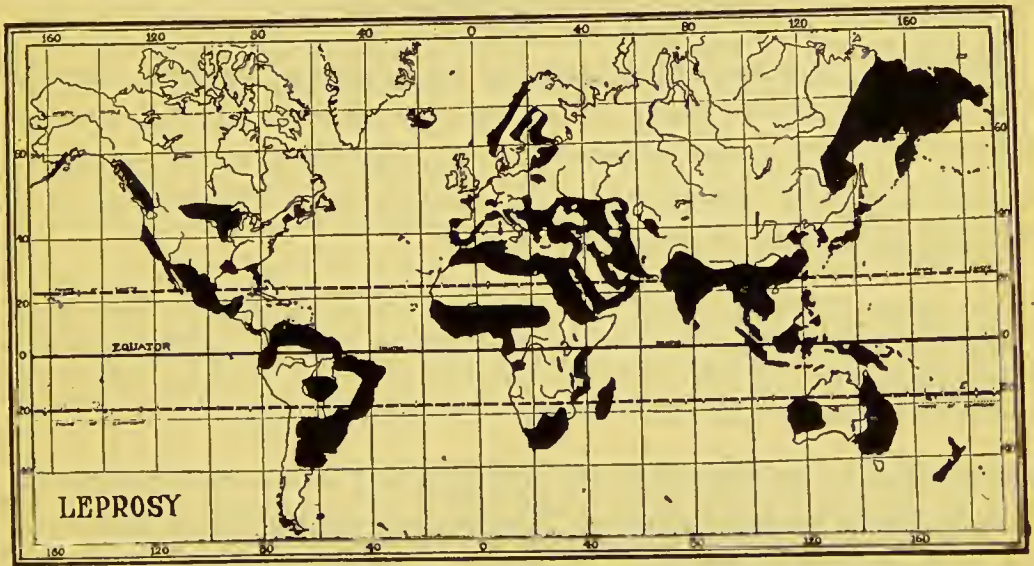


FIG. 41.—Geographical distribution of leprosy.

approximately 20,000 leper asylums to care for the lepers. In France alone there were about 2,000 such leprosarua.

As a result of the most drastic measures of isolation the disease began to decrease in the 14th century and had practically disappeared from Europe, as a whole, by the 15th century.

Geographical Distribution.—With the exception of a limited and steadily diminishing number of cases in Norway and Sweden, with an uncertain number in the Balkan region and Turkey, leprosy has almost disappeared from Europe. Parts of Brittany and Provence in France show cases and there are a considerable number in Portugal and Spain.

Africa is heavily infected with the disease, especially in Central and East Africa.

In certain portions of the Cameroons (Banyang) it is so common that one in every four persons suffer from leprosy.

Asia has many important leprosy centers, there being a very great number in China and India. There are about 100,000 lepers in Japan and about 3000 in the Philippines.

In 1902 there were 278 lepers in the United States, of which number 145 were native born. In 1912 there were only 146 distributed chiefly in three centers. 1. That of the Great Lakes, there being now 13 cases in Minnesota as against 27 in 1900. 2. Among the Orientals of the Pacific Coast, and 3. in the Gulf region, especially about Louisiana and Florida.

There are 696 lepers in Hawaii and 28 in Porto Rico.

In South America, the disease is found in Columbia, Venezuela and Brazil as is also true of Mexico and Central America.

In Australia the disease is found in Queensland and New South Wales.

It also prevails in New Caledonia and the islands of the Pacific.

ETIOLOGY AND EPIDEMIOLOGY

Etiology.—Leprosy is caused by an acid fast bacillus, *Bacillus leprae*, which rather closely resembles the tubercle bacillus morphologically as well as tinctorially. It was first discovered by Hansen in 1871 and fully reported in 1874. Much of our knowledge of its characteristics is due to Neisser (1879).

The leprosy bacilli are found in profusion in the granulomatous tissue of the corium and subcutaneous structures of the leprous nodules, chiefly within cells called "lepra cells" and also within endothelial and connective tissue cells as well as lying free, packed in lymphatic channels, the so called "globi."

The leprosy bacillus may be distinguished from the tubercle bacillus by the following points: 1. The presence ordinarily of huge numbers of bacilli often grouped in packets like a bundle of cigars tied together.

It will be remembered that it is very difficult to find even a single tubercle bacillus in a skin lesion. Leprosy bacilli form pallisade groups but not chains. 2. The leprosy bacilli stain more solidly and when granules are present they are coarser and more widely separated than the fine granulations of the tubercle bacillus.

3. They do not stand decolorization quite as well as the tubercle bacillus.

With 20% sulphuric acid in water they hold their color almost as well as tubercle bacilli but with 3% HCl in alcohol they decolorize in about two hours as against 12 to 24 hours for the tubercle bacillus.

4. Leprosy bacilli have neither been surely cultivated nor surely inoculated with pathogenic results into guinea pigs or other experimental animals and it is by the negative results upon cultivating or animal inoculation that we have our surest method of differentiation from tubercle bacilli.

Leprosy bacilli are chiefly spread through the lymphatics, but in nodular leprosy, their occurrence in the blood stream during the febrile accessions is so constant that this route may also be of importance. Next to the corium they are most abundant in the lymphatic glands. They stain readily by Gram's method.

A great amount of work has been done within recent years in attempting to cultivate the leprosy bacillus.

About 10 years ago Kedrowski cultivated a diphtheroid organism from leprous nodules which, when inoculated into rats and mice, regained its acid fast characteristics and produced in the experimental animals lesions resembling those of human leprosy. The character of the growth of the organism resembles avian tuberculosis.

Rost obtained a culture on a salt free medium from which he prepared his leprolin by a process similar to that used for old tuberculin. It was claimed that leprolin had marked curvative power in leprosy. Recently Williams and Rost have cultivated a streptothrix on a medium containing milk.

Clegg, by inoculating his medium with cultural amoebae, obtained growth of a diphtheroid organism, with acid fast tendencies, from the spleen pulp of lepers.

Duval, by using media containing amino-acids, as result of tryptic digestion, brought forward two organisms, one of which was a diphtheroid and grew luxuriantly while the other showed a slow scanty growth and was acid fast.

Bayon, by using placental media, isolated an organism rather resembling that of Kedrowski. These organisms alone responded to immunity tests when such were made by Bayon and they alone gave rise to tissue changes resembling those of leprosy when injected into animals.

Professor Deycke obtained a streptothrix like growth from the granulomatous tissue of excised leprous nodules. The ethereal extract from this culture gave a neutral fat which he called nastin and which is the basis of a leprosy treatment.

Quite recently and after working for 18 months, with material from 32 non ulcerative cases of nodular leprosy, not only with media as recommended by Duval, Rost and Bayon, but with blood and serum culture media, both by aerobic and anaerobic procedures, Fraser has been unable, in a single instance, to obtain any evidence of growth from this wealth of leprosy material.

As being opposed to the possibility of culturing the human leprosy bacillus, it may be stated that most of the experiments along this line with rat leprosy, a disease occurring naturally in rats and caused by an organism almost identical, as to lesions produced, with the leprosy bacillus, have been negative. Bayon, however, states that he has cultivated the bacillus of rat leprosy.

Epidemiology.—There is a concensus of opinion that every case of leprosy owes its origin to contact, direct or indirect, with some other case, but evidence as to the manner in which the disease is transmitted, or even the proof of transmission, is to a great extent lacking. Every book refers to the inoculation experiment by Arning, of a freshly excised leprous nodule sewn into a skin incision of the arm of a condemned criminal. In this case a neuritis developed shortly after the inoculation and the patient showed fully developed leprosy three years later. Unfortunately for the value of the experiment the man was a native of Hawaii and had lepers in his own family. Against this experiment are the numerous instances where physicians have inoculated themselves and others with leprous material with invariable negative results.

As regards those living for a long time in attendance on lepers there have been a very few instances of the contraction of leprosy as in the cases of Father Damien at Molokai, and two instances in Sisters of Mercy. Such cases however are most exceptional, as the hundreds of attendants on the unfortunates continue their work for years without showing any signs of leprosy.

There are two cases which show that those who live in close relation to lepers may develop the disease; in one, a leper returned to Ireland and his brother, who had never been in a leprosy country, but who had occupied the same bed with the leper and worn his clothes, developed the disease in about five years. A similar case is reported from Germany.

As showing that even with intimate contact, infection is rare, it is stated that of 225 healthy Hawaiians, living in the same houses with lepers, only 4 $1/2\%$ contracted leprosy. Even when married to lepers only 9 out of 181 healthy people contracted leprosy from their leprous mates.

In Japan, 7% of children of lepers contract the disease, 3.8% of those married to lepers and 2.7% of people living in the same house with lepers.

One of the strongest proofs that leprosy is at least feebly contagious is that based on the disappearance of the disease following isolation of the lepers. The best instance is that of Europe, in the 13th and 14th century, where, with 20,000 leper asylums for isolation, the disease disappeared by the 15th century. In Norway, there were 2833 cases in 1856, while in 1907, there were only 438 left. The reduction is attributed to isolation.

This might have occurred without isolation because Hansen in investigating the descendants of 160 known Norwegian lepers, who

immigrated to the North Western States of America, was unable to find trace of a single leper among their descendants.

This and other facts militate against the views that leprosy may be inherited and the idea is generally held that if a child be taken away from its leprous surroundings after birth there is little or no likelihood of its developing leprosy.

Views as to Mode of Transmission.—It may be stated that nothing definite is known. There has been an idea that itch mites might transmit the disease but no proof has been advanced. Lebouf found leprosy bacilli in the stomachs of flies, which had been feeding on leprotic ulcerations, and did not find acid fast rods in flies which had fed on persons with nerve leprosy or upon those not showing open lesions. He thinks that flies may deposit faeces containing bacilli about the nasal orifices or upon wounds of well persons, bringing about thereby their infection.

Skelton was unable to find evidences of leprosy bacilli in bedbugs living in the beds of lepers. Paldrock also was unable to find any evidence of leprosy bacilli in bedbugs feeding on leprous tissue after a few hours, but did find acid fast rods in cock-roaches which had fed on leprosy nodules, even 14 days after the feeding.

A. J. Smith fed bedbugs on Duval's organism and recovered acid fast bacilli for considerable periods. The question arises, however, as to the significance of Duval's bacillus for leprosy.

Acid fast bacilli have been reported from headlice and mosquitoes, when the insects have been feeding on leprous tissue, but little or no evidence of any multiplication has been obtained.

For many years Jonathan Hutchinson insisted that leprosy was caused by the eating of salted fish, a view which now has no supporters.

For a time it was considered that the initial lesions of leprosy were to be found in the nasal mucosa and especially in ulcerations of the nasal septum and that it was by the atrium of the nasal mucous membrane that infection occurred. There is no question but that the examination of the nasal mucus for leprosy bacilli is of prime importance in diagnosis and it may be that cases showing ulcerations of the septum are especially dangerous when sneezing, but very few believe that leprosy is to any extent contracted through this channel.

With a period of incubation covering from 2 to 10 years it is of course manifestly difficult to arrive at any correct idea as to transmission but there is a growing belief that the free and frequent use of soap is a decided factor in preventing infection which may, like rat leprosy, be best brought about by continued contact with a skin surface more or less abraded. There has been a suspicion, but no proof, that sexual intercourse may bring about infection.

Rat Leprosy.—A disease occurring naturally among rats was first observed by Stefansky, in Odessa, in 1903.

There are two types. 1. Of skin and muscles and 2. of the lymphatic glands. In the skin form areas of alopecia are present with thickening of the site invaded. These areas are most often on the back of the head. Just as in human leprosy the epithelium is unaffected, the corium however being filled with cells packed with acid fast bacilli, exactly similar to the picture in human leprosy. Ulceration of these subcutaneous nodules is common.

In the glandular type the glands are enlarged and the lymph sinuses packed with the causative bacilli.

In rat leprosy it has been found that infection of other rats takes place as readily through slight abrasions of the skin as when material is injected subcutaneously.

The idea is that natural infection occurs by way of the skin and through the lymphatics. There is no evidence that insects play a part in transmission.

Rat leprosy prevails extensively in Europe, Asia and America. Although similar etiologically and pathologically there does not seem to be any connection between the disease in rat and in man, as is the case with human and rat plague.

The prevalence of rat leprosy in the various parts of the world varies greatly, thus in Odessa 4 to 5% of the rats are infected while in San Francisco only 1/5 of 1%.

PATHOLOGY AND MORBID ANATOMY

In whatever way introduced the leprosy bacilli tend to invade and multiply in the lymphatics of the corium and subcutaneous tissues. In response to irritation, cells of disputed type, possibly plasma cells, appear and phagocytize the bacilli in large numbers, so that eventually the outline of the cell, as brought out in acid fast staining, is that of a mass of red bacilli.

These cells are called lepra cells. In addition, endothelial cells phagocytize the bacilli and these with their bacilli, together with the free lying masses of bacilli in the lymphatic sinuses, make the so called "globi" when seen in transverse section. The toxicity of the lepra bacillus is only slight so that we may have very large giant cells of the Langhans type and this probably explains the absence of caseation in leprosy. The arteries of the leproma, as the granulomatous mass is termed, undergo an arteritis with thickening of their walls.

The leproma is a mass of cells of varying sizes and types in a connective tissue framework. The infiltrations are chiefly about the hair bulbs, sweat glands and arteries. The epidermis is separated from the leproma by a connective tissue layer and is uninvolved except for a thinning out of the layer and obliteration of the interpapillary epithelial pegs.

Incision of a leprous nodule shows a smooth glistening cut of a yellowish to slate grey color.

In nerve leprosy the cellular proliferations in the region of the blood vessels and later in the perineurium and endoneurium cause pressure on the axis cylinder with consequent degeneration. The affected nerves are swollen and reddish grey in color. It is now thought that an axonal degeneration involves the cells of the anterior horns so that this, as well as the peripheral neuritis, is a factor in the muscular atrophies which are features of the disease. The sensory fibers are destroyed before the motor ones.

Leprous changes are common in the anterior part of the eye, as of conjunctiva, cornea and iris but rare in the posterior eyeball. The mucosa of tongue, larynx and pharynx is often involved. Cartilage and bone are destroyed through pressure of the granulomatous tissue.

The ovaries and testes may show connective tissue increase.

Nephritis is rather common in leprosy but there is considerable doubt whether the lungs are invaded by leprosy, except most rarely.

Next to skin, mucous membrane and nerves the lymphatic glands show the greatest involvement.

The liver not uncommonly in nodular leprosy and more rarely the spleen may show connective tissue or cellular infiltrations.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The period of incubation of leprosy is peculiarly prolonged and is at any rate from two to five years and may extend over many years, Hallopeau having recorded a case where the disease did not develop for twenty seven years after the patient left the infected district. The early manifestations are vague and indefinite, consisting chiefly of malaise, weariness and mental depression.

There are often noted (a) irregular accessions of fever, attended with rather profuse sweating, so that the onset may be mistaken for a malarial infection. (b) Progressive weakness, the patient being easily fatigued with a tendency to somnolence. (c) Alternating attacks of dryness and hypersecretion of the nasal mucous membrane, with frequent attacks of epistaxis. (d) Various neuralgic manifestations or paraesthesias as well as headache may be noted before the outbreak of the anaesthetic spots.

It is the prominence of the nasal manifestations that has caused Sticker to insist that the primary lesion of leprosy is of the nasal mucosa, the general view, however, being that this view is without sufficient foundation and as a matter of fact some have recently suggested that the disease first manifests itself in the lymphatic glands, punctures of such structures showing bacilli rather frequently, although in less proportion than upon examination of the nasal mucosa.

All authorities recognize two well separated clinical types of leprosy, one the nodular, skin, hypertropic or tubercular form and the other the smooth, nerve, maculo-anaesthetic or atrophic form.

These fairly distinct types tend to run into one another and in such cases we have the mixed form of the disease.

Following Manson I use the terms nodular and nerve leprosy. It is usually stated that in Northern climates nodular leprosy forms about 70% of cases while, in the tropics, the larger proportion is made up of nerve leprosy.

At one time a classification of the 239 lepers at San Lazaro Hospital, Manila, P. I., showed 97 cases of nodular, 42 of nerve and 93 of mixed leprosy, with two cases of doubtful nature.

NODULAR LEPROSY

A Typical Case.—After more or less indefinite and uncharacteristic prodromata the definite onset is by an outbreak of spots which later become pigmented and thickened. These spots are at first erythematous and tend to come out in crops, attended with attacks of irregular fever. They soon have the appearance of limited areas of sunburn. They are raised and have a preference for appearing on the lobes of the ears, the nasal alae, the forehead, eyebrows, cheeks and chin.

The extensor surfaces of the forearms, thighs and buttocks are also favorite sites for the indurated spots. The palms of the hands, soles of the feet, hairy scalp, groin and axillary regions are almost never attacked. These spots may be hyperaesthetic at first but soon show loss of pain and temperature sense with retention of touch sensation (dissociation of sensation). These spots do not sweat, they remain dry even in a general perspiration. Following successive febrile accessions and reappearances of spots we have developed nodular masses, usually on the sites of the spots. These protruding nodules may give the face a leonine appearance, hence the name leontiasis, or that of a satyr, hence satyriasis. With the development of the nodules the hair falls out of the eyebrows and bearded face. Nodules develop in the mucous membranes of the nose, mouth and larynx giving rise to obstruction of the nares, difficulty in mastication and a raucous voice.

The eye is involved with frightful frequency in this form of leprosy, there being infiltrations of the eyelids, conjunctivae, cornea and iris, with subsequent ulcerations and loss of sight.

The nodules on face, backs of hands, buttocks, etc., may disappear by resolution but the tendency is for them to ulcerate and produce various contractions and deformities.

The inguinal glands in the region of the lesions become enlarged but do not tend to suppurate.

Visceral involvements are not common but serious lesions of the liver have been reported.



FIG. 42.—Nodular leprosy. Advanced stage with ulceration. Leontiasis. (Van Harlingen.)

The course of the disease is essentially chronic and if some intercurrent affection does not carry off the patient, the end comes in a cachexia in about 10 years, the temperature gradually falling and a state of somnolence ushering in the end.

When nerve leprosy sets in upon a nodular type the life of the patient seems to be prolonged.

Nerve Leprosy

A Typical Case.—The prodromal manifestations are characterized by the results of irritation of the granulomatous tissue upon the nerve fibres and are chiefly neuralgic pains or signs of sensory disturbances as formication, paraesthesias, etc. In particular, are the ulnar, peroneal and facial nerves attacked, the process very rarely extending above the knee or elbow.

In brief the fully developed case of nerve leprosy shows anesthetic spots, trophic lesions of the skin and bone, together with muscular palsies.



FIG. 43.—Nerve leprosy. Perforating ulcer of foot. (U. S. Naval Medical Bulletin.)

The spots often appear singly and may be from one to three inches in diameter. They are not raised, have a sunburnt color and do not sweat. Instead of having a preference for the face or other exposed parts they most frequently appear on the covered portion of the body or limbs as trunk, buttock, thighs or arms. These spots often look like ringworm lesions, as they have an erythematous border with a paler center. About this time the nerve trunks begin to enlarge, especially the ulnar at the elbow and the great auricular as it crosses the sterno-mastoid muscle.

These nerve enlargements are at first tender but later become painless and we have extensive areas of anaesthesia and trophic changes of the skin and nails of fingers



FIG. 44.—Nerve leprosy, showing deformities, perforating ulcer, etc. (From U. S. Naval Medical Bulletin.)

and toes such as felons, glazed skin, bullae, which on rupturing leave ulcers. We also have absorption of the bones of the phalanges.

The phalangeal bones may be completely absorbed and a distorted nail cap the end of the metacarpal bone. Owing to the anaesthesia lepers often burn or injure their fingers and toes. Perforating ulcers are more common in leprosy than tabes.

Muscular palsies, atrophies and contractures are more common in the face and upper extremity than of the lower extremity. We may have changes quite similar to those of progressive muscular atrophy, the thenar and hypothenar, as well as the interossei, undergoing atrophy and resulting in the claw hand. Wrist drop is not uncommon but foot drop is rare. Rarely Charcot's joint condition may be observed.

Of the facial muscles the orbicularis palpebrarum is most apt to show paralysis. The eyes are affected much less frequently in nerve leprosy than nodular, 45% as against 85% for nodular leprosy. The most common changes in nerve leprosy are ectropion of the lower lid with subsequent corneal ulceration.

In mixed leprosy we simply have a combination of the manifestations of the two main types and as a matter of fact the majority of cases tend eventually to assume a mixed type.

SYMPTOMS IN DETAIL

Temperature Course.—On the whole leprosy runs an afebrile course except for the accessions of irregular fever at the time of the appearance of the successive crops of spots. At such times sweating may be present and suggest malaria.

Skin.—The raised spots of nodular leprosy tend to come out in number on lobes of ears, over eyebrows and on cheeks, as well as backs of hands and forearms and on buttocks and feet. Soles of feet and palms of hands almost never show spots. In nerve leprosy the spots are often single and flat and often appear on parts of body covered by the clothing, as trunk, thighs or arms. The spots of leprosy are anaesthetic, often showing dissociation of sensation. The indurated spots of nodular leprosy are succeeded by tubercle like growths. The hair falls out of the areas occupied by the spots.

Mucous Membranes.—The nasal mucosa is in particular studded with nodules which later undergo ulceration. An ulcer of the septum is often the first place from which leprosy bacilli may be obtained. The pharynx and larynx are also involved early.

Nervous System.—Beyond the characteristic anaesthesia we have various manifestations of neuritis, especially involving the ulnar, facial and peroneal nerves. The affected nerves show a fusiform enlargement and are tender. Later we have trophic changes in skin, bone and nails of the fingers and toes. Absorption of bones and perforating ulcers are common. Muscle palsies and atrophies, especially the main-en-griffe, are common. The orbicularis palpebrarum is not infrequently paralyzed. The olfactory, optic and auditory nerves are rarely if ever involved. The reflexes are slightly exaggerated.

The Eye.—In nodular leprosy eye lesions, chiefly leprotic nodules in conjunctivae or iris, with subsequent ulceration, are met with at some time in the course of the disease in almost 90% of cases. In nerve leprosy, corneal ulceration, chiefly resulting from paralysis of the facial muscles, with ectropion, give eye symptoms in about 45% of cases.

Genito Urinary Symptoms.—Atrophy of the testicles with increase of connective tissue often result in males but data would indicate that the procreative power of



FIG. 45.—Nerve or maculo-anaesthetic leprosy showing anaesthetic spots on back. (U. S. Naval Medical Bulletin.)

the female is but little diminished. Lepers often die of renal complications, the kidney lesions being rather those of amyloid change. Bacilli may be eliminated in the urine during accessions of fever.

The Lymphatic Glands.—These tend to enlarge and show bacilli, but rarely suppurate.

The inguinal and cervical glands are most often enlarged.

The Blood.—The changes, other than those of a secondary anaemia as the disease progresses, are not characteristic. Bacilli are present in the blood of cases of nodular leprosy quite constantly but less so in that of cases of nerve leprosy.

DIAGNOSIS

Clinical Diagnosis.—It must be remembered that leprosy is very slow in development so that for months or even years there may be but slight indications of the disease, as an anaesthetic spot or the palsy of an orbicularis palpebrarum. One should always run over the lobes of the ears or region of the eyebrows to feel for shot-like nodules.

In the making of a diagnosis the information as to possible exposure to the disease is of first importance.

The leprous spots are at first rather oily from increased action of the sebaceous glands but subsequently become dry. In ancient times the hypersecretion of sebaceous material about the facial spots of nodular leprosy served as the basis of a test for leprosy, the suspected eruption being dashed with water. If the surface was not wetted it was a point in favor of leprosy. Of prime importance however is the pin prick for anaesthesia, which is the most important distinguishing characteristic, next to the finding of the bacilli, for a leprous spot. The anaesthesia is more marked in the center of the spot and may show dissociation of sensation. It is very important to examine for enlargement of the ulnar or great auricular and the earliest signs of a nerve leprosy may be anaesthesia and a light contraction of the ring and little finger.

Of the general diseases, which may be confused with leprosy, we have the circumscribed form of scleroderma. Such spots however are dead white in colour and are not anaesthetic. The prodromal manifestations with fever and sweatings simulate malaria. Elephantiasis and Madura foot have been confused with leprosy but the marked tendency to limitation to the lower extremities and absence of anaesthesia should differentiate. Probably the most difficult disease to differentiate from leprosy is syringomyelia. Morvan's disease is only a form of syringomyelia in which the neuralgic pains, anaesthesia of the skin and painless whitlows, with tissue loss, are features. In fact Zambaco has advanced the idea that Morvan's disease is leprosy.

In syringomyelia the dissociation of sensation is marked as with leprosy. In syringomyelia, however, the upper extremities are, as a rule, alone affected and the muscular atrophy is more of the scapulo-humeral type, with involvement of trunk muscles causing scoliosis, than of the thenar and hypothenar eminences, so that while the fingers may be more contracted and rigid than in leprosy we do not get the main-en-griffe.

The anaesthetic areas of syringomyelia continue to sweat, and we may also get spastic symptoms and speech defects in syringomyelia.

Raynaud's disease has also been confused with leprosy.

Of the skin diseases the most important confusing lesions are the cutaneous manifestations of tuberculosis and syphilis. In lupus the tubercles are very much smaller, show the apple jelly appearance, the lesion spreads peripherally, is rather purplish and is not anaesthetic. Syphilitic ulcerations are more punched out, do not affect the same sites and respond to syphilitic treatment immediately. You do not find nerve enlargements in syphilis.

Mycosis fungoides has not the characteristic location about the face and itches markedly and does not show anaesthesia.

Vitiligo shows an abrupt margin and is not anaesthetic.

Laboratory Diagnosis.—The usual procedure is to scrape a spot or nodule with a scalpel until the epidermis has been gone through and then smear out the serous exudate on a slide and stain by the Ziehl-Neelsen acid fast method or by Gram's stain. Twenty percent sulphuric acid is less apt to decolorize than the 3% acid alcohol, the leprosy bacilli being less resistant to acid alcohol decolorization than to aqueous acid solutions. There is a great variation in the resistance to decolorization of leprosy bacilli, a preparation from one case holding its color almost as well as tubercle bacilli, while material from another case may decolorize very easily.

I am partial to Tschernogabow's technique. In this one punctures the sub-epithelial granulomatous tissue with a capillary pipette, the end of which has been broken off by tapping the point in order to give a cutting point, and the serum which exudes is smeared out and stained.

Some prefer emulsifying a piece of the tissue and centrifuging and staining the sediment. Quite recently the antiformin method of treating leprosy tissue, as for tuberculous tissue, has been used.

Many insist that the best method is to cut out small sections of the lesion, going well into normal tissue, and putting through paraffin and cutting thin sections and staining. Gram's method, counterstaining with Bismark brown gives beautiful preparations. For acid fast staining first stain with haematoxylin to obtain a histological background and then steam with carbol-fuchsin, decolorize very briefly with acid alcohol, then through absolute alcohol and xylol.

Of the greatest diagnostic value is the staining of the nasal mucus or scrapings from ulcerations on nasal septum for leprosy bacilli. These are often found in the characteristic cigar package bundles or engulfed in lepra cells. A standard procedure is to give 60 grains of iodide of potash to cause a drug coryza, in the secretions of which leprosy bacilli may be found. However, one will have better

success if the nasal secretion be obtained at a time when a natural coryza exists.

Thibault examined the nasal mucus, gland juice and blood of 30 lepers. He obtained leprosy bacilli in the nasal mucus of 20, in the gland puncture juice of 18, and in the blood of 7.

Hollman detected leprosy bacilli in the nasal mucus of 90% of 58 nodular cases, of 67% of 6 mixed leprosy and of 45% of anaesthetic cases, after making 329 examinations.

Leprosy bacilli are apt to be found in the blood of nodular cases, especially at the time of the febrile accessions. The blood is best taken in 5 or 10 c.c. quantities into 1% sodium citrate in distilled water. After centrifuging, the sediment is treated with 10% antiformin, at 37° C. for 1 hour. Again centrifuging, and washing, the sediment is smeared out on a slide and stained. The bacilli are not apt to be found in the blood of cases of nerve leprosy.

Gland puncture has recently been considered as an important diagnostic procedure in leprosy.

It must not be forgotten that while the finding of leprosy bacilli is usually very easy in the nodules of nodular leprosy it is a painstaking and discouraging procedure with the spots of nerve leprosy. Even the affected nerves, at autopsy, often fail to show bacilli. For nerve leprosy the examination of nasal mucus is of prime importance.

The X ray has been utilized in the recognition of the very early, trophic changes in bone, showing the commencing absorption of phalanges.

PROGNOSIS

The progress of the disease is so slow that it is difficult to estimate improvement or cure. At any rate the possibility of a cure, with the present methods of treatment, is slight. There is no doubt but that many of the reported cures have simply been instances of remissions in the course of the disease for periods covering months or even 3 or 4 years. It would seem that the earlier treatment is instituted the greater the possibility of cure. There were 38 cases officially reported as cured, in Norway, from 1881 to 1885.

Nodular leprosy runs its course much more quickly than does nerve leprosy. It is in nodular leprosy particularly that intercurrent affections carry off the patients. Tuberculosis carries off about 23% of cases and nephritis almost 30%, while a combination of tuberculosis and renal disease about 10%. In the remainder, the cachexia or accidents of leprosy itself are responsible for a large portion of the deaths. Cases of nodular leprosy are more often carried off by kidney disease than those with nerve or mixed leprosy.

It must not be forgotten that lepers, especially those with the nerve form, may live for 20 to 40 years.

PROPHYLAXIS AND TREATMENT

Prophylaxis.—As was noted under epidemiology there seems to be little evidence to show that insects play any part in the transmission of leprosy. Nevertheless it would seem advisable to prevent flies from becoming contaminated with the discharges from leprosy ulcerations which so often teem with leprosy bacilli. This possible method of transmission would seem more deserving of attention than the question of the taking up of bacilli from the blood by mosquitoes, bedbugs or biting flies, as the leprosy bacilli are found in the blood of nodular leprosy chiefly during the febrile accessions and very rarely in the blood of cases of nerve leprosy. In all of the ordinary insects the bacilli seem to disappear in a very short time, with the exception of the cockroach, for which reason it would seem advisable to destroy these pests, which can be easily done by sprinkling around a little sodium fluoride.

Leprosy tends to spread where there is marked personal uncleanness and close contact with lepers in overcrowded quarters. Many authorities consider the free use of soap and water the most important means of avoiding infection. While segregation is generally considered the one proven prophylactic measure there are those who question its value. There does not seem to have been any very marked influence in the spread of leprosy among the native Hawaiians through the enforcement of isolation of such cases. A very remarkable feature in connection with leprosy is the hysterical dread that many communities have of a leper, when they must know or could easily learn, that the contagiousness of the affection is so slight, that notwithstanding our efforts, we can scarcely point to a single instance to prove undoubted transmission of the disease from one person to another. At any rate, knowing that immense numbers of the bacilli are given off from ulcerations and the nose, we should guard against the dissemination of leprosy bacilli from such sources.

Treatment.—Many so called specific products, whether of the nature of extractives, as leprolin or nastin, or of bacterial vaccines, have been tried with results which have not tended to gain the confidence of conservative men. The product which has been given most general trial is nastin. This is a neutral fat, extracted from a streptothrix growth, obtained by Deycke from leprosy nodules. It is combined with benzoyl chloride and is contained in ampoules containing from one half to one fifth of a milligram.

Wise and Minett treated 244 cases with nastin for periods of from one to two years, the treatment having been at first supervised by Deycke himself. It was

stated that nodular cases did not seem to be improved and that anaesthetic leprosy was not apparently influenced.

Minett mentions the efficiency of a 2-1/2 percent. solution of benzoyl chloride as a nasal spray and as an application to leprous ulcers, this treatment causing the bacilli to rapidly disappear from the discharges of nose or ulcers. On the other hand Scott, in Assam, reports practically 50% of cures, or cases greatly improved, in patients treated with nastin for a year or more. He gave nastin B1 injected intramuscularly at two weeks intervals.

Salvarsan does not seem to have been of any value in leprosy.

The standard treatment for leprosy is chaulmoogra oil given internally, in capsules, in doses of 5 to 10 minims increased gradually, according to stomach tolerance, to 40 to 60 minims. Antileprol, a preparation of chaulmoogra oil, which is better borne by the patient, may be given in doses approximating 120 grains by mouth daily or 60 grains subcutaneously. Such drugs as arsenic, salicylate of soda and bichloride of mercury have been used.

Thyroid extract has seemed to benefit cases of anaesthetic leprosy in rare instances. The high frequency current with the needle applied to the nodular lesions has been recommended by Unna. Radium and X rays have also been employed.

SECTION III

DISEASES DUE TO FILTERABLE VIRUSES

CHAPTER XIV

YELLOW FEVER

DEFINITION AND SYNONYMS

Definition.—Yellow fever is an important epidemic disease of the West Coast of Africa and tropical America caused by a filterable virus. The virus is contained in the peripheral blood only during the first three days of the disease. A mosquito, *Stegomyia calopus*, biting a patient during this period of his illness, takes in the virus which undergoes some developmental cycle of the nature of which we are ignorant, but we do know experimentally that a minimum period of 12 days is requisite for the completion of the cycle which makes the mosquito infectious for man. When a susceptible individual is bitten by an infected mosquito there develops, after a period of incubation of from 2 to 5 days, a rapid rise of fever, with markedly congested face and severe pains of back and head. About the end of the third day the sthenic manifestations are succeeded by asthenic ones in which jaundice, haemorrhages, particularly black vomit and anuria are the important features.

Faget's sign of a lack of accordance between pulse and temperature is of great diagnostic importance.

Synonyms.—Febris Flava, Typhus Icteroides. Spanish: Fiebre amarilla, German: Gelbfieber, French: Fievre Jaune.

History and Geographical Distribution

HISTORY.—It would seem probable that yellow fever was the disease from which those of Columbus' second expedition suffered in San Domingo, in 1495. At the same time the first definite description of the disease was that of Dutertre, in Guadaloupe, in 1635. There has been much discussion as to whether the West Coast of Africa may not have been the original endemic centre and the importation to the West Indies

the result of the slave traffic. While there is very little support given this view the recent recognition of the extent and importance of the African endemic area, as brought out by Boyce, is somewhat suggestive. There have been numerous severe outbreaks in the United States, that occurring in Philadelphia, in 1793, being the most celebrated and that centering in Memphis, in 1878, probably the most terrible. Yellow fever has been a scourge in Brazil since its introduction in 1849, until quite recently. Lisbon experienced severe outbreaks of the disease in 1723 and in the next century in 1850 and 1856. Many of the Spanish cities have also suffered from time to time.

GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION.—As will be seen from the chart the chief endemic centers are the islands and coasts of the Gulf of Mexico and the West Coast of Africa. The disease has at times extended down the West Coast of South America and is now rather prevalent in Ecuador. The last epidemic in the United States was that in New Orleans.

The disease has never invaded Asia or Australia and there is fear that the opening of the Panama canal may bring this about.

ETIOLOGY AND EPIDEMIOLOGY

Etiology.—The cause of yellow fever is unknown other than the fact that it is one of the filterable viruses and probably a virus of protozoal nature. The subcutaneous injection of as little as .1 c.c. of the blood of a yellow fever patient, in the first 3 or 4 days of the disease, or the serum of this blood, which has passed through the pores of a Chamberland filter (F but not B according to the French Commission), will bring about the infection of a susceptible person after an incubation period of from 1 day and 15 hours to 12 days and 18 hours.

In the natural method of transmission the mosquito, *Stegomyia calopus*, is the intermediary. In order that the female of this culicine species may transmit the disease it is necessary that she bite a yellow fever patient in the first 3 days of his illness, after which a period of approximately 12 days must elapse before the mosquito can transmit the disease. In such case the period of incubation varies from 2 days 1 hour to 6 days 2 hours. Carroll was bitten by a mosquito which had fed on a yellow fever patient 12 days previously, and 4 days later experienced a very severe attack, this fact being against the views of the French Commission that the disease shows a less severe form in those who may be bitten in the first period of the infectivity of the mosquito. A second case bitten 5 days later by the same mosquito that infected Doctor Carroll had a mild attack. Persons bitten by experimentally contaminated mosquitoes before an interval of 12 days had elapsed escaped infection.

Prior to the investigations of the American Commission our views as to the incidence and spread of yellow fever were chaotic.

Rush, in 1793, thought that the Philadelphia epidemic originated from "damaged coffee which putrified on a wharf near Arch Street."

In 1883, Doctor Freire reported that yellow fever was caused by a coccus, *Cryp-*

Micrococcus xanthogenicus and claimed that he could confer immunity by vaccination with attenuated cultures. Carmona y Valle of Mexico and Carlos Finlay of Havana considered that the *Micrococcus tetragenus* was the cause but Sternberg, investigating these claims, showed that these cocci had nothing to do with yellow fever. In his work Sternberg isolated an organism which he designated "X."

In 1897, Sanarelli isolated an organism which he named *Bacillus icteroides*. In investigating this organism Reed and Carroll found that it was closely related to the hog cholera bacillus. To further investigate the relation of *B. icteroides* to yellow fever these Army surgeons were sent to Cuba in 1900.

In addition to Reed and Carroll, Lazear and Agramonte were also members of the Commission.

The Commission first cultured the blood of 18 yellow fever patients with negative results for *B. icteroides* in every case. It was also shown that yellow fever blood, which was negative for *B. icteroides*, could produce yellow fever when injected subcutaneously. In 11 autopsies made shortly after death cultures from various viscera were negative for *B. icteroides*. It was then decided to abandon, as fruitless, further investigations as to Sanarelli's organism, and to take up the mosquito transmission theory.

In 1848, Doctor Nott, of Mobile, strongly advocated the insect transmission of yellow fever but not specifically incriminating the mosquito. In 1853, Dr. Beauperrhuis, in Guadeloupe, noted that malaria and yellow fever ceased to exist in regions which from their altitude fail to nourish "insectes tipulaires."

He also thought that the virus of these diseases was introduced by the channel of insect inoculation. Furthermore he stated that the variety, zancudo bobo (*Stegomyia*), was a domestic species.

From 1881 Doctor Carlos Finlay had been advocating the transmission of yellow fever by *Culex fasciatus* (Synonym for *Stegomyia calopus*).

In 100 experiments made by Finlay 13 cases of yellow fever developed.

In no instance had these experimental mosquitoes fed on a yellow fever patient more than 6 days previous to their biting and, knowing that a period of at least 12 days must elapse, the infections in the 13 cases could not have been brought about by these experimental mosquitoes.

An observation by Carter influenced the Commission in their investigations. Carter, in 1898, noted that a period of about 2 weeks generally elapsed between the appearance of the first case and the group of cases resulting from this first case. He termed this period the "extrinsic incubation" and we now know this as synonymous with the 12 day period of incubation in the mosquitoes infected by the first case plus the 2 to 5 days of the period of incubation in man.

The American Commission obtained ova from Doctor Finlay and from these ova mosquitoes were hatched for the experimental work. Of 11 susceptible persons

bitten by contaminated mosquitoes, 2 developed the disease, while 9 remained uninfected. One of these cases was that of Doctor Carroll, whose infection was brought about by one of these laboratory reared mosquitoes which had fed on 4 cases of yellow fever, two of which were severe cases and two mild. This mosquito had fed on one of the severe cases just 12 days previously. The other case was bitten by 4 contaminated mosquitoes, one of which was the one that had infected Doctor Carroll.

Of the 9 negative cases 6 were bitten by mosquitoes which had fed on yellow fever patients from the 5th to the 7th day of the disease and the remaining 3 failures were where the interval between contamination and biting the volunteer was from 2 to 6 days only.

At this time the medical mind was obsessed with the idea that yellow fever was transmitted by fomites.

It had been forgotten that Cathrall, in 1800, had failed to infect himself with black vomit and that Ffirth, in 1804, in order to obtain material for a graduation thesis, swallowed black vomit and smeared it, as well as blood, upon wounds he had made on his skin with negative result. (It will be remembered that the 4th proposition of the French Commission was that application of infectious serum to the abraded skin would not produce the disease—the hypodermic injection being required).

To settle the question of the relative importance of fomites and infected mosquitoes the Commission caused two houses, 14 X 20 feet, to be erected, one well ventilated for the infected mosquitoes and the other poorly lighted and ill ventilated for the black vomit contaminated clothes, sheets and blankets (fomites). A medical officer and two privates of the Hospital Corps slept in this room for 20 days in most intimate contact with the infected material. No infections resulted.

There were other experiments with similar results.

One of the occupants of the fomites building was afterwards inoculated subcutaneously with 2 c.c. of blood taken in the first day and developed yellow fever after 4 days of incubation. This proved that he was susceptible to yellow fever.

In the other building there was a screen partition dividing the space into two compartments, one containing 15 contaminated mosquitoes, the other with the same air but without mosquitoes. Controls occupying the mosquito free section remained free from yellow fever, while those exposing themselves in the mosquito containing compartment developed yellow fever. One of these cases was bitten by mosquitoes contaminated 39 days previously, a second one with 51 day insects and a third, who developed a severe case, was bitten by mosquitoes contaminated 57 days previously.

A few months later one of the members of the Commission inoculated men subcutaneously with blood taken from yellow fever patients in the first 3 days of the disease, with positive results. It was also found that if the blood was heated to 55° C., for 10 minutes that the virus was destroyed and, finally, it was found that the

filtrate from a Berkefeld filter was infectious, thus showing that the virus was so minute as to pass through the pores of a filter which would hold back the smallest known bacterium.

Note.—Doctor Lazear, who had charge of the mosquito work of the Commission, tried to infect himself with experimental insects prior to his applying a 12 day mosquito to Doctor Carroll. About 3 weeks later he was bitten by a mosquito which he did not at the time consider a *Stegomyia*. The attack of yellow fever which resulted from this bite ended fatally.

To summarize, the American Commission found:

1. That *B. icteroides* had nothing to do with yellow fever.
2. That fomites was a negligible factor.
3. That *Stegomyia calopus*, when fed on the blood of a yellow fever patient, in the first 3 days of the disease, became contaminated and, after a period of 12 days, but not before, was capable of transmitting the disease to a susceptible person. Once infectious the mosquito so remained for the rest of life.
4. The blood of a yellow fever patient in the first 3 days, which was sterile for *B. icteroides*, was capable of producing the disease when injected subcutaneously. If heated to 55° C. for 10 minutes the virus was destroyed however. Furthermore, infectious blood when passed through a Berkefeld filter remained infectious, thus showing that the virus is a filterable virus.

The French Commission verified these findings and in addition brought out the following points.

1. Cutaneous vaccination with infected serum is without result.
2. Infectious serum loses its yellow fever producing power in 48 hours unless preserved under liquid petrolatum when it remains virulent for five days.
3. Infectious serum if heated for 5 minutes at 55° C. loses its virulence but has prophylactic and curative power.
4. Besides the method of hypodermic inoculation yellow fever can only be transmitted by the bite of a mosquito in which the virus has remained for at least 12 days.
5. In one instance it was thought that the progeny of infected mosquitoes transmitted the disease. Rosenau and Goldberger, in 38 experiments, failed to obtain such result.

In 1909, Seidelin reported certain minute protozoa as existing in the red cells of yellow fever patients. He considered them as related to the piroplasms and gave the name *Paraplasma flavigenum*. It is stated that the parasite has been found as late as the 14th day from the onset of the attack. The idea is advanced that there may be carriers of yellow fever.

Epidemiology.—There are numerous records which attest the almost universal susceptibility to yellow fever. In the Orwood epidemic, Carter has reported that of 46 persons entering an infected house, "Gray Mansion," 45 contracted yellow fever.

On the "Lombardia," with a complement of 249, there were 242 cases and 134 deaths. The 7, who escaped, were immunes.



FIG. 46.—*Stegomyia calopus*; female. *a*, Front tarsal claw. (After Reed and Carroll.) From MacNeal.

The idea that the colored race possesses immunity is now thought to be connected with the contraction of the disease in infancy or childhood, attacks at this period of life being very mild and difficult of diagnosis.

A knowledge of the life history of *Stegomyia calopus* explains the epidemiology of yellow fever. This culicine species is widely distributed in the tropical and subtropical world, extending from 38° north to 38° south latitude. It is rarely found at a greater altitude than 3000 feet. Petropolis, a railway connected suburb of Rio, has an altitude of 2300 feet, with cool nights, at times about 9° C., and a freedom from *Stegomyia*. Persons having occupation in Rio during the day but returning to Petropolis in the afternoon escape yellow fever. In this connection it is generally accepted that the female *Stegomyia* only bites between 5 o'clock p.m. and midnight. While the first feeding may occur earlier in the day, all subsequent feedings, which alone could be infectious, occur late in the afternoon or at night.

It is recognized that railways are unimportant factors in transporting these mosquitoes, differing in this respect from ships which offer better conditions.

The *Stegomyia* is preeminently a house mosquito and a town mosquito. It is the domesticated one, while the malaria transmitting ones are rural and feed in natural plant containing bodies of water instead of the water in old tin cans, roof gutters, cisterns or other utensils surrounding the house which are preferred by the yellow fever mosquitoes.

The female lays about 70 eggs in small groups and not in a compact egg raft as with *Culex*. The eggs are therefore difficult of detection. The eggs do not suffer after rather prolonged drying. Even temperatures approximating 0° C. do not seem to destroy the vitality. It would seem probable that it is this stage in the metamorphosis of *Stegomyia* which is responsible for the survival of the species under unfavorable conditions. The most favorable temperatures for these mosquitoes range from 29° to 31° C. Under 20° C. the eggs do not hatch out.

The larvae, which hatch out in about 2 days, develop into pupae in approximately one week. In about 2 days the fully developed insect breaks out of the pupal case. It will thus be seen that a period of 10 to 14 days suffices for a generation. The insect is almost black and has a silvery lyre or jew's harp pattern marking on the thorax. The legs and abdomen also have silvery bands. The female lays several batches of eggs and has been observed in one instance to live 154 days. The French Commission kept a female alive 106 days. They consider that life under normal conditions is much shorter in duration than in captivity. If deprived of water the adult insect only lives about 5 days. In a refrigerator, Guiteras was able to keep mosquitoes alive, without food or water, for 87 days.

On fruit and sugar vessels the conditions for the development of *Stegomyia* are exceptionally favorable.

These mosquitoes are prone to remain in the same house where they have been feeding. Carter has pointed out that yellow fever rarely spreads more than 75 feet from an infected house so that it is improbable that infected mosquitoes fly, or are carried by the wind, any great distance. It is probable that they are carried aboard ships in connection with coaling or provisioning rather than blown aboard by prevailing winds.

PATHOLOGY AND MORBID ANATOMY

The toxic effects are chiefly borne by the liver and endothelial linings of the capillaries. The cloudy swelling of the liver cells obstructs the bile canaliculi, causing jaundice and the more advanced fatty degeneration of these functioning cells interferes with the urea function of the liver and leads to ammoniaemia. The degenerative changes in the

endothelial cells lining the capillaries bring about the haemorrhages so much a feature of yellow fever.

The icterus is apt to be more marked after death. The liver is of a boxwood or chamois skin colour and on section is very oily. Haemorrhagic patches may be seen dotting the yellow cut surface. The stomach and intestines contain disintegrated blood. Petechiae and erosions are common in the cardiac end of the stomach.

The spleen does not show any particular change. The kidneys are enlarged, congested and on microscopical examination show fatty degeneration of the renal epithelium.

Haemorrhagic infiltrations are marked features in skin and mucous and serous membranes.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

A Typical Case.—With very slight or absent prodromata, often during the night, the disease sets in rather abruptly with chilly sensations and the temperature rapidly rises to about 104° F. The face is flushed,

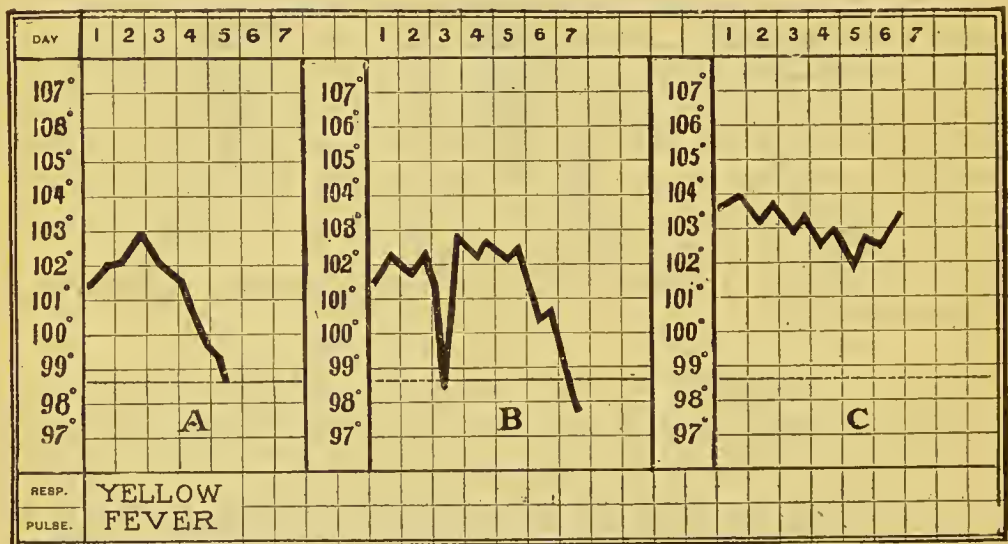


FIG. 47.—Temperature chart of Yellow Fever. A, Mild case with recovery. B, Severe case showing the saddleback temperature curve similar to that of dengue. C Chart of fatal case of yellow fever.

dusky and swollen, the eyes injected. Very severe frontal and orbital headaches with marked rachialgia of the lumbo-dorsal region are peculiarly characteristic. The pulse is of high tension and the rate from 110 to 125. The systolic pressure is increased—at times as high as 200. These are the early manifestations of the *first or sthenic period* of the disease.

Vomiting, first of mucus and bile, comes on very early. About the second day albumin appears in the urine and by the third or fourth day this is present in large amount and is associated with the presence of hyaline and granular casts. The temperature remains fairly high for 3 or 4 days, with morning remissions and evening exacerbations. Of great diagnostic value is Faget's law as to lack of correlation of temperature and pulse, so that by the second day, notwithstanding the high temperature, the pulse rate becomes less and by the third or fourth day it has probably decreased 20 to 40 beats from its initial rate.

About the close of the third day or upon the fourth day there may occur a fall in the temperature and a decided amelioration of the symptoms. This however is frequently not noted and even when present may last only for a few hours. This is often called the *stage of remission or calm*. By the third day the congestion of the facies and other sthenic manifestations have disappeared and, possibly preceded by the short period of remission, there is ushered in the *second or asthenic stage*.

It is at this time that we have the appearance of the most characteristic features of yellow fever—the jaundice and the haemorrhages. The jaundice is first noted in the sclerotics and rapidly spreads over the body as a lemon to orange yellow tinging. Swelling and bleeding of the gums are the earliest signs of the damage to the capillaries. This may go on to bleeding from the nasal mucosa, the intestines and, best known and most dreaded, the coffee ground vomiting or black vomit. Epigastric tenderness is often marked. In very severe cases haemorrhagic extravasation into the skin may appear. The mind is peculiarly clear, the patient alert and suspicious. At times patients may be delirious even to the extent of wild struggling to throw themselves out of bed.

In favorable cases the temperature rapidly falls to normal, associated with an unusually slow pulse rate, even below 45.

In the first few days there is a normal white count, with an increase in the percentage of the polymorphonuclears and later on an increase in the large mononuclears.

Besides the typical course we may have cases so mild that the albuminuria is insignificant and the jaundice and haemorrhages entirely absent. On the other hand we may have fulminating cases with jaundice and black vomit setting in by the end of the third day and rapidly going on to a fatal termination.

Symptoms in Detail

The Temperature.—This rises abruptly, reaching its maximum by the first day. Very high temperatures are not a feature of yellow fever. There is nothing characteristic in the further course of the fever chart and it should be borne in mind that the so called intermission is transient and deceitful.

fourth day. There is usually marked epigastric tenderness. Bleeding from the gums and intestinal canal are not rare.

The Nervous System.—The mind is unusually clear, the patient often mentally alert and suspicious. There is often insomnia. The severe cephalalgia, often frontal or supra orbital, as well as the severe loin pains (*coup de barre*) are striking features. There may be a marked hyperaesthesia. A delirious state may be present.

The Liver and Spleen.—There is no special alteration in the size of either liver or spleen. The jaundice of the asthenic stage is incident to the pressure of the swollen degenerating liver cells on the bile capillaries while the fatal issue is connected with the loss of the urea formation function. The patient dies of ammoniaemia rather than from uraemia. The spleen is not affected.

The Genito Urinary System.—Albuminuria begins to appear about the second day and tends to steadily increase in amount. Various types of tube casts, often bile stained, are abundant. The urine shows neither bile nor blood cells except in the later stages of the disease. The reaction is very acid. It is of the utmost importance to note the quantity of urine voided as scanty secretion, leading to anuria, makes for a very grave prognosis.

DIAGNOSIS

The main points to consider in the diagnosis are (1) the facies, (2) the severe cephalalgia and rachialgia (3) the early albuminuria (4) the epigastric tenderness (5) Faget's law of lack of correlation between pulse and temperature (6) the absence of clouding of the consciousness and, finally, the late appearance of the jaundice and haemorrhages.

The diseases with which yellow fever is most apt to be confused are:

Aestivo-Autumnal Malaria.—In ordinary aestivo-autumnal malarial paroxysms the search for the malarial parasite is of great importance, although the finding of a malarial infection does not exclude yellow fever. Albuminuria is not a feature of tropical malaria.

In that type of tropical malaria known as bilious remittent fever the clinical picture is rather asthenic and bile pigment in the urine is an early feature. Again jaundice comes on fairly early and the slow pulse is absent. The spleen is enlarged and tender.

Blackwater Fever. This is an asthenic disease with marked and very early jaundice. The haemoglobinuria (Blackwater) is pathognomonic. Splenic tenderness is marked.

Small Pox. The early headache, backache and vomiting of small pox may well confuse one before the eruption of variola appears.

Dengue. This is probably the most difficult disease to diagnose from yellow fever. The facies, orbital pains and backache of yellow fever and dengue are similar. Dengue also shows a slowing of the pulse. The high blood pressure of the onset is not present in dengue. There is no albuminuria in dengue and there is a marked and early leukopenia and reduction of the polymorphonuclear percentage, which does not exist in yellow fever. The jaundice of yellow fever and the eruption of dengue do not show themselves during the first 3 days.

Relapsing fever, typhus fever and plague have been considered by some authorities as possible of confusion with yellow fever.

PROGNOSIS

This is bad with advancing years and possible lesions of liver or kidneys. It is difficult to make a statement as to the average mortality. Thus, in the epidemic of 1853, one of the most virulent that ever visited New Orleans, the mortality was estimated at 85%, while that of 1897, one of the mildest epidemics on record, only gave a mortality of 1/2%. High temperatures and excessive albuminuria, as well as early appearance of jaundice, are bad signs. The mortality may be considered as averaging about 20%.

PROPHYLAXIS AND TREATMENT

Prophylaxis.—By screening a patient during the first 3 days of the disease we prevent the infection of *Stegomyia*.

It must be remembered that this mosquito not only breeds near human habitations but that it tends to remain in the same room where it has been feeding. Consequently we should use sulphur fumigations or Giemsa's spray or killing by hand to destroy insects. The larvae breed by preference in old tin cans near the house door. To kill these one should empty every old receptacle of water, and oil or cover other collections of water.

Treatment.—At the onset one should give calomel in small doses, repeated every 20 minutes, until about 2 grains is taken, as 8 doses of 1/4 grain calomel with soda. Magnesium citrate or sodium phosphate should follow the calomel. This treatment should not be repeated, it is only indicated at the onset of the disease.

During the first 3 days of the disease no nourishment whatever should be given. The patient should be allowed an abundance of fluid, of which the best is Vichy, of which may be given a couple of ounces every ten minutes, iced or just cool, as the patient prefers. Water, to which 30 grains of bicarbonate of soda to the pint has been added, makes a good substitute. It is of vital importance to put the patient to bed and keep him quiet. When vomiting is severe cracked ice or iced champagne may be of value. Alkaline enemata are indicated when the patient cannot retain the Vichy.

A mustard foot bath is best given in bed, the feet and legs of the prone patient being immersed in a foot tub half full of warm water into which a pound of freshly ground mustard has been stirred. Every few minutes there should be added a quart of very hot water so that the bath may be very hot—just short of burning the

feet. The blankets are kept over the patient and the foot tub, so that we also give a vapor bath which causes free sweating. This treatment relieves the headache and backache. This foot bath can be repeated 2 or 3 times in the first 24 hours. After the bath, the sweating patient must be thoroughly dried. Cold spongings are important means of keeping down fever. For anuria use dry cups to the loins or hot fomentations. Strychnine may be indicated in the asthenic stage.

CHAPTER XV

DENGUE

DEFINITION AND SYNONYMS

Definition.—Dengue is an epidemic disease due to an ultramicroscopic, filterable virus which is probably transmitted by *Culex fatigans*.

It is characterized by an initial 3 or 4 day febrile paroxysm of very sudden onset, a remission, which comes on about the 4th day and a terminal rise of temperature for 2 or 3 days—the saddleback temperature course.

Backache and pains about the muscular attachments at the joints and especially a marked postorbital soreness are important features.

An eruption appears about the 3rd or 4th day. Leucopenia and polymorphonuclear reduction are constantly noted. Apathy and a mild neurasthenic state may continue into convalescence.

Synonyms.—Dandy Fever (the word dengue is supposed to be derived from the Spanish equivalent of dandy or dengüero), Breakbone fever, Bouquet. German: Dengue-fieber.

HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION

History.—While Hirsch gives the credit for the first mention of the disease to the chronicler Gaberti, who describes a disease with certain resemblances to dengue as existing in Cairo in 1779, yet, for the reason that certain clinical features of this epidemic would hardly appear to belong to dengue, as we now know it, there would seem to be good ground upon which to give the credit of priority to Benjamin Rush, who, under the designation break-bone fever, gave us a true picture of dengue as it manifested itself in Philadelphia in 1780.

Gaberti was particularly impressed with the knee involvement so that from his description the disease was known as the disease of the knees. He further noted swelling of the fingers and that the pains continued for more than a month. The sudden onset and the sweating would seem to belong to relapsing fever as well as to dengue and in support of the view that the disease described by Gaberti might have been relapsing fever we have the statement of Sandwith that bone pain, chiefly of the knee, is the symptom most complained of by the Egyptian native with relapsing fever.

Boylon, who reported an outbreak of an epidemic disease in Batavia in 1780

stated that everybody was attacked and that the symptoms were almost the same as those ushering in plague—headache, lassitude and pains in the joints. He noted, however, that this epidemic had no bad consequences, patients getting rid of it in three days under moderate diet and copious beverages.

Ashburn and Craig, in 1907, proved that the disease could be transmitted by injections of blood, unfiltered as well as filtered.

Geographical Distribution.—The disease may occur in epidemic form in almost any part of the tropical or subtropical world. It is very common in the countries about the China Sea and in the West Indies.

ETIOLOGY AND EPIDEMIOLOGY

Etiology.—One can only state that the disease is caused by a filterable virus which is present in the patient's blood from the 2nd to the 5th day. Graham reported a piroplasm-like organism as the cause but other workers have failed to confirm this. Reports as to bacterial causative organisms have not been confirmed.

Epidemiology.—As regards the epidemiology of dengue there seems to be a general acceptance of the idea that dengue is transmitted by the common culicine mosquito of the tropics, *Culex fatigans*. There is not, however, that definiteness which attaches to the transmission of yellow fever by *Stegomyia calopus* or to pappataci fever by *Phlebotomus papatasi*, in both of which a certain period of development of the unknown filterable virus in the arthropod host is necessary before the insects become capable of transmitting the infections.

It will be remembered that in the nine experiments as to dengue transmission, conducted by Ashburn and Craig, the authors threw out five of the cases for such reasons as previous immunity or refusal of the experimental mosquitoes to bite. Of the four remaining volunteers only one developed dengue. This man, however, had been on duty at the Division Hospital in Manila and the statement is made that he had not been exposed to the disease so far as could be determined. This of course rather militates against the value of this isolated experiment and furthermore the mosquitoes which bit him had fed on the blood of a dengue patient only two nights previously. If this is to be considered as a valid experiment, we must believe that only a short sojourn of the virus in the mosquito is requisite, which is rather at variance with the eleven days for the yellow fever virus and eight days for that of pappataci fever.

As regards the transmission of the disease by blood filtered through a diatomaceous filter it will be remembered that Ashburn and Craig, by proving this fact, placed the dengue virus in this same category with the filterable viruses of the two diseases just considered.

Graham in Beirut carried out some experiments, one of which would seem almost positively to demonstrate mosquito transmission. He took mosquitoes which had fed on dengue patients, to a village in the mountains where no case of dengue existed. He caused these mosquitoes to feed on two natives of the village and both men became sick with dengue four and five days respectively after being bitten by the mosquitoes. Graham's claims to have noted piroplasma-like organisms in dengue blood have not been verified and do not receive credence.

The most convincing evidence as to mosquito transmission of dengue is that afforded by the absence of dengue in Port Said during the years 1906 and 1907 notwithstanding the prevalence of the disease in adjacent parts of Egypt. This was attributed to the absence of mosquitoes, these having been destroyed in the fight to make Port Said malaria free. This campaign was commenced in May, 1906.

Other species of culicine mosquitoes, among which may be noted *Stegomyia*, have been incriminated. In the Philippines I was convinced that *Culex microannulatus* might transmit the disease as well as *C. fatigans*. In one of his experiments Graham claimed to have produced dengue by injecting an emulsion of the salivary glands of a mosquito which had fed on a dengue patient one or two days previously.

PATHOLOGY

As death almost never occurs from the disease there is nothing to note other than the marked leucopenia.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

After a period of incubation of from 2 to 5 days the disease manifests itself with striking suddenness.

The temperature rapidly rises and in a few hours reaches a maximum of from 102° to 105° F. Associated with this primary fever we have frequently a blotchy congestion of the face—the so called initial rash.

We also have intense headaches, principally supra orbital and post orbital. The pulse rate is slightly accelerated at first but soon becomes slow and may fall to 50 from the 4th to 5th day.

The so called joint pains are really more about the muscular insertions than within the joints.

Insomnia, characterized by frequent dropping off to sleep to be awakened immediately by disturbing dreams, is often noted.

The depression, mental and physical, is altogether out of proportion to the insignificance of the disease.

Malaise and anorexia are marked. Constipation is the rule at first. About the 3rd or 4th day the temperature drops to normal or about

that and remains so lowered for from 12 hours to 3 days. At this time the patient feels much better and views his affection in a less serious light. After this variable intermission the temperature rises to possibly a greater height than primarily. This second febrile attack is attended with pains and possibly greater depression than the first accession. It is usually, however, of shorter duration and during this period the terminal rash appears. This is the most characteristic feature of the disease. It generally manifests itself about the dorsal surface of hands and feet, advancing up forearms and legs. Later on it may involve all extremities, face and trunk.

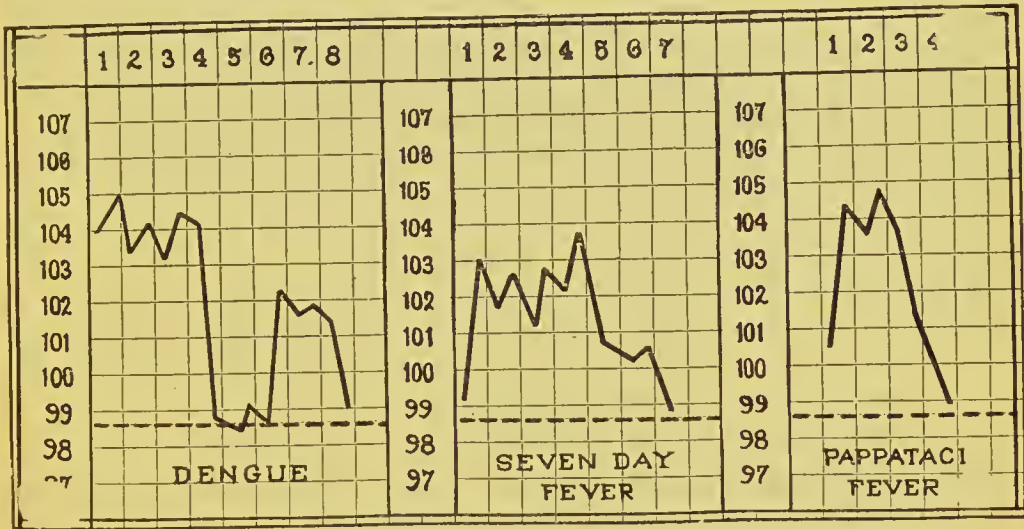


FIG. 49.—Temperature charts of dengue and dengue-like fevers.

It is more like measles than scarlatina.

With the appearance of the terminal rash we may have crises such as profuse sweating or marked diarrhoea or epistaxis.

The desquamation is furfuraceous in character.

In some patients (European) there is a rosy carmine flush of palms of hands and soles of feet. Some authorities have reported glandular enlargements in dengue.

Convalescence is apt to be protracted, being especially characterized by malaise and nervous depression, practically neurasthenia.

Leucopenia and polymorphonuclear percentage reduction appear by the second day.

Symptoms in Detail

Onset and the Temperature Chart.—Dengue probably sets in more abruptly than any other disease. The temperature chart is typically saddleback.

The Pains.—Very marked soreness deeply seated about the place of origin of the ocular muscles so that every movement of the eyeballs is at once complained of as giving pain.

General pains all over the body, more especially of the back and about tendinous insertions of the muscles which cause the pains to be referred to the joints. The rachialgia may be as great as that in variola or yellow fever.

The Eruption.—The characteristic eruption does not appear until about the time of the intermission or with the accession of the terminal fever.

The fall of fever about the third or fourth day is often attended by a critical epistaxis, sweat or diarrhoea, to be succeeded by an intermission of from one to three days of a feeling of well being. About this time or with the secondary rise of fever the true dengue rash appears. It is at first noted about the bases of the thumbs and extending over the dorsal surfaces of the wrists. Almost simultaneously a measles-like rash appears over the dorsal and internal surfaces of the big toe extending to the ankle, especially over the internal malleolus. Later on the elbows and knees may be involved or the rash may cover thickly the entire body. A carmine flush of the palms of the hands and soles of the feet is not uncommon. The so-called primary eruption is nothing more than an initial flushing of the face.

The Nervous System.—Besides the headaches we have insomnia and depression which extends through convalescence. Apathy is marked.

The Blood.—This shows a leucopenia of about 3,000 from shortly after the onset together with a reduction of the percentage of polymorphonuclears to about 45%.

DIAGNOSIS

The two diseases with which dengue can be most easily confused are influenza and yellow fever. In fact when the great pandemic of influenza (1890) first made its appearance in France, many regarded it as an atypical form of dengue.

The respiratory involvement of influenza and the eruption and comparatively slow pulse of dengue are the principal points of difference. It must be remembered that affections in the tropics, diagnosed as influenza, have shown but slight respiratory symptoms, the cases being more of a nervous or intestinal type. The eruption of dengue may fail to appear or be missed in the study of the case. The blood findings should aid in differentiation from influenza as is also true of yellow fever, a disease which likewise has blood findings of practically a normal character. Other than the blood picture we have in yellow fever (1) albuminuria, coming on about the 2nd day, and (2) jaundice appearing about the 3rd day. In dengue the eruption appears from the 3rd to the 5th day. Albuminuria is absent in dengue.

Dengue may be mistaken for measles, but the early coryza, Koplik spots and marked rash, first appearing about the face, should differentiate.

In scarlet fever the rapid pulse, angina and leucocytosis should be sufficiently differentiating.

Confusion with articular rheumatism may arise when the pain about wrists and ankles has been mistaken for true joint involvement.

The headache and backache of small pox may be confusing until the eruption about the forehead appears. The leucopenia of dengue is the main differential point in these first 3 days of doubt.

PROPHYLAXIS AND TREATMENT

Prophylaxis.—This would seem to rest entirely upon the question of destruction of mosquitoes and prevention of the mosquito from biting a patient. In dengue the virus is apparently in the blood for 4 or 5 days so that screening of patients is necessitated for a longer period than for yellow fever or phlebotomus fever.

Treatment.—The malaise and depression are generally so great that the patient keeps his bed voluntarily. A light diet is indicated although the anorexia is so marked that it is difficult to persuade a patient to take food.

Cold spongings, provided the patient is not disturbed by being moved, are of value for the insomnia. Phenacetine may be given for the relief of the headache and backache. It is rarely necessary to give morphine.

During convalescence tonics are indicated and if there is any condition where a good wine is of value, it is in this, to counteract the terrible depression.

DENGUE-LIKE FEVERS

PHLEBOTOMUS OR PAPPATACI FEVER

Etiology and Epidemiology.—This fever, which is often called three day fever, on account of its running its course in this period, is caused by a filterable virus. This virus only seems to be in the blood of the patient's peripheral circulation during the first 24 hours of the illness, blood abstracted toward the end of the second day and injected into a well person failing to reproduce the disease.

If the blood is filtered through a Pasteur candle F, the filtrate will set up an attack just as well as the whole blood, in this respect being like dengue and yellow fever.

The transmitting agent is a moth midge, *Phlebotomus papatassii*. This midge, as is true of the Psychodidae family, to which it belongs, is very hairy. It has long slender legs and narrow wings. The proboscis is as long as the head and the lancets project beyond the labium.

The female alone bites, which act takes place chiefly at night, cool, moist, shady places, away from sleeping rooms, being preferred in the day time. The insect is a persistent, vicious feeder, difficult to escape from, as mosquito nets offer no protection. It takes from 6 to 8 days after feeding on a patient in the first day of the fever before the midge is capable of transmitting the disease, this being in accordance with the 12 day developmental period in the mosquito, that holds for yellow fever. What evidence we have would indicate that the dengue virus does not require a developmental period. Doerr thinks that the pappataci virus may be transmitted hereditarily by the insect to the egg.

Cases first appear in the late Spring and the disease becomes epidemic during the Summer.

An attack produces quite an immunity.

The disease has chiefly been studied in the Balkan States but undoubtedly it is wide spread.

The disease is almost never fatal so that we know nothing of its pathology.

Symptomatology.—The symptoms will answer perfectly for cases of dengue one sees in a dengue epidemic in which, instead of the saddle-back course of fever, we have a 3 day primary rise and then a fall to normal without any secondary fever rise.

The symptoms as usually given are as follows: Abrupt onset with congested face and injected conjunctivae. There is pain in head, eyes and back. There is marked malaise with great depression of spirits. There is anorexia with coated tongue and rarely vomiting. There may be some congestion of the pharynx and even a slight bronchitis. The liver and spleen are normal.

There is a leucopenia and polymorphonuclear percentage decrease. The two points which are chiefly advanced in its clinical differentiation from dengue are (1) slow pulse, a bradycardia and (2) only 3 days of fever and absence of eruption.

SEVEN DAY FEVER

Rogers has described a fever with sudden onset and of continuous course rather than a saddleback one and lasting for 7 days under the above designation.

There is absolutely nothing in the clinical picture which could in any way differentiate it from the cases of dengue one often sees in the Philippines, where there is so insignificant a remission that there is a continuous fever of about 7 days.

Rogers notes an occasional enlargement of the spleen. The slow pulse and leuco-

penia are also features of this disease. A dengue-like eruption is usually reported. Rogers also considered the typical breakbone pains of dengue as lacking in seven day fever.

SAND FLY FEVER AND THREE DAY FEVER

These dengue-like fevers of India are practically identical clinically with phlebotomus fever. The usual idea is that dengue epidemics are far more explosive in character than is true of epidemics transmitted by the sand fly.

The strongest point in differentiation of sand fly fever and dengue is that neither confers any immunity for the other disease.

The distinctions of enlarged glands and breakbone pains are often advanced as characteristic of dengue and not of sand fly fever. I have never observed other than slight glandular enlargement in dengue cases.

SIX DAY FEVER

Deeks has described a disease from Panama with a dengue-like clinical course.

There were but slight changes from normal in the pulse rate or blood findings. Some of the cases showed a late scarlatiniform eruption.

It was considered that the continuous fever for 6 days and the enlargement of the spleen, which accompanied the disease, differentiated it from dengue.

SECTION IV

FOOD DEFICIENCY DISEASES

CHAPTER XVI

BERIBERI

DEFINITION AND SYNONYMS

Definition.—Beriberi is a food deficiency disease due to the absence from the dietary of a neuritis preventing vitamine. It is particularly important among the people of the orient whose diet is preponderatingly one of rice. In milling the grain the outer vitamine containing layers are rubbed off and this polished rice, when the chief constituent of a dietary, is capable of causing, after a period of 2 or 3 months, a peripheral neuritis.

This neuritis not only involves the nerves of the extremities but, as well, the pneumogastric, and it is the manifestation of cardiac disturbances which best differentiate this form of neuritis from those due to alcohol or arsenic.

The disease is usually described under two types (1) a wet or drop-sical beriberi, in which the vasomotor nerves are affected with resultant general oedema and (2) a dry atrophic or paraplegic type, in which muscular palsies and atrophies are the leading features. Pathologically, we have a Wallerian degeneration of the peripheral nerves with possibly axonal degeneration of the cells of the neuron involved.

Synonyms.—Neuritis Multiplex Endemica, Polyneuritis Endemica, Hydrops Asthmaticus. Japanese: Kakke.

HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION

History.—While modern knowledge of beriberi may be said to date from the writings of Bontius, in 1629, yet the disease is distinctly described by Chinese writers of the 7th century and treated of in writings of the 2nd century and possibly referred to in writings as ancient as B.C. 2697. It is probable that the disease described by Strabo as occurring in a Roman army while invading Arabia, in 24, B.C., was beri-

beri. While mention of the disease may be found in Japanese writings of the 9th century it is thought by Scheube that this relates to the disease in China and that beriberi first appeared in Japan about the 18th century. Bontius described the atrophic form of the disease, Rogers, in 1808, the serous effusions, and Marshall, in 1812, noted two types, *barbiers*, when the paralysis predominated and beriberi, when the dyspnoea and edema were leading features.

The disease seems to have first made its appearance in Brazil in 1866.

Geographical Distribution.—Reference to the chart will show 3 markedly endemic centers for beriberi, one embracing Japan, a second the Dutch East Indies (Java, Borneo, Sumatra), and a third, involving the Eastern coast of Brazil. In somewhat less degree the disease prevails in India, Indo China, Malay Peninsula, Eastern China, and the Philippine Islands. It is also found in the regions of the East and

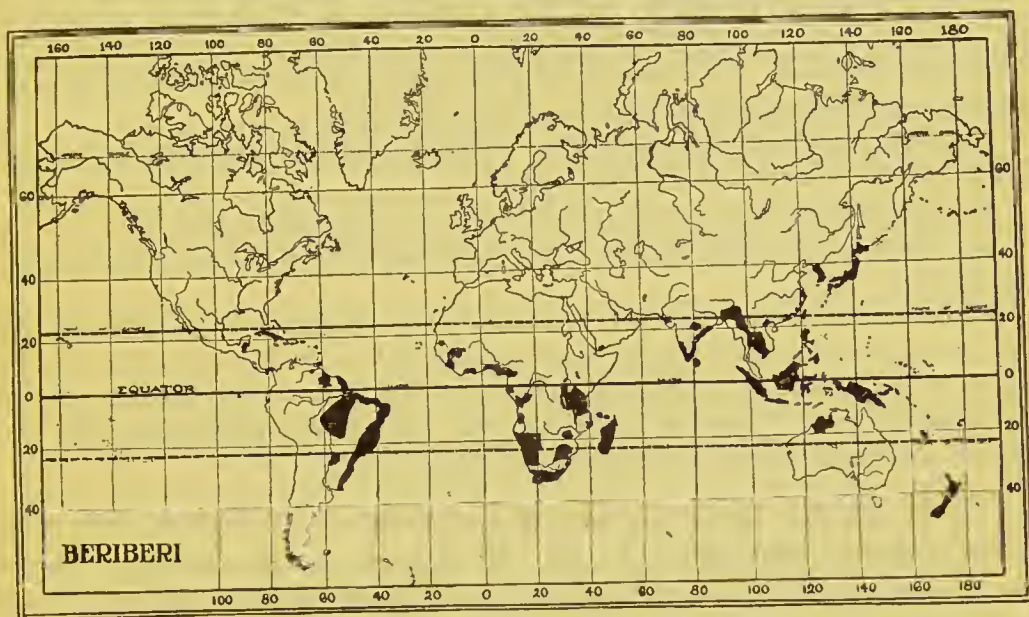


FIG. 50.—Geographical distribution of Beriberi.

West Coasts of Africa, and was devastating to the laborers on the Congo railway. It has been reported from many parts of the world among coolies from Asiatic countries. A disease of similar nature has been noted in asylums in England and America.

ETIOLOGY AND EPIDEMIOLOGY

Etiology.—There is probably no disease about which there exist so many views as to etiology as with beriberi. Many of those formerly advanced are so negatived by recent investigations that it would seem hardly worth while to mention them. While the cause is still unsolved attention is at present almost exclusively directed to some deficiency of a neuritis preventing substance in the dietary and such studies have in large part centered about the question of such deficiencies in certain kinds of rice.

Reserving until the last the discussion of the rice theories we may briefly dismiss such views as those assigning bacterial or protozoal causes with the exception of those of Manson and Hamilton Wright.

Manson's Theory. Under conditions of overcrowding, filth, warmth, moisture and lack of ventilation, as would obtain in the forecabin of a ship carrying a native crew, the development of a hypothetical germ is favored. This germ in its growth gives off emanations which like alcohol act as toxins upon the peripheral nerves. The germ itself does not infect the patient.

Wright's Theory. According to this view a bacillus which was given off in the faeces was ingested and locating in the duodenal mucosa gave off a toxin similar to that of the diphtheria bacillus. Instead of developing its soluble toxin in the membrane of the region of the throat this action took place in the upper part of the small intestines. Of other bacterial causes may be mentioned (1) The coccus of Pekelharing and Winckler. This organism was supposed to be short lived in the body and repeated infections were necessary to produce the disease.

(2) Dangerfield held views somewhat similar to those of Pekelharing and thought a coccus in the alimentary canal the cause.

(3) Isuzuki regarded a coccus isolated from the urine as the cause.

(4) Okata and Kokubo thought a coccus obtained from the blood to be the infecting agent.

Various bacilli, other than that incriminated by Wright, have been brought forward as pathogenic agents but it may be stated without further discussion that the claims of the advocates of bacterial causes have not been verified and are solely of historical interest. The same statement will hold for the plasmodium like protozoon of Glogner which was found in the splenic blood.

Of the chemical theories may be mentioned: (1) Arsenic poisoning. In an outbreak of arsenical neuritis in England, from arsenic contained in the glucose used in making beer, Ross diagnosed the illness as beriberi. Subsequently, arsenic was found in the hair of certain patients with beriberi, hence the theory which has never been substantiated. It may be stated that a careful study of this epidemic by Reynolds and Bury indicated that the alcoholic factor was also operative as persons taking an equal amount of arsenic but without alcohol, did not develop neuritis.

(2) Treutlein's oxalate theory.—This was based on the fact that polyneuritis gallinarum could be produced in fowls by feeding them oxalic acid.

Of the food deficiency theories, the most prominent is (1) that of Takaki, generally designated the nitrogen deficiency theory. As the result of increasing the proteid constituents of the ration of the Japanese Navy from 109 to 196 grammes, the disease was largely eliminated.

(2) According to Fales the hypothetical germ of beriberi can only live in body fluids deficient in potassium carbonate. The high content of potash in potatoes

made him greatly increase the amount of this vegetable in the dietary he recommended. Fales noted scurvy as well as beriberi in the Bilibid prisoners on a diet deficient in potash.

(3) Deficient fat. (4) Deficient phosphorus.—It was Schaumann's idea that the phosphorus contained in the pericarp of rice was essential in the prevention of beriberi. While it is now known that the beriberi preventing substance does not contain phosphorus, yet the idea has proven of practical value as giving an index of beriberi producing power of rice. If a rice contain under 0.4% of phosphorus pentoxide it is liable to produce beriberi. Schaumann now considers that the antineuritic substance in rice polishings acts as an activator in the metabolism of phosphorus.

In view of the fact that there is no evidence as to a causative bacterium or protozoon the idea advanced by Daniels to explain the incidence of beriberi in certain races and the immunity of other races living under the same conditions would appear improbable.

This theory is that certain varieties of the head louse confine themselves to certain races of man, hence the transmission of the disease by the head louse only occurs in those races selected by such lice as hosts.

There are other theories as to intestinal parasites causing the disease and in particular views as to relation of fish eating to the disease, which are (1) that it is caused by the ingestion of raw fish, or again (2) from the eating of certain poisonous fish.

RICE AND BERIBERI

There are a few points in connection with rice which should be understood. The larger part of the rice grain is starch and covering this central starch core we have the rather thin aleurone layer containing the proteid and fat constituents of the grain. Externally there is an adherent layer, the pericarp, which varies in colour from red to white according to the kind of rice. The pericarp contains the salts. The grain is covered by the husk which is always removed to render the rice suitable for food. Unhusked rice is called *padi* in India and *palay* in the Philippines. In the process of removing the husk (milling) the pericarp and more or less of the aleurone layer may be rubbed off the grain. When the milling process is carried to the extent that but little remains except the starch the rice is termed polished, highly milled, or white rice. A process of parboiling causes the pericarp to adhere more firmly to the grain and when milled there is less loss of the antineuritis principle, which is contained in the outer layers. Such rice is called cured rice. The scale like dust is termed rice polishings and has curative value for those who have developed beriberi under a diet of polished rice. When the milling process is less complete the rice so treated is called under-milled rice or red rice. Polished, highly milled or white rice contains as a rule less than 0.4% of phosphorus pentoxide while the beriberi preventing rices contain more than 0.4% of this compound for which reason legislation has required rice to have more than 0.4% phosphorus pentoxide.

While there have been numerous instances reported to show the connection between polished rice and beriberi, when such rice was the predominating article of diet, it will suffice to refer to the experiments of Fraser and Stanton and of Strong.

In 1909, Fraser and Stanton experimented with 493 Javanese coolies who were employed in building a road far removed from any village which might introduce the factor of bacterial etiology into the problem. They noted that the Javanese prefer white rice, and reference is made to the fact that many cases of beriberi occurred among these laborers in 1906, which outbreak ceased upon requiring them to eat parboiled rice at the suggestion of Doctor Braddon. They state that they informed the coolies of the danger of white rice but, notwithstanding, they all expressed a preference for the white rice over parboiled rice. For the purpose of comparison, only one half were allowed the white rice diet. The two parties were quartered in virgin jungle and were isolated from each other by an interval of 7 miles. Of 220 individuals on white rice there were twenty cases of beriberi recorded while among 273, who lived on parboiled rice, no cases occurred.

It appeared that a considerable period of continuance of white rice diet was necessary before the appearance of the disease (eighty-seven days). As against the infectious nature of the disease they note that contact of persons on a parboiled rice diet with the beriberi cases was without result. Substitution of parboiled rice for white rice brought about a cessation of the outbreak.

Strong and Crowell stated that the object of their study was to determine whether beriberi, as it occurs in the Philippines, is an infectious disease or whether it is one which has its origin in disturbances of metabolism, due chiefly to the prolonged use of polished rice as a staple article of diet. The experiments were carried out in Bilibid prison. Prisoners, who had been condemned to death, were informed of the nature of the experiment and were told of the diet on which it was proposed to place them. They were also told that they might contract beriberi. Twenty-nine volunteered and each signed a statement in his own dialect that he undertook the experiment voluntarily.

In general, the groups were fed for the greater part of the time occupied by the experiments as follows: Group (1) White rice and extract of rice polishings and special diet. Group (2) White rice and special diet. Group (3) Red rice and special diet. Group (4) White rice and special diet.

Of 6 men on the Group 1 diet 2 developed beriberi. The symptoms however, were not marked being chiefly loss of weight, tachycardia, slight oedema of legs and tenderness of muscles of calves. Four of the 6 men of Group 2 developed beriberi and 6 out of 11, in Group 4, showed symptoms of beriberi. In Group 3, only 2 in 6 developed symptoms and these consisted in case No. 13 only in tenderness of epigastrium, paraesthesia, cardiac disturbance and marked diminution of knee jerk. In case No. 18 there was noted only slight cardiac disturbance and epigastric pulsation. In none of the cases was the complete picture of beriberi obtained except in those in which the white polished rice formed the staple article of diet, but in one case, fed on red rice, the diagnosis of beriberi was almost definite.

The results of their experiments with the addition of rice polishings to the diet would indicate that whatever may be the results obtained with extracts from this material in treating the polyneuritis of fowls or in

curing it after it has developed it is not as efficient in man as the cheaper and more readily obtainable mongo bean or yeast.

Evidently symptoms of beriberi may also sometimes occur in individuals fed on red rice as a staple article of diet when the diet is very monotonous, comprising few articles and continued for long periods of time. From the experiments it is evident that beriberi may be produced by the prolonged consumption of white rice as a staple diet. Of 17 individuals fed on such diet 8 developed beriberi, all with distinct loss of knee jerk, as well as with other marked symptoms of the disease. Symptoms appeared within 61 to 75 days after the commencement of the diet.

In Fraser and Stanton's experiments no cases of beriberi occurred in less than 87 days and the majority in from 120 to 160 days.

None of the experimental cases showed any symptoms of scurvy.

In conclusion it was noted that beriberi has a true dietetic causation and that the rigid isolation of their volunteers excluded the possibility of the introduction of an infectious agent. Prior to the investigations of Fraser and Stanton the importance of the rice factor in the etiology of beriberi was insisted upon by Braddon who thought that a poison was elaborated by some organism which poison was contained in the beriberi producing rice. The work of Eijkman in showing that polyneuritis could be produced in fowls by feeding them on polished rice and prevented when a diet of rice polishings was added to the neuritis producing rice opened the way for a vast amount of experimental work. As regards the nature of the neuritis preventing substance in the rice polishings it was soon found that it had no relation to the phosphorus content. Funk has isolated a substance he calls *vitamine*, a basic compound which is present in rice polishings in the proportion of 1-10,000 and seems to possess extraordinary curative properties in polyneuritis gallinarum. Heart muscle, egg yolk and yeast are rich in this anti-neuritis substance, which is also present in lentils and barley.

As stated above Schaumann considers the curative principle to be of the nature of an activator. An increase in the ingestion of carbohydrates seems to produce neuritis more rapidly than where a smaller amount is given thus indicating the importance of these vitamins in carbohydrate metabolism. A temperature of 130° C. destroys the *vitamine*. Owing to the absence of rice as a constituent of other than slightest importance in the dietary of Brazilian cases of beriberi, as well as from numerous reports of the occurrence of the disease in non-rice eating persons, the view that is now entertained is that not only polished rice, but any predominating article of diet which is deficient in the neuritis preventing substance can produce beriberi. Wellman and Bass have shown that such articles of diet as sago, boiled white potatoes, corn grits and macaroni practically parallel polished rice in the production of polyneuritis in fowls.

Predisposing Causes.—There does not seem to be any racial predisposition other than that associated with the more varied and the more neuritis preventing diet of the white race. For the same reason beriberi is more prevalent among the poor than among the prosperous classes of countries where the disease exists extensively.

It is customary to consider as predisposing causes bad hygienic surroundings,

such as occur in jails, camps, etc., as well as the influence of warmth and dampness of the atmosphere. Beriberi is more common among men than women and effects most commonly individuals between 15 and 30 years of age. Physical exhaustion, excessive grief, abuse of alcohol and tobacco are considered to have a bearing in the production of the beriberi symptoms. Surgical operations may be followed by manifestation of the disease.

Epidemiology.—Inasmuch as the experiments of Strong force us to the conclusion that the disease is not infectious, the study of the prevention of the disease would appear to rest almost exclusively in the question of a neuritis preventing dietary.

In this connection Heiser, in the Philippines, has reported that with a diet in which polished rice was contained the monthly death rate at the leper colony at Culion was approximately 100, the majority of these deaths being from beriberi. As a result of the substitution of unpolished rice, about 1909, the monthly death rate fell to less than twenty and of these none were from beriberi.

Towards the close of 1911 there was a great shortage of the rice crop and the Philippine government bought quantities of rice in order to protect the people from extortionate dealers. Much of this rice was polished rice. The use of this polished rice was commenced at Culion in November, 1911. In January 1912, there were 35 deaths, of which two were from beriberi. In February 86 deaths with 36 from beriberi and in March 82 deaths with 60 from beriberi. In February the use of polished rice was discontinued and unpolished rice substituted. In April the deaths had fallen to 25 with 3 from beriberi and, subsequent to that month, deaths from beriberi cases developing at Culion ceased to be reported.

As regards the length of time necessary for the production of the symptom complex, Strong's experiments show that beriberi was produced in from 61 to 75 days. In Fraser and Stanton's work no case developed under 87 days and many of the cases did not develop for 120 to 160 days. Hamilton Wright considered that the incubation period for his toxin producing bacillus was 10 to 30 days.

PATHOLOGY AND MORBID ANATOMY

In polyneuritis gallinarum, Vedder and Clark are of the opinion that there may be two vitamins involved, the absence of one from the dietary causing the neuritis, while that of the other leads to general prostration and cardiac degeneration, so that there may be other factors in the production of beriberi than the degeneration of the peripheral nerves and involvement of the vasomotors. The blood of the beriberics in the acute stage, has been shown to contain a substance capable of profoundly influencing the vasomotor functions, causing venous engorgement and a fall of blood pressure.

In deaths from wet beriberi the tissues are very moist so that incisions tend to fill with fluid. There are generally present pleural and in particular pericardial

effusions. Serous fluid in the abdominal cavity may also be present. The lower end of the stomach and the upper portion of the small intestines, in particular the duodenum, show marked congestion with more or less abundant haemorrhagic extravasations. The oesophagus is usually congested as may be also the pharynx and the larynx.

Next to the peripheral nerve degenerations, to be later considered, the most important lesions are found in connection with the heart. All chambers of the heart show a dilatation with hypertrophy as well as dilatation of the right ventricle in cases that have lasted for some time. The heart muscle has the faded leaf appearance indicative of fatty degeneration. Microscopically there is segmentation and vacuolation of the fibres. The lungs show congestion and at times present the characteristics of pulmonary oedema. The kidneys are congested but show only exceptionally parenchymatous or interstitial changes. As would be expected, the back pressure in the right heart gives a dilatation of the central vein of the liver lobules which at times is productive of atrophy of the adjacent liver cells. The muscles supplied by the affected peripheral nerves show more or less atrophy according to the duration of the disease.

Microscopically, the affected fibres show a loss of striation with a colloid degeneration. These changes are more marked in beriberic residual paralysis. The key to the disease is in the changes present in the peripheral nerves. While these may appear normal yet histological examination shows a Wallerian degeneration, vacuolation and formation of myelin droplets in the medullary sheath with fragmentation of the axis cylinder.

While it is usually stated that the central nervous system, brain and cord, remains uninvolved yet we note axonal degeneration in the cells of the nuclear centres of the affected peripheral nerves as shown by convexity of the cell sides, dislocation of the nucleus and disappearance of the tigroid substance. The striking feature of the pathology of beriberi is the involvement of the vagus nerve and there is evidence of degenerative changes in the cells of the vagal origin in the floor of the fourth ventricle.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

It is well to remember that beriberi is but a form of multiple neuritis which in many cases shows only motor and sensory disturbances of the lower portions of the upper and lower extremities. In fact an extensive epidemic of arsenical neuritis, or, to be more exact, a neuritis in which both alcoholic and arsenical factors were operative, was regarded by eminent authorities as beriberi. The key to beriberi, however, is the peculiar and striking selection of the vagus nerve in the degenerative processes as well as those of the peripheral nerves of the extremities. It is vagal involvement, giving disturbances of heart particularly and lungs in less degree, which chiefly differentiates beriberi from other forms of neuritis.

Another peculiarity of beriberi is the tendency to vasomotor involvement as shown in the patchy areas of oedema.

Beriberi is typically a non febrile disease. There is, however, a disease with fever, called epidemic dropsy, which seems to have a similar etiology to beriberi. It also shows the symptoms of a peripheral neuritis plus cardiac disturbances. In fact Pearse has maintained the identity of the two diseases. The first record of epidemic dropsy was during a famine in Southern India in 1877. Outbreaks again occurred in 1902 and 1907. The fact that it is a disease which often shows a house infection has caused the advancing of a theory that the bedbug transmits the disease.

While greatly resembling beriberi clinically the following points of difference are usually noted by those who hold that it is a distinct disease entity.

1. The presence of fever, which rarely exceeds 102° F. and is usually only about 99° F. to 100° F.
2. An erythematous rash upon the oedematous portions of the extremities.
3. The frequent generalized oedema, which suggested the designation dropsy for the disease, cannot be differentiated from wet beriberi.
4. Some have noted less distinct motor disturbances than we usually expect in beriberi.

There is also a condition in nursing infants which would be difficult to recognize if unaware of the existence of this type of beriberi. It is called *infantile beriberi*.

In 1898 Hirota first noted the existence of a condition in infants nourished by beriberic mothers which has more recently been carefully studied by Andrews and to which the name infantile beriberi is now generally given. In the Philippines it is called "taon." Clinically there is restlessness, vomiting, altered voice, increased heart action, oedema and cyanosis. After death there is found a marked hypertrophy and dilatation of the right side of the heart with no change of the left side. The peripheral nerves also show the lesions of beriberi of adults but of less intensity.

The infants improve rapidly when other infant feeding is substituted for the mother's milk. An extract of rice polishings gives striking results in these cases.

The beriberi outbreaks which have frequently been reported from European and American camps, prisons and asylums do not differ from the cases one may see in the classical distribution of the disease among the rice eating populations of the Orient. The cause is the same, a deficiency in beriberi preventing vitamins and the symptoms are similar. These vitamins may be deficient in the rice or other cereal or proteid food supplied. Again they may have originally been present in sufficient quantity but later destroyed by too great heat or otherwise.

The ordinary clinical division of beriberi is into wet or dropsical beriberi and dry or atrophic beriberi. At the same time, in a typical case, we find such a combination of the vasomotor disturbances, which

lead to the oedematous or dropsical characteristics of wet beriberi and likewise of those of peripheral nerve involvement with more or less development of muscular palsies or atrophies as seen more strikingly in dry or atrophic beriberi, that it does not seem advisable to employ such a division.

In fact typical cases of wet or dropsical beriberi after a profuse diuresis may change in a short time, as Manson has so aptly stated, from a bloated carcass to little more than skin and bones and assume all the appearances of a case of dry or atrophic beriberi.

One sees cases which combine the features of dry and wet beriberi which can best be designated typical beriberi. Again we see cases where the vagal and vasomotor involvement is so marked that the patient resembles a man with acute nephritis plus all the evidences of extreme cardiac decompensation. Such cases may be designated fulminating, pernicious or better cardiac.

Again we observe cases which from the start show little if any oedema and very slight cardiac involvement, but with marked motor disturbances as shown by muscular atrophies and palsies. The sensory changes are not so marked as the motor ones. Complete anaesthesia is rarely present, it is rather paraesthesia and blunting of sensation which characterize the sensory phenomena. This is usually designated the atrophic or paraplegic type.

Scheube recognizes a rudimentary type and it must have been the experience of every one in the tropics that these indefinite types of beriberi are quite common.

In such cases there may be nothing more than some weakness of the legs with vague manifestations of blunting of the sensation or variation of the reflexes. Many of these cases show cardiac palpitation on exertion and at times we may note slight evidences of oedema about the lower part of shinbone or dorsum of the foot. It is the frequency of such cases that causes physicians in the tropics to consider almost any affection showing neurological manifestations as of beriberic nature. A careful study of the neurological features of cases in the tropics will show that many of these cases are not beriberic but rather the common cosmopolitan diseases of the nervous system.

A Typical Case of Beriberi.—The patient first complains of weakness and heaviness of the legs, particularly after fatiguing work. There is also noted a sense of fullness and tenderness in the epigastric region. The slightest exercise brings about cardiac palpitation and more or less dyspnoea. As the symptoms of peripheral neuritis become more prominent we have hyperaesthesia of the calf muscles so that squeezing these muscles gives rise to rather marked pain. The thenar muscles or those of the forearm may also be more or less hyperaesthetic. An examination at this time will probably show an active patellar reflex, some oedema

over the shin and malleoli, possibly extending to the dorsum of the foot, with partial anaesthesia in the oedematous areas. It is a blunting of sensation as though a layer of cotton were interposed between the skin and the examining instrument. Other favorite sites for the oedema are the sacral and sternal regions. Occasionally sharply defined oedematous patches may be observed, particularly on the arms. The exercise

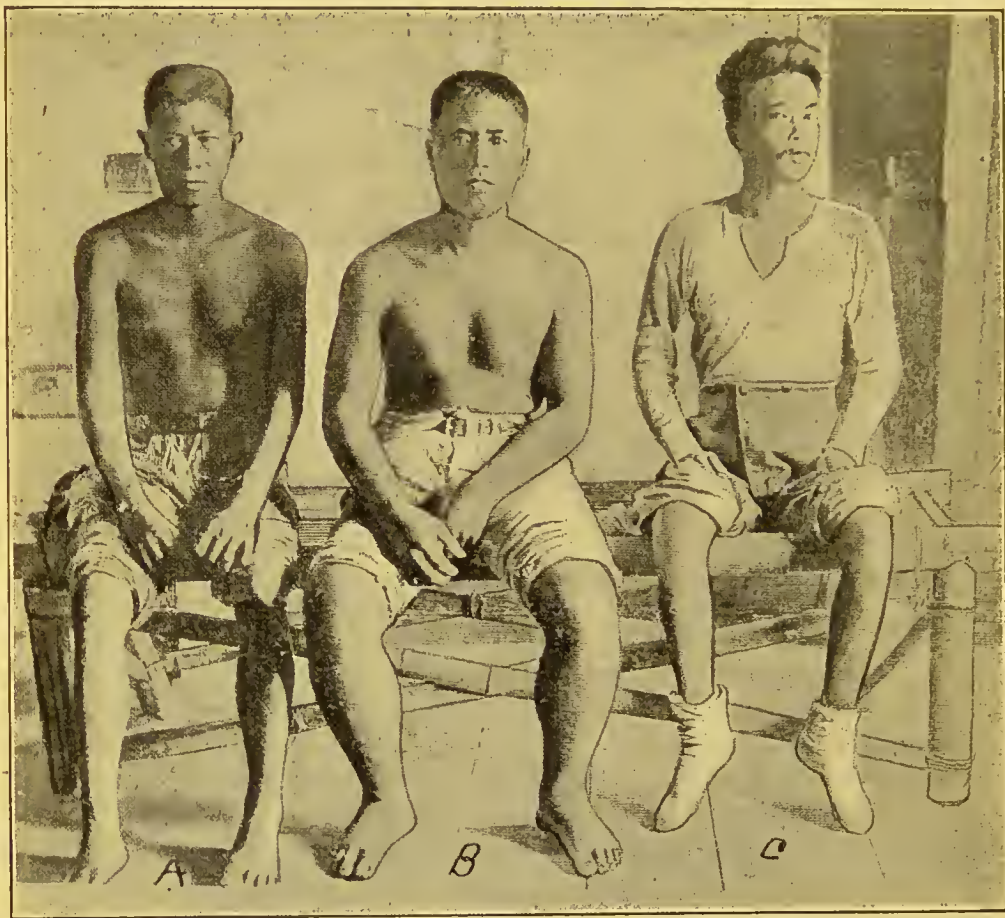


FIG. 51.—A, Mixed Beriberi. B, Wet Beriberi. C, Dry Beriberi. (From Jackson's Tropical Medicine.)

attendant upon the physical examination will probably cause a rather marked cardiac palpitation. The pulse is usually rapid and its rate is markedly affected by the slightest exertion. The systolic pressure is low.

The anaesthesia noted in the lower extremities soon tends to show itself about the back of the hands and the finger tips, so that it may be difficult for the patient to button his coat. There is also weakness of the grip. The temperature is normal

and the mind is entirely clear. The results from a blood examination are practically negative, although later on there is the blood picture of a secondary anaemia.

In cases where the oedema is more marked and generalized and when pericardial or other effusions are developing we find a diminution in the amount of urine, but with an absence of albuminuria.

Later the case may show a dropsical condition more or less resembling nephritis, but with only slight scrotal involvement. At the same time there will be found a dilatation of the right heart with blowing systolic murmurs and equal spacing of the heart sounds. There may be marked pulsation of the veins of the neck. At this time the patellar reflex may be diminished and the anaesthetic areas more extensive.

Attention has been called to a circumoral anaesthesia. This condition of wet, dropsical or oedematous beriberi may be fairly rapidly succeeded by a disappearance of the oedema with, as a result, the making more striking of the muscular atrophy incident to the neuritis of the peripheral nerves. In this, the atrophic, dry or paralytic beriberi, the jongkok test is of value. With the hands over the head the patient squats down on the calves of his legs and attempts to rise—something impossible for the beriberic. At this time the patellar reflex probably cannot be elicited and later on there will be found foot and wrist drop with atrophy of muscles. With complete foot drop, the reactions of degeneration will be found. A combination of the dry and wet types of beriberi is often described as the mixed type.

Acute Pernicious Beriberi.—This is the fulminating type of beriberi in which the marked involvement of the vagus overshadows the other and less manifest phenomena of the disease. In some cases the signs of peripheral neuritis may be quite prominent before the fulminating onset of the cardiac manifestations, there being almost a total lack of disturbance of the vaso-motor system. Again we may have slight if at all demonstrable motor or sensory disturbances but with marked oedema. It should be borne in mind that this development of cardiac disturbance with its fatal tendency may develop even in a case of rudimentary beriberi. It is a common experience that cases considered as mild types may, in a few hours, show cardiac involvement and terminate fatally with striking suddenness.

There is apt to be marked epigastric tenderness or even distress coming on with the onset of the acute cardiac involvement. It may be so extreme that the patient dreads the slightest palpation of his epigastrium. From a marked palpitation and praecordial distress evidences of the dilatation of the right heart become prominent. Indications of tricuspid insufficiency are seen in the pulsating jugulars and cyanosis. The cardiac dullness is greatly increased to the right and various abnormalities of sounds and rhythm may be observed. There is also dyspnoea and a sensation of constriction of the chest (beriberic corset). These are the cases which give as horrible a picture of death as one ever sees. In the final struggle for breath and praecordial

agony of the last stages of decompensation in old heart lesions we have a more gradual course in a more asthenic patient. Acute pernicious beriberi may run its course in a strong, vigorous patient in a few hours. In some cases we have paralysis of the diaphragm.

Paraplegic and Rudimentary Types.—The rudimentary type has already been considered and it would be impossible to draw a line between slightly developed paraplegic cases and rudimentary ones. The paraplegic cases show the weakness of feet and hands going on to wrist and foot drop. There is also marked blunting of sensation of feet and hands which gives one the impression of ataxia when the patient tries to button his coat. There is also atrophy of muscles so that the grip of the patient is enfeebled. This partial anaesthesia also accounts for the pseudoataxic gait in which the element of muscular weakness is prominent as opposed to the vigorous heel stamping gait of the ataxic tabetic. The patient drags the toes and leans forward on a cane when walking thus suggesting the tripod. It is the typical steppage gait of degeneration of the lower motor neurones. It is a flaccid, atrophic paralysis of the muscles.

Hamilton Wright has used the term beriberic residual paralysis to indicate cases which, in the course of convalescence and favorable regeneration of axis cylinders and more or less return to a normal condition, become subject to some factor lowering the vital forces and body resistance. To use a common expression the patient has a set back and the favorable progress to complete recovery is temporarily in abeyance.

Symptoms in Detail

Nervous Symptoms.—The most common symptoms are those connected with degenerations involving the peripheral nerves of the extremities. The motor nerves are more involved than the sensory ones, there being rarely complete anaesthesia, but rather a blunting of sensation as though a piece of cloth were interposed between the examining instrument and the skin. At first there is weakening of the muscle power as shown by the grip of the hand or weakness of foot muscles. In more advanced cases we may have foot and wrist drop. Hyperaesthesia of the muscles is prominent especially that of the calf muscles. The unsteadiness of gait is not true ataxia as the patient does not clearly show the Romberg sign. The Argyll-Robertson pupil is absent. The gait is the steppage one of peripheral neuritis, the patient walking as if extracting one foot after the other from clinging mud. The mind is entirely clear. The vaso-motor phenomena are often marked as shown by patchy or most extensive development of oedema and serous exudates. The knee jerk is usually absent. Fibrillary twitchings may be observed in beriberi as well as in progressive muscular atrophy. The extensors of arms and legs are more markedly affected than the flexors. The cardiac symptoms are really connected with vagal involvement.

The Cardio-Respiratory Symptoms.—Owing to involvement of the vagus the in-

hibitory apparatus is deranged so that we have palpitation and rapid pulse rate both of which are markedly increased by the slightest exertion.

The blood pressure is below normal. Shortness of breath is the earliest feature of respiratory trouble. This may go on to marked thoracic oppression and dyspnoea. Pulmonary congestion and oedema always accompany the terminal right side dilatation of the heart which is responsible for the cyanosis, pulsating jugulars and various murmurs. The rhythm of the heart sounds is replaced by the equal spacing of embryocardia. The diaphragm may be paralyzed.

Digestive and Urinary Symptoms.—Those who considered beriberi as an acute infectious disease were disposed to note frequently evidences of toxæmia as manifested by nausea, vomiting and epigastric distress. As a matter of fact these symptoms only become very prominent in pernicious beriberi and may well be connected with the cardiac decompensation.

The amount of urine is markedly decreased when oedema is advancing but is succeeded by a polyuria when this diminishes. If albumin should be present it is not connected with beriberi but some other condition.

Other Features.—There is nothing characteristic about the blood other than a slowly developing anaemia.

Oedema is the most striking feature of wet beriberi. When slight this oedema may only involve the pretibial region or sternum. Circumscribed areas of oedema may be present on the upper parts of the body as neck and trunk.

Hydropericardium is the most frequent of the exudates into serous cavities. Fever is almost always absent except in epidemic dropsy.

DIAGNOSIS

When the case is one of mixed type with the oedema, cardiac involvement and signs of peripheral neuritis the diagnosis is readily made. A diagnosis of nephritis is often given the wet type of beriberi and locomotor ataxia the dry form, by those who have not in mind the possibility if the disease existing in an oriental crew after a long voyage.

The urine in beriberi is as a rule normal and there are no peripheral nerve disorders in nephritis. Chagas has noted that a quartan form of malaria gives rise to oedema about the ankles and is often mistaken for beriberi by the physicians of the Amazon region.

The cardiac manifestations of beriberi differ from those of valvular disease in that the murmurs are muffled and there does not exist the definite areas for the location of the murmurs of the various valvular lesions. The rapid development of a pericardial effusion is also against valvular heart disease.

The absence of lancinating pains, typical Romberg sign and Argyll-Robertson pupil should differentiate from tabes.

The tripod gait of beriberi takes its name from the wide separation of feet and use, with the hands, of a cane in front. It is a steppage gait instead of the ataxic one of tabes. On account of the lack of power to

raise the toes in walking, the beriberic lifts the hip and swings to one side in order to avoid scraping his toes.

In progressive muscular atrophy the palsy attacks the hand first and in a more advanced case showing the main-en-griffe there would also be deltoid involvement. Of course beriberi may show the main-en-griffe characteristic but the greater involvement of the feet with vagal phenomena differentiate.

A disease of importance on Scandinavian sailing ships to which the designation "ship beriberi" has been given resembles beriberi in that we have oedema particularly of the lower extremities and at times generalized so that a case would appear to be one of wet beriberi.

More or less dyspnoea and cardiac palpitation are features of the disease as of beriberi. In fact death often is the result of acute cardiac paralysis. The striking point of difference is the generally reported absence of manifestations of neuritis and Nocht in an autopsy of a case failed to find evidence of degeneration of the peripheral nerves.

Another point of distinction is that once the ship arrives in port and a diet of fresh meat and vegetables is substituted for the one of sterilized canned meats and dessicated or preserved vegetables, the patient rapidly recovers, so that in one or two weeks there is no sign of the disease remaining. Beriberics improve at once when put on a curative diet but the damage done the peripheral nerves makes complete recovery a matter of weeks or months. Nocht is of the opinion that ship beriberi is closely related to scurvy as he found sore gums and haemorrhages into muscles in some of his cases. He also notes that even in true scurvy there may be cases of dropsy without the spongy gums and haemorrhages. Dropsy plus sore gums is not infrequently noted in the beriberic like affection of the men of the French fishing fleet off the Newfoundland banks.

It will be remembered that in scurvy, which is the classic food deficiency disease, we have spongy, swollen gums, loose teeth, oedema about ankles and in particular, haemorrhages into skin at site of hair follicles and tumor like haemorrhages into subcutaneous and muscular tissues. Haemorrhages into the mucous membranes are not uncommon. The heart shows marked palpitation and weakness.

As differing from infantile beriberi, we have in infantile scurvy, which is attributed to the use of sterilized milk instead of fresh milk, a tendency to separation of the epiphyses from the shafts of the bones and extreme sensitiveness to any movement particularly of the legs. A markedly anaemic and asthenic condition are also characteristic. The chief lesion is a subperiosteal blood extravasation.

Probably the most important conditions to consider in differentiation of beriberi are the peripheral nerve involvements caused by alcohol and arsenic.

In alcoholic neuritis there is the history of alcoholic excesses, long standing digestive disorders and tremors of hands, lips and tongue. Chiefly characteristic, however, is the mental involvement, such cases almost always showing loss of memory and defective mental concentration.

Mental symptoms and tremors are practically absent in beriberi and we have here the marked feature of vagal involvement plus vaso motor phenomena.

In arsenical neuritis we have an early puffiness under the eyelids and pigmentation of the skin which first shows itself in areas normally pigmented. A dysenteric syndrome may also be present.

There would be less chance of confusing lead palsy as this chiefly involves the upper extremity. Punctate basophilia, lead colic and the blue line on the gums should differentiate.

In diphtheritic palsies the muscles of the soft palate are involved in more than 75% of cases. Ocular palsies are also not infrequent.

It may be stated that there is no laboratory diagnosis for beriberi.

PROGNOSIS

There is no disease in which one should be more conservative in making a favorable prognosis than in beriberi. A case which seems to be progressing toward recovery may suddenly develop cardiac disturbances and die in a very short time.

We now know that a change to a beriberi preventing diet is practically curative.

The mortality rate varies in different countries and in different epidemics, so that we have death rates varying from less than 2 per cent to those exceeding 50 per cent. In acute pernicious beriberi the prognosis is almost surely fatal.

PROPHYLAXIS AND TREATMENT

Prophylaxis.—It must be remembered that not only is rice, from which the neuritis preventing vitamine has been removed by excessive milling, productive of beriberi but that the same applies to other cereals which have been similarly deprived of their vitamins. The same result may be obtained by the employment of excessive sterilization for canning. Fresh meat is as valuable as fresh vegetables in prophylaxis but if either kind of food be subjected to excessive heat, as is the case with tinned meats, etc., they not only do not prevent beriberi but in a negative way are beriberi producing.

It is possible that moulds may deprive cereals of their vitamins so that spoiled cereals may be beriberi producing. There have been many reports both from asylums and prisons which would indicate that the employed and the patients or prisoners lived on the same ration. The same is true of pellagra. The statement is also often recorded that notwithstanding similarity of diet the disease has prevailed solely among the patients and prisoners. When such evidence has been carefully weighed it has generally been found that the correspondence in diet between the two classes has been solely on paper.

Many of the reported outbreaks of beriberi among those who were enjoying an abundant ration have been found to be connected with

the almost exclusive consumption of expensive canned meats and vegetables.

There is no doubt but that legislation against rice which contains less than 0.4% of P_2O_5 is a valuable measure of prophylaxis. Polished rice has lost in P_2O_5 as well as in vitamins.

Heiser has proposed that an excessive tax be placed on polished rice with free entry for the unpolished article. The following suggestions of Vedder in connection with prophylaxis would seem to be worthy of consideration in pellagra as well as in beriberi.

1. In any institution where bread is the staple article of diet, it should be made from whole wheat flour.
2. When rice is used in any quantity, the brown, undermilled, or so-called hygienic rice should be furnished.
3. Beans, peas, or other legume, known to prevent beri-beri, should be served at least once a week. Canned beans or peas should not be used.
4. Some fresh vegetable or fruit should be issued at least once a week and preferably at least twice a week.
5. Barley, a known preventive of beri-beri, should be used in all soups.
6. If corn meal is the staple of diet it should be yellow meal or water-ground meal, i.e., made from the whole grain.
7. White potatoes and fresh meat, known preventives of beri-beri, should be served at least once a week, and preferably once daily.
8. The too exclusive use of canned food must be carefully avoided.

Treatment.—The most important treatment is that of the substitution of a diet containing the essential vitamins for the beriberi producing one. In carrying this out regard must be had for the customs and tastes of the race concerned. Thus fresh beef may be excellent for some people but objectionable to others. Eggs are very valuable as is also true of unsterilized milk. Extract of rice polishings has given splendid results in infantile beriberi but does not seem to have been as efficacious in the disease in adults. Yeast has great curative value. In the treatment of a case care must be had not to allow a patient with any cardiac involvement to sit up in bed as this may cause sudden death.

Amyl nitrite inhalations or injections of 1% solution of nitroglycerine are indicated when there is evidence of extreme cardiac dilatation. Venesection is also to be kept in mind. Cardiac tonics are of less value than rest, diet and venesection.

In the feeding of such patients only small amounts should be given at a time to avoid epigastric distress.

Strychnine is usually given as a routine treatment in the less acute cases. With muscular atrophy massage is of prime importance. Electrical stimulation is also usually employed. With the palsies there is great danger of contractions so that even the bed clothing should not rest upon the paralyzed feet. Even splints may be necessitated.

CHAPTER XVII

PELLAGRA

DEFINITION AND SYNONYMS

Definition.—For a time it seemed as if the old idea that pellagra was connected with a dietary defect, chiefly as regarded some factor in a preponderating diet of maize, had been replaced by one assigning as cause some infectious process, probably protozoal, possibly bacterial.

The important advances recently made in the study of beriberi have tended once more to swing the pendulum to the food deficiency etiology.

The disease is essentially chronic with periodic exacerbations but may run a rather acute course with a rapidly fatal termination. The trend of symptoms consists of (1) mild neurasthenic manifestations in the winter to be followed in the spring by (2) disturbances of the alimentary tract, consisting of stomatitis, burning sensations going up the oesophagus, gastric eructations and recurring diarrhoeas. In addition to the neurological and alimentary tract symptoms we have the third and diagnostically the most important group, those of the cutaneous system. The pellagrous eruption is characterized by strikingly symmetrical sharply delimited patches of erythema, resembling sunburn. The sites of preference are backs of hands, extending up the forearms, bridge of nose or neck. The neurasthenia tends to pass into a toxic psychosis or even a confusional insanity.

Synonyms.—Maidismus, Alpine Scurvy, Asturian Leprosy, Mal de la Rosa, Mal del Sole.

HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION

History.—Strambio considers some of the references in Hippocrates to refer to pellagra but Castellani and Chalmers state that after searching the writing of Hippocrates they have been unable to find any references to a disease showing a resemblance to pellagra.

The first definite description of the disease is generally credited to Casal who, in 1735, described the disease as it existed in the Asturias.

In his writings he notes that the peasants lived chiefly on corn and that they rarely had fresh meat.

Casal's paper was not published until 1762 but Thiery, who visited Spain and was shown cases of pellagra by Casal, described the disease in 1755 and gave full credit to Casal for the recognition of the disease. The name of the disease was given it by Frapolli, in 1771, the derivation being from pelle—skin and agra—rough. The disease had then existed in Italy for a considerable time.

Casal called the disease *mal de la rosa*.

In 1810, Marzari insisted that the two diseases, pellagra and Alpine scurvy, which had a few years previously been recognized as identical, were caused by the consumption of maize and from this time on the maize theory as to etiology has been supported in Italy.

Later on (1872 to 1909) Lombroso elaborated the maize theory of etiology and so strongly presented this view that it is impossible for us to lightly set aside the arguments of this great physician.

While the zeists, as the advocates of the maize etiology are termed, insist that pellagra made its appearance in Europe following the introduction of Indian corn after the voyages of Columbus, there does not seem to be any evidence that pellagra ever existed among the North American Indians. In 1905 Sambon insisted that pellagra was a protozoal disease and in 1910 claimed that it was probably transmitted by a midge, *Simulium reptans*.

About 1907 pellagra was found to be an important disease of the Southern States of the United States and since that time the number of cases has steadily increased so that it is now estimated that there have been 50,000 cases in the United States.

It is generally conceded that isolated cases of pellagra had occurred in the United States prior to 1907, but they were generally diagnosed differently.

Geographical Distribution—In Europe it is most prevalent in Italy, Balkan States, Greece, Turkey, Spain and Portugal. In Roumania there were about 100,000 cases in 1906. The disease has decreased in incidence and virulence in Italy, there having been in 1910 only 33,869 cases, instead of 104,607 cases in 1881.

The disease was first recognized in Egypt by Sandwith in 1893 and is now known to be widespread in Lower Egypt. It is rare in Upper Egypt where they live on millet instead of maize. It exists in Algiers.

It has been reported from India and the Straits Settlements and prevails extensively in the West Indian Islands as well as in Mexico and Central America.

The disease in the Southern States of the United States is of a more fatal type than elsewhere, the average mortality having been 39.10%.

At present the Italian mortality is only about 3% although formerly it was much higher.

ETIOLOGY AND EPIDEMIOLOGY

Etiology.—Like other diseases of unknown etiology the views in this connection are innumerable.

It is customary to divide the adherents of the different views as to the cause of the disease into two groups, the zeists, who advocate a connection between maize or Indian corn and the disease and the anti-zeists, who claim that corn has nothing to do with pellagra.

Before taking up these better known considerations it may be stated that many now believe that pellagra, along with beriberi and scurvy, belongs to the group of "food deficiency" diseases. Just as beriberi is caused by the absence of a neuritis preventing substance or vitamine in the dietary, so is the symptom complex of pellagra brought about by the absence from the dietary of some vitamine essential to proper metabolism. There are various ideas as to the factor which eliminates the pellagra preventing vitamine.

Some think that in the process of milling maize the vitamine containing outer portion (bran) has been taken off just as with beriberi producing white rice, from which the pericarp with its neuritis preventing vitamine has been more or less completely removed.

From analyses of milled maize and millings Funk has recently suggested that pellagra in different countries is in relation to the degree of milling.

Others think that as the result of bacterial or mould diseases of the corn grain these important vitamins are destroyed. Then too, as with rice and beriberi, the prevailing idea is that while there is a striking association between a maize dietary, deficient in the pellagra preventing vitamine and the occurrence of pellagra, yet this deficiency may be supplied by other foods.

Then too this vitamine is thought to be present normally in other cereals than corn so that grain foods deficient in this vitamine, other than corn, may be factors in producing pellagra, just as a preponderating diet of a single cereal, other than polished rice, which has a vitamine deficiency as the result of milling or disease, may produce beriberi.

There are those who believe that the methods of preserving foods, cereal or proteid, by sterilizing at high temperatures, destroy these vitamins so essential to proper metabolism so that people who subsist extensively on canned vegetables and preserved meats, instead of fresh meats and vegetables, may develop pellagra. Evidence of this sort is obtainable in the mill villages of the Southern States of the United States where pellagra is so very prevalent.

We are now beginning to recognize that slight and vague digestive troubles may be pellagrous in nature although never going on to the development of the cutaneous, neurological and alimentary tract diagnostic triad of symptoms.

Again there would appear to be efficient resistance to pellagra in those who are in good physical condition, but when reduced by illness, or the effects of poor diet and defective hygienic surroundings, they may develop it. There are those who think that hookworm disease is an important factor in predisposing to pellagra.

Not only does alcoholism, when coexistent with pellagra, make for a bad prognosis but there are many who think that any abuse of alcohol predisposes to pellagra. Against this however is the fact that pellagra in the United States is about five times as common among women as among men. It is generally recognized that pregnancy and lactation predispose to pellagra.

The Zeistic Views.—The idea which was at one time entertained that maize, whether good or bad, brought on pellagra has now been generally abandoned, owing to investigations, which proved that corn possessed a high nutritive value and was easily assimilable, together with evidence to show that where care was taken in the maturing of the grain and the prevention of decomposition by moulds or bacteria, pellagra was either non-existent or diminished in a district where such measures were instituted.

The statement is frequently seen that pellagra did not make its appearance in Europe until after the introduction of maize, subsequent to the discovery of the New World. There are authors who think Casal was suspicious of a maize dietary.

The zeistic views now incorporate some additional factor with the basic one of a rather exclusive maize dietary.

1. The verderame theory of Ballardini. From noting on the corn grains a covering with a greenish mould, Ballardini in 1845 advanced the view that pellagra was due to this mould and from this time on we have the so called zeitoxic views, which hold that pellagra is caused by spoiled corn. Ceni and Fossati regard a toxin elaborated by various moulds as causative. The fungi toward which attention has been chiefly directed are *Aspergillus fumigatus* and *A. flavescens* as well as certain species of *Penicillium* and *Mucor*.

2. The Lombroso view that as a result of the action of mould or bacteria toxins are elaborated which, when ingested, give rise to the disease.

3. That the toxins have origin in the action of various organisms, especially *B. coli*, on the ingested corn, while in the intestines.

4. Recently views have been brought forward that pellagra is an anaphylactic phenomenon connected with sensitization to the maize proteins.

5. Rabitschek has brought forward a photodynamic theory which is that pellagra is due to a preponderating maize or possibly other cereal dietary which results in certain photodynamic substances being introduced into the circulation. These substances become toxic under the influence of sunlight. Hirschfelder has failed to find any fluorescent body in the serum of five patients suffering with severe pellagra.

Among arguments in favor of the maize etiology of pellagra may be mentioned the following:

(a) Among the natives of Upper Egypt, where millet instead of maize is the staple cereal, pellagra is rare, while in Lower Egypt where much maize is eaten the disease is far more prevalent.

(b) While the natives of Corfu, prior to 1857, grew their own maize and ate only sound grains there was no pellagra but later, when the corn crop was less profitable, and the grain was imported from Roumania, much spoiled maize was brought in and pellagra made its appearance.

Alsberg has shown that in recent years new methods of harvesting corn have become common in the Southern States of the United States. Instead of topping the corn it is cut and shocked with the result that conditions are more favorable for the spoiling of the corn. He also notes that varieties of corn are now planted which have a greater oil content which means a larger embryo and that it is this embryo which most easily spoils. Again he notes that much corn is now raised in Northern States where the season is shorter, so that there is a greater probability of immature corn being marketed. All of these facts might explain the recent appearance of pellagra in the U. S. and its previous non existence.

The Antizeistic Views.—As a rule the advocates of the non-importance of maize in the production of pellagra hold that we are dealing with an infectious disease and that it can only come into existence by transmission from some other case.

Of these views the best known is that of Sambon.

1. In 1905 Sambon brought forward the idea that pellagra was a protozoal disease because among other points it showed an increase of large mononuclears and responded to arsenic as was true of many other protozoal diseases. In 1910 he further elaborated his views by claiming that by reason of the seasonal recurrences, of the greater incidence in male farm laborers in rural districts and other points, pellagra was probably transmitted by a midge belonging to the genus *Simulium* of the family Simuliidae.

He stated that the disease was rural because these midges only breed in swiftly flowing streams of rural districts.

More recently he has incriminated midges of the family Chironomidae as well as *Simulium*. The Thompson-McFadden Pellagra Commission has investigated most carefully the possibilities of *Simulium* in transmission of pellagra and has found that there is no evidence of such midges ever biting pellagra cases or members of the Commission in that district of South Carolina in which they worked. Again, the disease was chiefly prevalent in the cotton mill villages rather than on the farms and, furthermore, it was five times as prevalent among the women who remained in their homes than among the males who were in their houses only at night.

2. The Thompson-McFadden Commission, while holding a very conservative attitude feel that certain faecal bacteria may be the etiological factors.

3. Alessandrini believes that the causative factor may be present in certain waters. Long has suggested that amoebae may be the cause.

Tizzoni has incriminated a streptobacillus which he stated he found in the blood and organs of pellagrins as well as growing on maize.

Epidemiology.—As the result of very careful epidemiological studies the Thompson-McFadden pellagra commission came to the conclusion that there was evidence against the transmission of pellagra by ticks, lice, bedbugs, cockroaches, fleas, mosquitoes and buffalo gnats (*Simulium*).

They were rather disposed to consider that the disease showed a

greater prevalence where the disposal of faeces was unhygienic, as in unsanitary privies, and that the existence of an efficient water sewerage system prevented pellagra. If faecal bacteria should act as infectious agents then the house fly would possibly be worthy of suspicion.

Many of the peculiarities of sex and place distribution could be explained by the stable fly, *Stomoxys calcitrans*, a fly which bites viciously in the district in which they worked. This fly bites only by day and is intimately associated with human dwellings so that the greater incidence of the disease in the women, who stay at home, as against an incidence five times less in the women or men who work in the mill during the day might be explained by *Stomoxys* bites. As *Simulium* does not tend to enter houses, the greater prevalence of pellagra in houseworkers is against *Simulium* as a transmitting agent.

At the same time their failure to transmit pellagra to monkeys by injections of defibrinated pellagra blood would militate against any infectious agent existing in the blood. It may be stated that Harris has claimed to have produced a disease resembling pellagra in two monkeys by injecting filtrates from emulsions of brain, skin and intestinal tract of cases dying of pellagra.

The Thompson-McFadden Commission was unable to note any evidence that would distinctly point to corn, good or bad, as giving rise to pellagra outbreaks. They did note however, a very limited use of fresh meats.

PATHOLOGY AND MORBID ANATOMY

There is nothing very constant or characteristic in the pathological changes of pellagra. In the second stage the urine shows an indicanuria and the faeces an abundance of skatol. The examination of the gastric contents gives findings of anacidity and deficiency in pepsin.

The blood shows a moderate lymphocytosis but not an increase in the percentage of the large mononuclears as has been claimed by the adherents of the protozoon theory.

At autopsy we find rather marked emaciation. The skin lesions show degenerative changes in the corium with slight cellular infiltration. In the epidermis there is superficial atrophy but still some thickening in the stratum granulosum.

Warthin states that the lesions are those of a chronic intoxication. The spleen shows atrophy and in the follicles there is necrosis of germ cells as well as hyaline changes. The liver and kidneys often show fatty change. In general the changes are those of a senile character. There is atrophy of the mucosa of the small intestines and there may be small ulcers present.

The mesenteric glands are enlarged.

Macroscopically no changes are seen in the central nervous system but histologically we often note chromatolysis with bulging of borders, eccentric nucleus and disappearance of tigroid substance in various nerve cells, especially those of the anterior horn, posterior ganglia, Clark's column and Betz cells of cortex. There is an absence of chronic meningo-encephalitis and meningo-myelitis which should be present in the general type of protozoal infective lesions.

The cell count of the cerebro-spinal fluid is normal and there is usually an absence of globulin increase with a negative Wassermann.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

There is probably no disease which shows such a multiplicity of symptoms and such variations in these symptoms.

In a typical case, with its more or less prolonged prodromal neurasthenic manifestations, often first noted during the winter, in which muscular fatigue, especially of the legs; dizziness, insomnia, apprehension and occipital heaviness may be marked, together with a burning sensation in and sensitiveness of the mouth and slight epigastric discomfort, we have in the ensuing Spring months more marked alimentary tract disturbances, consisting of stomatitis, gastric disturbances, especially pyrosis, with a recurring diarrhoea. About this time the most characteristic and most easily recognized of the signs of the disease appear as localized, sharply delimited, strikingly symmetrical skin lesions of certain parts of the body which are chiefly exposed to the sun's rays. This erythema is very similar to sun burn but often follows inadequate exposure to the sun and the erythema persists instead of fading. Desquamation continues for weeks or months instead of healing. The dry scaling area usually shows a striking pigmentation at the borders even after the central portions of the erythema have cleared up. The skin lesions instead of being dry and atrophic may more rarely be moist and oedematous.

From a vague neurasthenia we have now more distinct neurological manifestations such as variations in the reflexes, tremors, especially of tongue, head and upper extremities and a depressed mental state with lack of mental concentration or lapses of memory. Later on we may have a toxic psychosis in which mutism is often noted in a mental state characteristically melancholic. A final cachexia, with dementia, loss of control of the vesical sphincter and a terminal diarrhoea, marks the end. Recurrences of clinical manifestations each Spring, or possibly

skipping a year, are striking features of the disease. While the skin and alimentary tract disturbances are usually in abeyance in the winter, this holds to less degree with the nervous symptoms.



FIG. 52.—Marked symmetry of all lesions. Illinois case. (From Lavinder and Babcock.)

We may then state that in a typical case we have the diagnostic triad or pellagrous symptom complex of (1) symmetrical, sharply delimited erythemas of certain por-

tions of the skin surface exposed to the sun with (2) alimentary tract disturbances of stomatitis, epigastric and substernal soreness and burning, with pyrosis and a recurring diarrhoea and (3) neurological manifestations in which a prodromal neurasthenia is followed by paraesthesias, in which burning sensations are prominent, at times leading to suicide by drowning, with alterations of deep reflexes, tremors and, in more advanced stages, a confusional insanity.

One of the characteristic features of pellagra is the periodic recurrences in Spring, with almost complete cessation of skin and alimentary tract symptoms in the winter and, again, the tendency in many cases for one group of symptoms to overshadow the symptoms which usually accompany them. For these and other reasons it is peculiarly difficult to recognize stages but for convenience many authors describe the disease under a prodromal, first, second and third stage.

The prodromal manifestations of neurasthenia, malaise and digestive disturbances would be suited to many other diseases, especially tuberculosis, and they are rarely recognized as belonging to pellagra until the appearance of typical skin or other symptoms brings about their association with pellagra. There is little definite information as to the period of incubation although Sandwith places it at from 9 to 12 months.

In the first stage we note the alimentary tract disturbances of sodden fissured conditions at the angles of the mouth, a large indented tongue with central coating and bare sides and tips, often with a shiny mucus coating these red borders and a red buccal mucosa. The fungi-form papillae appear as pinhead red elevations, and the buccal mucosa shows a general redness. Later on the tongue becomes bare, red and fissured. There is often an increased flow of saliva. Aphthous ulcers are less common than in sprue. The gums are often quite tender and in cases with very severe stomatitis there may be enlargement of the salivary glands. The pharynx is congested and a similar condition of the oesophagus gives rise to a burning sensation which is often described by the patient as going up the gullet from the stomach.

Gastric disturbances, especially gastralgia, pyrosis and eructations, may be pronounced. Anacidity and deficiency of pepsin are noted in gastric juice examinations. The intestinal symptoms are those of recurring diarrhoea or occasionally of a mild dysentery. Although the skin manifestations usually follow those of the alimentary tract they may precede them or occur simultaneously.

It is usual to designate the skin lesions of the first stage as erythematous, in that they resemble a sunburn. These pellagrous eruptions may follow some source of

skin irritation as well as that from exposure to the sun, thus the perianal, perineal, vulvar and even scrotal regions may show a marked erythema from the slight irritation of the rubbing of clothes or opposite parts.

The typical eruption, however, is that which shows itself on the backs of the hands or running up beyond the wrist to the lower third of the forearm. The phalanges may also show the eruption. On the face the eruption is most common over the bridge of the nose, on the cheeks and forehead. There may be spots back of the ears or on the nape of the



FIG. 53.—Dry dermatitis on face, hands, neck and upper chest. Egyptian case. (From Lavinder and Babcock.)

neck. Occasionally the butterfly outline of lupus erythematosus is seen. The face may show the so called pellagrous mask. On the neck we may have a band like eruption extending to the upper part of the sternum (Casal's necklace) or the erythema may extend down the sternum (cravat).

On the feet the dorsal eruption does not usually go above the malle-

oli and rarely involves the dorsal surfaces of the external toes although rather commonly affecting the great toe. In the U. S. the eruption may extend up the front and back of the leg (boot). The soles of the feet and palms of the hands are not infrequently involved in American cases as is also true of the tip of the elbow. Sandwith states that the skin lesions in Egypt are more wide spread than those seen in Italy.

These skin eruptions show striking symmetry, marked delimitation from unaffected skin, with often more intense pigmentation at this border line and they burn rather than itch.

The more advanced skin lesions are those of a dermatitis rather than an erythema. The affected skin is at first of a dull red colour like a sunburn and later becomes reddish brown or livid. The normal elasticity is lost and the area appears as a dry, scaly, atrophic patch—it is the skin of a very old man. The moist oedematous skin lesions are far more common in the U. S. than elsewhere and may show bullae and even gangrene. Such cases may show the gauntlet desquamation.

In the second stage we have a continuation of the skin and alimentary tract symptoms with pronounced neurological manifestations. Tremors of the tongue and hands appear. There is great muscular weakness of the legs. Paraesthesias in great variety are common. Pain on pressure in the dorsal and lumbar regions of the back is common. The gait is more that of marked muscular weakness. The deep reflexes may show variations from normal and there may be variations in the reflexes of the two sides, thus the patellar reflex on one side may be exaggerated and that on the other normal or diminished. Ankle clonus is rare.

The mental state is confused and the patient shows depression and is often morose. In the second stage the urine shows rather marked indicanuria and the faeces contain an excess of skatol. Loss of weight is as marked a feature of pellagra as of tuberculosis.

With the setting in of a confusional insanity and a terminal cachexia we have the third and last stage of the disease. On account of so many of the victims of pellagra becoming inmates of insane asylums the disease is peculiarly dreaded.

Pellagra often runs a rather acute course in the U. S., the patient dying within 2 or 3 months. The usual course in Europe is one prolonged over years, with at times intermissions covering one or more years.

A form of pellagra known as typhoid pellagra often shows a high fever with symptoms more or less resembling a very toxic case of typhoid. Such states are often terminal. The usual course of pellagra is afebrile. Such terms as *pellagra sine pellagra* are given to cases which may not show the skin lesions and the designation

pseudopellagra has usually been used by those who insist upon limiting the name pellagra to those cases which fit in with their special etiological views so that cases

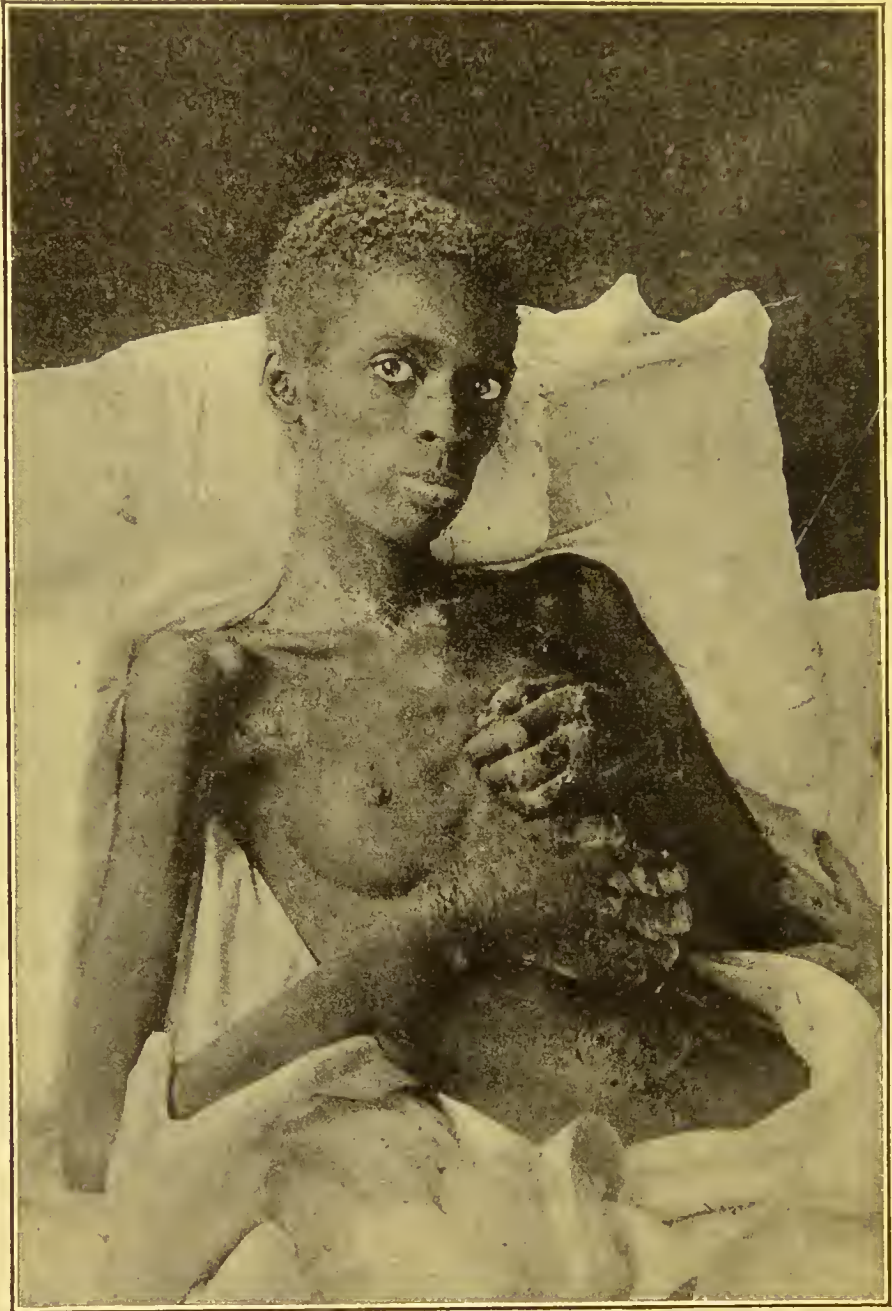


FIG. 54.—Wet dermatitis. Localization usual. Hands oedematous. Cachectic state. South Carolina case. (From Lävinder and Babcock.)

clinically pellagra but in which the special etiological factor does not obtain are called pseudopellagra.

Symptoms in Detail

The cutaneous, neurological and alimentary tract disturbances have each already been separately described in detail.

The Blood.—Hillman has made very careful blood examinations of a series of cases and found a variable degree of chloranaemia which however, was not a prominent feature. He notes the occasional occurrence of a leucocytosis in the course of the disease. As a rule there is a definite lymphocytosis, the average percentage of lymphocytes being 33.99. The average percentage for the large mononuclears was 2.59. The average percentage of eosinophiles was 2.73. The determinations of the coagulation time of the blood gave normal figures.

The Temperature Chart.—We expect a normal temperature in an uncomplicated case of pellagra but in typhoid pellagra and in the terminal stages of the disease a fever of from 101° to 103° F. is generally noted. Fever makes for a bad prognosis. There is nothing special about the circulatory system other than low blood pressure and a tendency to vasomotor manifestations. With the genito-urinary system, other than the rather marked indicanuria, there is nothing of note.

DIAGNOSIS

In the presence of the diagnostic triad of cutaneous, nervous and alimentary tract manifestations there is little difficulty in diagnosis but when the skin lesions are absent or only slightly developed the difficulty is great.

There is no reliable laboratory test and the reports as to positive reactions following injections of maize extracts seem unreliable. Again there do not seem to be any antibodies in the serum of pellagrins which can be utilized in serological diagnosis. A primary requirement would be a suitable antigen. Competent workers have been unable to find any bacterial organism in the blood of pellagrins.

Recently Obregia has reported successful results with the use of the Abderhalden test. He used pellagrous tissue from the cerebral cortex, sympathetic nervous system, thyroid, liver and heart.

Advanced cases reacted strongly with cerebral cortex, incipient ones with material from the sympathetic system.

Erythema multiforme and dermatitis venenata seem to be the skin diseases most liable to cause confusion.

In old people with arterio-sclerotic changes and consequent mental symptoms there may be lesions of the hands or feet of more or less gangrenous type, which may be a real source of confusion. The lack of sharp delimitation of such lesions and the absence of the pellagrous stomatitis should differentiate.

In Italy a disease due to eating ergot diseased rye meal and called ergotism may be a source of confusion as this disease shows gangrenous manifestations. The gangrene of ergotism is a dry one.

Sprue does not show the dermatitis and the nervous manifestations are solely those of irritability or possibly slight neurasthenia. The sprue stool is not found in pellagra.

Typhoid pellagra may be confused with severe typhoid fever or other acute infectious diseases or with conditions associated with coma as diabetic or uraemic coma.

PROGNOSIS

It is a risk to venture a prognosis in pellagra because cases that seem mild may suddenly become severe. The extent of the skin lesions do not parallel the severity of the case although moist or gangrenous dermatitis is usually seen only in severe cases.

When fever comes on the prognosis of the case is unfavorable and when the mental manifestations are prominent the prognosis is bad.

The Italian physicians give a more hopeful prognosis than the American ones, which is easily understood when it is considered that American mortality from pellagra is given as from 25 to 39.10%. That of Italy is certainly below 10% and recent statistics have shown a mortality of only 3%.

The earlier a case of pellagra comes under treatment the more favorable the prognosis.

PROPHYLAXIS AND TREATMENT

Prophylaxis.—There does not seem to be any satisfactory evidence as to the contagiousness of pellagra, so that any method involving isolation is not indicated.

It is possibly advisable that the stools be disposed of as would be indicated in typhoid fever, there being some evidence that where proper disposal of faeces is operative there is an absence of pellagra.

Even if not productive of pellagra it is certainly advisable to prevent the use of spoiled corn by state regulation.

American authorities attach rather more importance to *Stomoxys* than to *Simulium* as a possible transmitting agent. *Stomoxys* breeds best in the hay mixed horse manure about stables and measures should be taken along this line.

If the faeces are of importance we should guard against the contaminating influences of the house fly.

As a proper, well balanced dietary is an important curative measure it is therefore prophylactic.

Treatment.—In a disease which characteristically shows a marked amelioration in the winter or a disappearance of symptoms for one or more years we should be very conservative in attributing improvement to any drug.

At the New York Post Graduate hospital, 17 cases were apparently cured on rest in bed and full nutritious diet. Hospital treatment, thereby removing the patients from the environment in which the disease developed, is generally conceded of the greatest benefit.

Many authorities speak highly of arsenic in various forms as Fowler's solution, atoxyl, salvarsan, etc. Others are equally pessimistic as to the value of arsenic in any form.

Niles is a strong advocate of hydrotherapeutic measures. He recommends the drinking of two to six glasses of tepid water daily as well as colon irrigations, cold abdominal compresses, hot packs and saline baths.

Deeks prefers to eliminate sugar and starchy food from the dietary of pellagrins for a few days at a time and to give fresh fruit juices, with broths and milk. He highly recommends dilute nitric acid, well diluted, before meals. As there is almost constantly an acidity and pepsin deficiency in the gastric juice it would seem that this condition should be treated.

It is advisable to keep the patient out of the sun and require him to take his exercise after sunset.

Dyer recommends $1/2$ to 1 ounce gelatin daily together with the juice of two or more oranges or lemons. He prefers a diet of eggs, milk and well cooked vegetables. He also gives quinine hydrobromate in 3 grain doses 3 times daily.

Psychotherapy seems to be of importance in the treatment of pellagra.

Lavinder says that many people have pellagra because they have some other condition and when this is cured the pellagra is also cured.

Goldberger and his colleagues of the Public Health Service have observed striking influences of diet in causing and curing pellagra.

In an orphan asylum with 211 orphans, 68, or 32%, had pellagra. These children were divided into 3 groups and given different rations, those under 6 years of age receiving milk and eggs, while those over 12 years were given meat, as they assisted in the work of the institution. The children between 6 and 12 lived practically on a vegetarian diet in which corn products and syrup preponderated with deficiency of legumes. Of 25 young children only 2 showed pellagra, with but 1 case in the 66 children over 12 years of age while the 120 between 6 and 12 gave 65 cases or 52%. Elsewhere these workers have shown that a generous diet with rest in bed has marked curative power which generally becomes manifest in about one month. Eggs, milk, fresh beef and fresh vegetables were conspicuous in the dietary.

CHAPTER XVIII

SPRUE

DEFINITION AND SYNONYMS

Definition.—Under the designation sprue we have a form of chronic diarrhoea characterized by periods of improvement alternating with a return to the previous condition. The disease is afebrile, of insidious onset and first manifests itself by tenderness of the buccal mucosa and vague digestive disturbances.

The rawness of mouth and gullet is soon followed by ulcerations especially at the site of the posterior molars and a bare raw tongue. Exceedingly characteristic are the voluminous, frothy stools which are evacuated chiefly in the morning hours. The patient becomes weak, emaciated, irritable and of an earthy pallor.

The disease chiefly affects Europeans who have lived in Southern China, Cochin China and Java and unless treated early tends to progress to a fatal termination.

Synonyms.—The word sprue is a corruption of the Dutch term “sprew” used to designate this tropical aphthae or aphthous stomatitis. The name psilosis, meaning bare, was suggested by Thin and is the term employed in many books instead of the better recognized designation, sprue.

Other designations are: Chronic diarrhoea of the tropics, Ceylon sore mouth and Cochin China diarrhoea.

ETIOLOGY AND EPIDEMIOLOGY

Etiology.—The cause is unknown. The disease makes its appearance chiefly in Europeans who have lived many years in the tropics and may not show itself until the patient has returned home. (In one case reported by Thin 17 years after the return home.)

It seems to select those who are weakened by dysentery or other debilitating diseases, or who are compelled to subsist on indigestible food or to lead a life of exposure to hardships. Women in whom the menstrual flow is excessive or who are

in the period of lactation seem to be especially susceptible. Some think alcoholics more susceptible. The idea has been advanced that the abuse of calomel has been a factor and this view is one to be given weight because it is well recognized that at the present there is much less sprue than formerly and with this there has been a more rational use of calomel. The excessive use of highly seasoned food, so common with Europeans in the tropics, may have an influence.

Some have thought that sprue was the manifestation of a tropical pancreas; at first congestion and later exhaustion of its function. The character of the stools lends support to this view.

At one time it was thought that *Strongyloides stercoralis* was the cause; this idea had its origin in the finding of these larvæ in the stools of a patient with Cochin China diarrhoea.

Certain authors have considered bacteria giving a granulose staining reaction as the cause while others have thought cocci to be concerned. Kohlbrugge thought that fungi of the genus *Oidium* were the cause while Castellani, in a study of moulds of the genus *Monilia* in sprue stools, holds them responsible for the excessive gas production, although not the cause of the disease. Various protozoa, as amoebæ and spirochaetes, have been considered as possible causes.

Epidemiology.—The disease is rare in natives and is entirely endemic. Some authorities have suggested a greater frequency of the disease in those intimately exposed to a case as in husband and wife or the members of a family.

PATHOLOGY AND MORBID ANATOMY

The changes in the alimentary tract apparently originate in the structures lying beneath the epithelial coverings, thus indicating that the toxic material acts through the blood rather than as a surface irritant to the mucosa. At first there is congestion of the underlying connective tissue with a round cell infiltration. Later on the epithelial covering of the alimentary tract suffers and auto intoxication, as evidenced by indicanuria, becomes operative.

At autopsy the subcutaneous fat is found to have almost disappeared. The intestines, especially the ileum, show marked thinning, this atrophy especially affecting the mucosa, the surface of which is covered by a layer of dirty grey mucus. The submucosa generally shows connective tissue increase. The gut is pale and diaphanous. The solitary follicles may show as small cysts filled with a gelatinous material or as ulcers.

The liver is markedly atrophied. The mesenteric glands are usually enlarged. The pancreas may show cirrhotic changes.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

A Typical Case.—It is very difficult to obtain definite information as to the onset which is characteristically insidious.

There is usually first noted a sensitiveness of the buccal mucosa so that alcoholic drinks and acid or highly seasoned foods cannot be taken without marked discomfort. A sense of fulness or distension in the epigastric region is often an early symptom. Frequently there is a history of a rather intractable morning diarrhoea which may alternate with periods of constipation. The diarrhoeal movements are remarkably copious and soon change from bile colored, liquid evacuations to the characteristic putty colored, pultaceous, gas bubble permeated, offensive stool of sprue. While the patient experiences a sense of relief from the evacuation of the fermenting mass yet there is at times an excoriation about the anus which may cause pain when at stool. Neuralgic pains of the region of the anus may be present late in the disease.

When examined microscopically the stools are found to show much fat, yeasts and undigested food. The reaction is acid. Nausea and vomiting, especially about noon, may be complained of.

While the characteristic stools best show the full development of the disease there are also striking changes noted in tongue and buccal mucosa. Following the marked sensitiveness of the mouth above noted there soon appears a redness of the sides and tip of the tongue with a glistening coating of the surface. Superficial ulcers develop along the tongue borders, frenum and buccal mucosa. Very characteristic are ulcers at the site of the rear molars (Crombie's ulcers). Later on the tongue becomes bare, fissured and even glazed, as if varnished.

The gullet may be raw and very sensitive. The appetite is apt to be capricious and the patient may be very intractable, insisting upon dietary indiscretions which he knows will aggravate his condition. There is a progressive loss of strength, weight and energy. The liver progressively diminishes in size but is difficult to map out owing to the bulging, dough like abdominal contents. The urine is usually free of albumen but shows marked indicanuria. Sprue is characteristically afebrile.

Anaemia becomes marked, the red cells going as low at times as under 2,000,000, per cmm. and the Hb percentage is correspondingly low. The polymorphonuclears are reduced in percentage.

There is a tendency to depression and irritability.

Symptoms in Detail.

The Stomatitis.—At first we have a disagreeable bitter taste in an unusually sensitive mouth. Later there develop superficial ulcers along the sides and frenum of the tongue, which subsequently involve the buccal mucosa. The gums may be quite tender and saliva dribble from the mouth.

In the later stages the tongue becomes bare, red, fissured and glazed.

The Stools.—Commencing as early morning diarrhoea, with at times alternating constipation, there gradually sets in that which makes for a diagnosis of sprue—putty colored, fermenting offensive stools which are extraordinarily copious.

The Blood Findings.—There is a marked secondary anaemia with great reduction in red cells and Hb. percentage. The colour index is chlorotic—below normal.

There is a mononuclear increase with polymorphonuclear reduction. The white count is somewhat below normal—4000 to 6000.

Other Features of the Disease.—The liver is notably diminished in size. The urine shows indicanuria. The patient has a dry earthy skin and may show oedema about ankles.

Mentally there is lack of concentration with marked irritability and moroseness. The abdomen is doughy and the temperature in the later stages tends to become subnormal.

DIAGNOSIS

Thrush is characterized by the membranous coating which microscopically shows the fungus. It also is chiefly a disease of children and those who live under wretched hygienic conditions and with insufficient food. The characteristic stools are absent.

Pellagra.—The stomatitis, diarrhoea and mental irritability are very similar in the two diseases. There is, however, absence of the sprue stools in pellagra and the periodical recurrence and skin manifestations of pellagra are absent in sprue.

Hill Diarrhoea

Many authorities do not consider this as a disease distinct from sprue. The English, however, note the features of its occurrence only at high altitudes; thus persons going to Simla suffer from hill diarrhoea but upon their return to the sea level the disease disappears. The characteristic features of hill diarrhoea or Simla trot, as it is often called, are the passage of from 2 to 6 watery, whitish stools in the early morning hours. The patient is usually free from diarrhoea in the afternoon. The color may resemble that of freshly made whitewash, hence diarrhoea alba.

At first it is only the annoyance that is complained of but later on the appetite is lost and the patient becomes weak.

There is an absence of the sprue mouth. The laboratory diagnosis, other than the finding of excess of fatty acids, soaps, undigested food remnants and yeasts is unimportant.

PROGNOSIS

While the disease responds to treatment in those who are not too far advanced yet it always should be considered a serious affection. The

chances of a complete restoration to health are better for those who can leave the tropics and reside permanently at home.

TREATMENT

It is essential that the patient possess the will power to carry out the course of treatment; the clothing should be of wool to prevent chilling and the patient should remain in bed until his condition has decidedly improved.

The Milk Treatment.—A preliminary dose of castor oil is given and when this acts the patient should begin taking milk as the sole food. At first about 4 pints of skimmed milk are given daily. The milk should be given in 2 hour feedings, well warmed and taken through a glass tube or with a teaspoon—it should not be drunk. As the stools become less frothy the amount of milk is increased so that the patient takes from 6 to 7 pints daily. Milk should be the sole food for six weeks from the time the stools become solid and the mouth symptoms disappear. Eggs are usually well borne after the milk course. Stale bread or toast is cautiously added and then some fish or chicken.

Meat Treatment.—If the patient is very ill it may be advisable, after the preliminary dose of castor oil, to give meat juice obtained by expressing the juice from slightly broiled meat, about 2 teaspoonfuls every half hour. If possible however one starts in with the meat cure, which is about 4 ounces of a lightly broiled chopped up beefsteak, every 4 hours.

At least 4 pints of warm water should be taken daily but not at the same time the patient eats the meat. Rest in bed and the avoidance of chilling are important measures.

Some prefer to alternate the milk treatment with the meat one.

Fruit Treatment.—The patient is allowed fruit in great abundance. Strawberries, peaches, grapes, ripe gooseberries and bananas are usually recommended. Papayas are particularly well suited. Sour or fibrous fruits should be avoided. Strawberries and milk are highly advocated. Cooked strawberries or other cooked fruits do not benefit the patient, the curative principle being apparently destroyed by heating. At all times alcoholic drinks and highly spiced foods should be avoided.

The only drug that has been advocated to any extent is santonin, in doses of 5 grains, night and morning. It is very doubtful if any drug treatment is of the least value.

LeDantec, with the elimination of the granulose bacteria in mind has recommended the cutting off of carbohydrates and the giving of a strictly albuminous diet. Subsequently he gives lactic acid producers as contained in *Bacillus bulgaricus* preparations.

SECTION V

HELMINTHIC INFECTIONS

CHAPTER XIX

ANCYLOSTOMIASIS

HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION

History.—It is very probable that hookworm disease existed in Egypt in the remote past and it has been claimed that a disease mentioned in the Ebers Papyrus was of that nature.

Goeze found a hookworm in a badger in 1782. He named the parasite *Ascaris criniformis*. Froelich, in 1789, found hookworms in the fox and named them hookworms from the hook-like ribs of the copulatory bursa. He proposed the generic name *Uncinaria*. Therefore *Uncinaria* belongs to the hookworms of the fox and is not valid for any human species.

In 1838, Dubini noted that these worms were generally found in very anaemic cases and that the mucosa of the duodenum or jejunum frequently showed punctate haemorrhages. On account of the four ventral teeth projecting from the mouth he gave it the name *Agchylostoma* or correctly *Ancylostoma*.

In 1854 Griesinger, as a result of frequently noting the lesions produced by the worms, stated that they were the cause of Egyptian chlorosis. In 1866, Wucherer connected hookworms with a disease of Brazil called opilacao. In 1878 Grassi noted that the disease could be diagnosed by the finding of the characteristic eggs in the stools of patients.

It was the prevalence of a severe anaemia among the workmen employed in the construction of the St. Gothard tunnel, which Perroncito proved to be due to hookworm infection, that established the great importance of this parasitic disease as the cause of a severe and fatal anaemia. About the same time it became generally considered that the anaemias which affected workmen in mines was of a similar nature.

That the disease was very prevalent in the Southern States of the U. S., as long ago as 1849, is shown by the writings of Duncan, who noted the frequency of anaemia, often associated with dirt eating, among the slaves. He described the oedematous

legs, the protuberant belly and cardiac palpitation. There were several cases reported in the U. S. from 1893-1897 but they were mainly in foreigners.

From 1895 to 1901, Stiles kept insisting that hookworm disease should be of frequent occurrence in the U. S.

A. J. Smith found several cases in persons living in Texas and recognized the fact that these hookworms were different from those of Europe. It was from a study of material from Smith and Claytor in the U. S. and, later on, from Ashford in Porto Rico, that Stiles, in 1902, reported a new genus of hookworm as existing in man. It was first named *Uncinaria americana* but *Uncinaria*, belonging to the hookworm of the fox, was not valid, so he changed the name to *Necator americanus*.

Geographical Distribution.—The disease is rare outside the tropical and subtropical countries except in mines or tunnels where suitable conditions of warmth and moisture exist.



FIG. 55.—Geographical distribution of Ancylostomiasis. Stars show where disease is widely prevalent. Triangles, where less so.

It is extremely prevalent in India and Egypt as well as in China and other parts of the East. It is a very important infection in Porto Rico and the Philippine Islands. It is extensively distributed in South America, especially Brazil, as well as in Central America, Mexico and the Southern States of the U. S.

ETIOLOGY AND EPIDEMIOLOGY

Etiology.—The hookworm infections of man come almost entirely from two parasites, *Ancylostoma duodenale*, the Old World species, and *Necator americanus*, which is generally called the New World species from its having first been reported from the U. S. by Stiles. Hookworms belong to the class Nematoda and family Strongylidae.

Quite recently Lane has reported a new species, *A. ceylanicum*, as having been obtained from 3 men in Bengal, after treatment. This species is the one that infects the civet cat in Ceylon. So far as we know the other human species belong solely to man.

The male hookworms are a little more than $\frac{1}{3}$ of an inch (9 mm.) long and the females a little more than $\frac{1}{2}$ inch (13 mm.) in length. The males can readily be distinguished by their posterior, umbrella-like expansion or copulatory bursa. The tail of the female is pointed. The vulva of *A. duodenale* is located in lower half of the ventral surface; that of *N. americanus* in upper half. The large, oval mouth of the Old World hookworm has four clawlike teeth on the ventral side of the buccal cavity and two knoblike teeth on the dorsal aspect. It also has a pair of ventral lancets below the four ventral teeth. One cannot make out a dorso-median tooth. In *N. americanus* the buccal capsule is round, smaller and the ventral teeth are replaced by chitinous plates. Dorsally there are two similar but only slightly developed lips or plates. A very prominent, conical dorso-median tooth projects into the buccal cavity. Through it passes the duct of the dorsal oesophageal gland. There are also 4 buccal lancets. The copulatory bursa of the *Necator americanus* is also different, being terminally bipartite and deeply cleft in the division of the dorsal ray, rather than tripartite and shallow, as with *A. duodenale*. The anterior extremity of *Ancylostoma* bends in the same direction as the general body curve while that of *Necator* hooks back in an opposite direction to the body curve. In general, *Ancylostoma* is larger and thicker than *Necator*.

The name hookworm was given to these nematodes from the hooklike processes of the ribs of the rays of the copulatory bursa. Dubini called the Old World parasite *Agchylostoma*, properly *Ancylostoma*, on account of the 4 formidable hook- or claw-like ventral teeth of the buccal capsule. ($\alpha\gamma\chi\upsilon\lambda\omicron\sigma$, hook, and $\sigma\tau\omicron\mu\alpha$, mouth.)

A. ceylanicum is somewhat smaller than *A. duodenale* and in the copulatory bursa of the male we have a deeper cleft in the dorsal ray and 2 rather long tips to each branch instead of the shallow cleft and 3 stumpy processes of the 2 branches as in *A. duodenale*.

Life History.—The delicate-shelled eggs pass out in the faeces, and in one or two days a rhabditiform embryo (200×14 mikrons) is produced. The mouth cavity of the embryo is about as deep as the diameter of the embryo at the posterior end of the mouth cavity; that of *Strongyloides* is only about one half as deep as the diameter.

As a practical point, the anaerobic conditions in the intestines seem to prevent development of the hookworm ova or at any rate the absence of the oxygen, so nec-

essary for the segmentations preliminary to the formation of the embryo, prevents it. Therefore hookworm ova in freshly passed faeces never show other than commencing segmentation while development of the larvae of *Strongyloides* takes place in the intestines, so that in freshly passed faeces we find, generally, actively moving larvae or at least eggs containing fully developed embryos. Hookworm ova very rarely show more than four segments or exceptionally 8 segments in the freshly passed egg.

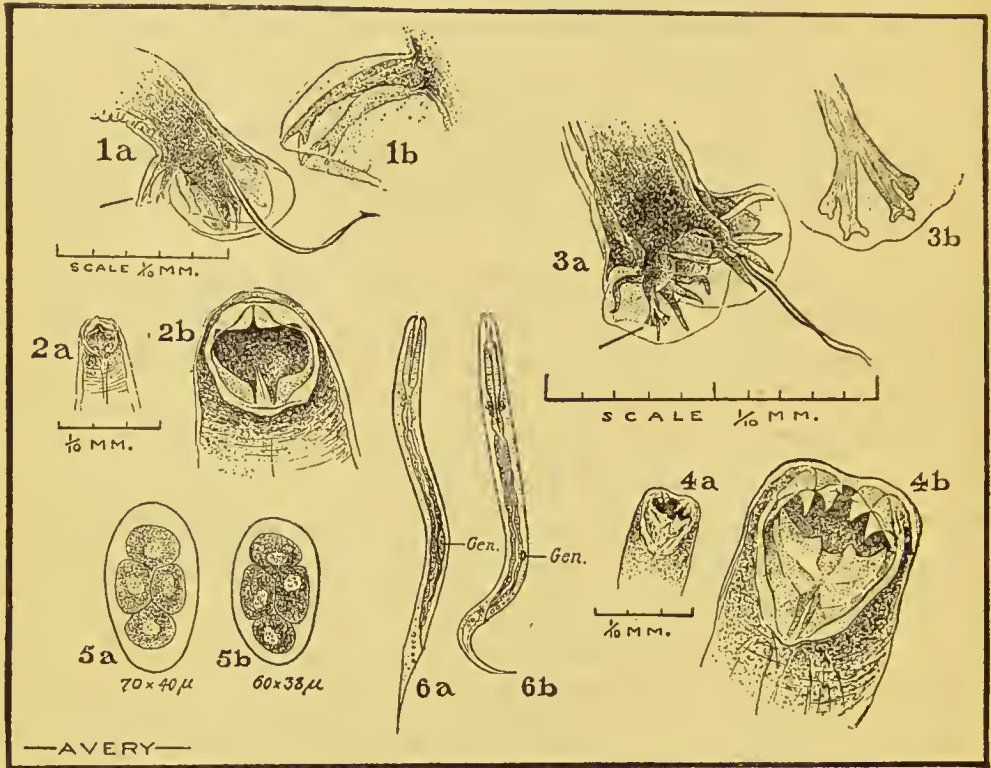


FIG. 56.—1a, Copulatory bursa of *Necator americanus*, showing the deep cleft dividing the branches of the dorsal ray and the bipartite tips of the branches; also showing the fusion of the spicules to terminate in a single barb. Scale 1/10 mm. 1b, Branches of dorsal ray magnified. 2a, The buccal capsule of *N. americanus*. 2b, The same magnified. 3a, Copulatory bursa of *Ancylostoma duodenale*, showing shallow clefts between branches of the dorsal ray and the tridigitate terminations. Spicules hair-like. 3b, The dorsal ray magnified. 4a, The buccal capsule of *A. duodenale*, showing the much larger mouth opening and the prominent hook-like ventral teeth. 4b, the same magnified. 5a, Egg of *N. americanus*. 5b, Egg of *A. duodenale*. 6a, Rhabditiform larva of *Strongyloides* as seen in fresh faeces. 6b, Rhabditiform larva of hookworm in faeces eight to twelve hours after passage of stool. From Stitt.

In the presence of oxygen these ova rapidly develop into larvae, particularly at a temperature of about 27° C. Beyond 37° C. and below 14° C. development does not seem to take place.

The rhabditiform larvae grow rapidly and by the 3rd day are about 300 mikrons long and undergo a primary moulting. By the 5th day the bulb-like swellings disappear and the larva becomes possessed of a

straight oesophagus, thereby becoming a strongyloid larva. It then undergoes a 2nd ecdysis or moulting, but instead of casting off this old covering, it retains it as a protecting sheath. At this time it ceases to take food but can move actively in its sheath so that it can crawl up blades of grass or vertical sides of mines. They can live in this stage for months, when moisture and shade are present, but are rapidly killed by drying.

This is the infecting stage in which the larvae bore their way into the skin, which is the usual method of infection, or, occasionally, by entering the mouth on vegetables or otherwise.

Looss thought that they entered the skin by way of the hair follicles but the idea now is that they can bore into any part of the skin. It only requires a few minutes for the larvae to enter the skin. From the subcutaneous tissues they effect an entrance into lymphatics or veins, go to the right heart, thence to lungs. From the alveolar capillaries they pass into the pulmonary alveoli, thence up the bronchi and trachea, to pass out of the larynx and then down the oesophagus to the stomach. The larva loses its protecting sheath in the stomach and in a few days develops a provisional buccal capsule.

By the end of the 2nd week, after another ecdysis, the larvae have grown to be about 2 mm long and 130 mikrons broad and in about 4 weeks become adults, usually in the jejunum, where, after fertilization of the females by the males, the giving off of eggs begins. The adults attach themselves to the mucosa of the intestine, feeding on the deeper structures of the mucosa, or on the tissues of the submucosa. Sambon believes that the larvæ can work their way into the jejunum without going there by way of the trachea and oesophagus.

By providing an exit to the trachea, Fülleborn demonstrated that in dogs, infected with the dog hookworm, great numbers of larvae poured out of the trachea. In other dogs he stitched the oesophagus to the skin and noted larvae coming out of these openings. In these dogs, with the ordinary channel obstructed, infection did occur with, however, only a few worms, thus showing the truth of Sambon's views but at the same time demonstrating the unimportance of such a route of infection.

Epidemiology.—When faeces containing hookworm eggs are deposited where conditions of moisture, warmth and shade exist, they develop into the infecting stage, which is the nonfeeding but motile larva inside the cuticle formed by the second moulting. This cuticle is not cast off but remains as a protecting sheath around the larva. While eggs and younger larvae are killed rapidly, the encysted larvae withstand drying for considerable periods. Stiles notes that the more favorable conditions for development are in a porous sandy soil rather than in a clay one. Where a sewerage system exists there is very little danger of the spread of hookworm disease and the same is true where there is proper disposal of the faeces by burning, boiling or treatment in a septic tank. In rural

districts, however, where the stool is often deposited in the shade and retirement of a clump of trees, the soil becomes infested with myriads of larvae, so that one standing with bare feet in such a spot easily becomes infected. It is for this reason that shoes are of protective value. In infected mines with temperatures below 22° C. infection is rare (6%); from 22° C. to 25° C. more common (16.6%), and above 25° C., it may reach high figures (61%).

PATHOLOGY

The site of entrance of the larvae is characterized by a dermatitis which is often called "ground itch" or "foot itch" by reason of its

frequent location in the foot which has come in contact with the faeces polluted soil. The dermatitis disappears in about 2 weeks unless some secondary infection occurs. There are reports of pulmonary irritation which may be explained by the wandering of the larvae through the lungs.

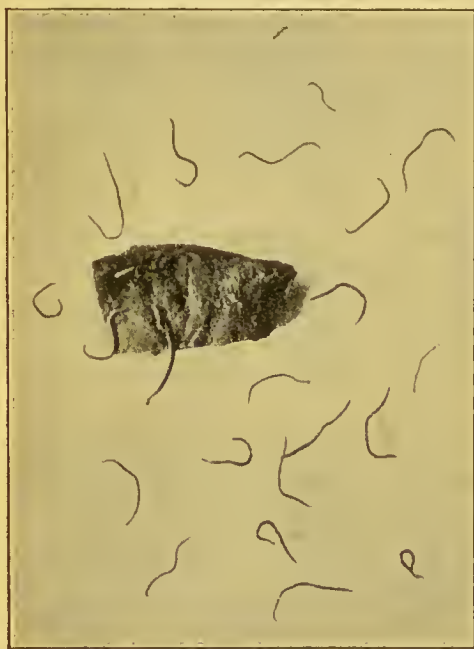


FIG. 57.—*Ancylostoma duodenale* (life size). Shows some worms adherent to the intestinal mucosa and some free. (From Jefferys and Maxwell.)

Pronounced anaemia is a feature of severe cases, the emaciation being often marked. There is frequently oedema about the ankles. In the jejunum we find small haemorrhagic spots from the size of a pea to that of a half dollar. A worm may be found in the center of this spot. The heart often shows fatty degeneration with dilatation. The liver and kidneys usually show fatty change while the spleen is generally shrunken.

There are many views as to the manner in which the damage due to the hookworm is brought about. Some think it by bacterial infections occurring through the wounds made by the worms, others that it is due to a haemolytic toxic material excreted by the worms, while Stiles considers the ingestion of the patient's blood important. Looss thinks it due to the gradual destruction of the intestinal mucosa from the feeding on this, and especially of the submucosa, by the worms.

On the side of the blood we have at first a moderate leucocytosis which disappears with the anaemia. Eosinophilia and Hb. percentage reduction are often observed. In 3 cases I have known a fatal pernicious anaemia to develop.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

In a secondary anaemia, with early and marked cardiac palpitation, together with epigastric tenderness and a tendency to mental retardation and physical deterioration, one should always examine the stools for hookworm eggs.

The course of the disease is decidedly insidious and indefinite and the clinical diagnosis notoriously uncertain, as shown by many reports where physicians of experience, after examining a number of persons in a mill or school and only diagnosing 2 or 3 percent as infected, have been astonished, upon examination of the faeces of the group, to obtain positive evidence of infection in 70 to 80 percent of the number examined.

For convenience, it is well to divide hookworm cases into 3 groups;
1. Where the person infected fails to show any special evidence of abnormality, the diagnosis resting almost entirely on the finding of ova in the faeces. Such cases may show very slight reduction in haemoglobin and only admit of a certain lack of energy. The best indication that hookworm infection is doing the host injury is that after treatment they gain in weight and energy and show improvement in mental concentration.

2. Mild cases with moderate degrees of anaemia, the Hb. percentage ranging from 55 to 75. In these cases there is rather marked epigastric tenderness with frequent attacks of acid eructations. Cardiac palpitation and a tendency to shortness of breath may be quite noticeable.

3. Severe cases. In such cases we may find extreme anaemia with Hb. percentages around 35 or even as low as 15. I have always felt that one was only approximating when recording percentages of 10 or lower. These cases are very weak and show marked cardiac palpitation and dyspnoea upon the slightest exertion. There is often dilatation of the stomach and a protuberant abdomen. The red cells may fall below 1,000,000. There is also oedema, especially about the feet and ankles.

Such cases often show depravity of appetite, the best known craving being that for earth. Other patients crave chalk, wood, cotton, etc.

It is in children that we have the most serious effects of the disease, there being marked stunting of the growth with a corresponding mental backwardness. Such

children show marked retardation and delay in answering the question asked them and often repeat it in a drawling manner. Tested by the Binet-Simond method we may find a 16 year old child to have the mental development of a 10 year old one, but at the same time we would note that from a standpoint of physical development the child only seemed 10 years old.

As the child approaches adult age we note a striking lack of sexual development and the lack of pubic hair. In girls there is delay in the onset of the menstrual periods or these may never appear.



FIG. 58.—Fatal case of ancylostomiasis. Red cells 810,000. Hb 15 percent. White count 6,400. Eosinophiles absent. Upper part of small intestines lined with hookworms. (From U. S. Naval Medical Bulletin.)

In from 80 to 90 percent of cases there is a history of dermatitis, particularly of toes or feet, which is commonly called "ground itch," "foot itch," or "dew itch." This is most frequent between the toes or on the inner side of the sole of the foot. The irritation is due to the penetration into the cutaneous tissues of the encysted hookworm larvae. The itching is intense and secondary infections often occur as the result

of scratching. Vesicles appear about the second day and are often ruptured by the scratching with a resulting pustular or impetiginous condition. The skin and hair generally are dry.

As a rule the temperature is normal throughout the course of an uncomplicated case of hookworm disease. There may be pulmonary manifestations when the larvae are migrating by way of the lungs.

In the diagnosis of a case Stiles attaches much importance to a tallow yellow color of the alae of the nose and the forehead as well as to the eye characteristics, which are a resemblance to the eye of a fish or that of an intoxicated person. He also notes that the pupil tends to dilate instead of to contract when the patient looks at a bright light. It has seemed to me that the condition is rather one of hippus. In severe cases retinal haemorrhages may occur. There may be night blindness. Ascites may be present in advanced cases.

Symptoms in Detail

Skin Manifestations.—The dermatitis following the penetration of the larvae is most often about the toes or inner side of the sole of the foot. The skin is very dry and often of a pale earthy color. A tallow yellow tinting of the alae of the nose may be observed. The hair is dry and scanty or absent in pubic and beard regions. Oedema, especially of ankles or foot, is common.

Circulatory and Respiratory Systems.—Palpitation of the heart is early and marked. Functional murmurs are frequent in the advanced stages. Pulsation of the neck veins is also common. The pulse rate averages about 110 and the blood pressure is low. There is frequently some right side dilatation of the heart. Shortness of breath on slight exertion is the most common respiratory symptom. There is at times cough and bronchitis, probably induced by the irritation of the larvae in the pulmonary alveoli.

Digestive System.—Epigastric tenderness going to the right is very characteristic. The stomach is often dilated and the gastric juice hyperacid. It has been suggested that the desire to neutralize this acidity with an alkali is the explanation of the desire for alkali-containing earth on the part of "dirt eaters."

Patients often are pot-bellied. Constipation is rather a common feature and the stools very rarely show macroscopic blood.

Nervous System.—Hookworm patients are not only physically tired but, as well, mentally tired. The infection in children leads to a backward mental state. Patients have very little energy or initiative and are often considered stupid and lazy. Hypochondriasis is at times noted and some severe cases become melancholic.

The Blood.—The red cell count averages in marked cases 2,500,000 to 3,000,000 red cells per cu. mm. The Hb. percentage is down in such cases to between 30 and 50. The colour index is well below 1, except in certain rare cases, when the colour index is that of pernicious anaemia, being above 1. These latter cases are very resis-

tant to treatment and often show very few infecting worms notwithstanding the severity of the symptoms.

There is at times a moderate leucocytosis but as a rule the white count is approximately normal.

Eosinophilia is quite characteristic and usually ranges from 15 to 35 per cent. of the leucocytes. Eosinophilia tends to disappear as the cases become advanced.

The spleen and liver very rarely give rise to any symptoms and while albuminuria is rather common in advanced cases with oedema about the feet, yet casts are but rarely found.

DIAGNOSIS

Clinical Diagnosis.—The diseases with which it is most likely to be confused are beri-beri, chronic nephritis and malaria. Stiles notes that heavy *Ascaris* infections may give rather similar symptoms. The signs of a multiple neuritis should differentiate beriberi, and the presence of casts or high blood pressure, chronic nephritis. Recently, there has been a great deal written about the danger of confusing hookworm disease and malarial cachexia, the statement being often made that splenic enlargement is a feature of ancylostomiasis. Most authorities however, state that the spleen of ancylostomiasis is not enlarged, this point being of diagnostic value in differentiating it from malaria and kala-azar.

Laboratory Diagnosis.—As a matter of fact the diagnosis is almost invariably made by finding hookworm ova in the faeces. The eggs are oval and thin-shelled with a wide, clear, glassy zone separating the more or less segmented, granular central portion from the shell. Formed stools are more satisfactory for examination than the liquid ones resulting from a dose of salts. Put about 2 drops of water or 1% trikresol solution in the center of a glass slide and emulsify in it as much of the faeces as is held by the spatulate end of a wooden toothpick. A small piece of wood or a match stick will answer. These preparations can be readily examined without a cover glass, using a 2/3 inch objective, with a 1-inch ocular.

It is usually stated that about 500 worms must be present for several months to produce symptoms. Grassi has thought that the presence of 150 eggs in 0.01 gm. faeces indicates the presence of 1,000 worms, of which 25% would be males.

There may be as many as 4,000,000 eggs in a stool. Bass has proposed the following method for the examination of faeces for ova.

The faeces, which have been made fluid, should be centrifuged and the supernatant fluid containing vegetable debris poured off. The sediment contains hookworm eggs. Then pour on sediment a calcium chloride solution of sp. gr. 1.050. Again centrifuge and decant. Next add calcium chloride solution of a sp. gr. of 1.250 and

centrifuge. This brings to the surface the hookworm eggs which may be pipetted off. As a rule, the finding of hookworm eggs is very easy without such a technique.

In certain cases, where a microscope is not available, the diagnosis may be made by finding the worms in the stool following a thymol treatment.

The presence of eosinophilia is of great assistance in diagnosis but it should be remembered that not rarely severe cases of the disease fail to show any excess of eosinophiles.

Charcot Leyden crystals are often present in hookworm stools.

PROGNOSIS

The disease is more serious in children than in adults, on account of its interfering with physical and mental development. The dark races do not seem to suffer as much as the white ones. Treatment is usually most successful but in those who are debilitated by other diseases or, in those in whom the disease has assumed a pernicious anaemia tendency, the outlook is not good.

The presence of eosinophilia is of good prognostic significance as the absence of eosinophiles indicates an exhaustion of the haemopoietic system.

The disease shortens the life of the people in an infected district and makes them readily fall victims to intercurrent diseases.

PROPHYLAXIS AND TREATMENT

Prophylaxis.—The first measure is to diagnose infections in carriers and to insist upon the treatment of such persons. The proper disposal of the fecal material from hookworm patients is the objective point in prophylaxis. The use of some type of properly constructed privy is essential as there is nothing more favorable to the development of the hookworm larvae from eggs to infecting stage than the practice of defecating on the ground where conditions of porous, sandy soil, shade and moisture exist. Later on, such a spot teems with infecting larvae and the person stepping there with bare feet is almost sure to become infected. For this reason the wearing of shoes is an important prophylactic measure. At the same time shoes are not a sure protection as Ashford has noted infections in soldiers who wore good shoes. The fecal material, collected in a pail or tub, should preferably be burned or boiled. Otherwise it should be buried not less than 300 feet from the water supply and down hill from the same.

The use of an amount of compound cresol solution equalling the fecal mass, plus urine, is of value.

The best method is to use some septic tank process as the anaerobic processes of fermentation destroy the eggs.

Hookworm disease is one of the most conspicuous examples of soil pollution disease.

Treatment.—The standard treatment in the United States is the thymol one. Bozzolo introduced this drug in the treatment of hookworm disease in 1879. Thymol has an aromatic, thyme-like odor and a pungent taste and, while soluble in about an equal amount of alcohol, is only soluble in water in the proportion of 1 to 1,100.

It is usual to prescribe the drug in 5 grain capsules or preferably in cachets, one part of thymol being triturated with an equal amount of sugar of milk. If the cachet is moistened with a little water it may be swallowed like a raw oyster.

Stiles prefers giving the treatment on Sunday so that the working days of the patient may not be lessened. By giving the patient bicarbonate of soda for a few days before the treatment it is thought that the mucus lining of the jejunum is cleared away so that the worms are more readily affected by the drug. At any rate one should give about 2 ounces of a 50% solution of Epsom salts on Saturday evening. The following morning at 6 A. M. the patient takes one half the dose of thymol proper for his age and at 8 A. M. he takes the remaining half of the dose. At 10 A. M. he takes another dose of Epsom salts. The reason for dividing the dose of thymol is that should untoward symptoms occur after the first portion of the dose we do not give the second. Stiles now prefers to divide his dose into three portions, one to be given at 6 A. M., one at 7 A. M. and the remaining third portion at 8 A. M., followed by salts at 10 A. M. The patient should lie on the right side while taking the treatment to facilitate the passage of the drug from the often dilated stomach.

The patient should remain in bed until 12 o'clock when he may take some coffee, without milk, and crackers.

Patients must be warned to avoid anything containing fats or alcohol while undergoing treatment as fats and alcohol dissolve the thymol and tend to cause poisoning. Under no circumstances should castor oil be used. People are apt to forget that butter, milk, etc., contain the dangerous fats.

Mild symptoms of poisoning are burning in the pit of the stomach and tingling sensations of the body. More severe symptoms are those associated with cardiac weakness and respiratory distress. Coffee and strychnine are the usual remedies for thymol poisoning. Inhalation, but not swallowing, of aromatic spirits of ammonia is often of value.

The thymol dosage recommended according to the age, or rather the apparent age of the patient, is:

Under 5 years old.....	7 1/2 grains.
From 5 to 9 years old.....	15 “
From 10 to 14 years old.....	30 “
From 15 to 19 years old.....	45 “
From 20 to 59 years old.....	60 “
Above 60 years old.....	30 to 45 “

Total dose to be divided into 2 or 3 portions. The patient is allowed to eat only a light luncheon and supper the day of the treatment but the next day he may resume his regular meals.

As a rule most of the worms expelled by the treatment will have been passed by night of the day of treatment, although an occasional one may be passed for 4 or 5 days.

In from 25 to 50 percent of cases all the worms may be expelled in one treatment but it is usually necessary to give as many as 3 treatments, one on each of 3 Sundays.

Nicol, in a comparison of the efficacy of various drugs, noted that thymol in 90 grain doses, taken in 3 portions of 30 grains each, at 6, 8, and 10 A.M. expelled 98% of the worms at the first treatment and the remaining worms at the second treatment a week later. With this rather large dose he frequently observed a tendency to syncope. He used Epsom salts as a purgative.

On the other hand, while using 60 grains of beta-naphthol, given in two portions at 6 and 8 A.M., followed by salts, 86% of the worms were expelled at the first treatment and 14% with the second one. He did not observe any bad effects from beta-naphthol.

The great objection to beta-naphthol is that it is a renal irritant and may damage a kidney already diseased.

He found the treatment with eucalyptus oil, 2 c.c., chloroform, 3 c.c. and castor oil, 30 c.c. vastly inferior in anthelmintic effect to the other two treatments and liable to cause severe manifestations of nausea and syncope.

Schuffner tried male fern and only obtained 7 hookworms while the next day, using thymol, 1253 hookworms were expelled. He notes that thymol is dangerous when administered to patients with acute or subacute dysentery.

After expelling the worms it is advisable to give the patient a tonic containing iron or arsenic. In those cases with a tendency to pernicious anaemia the arsenic treatment is better than that with iron.

In the treatment of ground itch the usual application is a zinc oxide ointment containing 10 grains of salicylic acid to the ounce.

CHAPTER XX

FILARIAL INFECTIONS

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

The filarial worms are thread-like nematodes, with a thin cylindrical oesophagus, which live in various parts of the body and may or may not give rise to disease conditions. It is one of the most remarkable facts in animal parasitology that a person may harbour numerous adult filariae and myriads of embryos without in any way manifesting symptoms of the infection. In most of the filarial worms the female has a double uterus with the uterine opening near the anterior extremity.

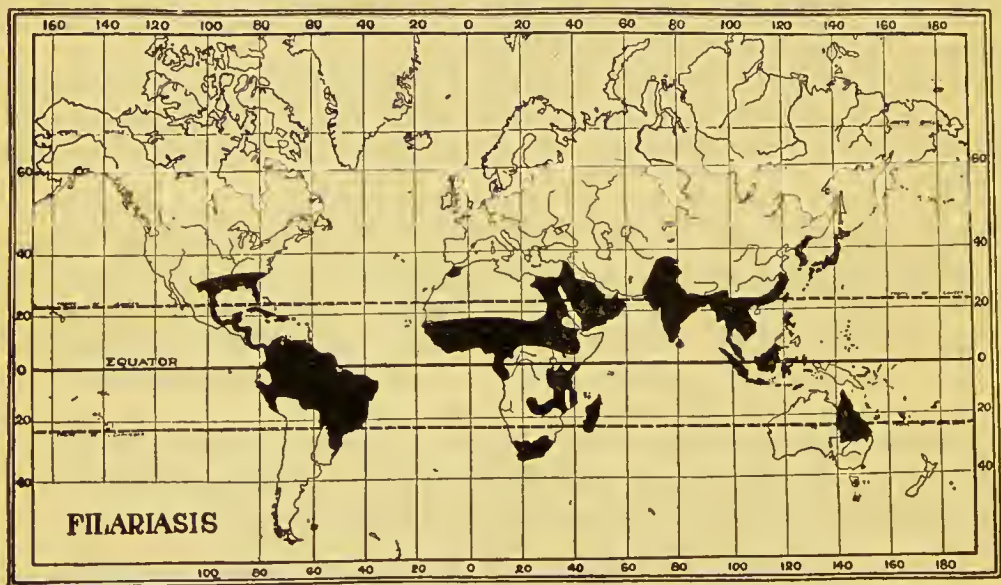


FIG. 59.—Geographical distribution of Filariasis.

It has been proposed to designate the filarial embryo by the term *microfilaria*, reserving the generic name *Filaria* for the adult parasite. This may be convenient for differentiation but zoological nomenclature does not permit different names for adults and embryos. While there have been almost 20 different filarial species reported for man there is, in some instances, doubt as to the correctness of the observation and again, a well recognized species has at times been considered as a new species and given a new name.

From a practical standpoint we need only consider (1) *Filaria bancrofti*; the adult of which lives in the lymphatic glands and vessels while the sheathed embryos (which from their appearance in the blood only at night are called *Filaria nocturna*) obtain access to the peripheral blood vessels. Various well-known conditions are caused by this

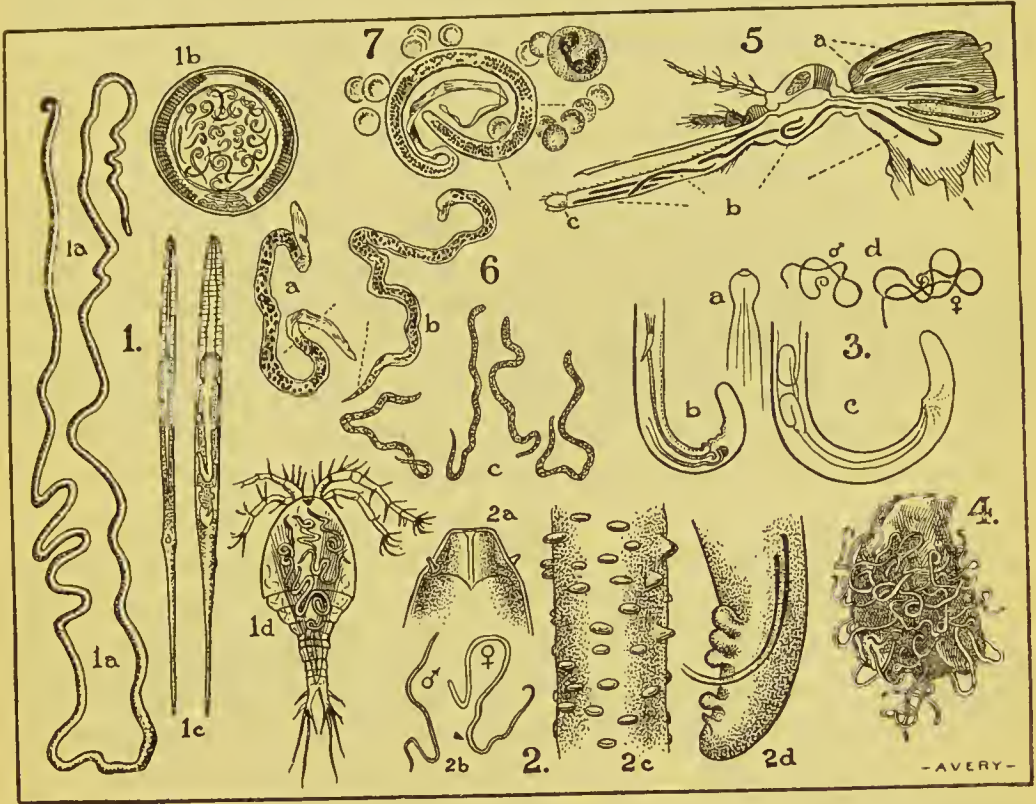


FIG. 60.—1a, Adult female Guinea worm (*Dracunculus medinensis*) showing anchoring hook at posterior extremity. 1b, Cross section of female *Dracunculus* showing uterus filled with embryos. 1c, Striated embryos of the Guinea worm. 1d, *Cyclops coronatus*, the minute crustacean which serves as the intermediate host of *D. medinensis*. 2a-2d, Anterior and posterior extremities of *F. loa*. 2c, Section showing tuberculated cuticle. 2b, Male and female *F. loa*, natural size. 3a, Bulbous anterior extremity, *Filaria bancrofti*. 3b, Tail of male. 3c, Tail of female. 3d, Male and female, natural size of *F. bancrofti*. 4a, Tumor mass of *F. volvulus* laid open. 5, Mosquito showing filarial embryos in thoracic muscles (a) and in labium (b). The labella which are separated from the labium by Dutton's membrane are seen at (c). 6(a) Embryo of *F. bancrofti* (b) Embryo of *F. loa* showing filling of tail end with cells. 7, Microfilaria of *F. bancrofti* in blood. Dotted lines show location of break in cells column and V spot.

parasite, such as elephantiasis, varicose groin glands, chyluria, etc. This infection was formerly stated to be caused by *Filaria sanguinis hominis*. (2) *Filaria loa*, the adult of which wanders about in the subcutaneous tissues, characteristically in the region of the eyes, while the sheathed embryo is found in the blood during the day, hence *Filaria*

	Adults	Embryos	Remarks
<i>Filaria bancrofti</i> .	Male 40 by 0.1 mm. Female 90 by 0.28 mm. Smooth cuticle. Bulbous anterior extremity. Occupy lymphatic glands and vessels.	Sheathed, 300 by 7.5 mikrons. Distance from head to V. spot 90 mikrons; to break in cells 50 mikrons. Tail rather straight. Terminal cells do not fill up tail end. Nocturnal periodicity in peripheral circulation.	Transmitted by mosquitoes. <i>Culex fatigans</i> and <i>Stegomyia pseudo-scutellaris</i> . Causes elephantiasis, lymph scrotum, chyluria, etc.
<i>Filaria loa</i> .	Male 27 by 0.3 mm. Female 55 by 0.4 mm. Cuticle tuberculated. Anterior extremity like truncated cone. Wanders in subcutaneous tissues.	Sheathed, 240 × 7 mikrons. Distance from head to V spot 65 mikrons; to break in cells 40 mikrons. Corkscrew tail which is completely filled up with terminal cells. Diurnal periodicity in peripheral circulation.	Transmitted by species of a biting fly — <i>Chrysops</i> . Causes calabar swellings. Worms often visit ocular region.
<i>Filaria perstans</i> .	Male 40 by 0.07 mm. Female 75 by 0.1 mm. Cuticle smooth. Tip of tail shows 2 triangular processes. Found about root of mesentery.	Without sheaths, 200 by 5 mikrons. Posterior two thirds tapers to blunt ending. Distance from head to V spot 49 mikrons; to break in cells 34 mikrons. Persists in circulation both day and night.	Transmitting agent not surely known. Mosquitoes and ticks suggested. No pathogenicity.
<i>Filaria volvulus</i> .	Male 30 by 0.14 mm. Female usually fragmented. Possibly 75 by 0.36 mm. Cuticle striated. Found coiled up in cyst like tumors under skin.	Without sheaths. 250 by 7.5 mikrons. Found in cyst like spaces of tumors. Not in peripheral circulation.	Method of transmission unknown. Causes small cystic tumors, under skin of thorax especially.
<i>Filaria medinensis</i> .	Male from Leiper's monkey 22 mm. Female 80 to 90 cm. long by 1.6 mm. wide. Smooth white body. Anchoring hook at tail end. Female lives in subcutaneous tissue of lower extremity.	Without sheaths. 600 × 20 mikrons. Long slender tail. Cuticle striated. Extruded from break in skin of patient.	Embryos swallowed by <i>Cyclops</i> . Man drinks water containing <i>Cyclops</i> .

diurna. Calabar swellings, irregular febrile conditions and the disagreeable sensations incident to the wanderings of the worm are clinical features of this infection. (3) *Filaria volvulus* (*Onchocerca volvulus*). The males and females of this parasite are found coiled up in channeled connective tissue tumours of the subcutaneous tissues. The sheathless embryo have been surely found only within these tumors and not in the blood. (4) *Filaria perstans*. This parasite does not seem to give rise to clinical manifestations except possibly to cause an irregular fever. The adult is found in the retroperitoneal connective tissue or fat, while the sheathless, blunt tailed embryo is found in the blood, both by day and night, hence *perstans*. (5) *Filaria medinensis* (*Dracunculus medinensis*). The Guinea-worm, as it is ordinarily called, is almost exclusively found as a thread like, gravid female, about 24 inches long and a little less than $1/12$ inch in diameter, occupying the subcutaneous tissues of the lower extremity in most instances and, rarely, other parts of the body. The anterior extremity pierces the skin and forms a blister like lesion which ruptures on the application of water and gives exit to myriads of sharp tailed embryos which, gaining access to pools, are swallowed by certain species of *Cyclops*. These infected *Cyclops* being swallowed in drinking water die in the gastric juice and the larvae, which have undergone a development in the *Cyclops*, break out, bore through the stomach wall, undergo further development to later reach their favorite site in the subcutaneous tissues of the lower extremity.

An unimportant filarial worm which has been found only in the West Indies and British Guiana is known as *Filaria demarquayi* or *F. ozzardi*. The embryos have sharp tails and are without a sheath. The parasite is not known to produce symptoms.

HISTORY

While elephantiasis was frequently described by ancient writers yet the confusion between Elephantiasis Graecorum, a term applied to leprosy, and Elephantiasis Arabum, or the filarial condition, made the question of the nature of the skin thickenings very indefinite.

The thickenings due to leprosy and those connected with filariasis were separated clinically by observers during the 17th and 18th centuries, Hilary, in 1750, having accurately described the progress of that form of elephantiasis connected with elephantoid fever and lymphangitis. In 1863 Demarquay discovered filarial embryos in the exudate of a chylous hydrocele and three years later Wucherer, in Brazil, found similar nematode larvae in the urine of a case of haematochyluria. Commenc-

ing with the year 1863 Lewis carried on a series of investigations in Calcutta in which he found these embryos not only in the urine of patients with chyluria but as well in the lymph and blood of those affected with elephantiasis. He called the parasite *Filaria sanguinis hominis*, a name still frequently employed by medical writers.

In 1876 Bancroft, in Australia, discovered the adult filarial worms in a lymphatic abscess, hence the name *Filaria bancrofti*. In 1878 Manson, in China, demonstrated the mosquito transmission of the disease as well as the phenomenon of nocturnal periodicity. Manson's idea, however, was that the fully developed embryo escaped from the body of the infected mosquito at the time of the death of the insect and that man contracted the infection in drinking water.

The investigations of Low and more recently those of Fülleborn and Bahr and others have shown that the larvae escape by way of the mosquito's proboscis and enter the skin of man.

Filaria Loa.—The knowledge of a filarial infection of the region of the eye seems to date from the time of Magellan. Although the disease is now confined to the west coast of Africa, cases were reported from the West Indies by Mongin and Bajou during the 18th Century. These cases were in slaves who had contracted the infection in Africa. In 1891 Manson noted the presence of the larval forms which showed a diurnal periodicity in the peripheral blood.

Filaria Medinensis.—Ancient Egyptian writings would indicate that the disease was well known in those times. It is believed that the fiery serpent of the wilderness, which afflicted the Children of Israel, was an infection of this sort. The prevalence of dracontiasis, as the infection is generally termed, in Arabia, was well known to the Greeks and Romans.

Fedschenko, in 1870, noted the transmission of the disease by species of *Cyclops*.

Filaria volvulus was first discovered in 1893, in peculiar tumours of the natives of the Gold Coast.

Filaria perstans was first found by Manson, in 1891, in the blood of natives of the Congo. Daniels also found these embryos, along with those of *F. demarquayi*, in the blood of natives of British Guiana.

FILARIA BANCROFTI

GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION

This parasite has been found in almost all tropical and subtropical countries. It is quite prevalent in the West Indies and has been found in some of the Southern states of the U. S. It is very common in some

of the South American countries as well as in Central America. The infection is wide spread in Arabia, India and China. Africa, especially the West Coast, and Australia, particularly in Queensland, are parts of the world where the infection prevails.

It is especially in some of the Pacific Islands, as Samoa and Fiji, that it is extraordinarily prevalent. Bahr has stated that Fijians in the proportion of 27% show filarial embryos in their blood. In 25% of these natives clinical manifestations of the disease exist but the embryos are absent from the peripheral circulation. In other words more than one-half of the population show absolute evidence of infection.

LIFE HISTORY

It is a well known fact that filarial embryos may be present at night in the peripheral blood of persons not showing a single symptom of filariasis and again, in those with marked elephantiasis, varicose groin glands or chyluria there may be an entire and permanent absence of embryos in the blood. When certain mosquitoes bite persons having embryos in the blood they take into their stomachs the sheathed embryos of *F. bancrofti*.

The following developmental cycle has been demonstrated for *Culex fatigans* and *Stegomyia pseudoscutellaris*. Bahr has found that if there are too many embryos taken up by the mosquito the insect is apt to die, as the result of too heavy an infection; so that a person harboring many filarial embryos may be less dangerous than one with a smaller number. Upon reaching the stomach of the mosquito the sheath of the embryo becomes fixed in the viscid blood contents and the embryo itself by active motions is able to force itself from its sheath. This escape usually occurs within two hours but may take longer. The free embryo then bores its way through the stomach walls and within 24 hours has reached the thoracic muscles of the mosquito. Within 48 hours the embryo begins to broaden and the anterior and posterior V spots to become more prominent. About the end of the first week there commences the formation of an alimentary canal, by which time the developing larva is about 0.5 mm. long. When the larva is about 0.6 mm. long an ecdysis apparently takes place. Later on these larvae develop 3 or 4 terminal papillae and make their way to the fleshy labium of the mosquito's proboscis. An occasional larva may enter other structures than the labium but in such case they would be unable to effect an entrance to their definitive host, man. These larvae in the proboscis are about 1.5 mm. long and about 20 mikrons broad.

There are two terminal processes, the labella, which are separated from the labium by a thin membranous partition called Dutton's membrane. The larvae, having completed their developmental cycle in the mosquito, which takes about 3 weeks, and moving down the labium, break through this membrane when it is put upon a stretch by the wide separation of the labella at the time of feeding on the part of the mosquito. It was formerly supposed that the larvae entered man through the puncture

made by the biting parts of the mosquito, but Bahr has shown by experiments that they effect an entrance through the intact pores of the skin as does the ancylostome larva.

These larvae upon entering the human host reach the lymphatic vessels or glands and in this definitive host (man) the females are fertilized by the males and give off sheathed larvae from the uterine opening near the anterior end of the worm.

The sheath is simply the egg membrane which from being oval at first becomes stretched by the developing embryo to finally become a long, narrow sac encasing the fully developed embryo as it exists in man. From the lymph stream they reach the general circulation. In a case of a man with filarial embryos in his peripheral circulation, who committed suicide one morning, Manson found the embryos, in large part, contained in the vessels of the lungs. There were 675 embryos per slide in blood from the lungs for one from blood from the spleen or liver. It would thus appear that during the day, when the embryos are absent from the peripheral circulation, they retire to the lungs. In the case of the filarial embryo of persons in the Pacific Islands there does not appear to exist any periodicity. Bahr thinks this absence of nocturnal periodicity to be connected with the habits of its principal intermediary host, *Stegomyia pseudoscutellaris*, which feeds by day. *Culex fatigans* feeds at night.

With the filarial embryos found in patients in the Philippines there is also a lack of nocturnal periodicity. In the opinion of Ashburn and Craig the Philippine filarial worm is a new species, *Filaria philippinensis*.

PATHOLOGY AND MORBID ANATOMY

The adult worms may exist in numbers and over long periods of time give off great numbers of embryos into the peripheral circulation without there being any evidence of disease in the patient. There is apt to be at such time a marked eosinophilia. The process by which the fibrosis of lymph channels with obstruction to the flow of lymph occurs is unknown. Some think that with the pouring out of embryos inflammatory processes, bacterial or otherwise, may be set up. We know that there is a tendency for these adults to die and become calcified, in this way bringing about lymphatic obstruction. Manson has an idea that some factor may cause the female to give off immature embryos, which being oval, and of considerable width, may block the lymphatics.

As the result of the lymphangitis and blocking of the channels the embryos cannot reach the peripheral circulation, hence when obstruction does occur and symptoms of lymph stasis appear, there may be an absence of embryos in the circulation.

It is now well established that patients with elephantiasis very rarely show

embryos in the peripheral circulation, and this fact should be better understood because there is a tendency to negative a filarial diagnosis when embryos are absent from the peripheral circulation.

These lymph channel obstructions may at one time cause dilatations or varices and at another bring about solid oedemas of the tributary parts. The treatment will be considered under each special form of the disease. It may be stated however that salvarsan, arsenophenylglycin and other similar remedies have been without special effect in destroying the filarial worms.

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

Elephantoid Fever

The febrile accessions that accompany the recurring attacks of lymphangitis in elephantiasis, lymph scrotum and other filarial manifestations, are very important because they may lead to errors in diagnosis. Thus in Barbadoes, where there is no malaria, a condition in which there occurs a high fever of sudden onset with rigors and associated erysipelatous redness of leg or scrotum, accompanied by lymphangitis and painful lymphatic glands, has given a suggestion of a malarial paroxysm. Such attacks may terminate with profuse sweating. The treatment of the condition is such as would be advisable for ordinary lymphangitis—rest in bed, elevation of the part, laxatives and local applications.

Lymph Scrotum

This condition is apt to set in with fever. The scrotal tissues are somewhat tense and reddened and may show numerous lymphatic varices which when pricked with a needle, give exit to lymph which may or may not contain filarial embryos. The lymph continues to exude for a long time. Erysipelatous manifestations are not uncommon. With recurring attacks the scrotal tissues become more and more hypertrophied and may go on to elephantiasis of the scrotum.

Ordinarily local applications with suspension of the scrotum is the proper treatment. Should the thickening increase to a great extent the blubbery tissues may be excised; care being exercised to avoid the testicles and to bring together sound tissue for the enclosing flaps. These wounds usually heal readily, although there may be delay in healing from the outpouring of lymph in cases where the flaps include diseased tissue.

Varicose Groin Glands

Swellings which come on rather slowly and insidiously may involve the inguinal or femoral groups of glands of one or both sides. The epitrochlear glands may also be involved. The skin over the enlarged, rather doughy glands can be freely moved but the glands themselves are



FIG. 61.—Varicose groin glands and elephantiasis of scrotum and penis. (From Ruge and zur Verth.)

bound down to the deeper tissues. Elephantoid fever may set in associated with local manifestations of pain and redness. If such glands are punctured with a hypodermic needle lymph, which may contain embryos, exudes. This test together with their slow disappearance on lying down and slow return on assuming the upright position should differentiate hernia. When the contents of a hernial sac are omental there is some difficulty in diagnosis. As a rule it is not advisable to interfere surgically in this condition.

Filarial Abscesses

As a rule injury to the adult filarial worms, which results in their death is not followed by abscess formation but such termination may occur. These abscesses have been found deeply seated in the extremities. Wise and Minett in a careful examination of 28 such cases found evidences of adult filariae in 22 cases. In 21 of these abscesses, infections with streptococci or staphylococci were demonstrated. Very interesting also is the finding of filarial worms in deep seated abdominal abscesses.

As regards location, these filarial abscesses were found 31 times in the pelvis of the kidney, 18 times in the epididymis, 12 times in the retro-peritoneal tissues, 25 times in the inguinal glands, 4 times in the ilio-psoas muscles and 8 times in the lymphatic vessels.

They regard the endemic funiculitis to which attention has been directed by Castellani as simply a similar process involving the tissues about the spermatic cord. The treatment of filarial abscesses is similar to that of other abscesses.

Chyluria

As the result of obstruction of the lymphatic vessels varices may form in the bladder lymphatics and, as the result of their rupture, milky urine may be passed. If the thoracic duct be occluded the urine will show an abundance of fat, while if the obstruction exists alone in other lymphatics, the milky fluid will be found to show an absence of fat. Blood is usually present in chyluria so that the urine will show a pinkish tinge.

Chylous urine coagulates rapidly and we have in such a specimen of urine, upon standing, an upper fatty layer and a pinkish sediment at the bottom, with a clot between.

The sediment shows lymphocytes and at times filarial embryos. When the exudate is lymph mixed with blood the term haemato-lymphuria would be a better one.

Clots may form in the bladder and give rise to obstruction to the flow of urine from the bladder.

The appearance of the chyluria is often preceded by heaviness about the loins and pains in the region of the bladder.

The morning urine in such a case is apt to be clear while that passed later in the day is milky in appearance.

A feature of chyluria is its tendency to disappear and reappear so that when treating such a case one should be conservative in considering the treatment as effecting a cure.

In treating a case of chyluria one should enjoin rest in bed, laxatives and a restriction of fluids and fats. Patients subject to the condition should refrain from active exercise and other conditions which might cause fatigue. Drugs are of little value.

Elephantiasis

As the result of recurring attacks of lymphangitis the tissues of the affected part show the effects of lymphatic obstruction by a hypertrophy of the skin and subcutaneous tissues. It would seem that the combination of lymphatic obstruction and bacterial infection is necessary for the production of elephantiasis. The skin of a part affected with elephantiasis is rough and the hair scanty. In addition to the lymphoedema of the part there is a great increase in the connective tissue.

On account of the lymphatic stasis incision into the blubbery tissue causes the outpouring of much lymph.

Elephantiasis of the lower extremities is by far the most common situation, giving us probably 90 per cent. of such affections. In Fiji elephantiasis of the upper extremities is quite common.

Other favorite sites are the scrotum, vulva, breasts and penis. Rarely the scalp or areas about neck or trunk may show involvement.

Surgical treatment is the one usually followed. When an extremity becomes too much of a burden, amputation may be indicated. The employment of the method of lymphangioplasty, which consists in the introduction of silk threads into the subcutaneous tissues, to make a channel to the normal lymphatics, does not seem to have been attended with any degree of success or at any rate permanent results. These wounds tend to become infected and if this does not occur the new channels are speedily obliterated.



FIG. 62.—Elephantiasis of the legs.
From Ruge and zur Verth.

Castellani recommends the use of Merck's fibrolysin in injections of from 2 to 4 C.C. daily, for three to six months. After each injection the part is tightly bandaged with flannel or rubber bandages. The injections may either be made into the affected part or into the gluteal region. Massage prior to the bandaging may give better results. When the limb becomes smaller and the skin smoother, long strips of skin and subcutaneous tissue may be dissected out and the adjacent edges sutured.

In considering the advantages of operation in elephantiasis of the scrotum it is usually stated that the only question involved is the removal of a burdensome mass which in no way is a source of danger to the life of the patient.

At the same time such patients are

subject to attacks of elephantoid fever a condition not without its dangers. There is one factor not usually brought forward and that is the remarkable effect of a successful operation on the mental state of the patient. This is well shown in the accompanying illustrations of the patient before and after operation. If sexual deficiencies are of so powerful an influence on persons of education how much greater must they weigh on an uneducated native with but few of the higher interests of life.

Prior to operation the patient should be kept in bed for a day or so to lessen the amount of fluid and to secure relaxation of tissues. Thorough scrubbing with soap and water the day of and the day before the operation and the use of alcohol as an antiseptic is important. Some prefer iodine.

For the operation the lithotomy position is employed. An assistant supports the scrotal tumor wrapped in a sterile towel. Fauntleroy, whose method I give, does



FIG. 63.—Elephantiasis of the scrotum. Before operation. (Fauntleroy.)

not recommend a tourniquet to the base of the tumor as in his opinion it assists but little in controlling haemorrhage and endangers asepsis. Haemostats answer better and as the vessels which give most trouble are deeply situated the elastic cord would not affect them. In some cases there is very little bleeding. The upper part of the pear shaped tumor usually affords sufficient sound skin next the thighs for the flaps. As a rule the elephantoid tissue does not involve the upper 2 or 3 inches of the skin

anteriorly, which is thus available to cover in the base of the penis. In addition to this covering for the penis we have a long prepuce which has been considerably stretched so that after removing all elephantoid tissue there is enough sound prepuce remaining to cover the distal 2 or 3 inches, so that usually there is sufficient sound skin for a 5 inch penis.

The flaps which are to cover the penis and testicles should be mapped out with



FIG. 64.—Elephantiasis of the scrotum. After operation. Note change in mental state. (Fauntleroy.)

shallow incisions and care must be exercised that only sound skin is included in these flaps. A horseshoe shaped incision is made commencing at the left side of the base of the tumor about 1 inch from the thigh and about at the level of the penis in health. The incision is carried downward and passes just below the opening of the penis on the tumor surface. A similar incision on the right side completes the horseshoe curve. Next a downward incision in the sound skin is made over the posterior sur-

face of the tumor, thus encircling the base of the scrotum. The anterior horseshoe incision is now deepened to free the penis, care being taken not to injure the spermatic cord. Next the incisions are deepened laterally until the testicles are reached. The testicles are usually in the center of the tumor imbedded in a blubbery tissue from which they can be easily stripped. The remains of the gubernacula are then hooked up and cut close to the testicles. The tunicae vaginales are often thickened and contain fluid which has to be drawn off.

In 60% of Fauntleroy's cases it was necessary to remove one testicle on account of extensive disease. One must also bear in mind the possibility of hernial complications and undescended testicle.

A sound is now introduced into the urethra and the septum of the scrotum divided close to the sheath of the penis, then dissecting away the blubbery tissue. At this stage there may be considerable bleeding.

The testicles and spermatic cords are then dissected away from the tunicae vaginales. The penis is now freed by a circular incision around and above the opening in the anterior part of the mass. The remainder of the horseshoe flap is now dissected up and the penis freed. The proximal covering for the penis is made from this horseshoe flap which is stitched to the distal one shaped from the prepuce, carefully trimmed of elephantoid tissue.

The lateral flaps are brought together with linen or silk-worm gut sutures leaving space for a drainage tube and we thus form a new scrotum for the testicles.

The mortality is usually given as 5% but Fauntleroy did not lose a case among 149 such operations, the tumors varying from 10 to 85 pounds in weight.

Chylous Hydrocele

Filarial affections of the tunica vaginalis or the testicle itself are not rare. In the milky fluid obtained by tapping such a hydrocele we may find filarial embryos.

Besides chylous hydrocele we may have a chylous ascites or a chylous diarrhoea. Where there is no obstruction to the thoracic duct there is less fat and the condition is more properly a lymphocele rather than a chylocele. The same distinction is applicable to the other conditions connected with lymphatic varices due to lymphatic obstructions other than that of the thoracic duct.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The blood from a needle prick of the finger tip or the lobe of the ear can be examined as a fresh preparation. It is advisable to make a vaseline ring around the drop of blood on the slide and then apply a cover glass. Such a preparation will permit of the examination of the living embryos for a day or more.

Smear preparations may be made by the Ehrlich method of drawing cover glasses apart or by the Daniels method on slides. Some prefer making a thick smear of a

drop of blood and, after it has dried, carefully to dehaemoglobinize it with water and then staining with dilute haematoxylin. Staining with Leishman's or Wright's stain gives beautiful pictures. Fixation with methyl alcohol or with heat, by burning off a film of alcohol, and then staining with Giemsa's stain or some haematoxylin preparation, is to be recommended. On the whole I consider haematoxylin the most desirable staining reagent, as such preparations hold their colour for a long time. The paper like sheaths are seen as if twisted about the larvae with their violet stained cells. One should note a break in the violet stained cell column which is 50μ from the head end of *F. bancrofti* and 40μ for *F. loa*.

A V spot is seen posterior to the break in the cell column and shows best with very light staining.

Embryos may be found in the lymph from varicose groin glands or in the exudate from a chylous hydrocele, as well as in the urinary sediment from a case of chyluria.

The failure to find embryos in no way negatives the existence of a filarial infection.

Adult filariae, either alive or dead and calcified, may be found in the lymphatic glands or in the contents of filarial abscesses.

The blood shows an eosinophilia.

FILARIA LOA

This filarial infection is at present only known for the West Coast of Africa. In the Cameroons and in Old Calabar the infection is quite common.

As noted in the table previously given, the adults have cuticular protuberances or bosses, about 12 to 15 mikrons in height. The sheathed embryo is very similar to that of *F. bancrofti*, but has a more twisted tail and shows a complete filling up of the tail end with rather elongated cells.

The periodicity is diurnal, for which reason the infection was originally termed *F. diurna*.

Leiper has reported two species of *Chrysops*, one of the tabanid biting flies, as transmitting agents and considers that the embryos undergo development in the salivary glands of the fly.

The life history is not well understood but as a rule a period of several years elapses after infection before adult filariae or filarial embryos are found. Again, for some reason, adult filariae may be noted and when extracted be found full of embryos and yet embryos not be found in the peripheral circulation.

The adults are noted for their tendency to move about in the subcutaneous connective tissues having been found in such tissues in the region of scalp, trunk, penis and extremities.

Most frequently, however, they are noted in the tissues about the region of the

eyes and even under the conjunctivae, from which location they have been frequently extracted. It is this which has caused the name *Filaria oculi* to be given the worm.

The course of the wandering worm is usually marked by an oedematous track. In his own case, recently reported by a medical man, the first symptoms were transient painless swellings about the joints, associated with stiffness. Various diagnoses, such as rheumatism, erythema nodosum and angioneurotic oedema were made in his case. Although two adult filariae were removed at different times the blood examinations were negative for embryos.

As a rule the appearance of the worms in the subcutaneous tissues is characterized by itching sensations and a feeling of tension. Warmth causes them to appear in the superficial tissues while cold makes them confine themselves to the deeper structures. Eosinophilia is rather pronounced.

Calabar Swellings.—Although we have no absolute proof that these usually painless swellings, which occur rather suddenly on various parts of the body having only a thin layer of connective tissue, as forearms, face, ankles, hands, are connected with an infection with *F. lod*, yet such is the general view. These swellings are about the size of a hen's egg, do not pit on pressure and last for about three days.

Rarely does one note more than one swelling at a time. Eosinophilia is quite marked during the attacks. Manson thinks the oedema results from the extrusion of embryos from the female at the site of the swelling. Ward considers the cause to be toxic material excreted by the worm.

There is very little of importance in connection with treatment. When the worms, which travel in the tissues about the eye, at the rate of about $1/2$ inch per minute, are noted, some local anaesthetic may be used and the worm seized with forceps and extracted through a small incision. Cooling local applications, or an ichthyol ointment, may be applied to the Calabar swellings.

FILARIA VOLVULUS

The filarial worm causing this infection is now called *Onchocerca volvulus* and is found almost exclusively on the West Coast of Africa. In certain localities as many as ten per cent. of the population may be infected.

It is supposed that the adult worms cause an inflammation of the lymphatic vessel in which they may lie and that a formation of new connective tissue results, giving rise to a tumour like mass, which is most often found in the axilla or about the sides of the thorax. This tissue stroma encompasses the worms except for the

anterior extremity of the female, with its uterine opening, and the posterior extremity of the male carrying the spicules, which ends lie loose in a sort of cyst like dilatation, which is filled with a viscid fluid swarming with unsheathed embryos. These tumour like masses cause very little discomfort, last indefinitely and do not tend to ulcerate. The embryos have never surely been found in the peripheral circulation and the life history is unknown.

The tumors are easily enucleated.

FILARIA MEDINENSIS

The disease caused by infection with this parasite is usually termed dracontiasis and the parasite *Dracunculus medinensis* or the Guinea worm.

The geographical distribution includes India, Arabia, the West Coast of Africa and Brazil.

Life History.—The male has not surely been seen in man so that the pathological condition is entirely connected with the female worm. Almost invariably the female worm, which measures about two feet long by $1/12$ inch broad, tends to wander down to the connective tissue structures of the lower extremity. In about ten per cent of the cases the worm may present elsewhere, as scrotum, back or arms. At the posterior extremity there is sort of anchoring hook.

With the anterior extremity the worm presses against the overlying skin and causes the formation of a blister like lesion.

This vesicle later on bursts and, if water is applied to the spot, a delicate tube, the uterus, is extruded and there exudes a few drops of a milky fluid, which swarms with the sharp tailed, striated, sheathless embryos. It is thought that the pouring forth of embryos, when water touches the part, is in order that the embryos may reach the water of a pool through which the infected native may be wading. Once in the water of such a pool, the larvae are swallowed by *Cyclops* and gaining the body cavity of this little crustacean, they continue to develop for about one month.

During this period there are two ecdyses, the first after about two weeks, when the tail becomes blunt.

When one takes these infected cyclops into the stomach, by drinking water containing them, the cyclops is killed by the gastric juice and the Guinea worm larva breaks out of the dead intermediary host and bores its way through the stomach wall and possibly goes to the tissues about the retroperitoneal region. As a matter of fact we are in ignorance of the exact cycle which goes on, until the fertilized female, with her embryo distended uterine tube, reaches the lower extremity. A cross section of the female shows the body of the worm to be almost entirely made up of uterus, with an insignificant alimentary canal pressed to one side.

The period of incubation is from 8 to 12 months.

Usually there are no other symptoms than discomfort from the blister and a feeling of heaviness about the affected extremity. At times there may be pain and fever.

Treatment.—By douching the point of exit we may cause the uterus to empty itself in about three weeks. At that time we may commence extraction by intermittent traction by winding the worm around a small toothpick or similar object. If undue force is exerted the worm may break off and abscess formation or sloughing result.

CHAPTER XXI

THE SCHISTOSOMIASES

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

There is a group of diseases, caused by trematodes of the family Schistosomidae, to which we apply the name schistosomiasis. The Schistosomidae differ from other human flukes (Trematoda) by not being hermaphroditic and by not having operculated eggs. From these eggs a ciliated embryo emerges but as to the manner in which infection of man is brought about we are at present in ignorance. It is considered probable that entrance to the human host is gained by way of the skin, as is the case with the hookworm infection, but there are those who think the entrance is affected through mucous membranes, especially those of the genitalia and anus and even the nasal mucosa.

It has recently been noted by Miyagawa that infection with *Schistosomum japonicum* takes place through the skin but that the infecting stage of the parasite is not that of the ciliated embryo but of a more advanced stage, in which there is a rudimentary ventral sucker. This would indicate the necessity for some intermediary host.

It is generally admitted that infection by drinking water, containing the ciliated embryos, is impossible, owing to the rapidity of their destruction by solutions of HCl of similar strength to that of the gastric juice.

It is probable that the earlier stages of development take place in the liver and that having reached maturity the female attaches herself to the male and together they go, by way of the inferior mesenteric vein, to the hemorrhoidal or vesical terminals. The male is in the shape of a narrow leaf, about 1/2 inch long with a ventrally turned oral sucker and a closely adjacent ventral sucker. The female is a somewhat longer and cylindrical worm almost an inch in length and, like the male, has two suckers. There is a dark brown zigzag stripe which shows prominently in the posterior part of the female and outlines the blood-filled intestinal tract. When the female applies herself to the ventral surface of the male there is an infolding of the sides of the flattened surface giving the male a cylindrical outline and resulting in the formation of a canal containing the female (gynaecophoric canal).

The males of the flukes which cause the vesical (*Schistosoma haematobium*) and the rectal (*Schistosoma mansoni*) involvement are covered externally with small tubercles and have a ventral sucker only slightly larger than the oral one. The Japanese schistosome (*Schistosoma japonicum*) is slightly smaller, has a smooth surface and shows a prominent pedunculated ventral sucker of much larger size than the oral one.

The eggs of *S. haematobium* have a terminal spine and measure from 115 to 175 by 60 mikrons; those of *S. mansoni* have a lateral spine and measure from 110 to 125 by 50 mikrons while those of *S. japonicum* are devoid of spinous projections and measure about 100 to 70 mikrons.

Clinically, the three infections differ as will be noted further on.

Looss claims that the two tuberculated species are identical and that the lateral spined egg is the product of an unfertilized female. He has more recently regarded the egg as produced parthenogenetically. Other helminthologists have noted slight anatomical differences as to ovaries and testicles so that the consensus of opinion is that vesical and rectal bilharzias are caused by different species of the genus *Schistosoma*.

As these flukes are found in the blood vessels they are often referred to as the blood flukes.

HISTORY

Vesical schistosomiasis has undoubtedly existed in Egypt since ancient periods as vesical calculi are frequent in the mummies of various dynasties. Ruffer has found calcified schistosome ova in the kidney of a mummy.

The French troops suffered greatly from the disease in 1800. It was Bilharz in Cairo, in 1851, who first associated the haematuria with the presence of the parasite and it is from his name that we get the designation bilharziasis or bilharziosis for the disease.

In 1903, Manson found lateral spined eggs in a patient from the West Indies who was suffering from rectal rather than bladder symptoms. In 1907 Sambon, considering the points of difference between the eggs and the involvement of rectum rather than bladder, established a new species, *S. mansoni*.

For a number of years Japanese physicians had noted the existence of a disease characterized by splenic and hepatic enlargement, ascites and cachexia. In August, 1904, Katsurada discovered ova with a ciliated embryo in the stools of patients with this disease. He found schistosomes in the portal vessels of dogs and cats containing eggs similar to those seen in the human cases. He named this trematode *S. japonicum*. In November, 1904, Catto discovered the parasite at an autopsy on a Chinaman. In 1910 Lambert, in China, described a disease, which he called urticarial fever, and a short time afterward Houghton established the connection between this disease and the more advanced stages of Japanese schistosomiasis.

PATHOLOGY

The pathological lesions are almost entirely due to the irritation of the eggs with resulting connective tissue increase or ulcerative processes. For some reason these flukes select the inferior mesenteric vein and make their way to the vesical plexus of veins in the case of *S. haematobium* and to the haemorrhoidal vessels for the other species. At times the ova or worms may be carried over to the systemic veins by way of the channels of anastomosis. In the terminal vessels the female gives off the eggs which penetrate the adjacent mucosa giving rise to inflammatory thickenings and the extrusion of the irritating eggs into the lumen of the bladder or rectum.

In the bladder these terminal spined eggs cause haematuria and form the nucleus for vesical calculi. The mucosa may also show wart-like excrescences. If the eggs are swept back through the portal vessels to the liver an interlobular cirrhosis results which would seem to be due entirely to the irritation of these egg emboli and not to toxic products of the worms themselves. Marked ureteral and kidney lesions may result as complications of cystitis or primarily from irritation by ova. In women the vagina, vulva and cervix uteri may show papillomatous thickenings. Bilharzial lesions of the male urethra are not uncommon and may lead to fibroid thickenings and fistula.

In searching for the flukes at autopsy we should make a longitudinal slit in the portal vein and with a spoon scoop out the blood and search for the parasites in a glass dish.

In the intestinal form of schistosomiasis the rectum may be studded with polypoid tumors which when projecting from the anus may ulcerate and lead to a diagnosis of cancer of the rectum. In sections from these masses great numbers of lateral spined eggs may be found.

Eggs have been found in the appendix as well as in the large intestines and the small intestine has been found involved in one case. In rare instances ova have been found in the lungs, spleen and even in the brain and spinal cord.

By digesting selected tissues in 4% NaOH at 75° C. and centrifuging one may find eggs which otherwise would be overlooked. Statistics from Cairo usually note 30 to 40 percent of infection in natives but Ferguson employing all methods found 61% infected at autopsies on 600 males. In all forms of schistosomiasis but particularly in the Japanese infection, eosinophilia is pronounced.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

Vesical Schistosomiasis or Endemic Haematuria

This form of the disease is chiefly found in Egypt, Syria, Uganda and South Africa. It is caused by *S. haematobium* and the period of incubation is approximately six months.

The first symptoms are pricking sensations about urethra and slight haematuria which comes on at the end of the act of micturition. Excesses or fatigue are apt to increase the haematuria. The diagnosis is made by finding the ova in the sediment of the centrifuged urine. Symptoms of cystitis and even pyelitis may follow the early bladder and urethral manifestations.

Perineal fistulae in the male and vaginitis in the female may be noted.

When reinfection does not occur the haematuria tends to slowly disappear but recovery does not usually take place for several years and may last for 12 years. Harrison considers that the persistence of the infection suggests a possibility of reinfection from the patient's own urine.

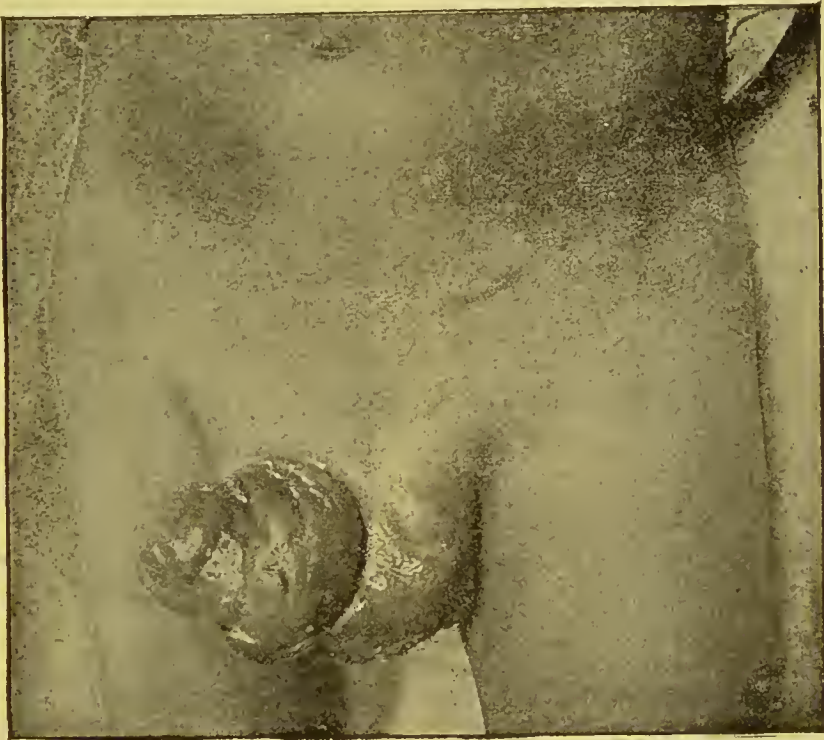


FIG. 65.—Vesical schistosomiasis showing fistulous tracts opening from penis and scrotum. (From Ruge and zur Verth.)

Rectal Schistosomiasis

While terminal spined eggs may be found in rectal lesions, but usually combined with lateral spined eggs, in countries where the vesical form of the disease exists, yet there are many parts of the world where, with the exclusive existence of an intestinal bilharziasis, only lateral spined eggs are found. The infection resulting from *S. mansoni* is the sole one in the West Indies, Congo Free State and in South America.

The symptoms are usually those of a chronic dysentery with more or less tenesmus and straining. Prolapse is a common result and is the cause of the ulcerations which may cause the disease to be diagnosed as cancer. Cirrhosis of the liver is more apt to occur than in pure vesical schistosomiasis.

Japanese Schistosomiasis

This is also called Katayama disease and in its early stages urticarial fever or Yangtse fever. It is caused by the nontuberculated species, *S. japonicum*, which is characterized by the egg without a spine.

Laning, in a study of 7 well controlled cases, has shown that the disease sets in after 2 or 3 days from the time of exposure to infection, by wading through paddy fields or still waters of infected ponds or lakes. The disease occurs in China, Japan and possibly in the Philippine Islands.

The course of the disease may be divided into 3 stages; the first, that of urticarial, pulmonary and febrile manifestations, which lasts about a month; the second, where ova begin to show in the small mass of bloody mucus which may cap the stool, and finally the third stage with cirrhosis of the liver, ascites, cachexia and death.

In the first stage we have headache and an evening rise of temperature to about 101° F. or 102° F. Shortly after the onset urticarial lesions, which may be 2 or 3 inches in diameter, may appear and disappear in various parts of the body.

The pulse rate is usually low. Very characteristic and early manifestations are those of the pulmonary involvement. Here oedematous patches may give the signs of crepitation and consolidation to rapidly disappear and reappear in another part of the lungs. A dry hacking cough appears early and with the fever, etc., may make one think of tuberculosis. The urticarial lesions often cause a diagnosis of ptomaine poisoning to be made.

The blood examination shows a marked eosinophilia, of from 30 to 60 percent.

The second stage shows more or less intestinal disturbance with at times bloody mucus containing ova. The ova may not be present for long intervals or may never be found. Where reinfection does not take place the patient tends to recover but if exposure to infection be kept up then the third stage sets in with rather marked dysenteric manifestations, emaciation, anaemia, ascites, dropsy and a terminal cachexia.



FIG. 66.—A and B, Case of *Schistosomum japonicum*. Severe infection of three years' duration. Ova very abundant in stools. Liver dullness diminished. Spleen not enlarged. (From Jefferys and Maxwell.)

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

This consists in the search for ova in the centrifuged urine of vesical bilharziasis or in the bloody mucus of the intestinal manifestations of the disease. If one adds water to the urine the ciliated embryo will be noticed to break out of the shell in a few minutes and move about actively as if in search for some host.

The eosinophilia is of great diagnostic value and is usually associated with an increase in the leucocyte count.

TREATMENT

The most important matter is to avoid places where the infection is known to exist. If one must wade through infected waters the body should be protected by canvas or other closely woven garments.

Various treatments, having in view the destruction of the worm, such as salvarsan, etc., do not seem to have been of any value. Local treatment is necessary in treating the cystitis and prolapse of rectum. Operative procedures are indicated where calculi exist.

CHAPTER XXII

MINOR HELMINTHIC INFECTIONS

PARAGONOMIASIS

General Considerations

This is an infection with a trematode, *Paragonimus westermanni* (*Distoma pulmonale*). It is rather common in some parts of Japan and Formosa.

In 1880, Baelz found the ova in the sputum of a case of haemoptysis in a Japanese, as did also Manson, in a Chinaman. Manson's case subsequently died and when autopsied showed in his lungs a fluke which was responsible for the eggs seen by Manson. The fluke itself is a little more than $\frac{1}{3}$ of an inch (8 mm.) long and is almost round on transverse section, there being, however, some flattening of the ventral surface. The acetabulum is conspicuous and opens just anterior to the middle of the ventral surface.

The branched testicles are posterior to the laterally placed uterus and the genital pore opens below the acetabulum. The branched ovary is opposite the uterus on the other side.

It is rather flesh like in appearance and is covered with scale-like spines. The flukes are usually found in tunnels in the lungs, the walls of which are thickened connective tissue. These tunnels result from hypertrophy of the bronchioles. There may be also cysts formed from the breaking down of adjacent tunnel walls. In addition to lung infection with this fluke, brain, liver and intestinal infections may be found.



FIG. 67.—*Paragonimus westermanni*: natural size; to left showing ventral surface; to right showing dorsal surface. (Braun after Katsurada.) (From Tyson.)

The life history and mode of infection of man is unknown further than the miracidium stage. If the eggs in the sputum are shaken up with water and the water renewed from time to time a ciliated embryo or miracidium develops after a few weeks and, at this time, if one presses on a cover glass covering some of these more mature ova, the miracidium will break through the operculated extremity of the egg and swim about actively in the surrounding water.

Besides man, dogs, cats and especially hogs may be infected.

Symptomatology, Diagnosis and Treatment

The case is usually considered as one of chronic bronchitis on account of the occurrence of cough and morning expectoration of a gelatinous sputum which is usually brownish. It is popularly known as endemic haemoptysis for the reason that after violent exertion, or at times without manifest reason, attacks of haemoptysis of varying degrees of severity come on. The signs on percussion are usually insignificant while those on auscultation are often marked. The symptoms often disappear for months to again reappear.



FIG. 68.—*Paragonimus westermani*; photograph from a sexually immature specimen. (From Tyson.)

The course of the disease is very chronic, often lasting many years. As a rule the patient is fairly well nourished although recurring attacks of haemoptysis may bring on a rather marked anaemia. Jacksonian epilepsy has been reported as occurring in paragonomiasis, the ova being found in cysts of the brain. There is some question as to whether some of the reports as to paragonomiasis may not have been connected with infections with Japanese schistosomiasis.

The diagnosis of endemic haemoptysis is readily made by finding the operculated eggs in the more or less sanguinolent sputum. These eggs are of a light yellow colour and average 90×65 mikrons. One often sees Charcot-Leyden crystals in the sputum.

The treatment is entirely symptomatic.

CLONORCHIOSIS

This is an infection due to a trematode, *Clonorchis endemicus* (*Opisthorchis sinensis*). It is also referred to as human liver fluke disease. It is true that the common liver fluke of sheep, *Fasciola hepatica*, may occur in man but such infections are rare, only 23 cases having been reported. Another liver fluke of ruminants is the lancet fluke, *Dicrocoelium lanceatum*, but it is also unimportant for man, only 7 cases having been reported.

Clonorchis infections are common in China and Japan, the fluke being about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch long by $\frac{1}{8}$ inch wide. There is considerable dispute as to whether we have

a pathogenic and nonpathogenic *Clonorchis*; the name *C. endemicus* applying to the former and *C. sinensis* to the latter. The eggs of this fluke show slightly concave bending of the sides at the operculated end and are about 30×16 mikrons. These flukes are found within the thickened bile ducts and may be present in great numbers. They may invade pancreas as well as liver.

These flukes are found in dogs and cats as well as man.

This fluke is supposed to produce most serious symptoms as indigestion, swelling and tenderness of liver, ascites, oedema and a fatal cachexia. As a matter of fact, many physicians in China attribute very little pathogenic importance to it. The disease is diagnosed by the presence of the ova in the stools. The source of infection is probably through the eating of uncooked fish.

Kobayashi has examined various mollusks and fish for trematode larvae. He succeeded in infecting nine kittens and two cats by feeding them with certain fresh water fishes whose flesh contained trematode larvae. These fishes were found in districts where human distomiasis was common.

Another human fluke, *Opisthorchis felineus*, inhabits the gall bladder and bile ducts of man and it is stated that the infection is quite common in Siberia.

It is also a parasite of cats and dogs.

The mode of infection as well as the life history is not known but is probably connected with the eating of raw fish.

The symptoms are similar to those caused by *C. endemicus*.

This fluke has 2 lobed testicles as against the dendritic ones of *C. endemicus*.

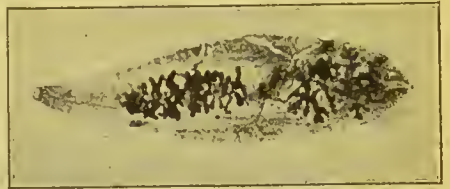


FIG. 69.—*Clonorchis sinensis*.
2, Cleared in glycerin. (From Jefferys and Maxwell.)

INTESTINAL DISTOMIASIS

The most important intestinal fluke in undoubtedly *Fasciolopsis buski*. It is now thought that this infection is more common than was previously stated. It is a very large fluke with an acetabulum 4 times the diameter of the oral sucker. It is characterized by a very long and prominent cirrus.

It has been found in China, Assam and India. It is a parasite of hogs as well as man. The eggs measure from 80 to 120 mikrons, are nearly colourless and have a thin shell with a very small operculum.

The symptoms are chiefly those of a chronic diarrhoea followed by anaemia and wasting. Goddard thinks that they live in the upper part of the small intestines.

The life history is unknown.

Noc has reported success with treatment with thymol.

Other intestinal flukes such as *Cladorchis walsoni*, *Gastrodiscus hominis*, *Heterophyes heterophyes*, and *Fasciolella ilocana* are of less importance.

COCHIN-CHINA DIARRHOEA

It was formerly supposed that a chronic form of diarrhoea in Cochin-China was due to an infection with the parthenogenetic female of *Strongyloides stercoralis*. It is now known that the parasite is widely distributed over the tropical and subtropical world and that it rarely gives rise to manifest symptoms although some observers regard it as capable of producing diarrhoea and more or less anaemia. It seems to be capable of setting up quite an eosinophilia at the time the adult female is penetrating the crypts of Lieberkühn, so that it is probably of pathogenic importance.

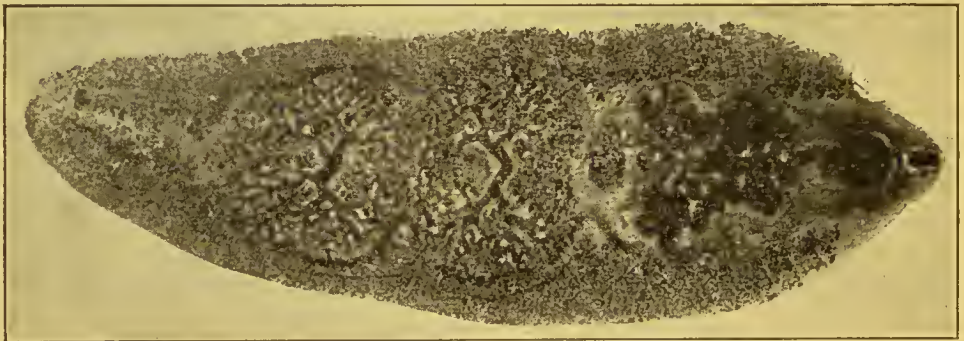


FIG. 70.—*Fasciolopsis buski*. Cleared in glycerin. (From Jefferys and Maxwell.)

The parasitic or intestinal form (also known as *Anguillula intestinalis*) is represented only by females. These are about $\frac{1}{12}$ of an inch (2 mm.) long and reproduce parthenogenetically. They have a pointed, four-lipped mouth, and a filariform oesophagus which extends along the anterior fourth of the body. The uterus contains a row of 8 to 10 elliptical eggs which stand out prominently in the posterior part of the body by reason of being almost as wide as the parent worm. They usually live deep in the mucosa and the embryos emerge from the ova laid in the mucosa. The embryos escape from the eggs while still in the intestines, so that in the faeces we only find actively motile embryos. The eggs, which are strung out in a chain, never appear in

the faeces except during purgation. As they greatly resemble hookworm eggs this is a point of great practical importance. In fresh faeces we find hookworm eggs and *Strongyloides* embryos. The embryos are rather common in stools in the tropics. These embryos have pointed tails and are about 250×13 mikrons. They have a double oesophageal bulb. They are about 250 mikrons when they first emerge but may grow until they approximate 500 mikrons in the faeces. The mouth cavity of the embryo of the hookworm is about as deep as the diameter of the embryo at the posterior end of the mouth cavity; that of *Strongyloides* is only about one-half as deep as the diameter. If the temperature is low, below 15° C., these rhabditiform embryos develop into filariform embryos, which form the infecting stage. It has been demonstrated by Fülleborn that infection of man takes place through the skin. If the temperature is warm, 25° to 35° C., these embryos develop into the free living form. In this we have males and females, with double oesophageal bulbs, the male about $1/30$ of an inch ($3/4$ mm.) long with an incurved tail and 2 spicules and the female about $1/25$ inch (1 mm.) long with an attenuated tail. These copulate and we have produced rhabditiform larvae, which later change to filariform ones. At this time the length is about 550 mikrons. These start up the parasitical generation.

For treatment thymol is usually recommended. Stiles speaks highly of sulphur.

SECTION VI

INFECTIOUS GRANULOMATA OF THE TROPICS

CHAPTER XXIII

YAWS OR FRAMBOESIA

HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION

History.—Some authorities think that a disease described by the Arabian physicians of the 10th. century was yaws, but the first description of what was undoubtedly yaws was that of Oviedo, who in the 16th. century described such an affection as existing in the West Indies. Bontius, later on noted the existence of the disease in the East Indies as well as in the West Indies.

It is known that yaws often occurred in epidemic form on board the slave ships and it is thought that this disease may have been an African importation into the new world.

Geographical Distribution.—Yaws is essentially a disease of tropical regions.

In Africa it is very prevalent in the equatorial region, especially in the Congo Free State. It is also found more rarely in Tripoli and Algiers and to a less extent in the Sudan region. It is common in the West Indies and tropical America.

In Asia it is very prevalent in the Malay Peninsula, Siam, the East Indian Islands and in the Philippines. It does not exist in Japan. In many of the islands of the Pacific it is exceedingly prevalent, particularly in Samoa. It is also present in Northern Australia.

ETIOLOGY AND EPIDEMIOLOGY

Etiology.—In view of the fact that many great authorities, especially J. Hutchinson, insisted upon the syphilitic nature of yaws it was a matter of great interest when Castellani, in 1905, discovered the causative organism which is characterized by the same sharp cut, corkscrew spirals that are noted with the syphilitic spirochaete discovered by Schaudinn in the same year. *Treponema pertenue* is found in the epidermis of the yaws granuloma and has been demonstrated in lymphatic glands and

spleen. Although it has not been demonstrated in the blood, through microscopical examination, it must exist there as monkeys infected with the blood of yaws patients develop the lesions of yaws in which the spirochaetes are present. Another name for the organism is *Spirochaeta pallidula*, this however is only a synonym.

Inoculation experiments as well as clinical manifestations show yaws and syphilis to be distinct, thus Charlouis, in 1881, inoculated a native suffering from typical yaws with syphilis. A primary sore developed at the site of the inoculation and secondary manifestations of syphilis followed. There have been many instances of the development of yaws, naturally and by inoculation in those affected with syphilis. Nichols has shown that a rabbit which had been infected intratesticularly with *T. pallidum* and then cured by salvarsan did not show immunity to *T. pertenue* when the latter was used to infect the testicle.

In the monkey inoculation over the eyebrow gives a flat dry and scaly lesion with syphilitic material while yaws inoculation gives a softer, more oedematous one.

Levaditi and Nattan Larrier have noted that monkeys which had been inoculated with syphilis were immune to yaws inoculation but yaws monkeys could be infected with syphilis, thus indicating that yaws was a mild form of syphilis. In Guam, it has recently been shown that 68% of cases of gangosa, a disease supposed to be a tertiary form of yaws, gave a positive luetin reaction. This would indicate a close relationship between yaws and syphilis.

Salvarsan is more specific for yaws than it is for syphilis and the percentage of positive Wassermann tests is greater in yaws than in syphilis.

Notwithstanding the above points, which would indicate a close relationship, all authorities are now agreed that clinical and pathological evidence show the two diseases to be separate entities.

Epidemiology.—Charlouis inoculated 32 Chinese prisoners with scrapings from yaws lesions. The disease developed in 28 of them first showing itself at the site of inoculation.

Paulet inoculated 14 negroes with yaws material and after a period of incubation of from 12 to 20 days a primary lesion appeared to be followed by the generalized eruption. In naturally acquired yaws the period of incubation is from 3 to 6 weeks. These experiments are in line with the known fact that any skin abrasion which comes in contact with a yaws lesion becomes infected, as when the mother nurses an infant with lesions on its face and develops a yaws lesion at the site of some fissure about the nipple.

In particular are flies important factors in the transmission of the disease, transferring the secretions from yaws lesions to abrasions or ulcers on the skin of healthy persons.

The greater the attention to personal hygiene the less probable is the spread of

yaws, so that Europeans are rarely infected while the disease may be prevalent in the native population.

In countries where it is prevalent it is chiefly a disease of children, the adults possessing immunity as the result of attacks in childhood.

PATHOLOGY

The primary yaws lesion is histologically the same as the lesions of the generalized eruption of the second stage. In these lesions we fail to find the endothelial proliferations and perivascular round cell infiltrations so characteristic of syphilis. There is great thickening of the interpapillary pegs of the epidermis which dip down deeply into the corium. Areas are noted in the epithelium containing swollen degenerate epithelial cells, polymorphonuclears and granular debris. There is marked oedema in the corium with dilatation of the blood vessels and lymphatics.

In a Levaditi stained specimen the spirochaetes are found in the epidermal layers instead of in the corium as with syphilis.

The visceral organs and central nervous system are not affected.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

It is usual to consider the clinical course of yaws as exhibiting two stages, the primary one, which comes on from 2 to 5 weeks after the introduction of the virus and characterized by a papular initial lesion, which later shows the fungoid appearance of a typical yaws tubercle, and the secondary stage in which yaws lesions similar to the initial one develop as a generalized eruption.

Some authorities recognize a tertiary stage in which gumma like nodules, with subsequent ulceration, appear. There is much evidence to indicate that a destructive ulceration of the nasopharyngeal region, in natives of Guam, is a tertiary manifestation of yaws.

The Primary Stage.—During a period of incubation, averaging 3 weeks, vague digestive troubles, nocturnal headache, joint pains and an irregular fever may be noted which often abate upon the appearance of the initial papule at the site of inoculation. There may be enlargement and tenderness of the lymphatic glands about the time of the appearance of the eruption. This initial lesion may be single or there may be several papules grouped together. In some cases it may be

impossible to get any history of a primary lesion or it may have been overlooked. The primary lesion is almost invariably extragenital and it has the same appearance as the lesions of the secondary stage, thus differing from syphilis.

The yaws lesion, whether primary or secondary, starts as a papule which in a few days enlarges to the size of a small pea. At this time the thickened epidermis begins to crack and a yellowish seropurulent fluid exudes from the underlying fungoid base. They bleed easily but are not painful. It is this fungoid yellowish or yellowish red tubercle which has been thought to resemble a raspberry, hence the



FIG. 71.—Yaws. This case shows an abundance of yaws tubercles on face. Distribution on trunk and extremities less extensive. (From Ruge and zur Verth.)

name framboesia. French authors liken it to a fig which has been turned inside out. The moist or crusting surface soon shows an underlying ulcer, which may dry up leaving a pigmented spot or become exuberant and appear as a mass of fungating granulations, 1 to 2 inches in diameter. Such lesions are given the name "mother yaw."

The Secondary Stage.—In from six weeks to three months after the appearance of the initial lesion, which may have dried up and left only a scar, or which more commonly is still present, there again set in malaise, headache and joint pains with an irregular inconstant fever.

The secondary eruption is made up of lesions having the same character and course as the primary yaws tubercle. In the general eruption, the papules appear frequently in the region of the junction of skin and mucous membrane as about



FIG. 72.—Child with yaws. (From U. S. Naval Medical Bulletin.)

mouth, nose and anus. In such regions they may become very moist and resemble the mucous patches of syphilis.

Besides their location on face and about the perineal region they are numerous on neck, arms, legs and buttocks. They are rare on the trunk and scalp.

In their ordinary locations the yaws tubercles are not painful unless pressed firmly but when located on the palms of the hands or soles of the feet the thick skin of these regions exerts pressure so that in such situations the lesions are painful.

In this stage yaws does not involve mucous membranes or affect the viscera.

The secondary stage lasts from 3 or 4 months to 2 or 3 years, the yaws tubercles coming out in successive crops in long standing cases.

The Tertiary Stage.—Daniels noted in the Fiji Islands destructive lesions of the naso-pharyngeal region which he thought might be associated with a preceding yaws attack. He noted cutaneous lesions which resembled lupus vulgaris. Boissiere has noted not only the naso-pharyngeal lesions and lupus vulgaris like ones but also tibial involvement, joint swellings and dactylitis.

According to Castellani the characteristic lesions of tertiary yaws are gummatous nodules and deep ulcerations. Such ulcerations may give rise to contractures.

In Guam the view now prevails that the condition known as gangosa is a form of tertiary yaws.

Other than a moderate anaemia there is very little in the blood of yaws which differs from the normal.

DIAGNOSIS

Clinical Diagnosis.—Bromide eruptions may greatly resemble yaws but the history of the taking of the drug and the effect upon withdrawal should differentiate.

Syphilis	Yaws
Primary lesions differ from secondary ones. Plemorphism of lesions. Affects mucous membranes. Visceral involvement. Central nervous system involvement. Primary sore usually genital.	Primary and secondary lesions identical. No variation in lesions. Only affects the skin or region at junction of skin and mucous membrane. Viscera spared. Absence of cord or brain involvement. Primary lesion almost always extra-genital.

The authorities generally discuss extensively the points of distinction between yaws and syphilis. This is probably more connected with possible relationship than practical importance in diagnosis.

Laboratory Diagnosis.—The staining of the juice from yaws tubercles by the India ink method or with Giemsa's stain is the usual procedure.

Sections from a yaws tubercle treated and sectioned according to Levaditi's method show the treponemata in the region of the thickened interpapillary pegs of the epidermis.

PROGNOSIS

This is almost entirely favorable as regards danger of life. The death rate is approximately $\frac{1}{2}$ of 1 percent, and such fatalities generally occur in young children in whom secondary infections develop on the site of the ulcerating yaws lesions.

PROPHYLAXIS AND TREATMENT

Prophylaxis.—Daniels thinks the frequency of infection about the angles of the mouth, which frequently show fissures, is explained by the exchange of particles of food or other substances by children, thus transferring the infection.

Of course care should be taken to prevent articles of clothing contaminated with yaws discharges from acting as infecting agents.

The main point in prophylaxis is to prevent flies from having access to abrasions on the skin, so that all cuts or sores should be protected by dressings. The sound skin is a barrier to infection.

Treatment.—It can certainly be stated that in salvarsan we have an absolute specific for yaws, the results which obtain in a few days being almost miraculous when one considers the protracted normal course of the disease.

The drug is given intravenously although neosalvarsan intramuscularly is more convenient for those not prepared to give intravenous injections of salvarsan.

The methods of administration are exactly as for the treatment of syphilis. The drug gives best results when used early in the course of the disease.

Doses of 0.4 grams of salvarsan usually suffice and frequently one dose effects a cure. The dose for women, children and thin individuals should be less than for strong adult men. Atoxyl does not seem to be effective in yaws. Before the introduction of salvarsan the standard treatment was with potassium iodide and mercury. In other words the methods of treatment are the same for the two treponemata, except that the effect of salvarsan may be termed specific for yaws and less so for syphilis.

For local treatment use antiseptic dusting powders as iodoform or boric acid.

CHAPTER XXIV

GANGOSA

HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION

History.—It is known that in 1828 a Spanish Commission investigating the diseases of the Ladrone Islands, reported the existence, in those islands, of a disease which was called gangosa, by reason of the muffled character of the voice, the Spanish word *gangosa* meaning muffled voice. The Commission recommended that cases of this disease, as well as those with leprosy, be isolated, thus showing that the disease was differentiated from leprosy at that time.

Daniels, who studied similar naso-pharyngeal lesions in Fiji, considered the disease as a sequel of yaws and stated that if it were not a stage of yaws it was probably a separate and distinct disease. Leys, who studied gangosa in Guam, in 1904, gave it the name rhino-pharyngitis mutilans and described it as a disease *sui generis*.

Geographical Distribution.—The disease is very prevalent in Guam, and is also present in other islands of the Caroline group. It exists in Fiji and many cases have been reported by Numa Rat from the island of Dominica, in the West Indies. Cases have also been reported from the Philippines and Ceylon.

ETIOLOGY AND EPIDEMIOLOGY

Etiology.—The two most prominent views as to its etiology are that it is either a sequel of yaws or syphilis. The fact that gangosa responds to antisymphilitic treatment is no proof as to its leutic origin because yaws yields equally well to such remedies.

Gangosa cases also give a considerable percentage of positive Wassermann reactions, 105 positives in 281 cases. Halton who made these tests found 100% positive reactions in cases of yaws and 46% of positives in those who had had yaws several years previously.

The main points against the syphilitic nature of the disease are absence of either congenital or acquired syphilis among the natives of Guam. There is an absence of Hutchinson's teeth and interstitial keratitis. Leys states that neither primary nor secondary syphilis had been seen in a native of Guam during a year in which a very large number, including several prostitutes, had been treated. Recently a positive luetin reaction has been obtained in 253 out of 369 cases of gangosa, of which 143

were popular type reactions, 65 pustular and 45 torpid reactions (taking 10 days or more for the reaction to manifest itself). The syphilitic and yaws antigens seem to be reciprocal so that these tests do not throw out yaws. The great stumbling block of the advocates of the luetic etiology has been to show the presence of syphilis among the people of Guam. Under tropical ulcer it will be noted that Jeanselme failed to find the eye or teeth signs of congenital syphilis among natives of Indo-China with the disease.

Kerr, who has been an advocate of the yaws etiology, has shown that of 315 cases of gangosa, 205 could show yaws scars and knew where the mother yaw had been and of the entire 315 only 18 claimed never to have had yaws and failed to show scars.

Rossiter, who observed active ulcerations of the nasal septum and hard palate in the case of a 2 year old Samoan child, following yaws, states that he found yaws treponemata in smears from the ulcerated areas.

Epidemiology.—If gangosa is a sequel of yaws then the same factors which are operative for yaws apply to gangosa.

PATHOLOGY

Sections made from the ulcerating margins of the nasopharyngeal lesions have failed to show treponemata when stained by Levaditi's method. In sections of such tissue stained by Giemsa's method I noted a rather marked infiltration with lymphocytes and a great number of mast cells. Fordyce has noted the presence of giant cells.

From the histological study one can only state that the lesions present the characteristics of the granulomata.

A remarkable feature of the disease is the rapidity with which ulceration destroys cartilage and bone. The nasal duct seems to be prone to attack and it is through this channel that the process reaches the eye to bring about its destructive tendency in that organ.

Of 81 cases studied by McLean and Mink the eye was involved in 21. The larynx was involved in 33 of these cases. It is the frequent perforation of the hard palate that gives these patients the nasal voice, whence the name of the disease is derived.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

Patients with the disease have rarely been observed prior to the full development of the mutilating ulcerations. In a few cases, however, it was noted that a patch of membrane first appeared in the region of the soft palate. This membrane rapidly became honeycombed and an examination 3 or 4 days later showed underneath a deep ulcer, sur-

rounded by an area of marked congestion. The ulcerating process advances rapidly, destroying bone as well as soft parts. The process seems to extend from within outward, giving a funnel shaped loss of



FIG. 73.—Cases of Gangosa from Guam. (U. S. Naval Medical Bulletin.)

tissue. The ulceration advances upward and forward destroying the nasal septum and structures forming the tip of the nose, leaving the upper lip as the lower border of this external opening. The active pro-

cess tends to become quiescent in one or two years, the cases then showing extensive loss of tissue with cicatricial borders. Occasionally active ulceration may again set in after a period of quiescence.

The voice character is that of any case where there is a perforation of the hard palate and is not distinctive of the victims of this disease.

During active ulceration there is a malodorous sero-purulent discharge which makes the patients very objectionable. These cases seem to suffer very little impairment of the general health even when the process is active.

Although the destructive lesions about the naso-pharynx and the region of the face are the most striking ones it would appear that similar ulcers on the extremities are of the same nature as those more prominently situated.

In an examination of the blood of 10 of these cases in Guam I did not observe any abnormal findings, other than an eosinophilia, which was present to an equal degree in those unaffected. Musgrave and Marshall reported a slight leucocytosis in their case.

DIAGNOSIS

Gangosa is chiefly to be differentiated from leprosy, syphilis and lupus vulgaris. Its more rapid course should distinguish it from leprosy and lupus and the history from syphilis.

TREATMENT

Odell found that a thorough antisyphilitic treatment cured these ulcerations. He used mercurial injections. Recently salvarsan has been used with striking curative results. It has been thought that local application of tincture of iodine was effective in stopping the progress of the early ulcerations but this would seem doubtful, it being advisable to immediately give salvarsan.

On account of the offensive odor of the discharge solutions of permanganate of potash have been generally used.

CHAPTER XXV

MYCETOMA

HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION

History.—The disease was first described about 200 years ago, but at that time was often confused with elephantiasis. The first exact clinical description of the disease, with its pathology, in which was noted the fungus nature of the granules given off in the discharges from the sinuses, was that of Vandyke Carter, whose studies were carried on from 40 to 50 years ago.

Geographical Distribution.—The name Madura foot takes its origin from the great prevalence of the affection about Madura, in the Madras Presidency of India. It is less frequent in other parts of India. It also occurs in Ceylon. The disease is rather wide spread in Africa, having been reported from Algiers, Tripoli, Tunis, Egypt and the Sudan as well as from Madagascar. Cases have also been reported from Italy and Greece in Europe and from the West Indies and some of the South American countries. Several cases have been reported from North America and Sutton, in 1913, reported two cases from Kansas, one in a Mexican and one in a native of Texas.

Etiology and Epidemiology

Etiology.—The disease is caused by the penetration of certain species of fungi into the tissues of the foot, although rarely the hand or some other part of the body may be affected. These species of fungus develop in granulomatous areas from which sinuses lead to the surface of the foot, in the discharges from which are found small granules resembling those found in the discharges from actinomycosis lesions.

As a rule only one kind of fungus is found in a single case. The most common infection is that due to *Discomyces madurae* (*Nocardia madurae*) which is the fungus of the fish-rope like granules of the pale or white variety of mycetoma. These like the fungus of actinomycosis, *Discomyces bovis*, show a felted mycelium in the center and peripheral club like structures. These granules are yellowish white and vary in size from a pin's head to a small pea. The mycelial threads are very narrow, 1 to 1 1/2 mikrons. It grows aerobically and the cultures show slender mycelial threads which are Gram positive. This is the organism of Carter's white mycetoma.

Other species of the pale, white or ochroid group of mycetoma fungi are *Indiella*

mansoni (Brumpt's white mycetoma) *Nocardia asteroides* (Musgrave and Clegg's white mycetoma) *Sterigmatocystis nidulans* (Nicolle's white mycetoma) and several others.

The cases caused by the black varieties are more rare and are characterized by the presence in the discharges from the sinuses of black gunpowder like grains.

These hard, brittle, irregular grains are caused by various species of fungi of which the best known is Carter's black mycetoma (*Madurella mycetomi*). This species was cultured by Wright and first shows a greyish growth, later becoming black. Other black varieties of mycetoma are due to various other fungi. Bouffard's black variety is caused by *Aspergillus bouffardi*. DeBeurmann's black mycetoma has as cause *Sporotrichum beurmanni*.

Besides the white and black varieties we also have a red variety of mycetoma. The fungus grains are quite small and reddish in colour. It is not an uncommon infection in certain parts of Africa, as Senegal. The cause is *Nocardia pelletieri*.

Epidemiology.—We know very little about the occurrence of these mycetoma fungi, other than in man. It is thought that such fungi lead a saprophytic existence on thorns or blades of grass or spine like grains of various cereals. Thus Nicolle's case in Tunis started from a puncture wound by a grain of barley.

As the vast majority of such cases are noted in the feet, and as such cases are chiefly in those who work barefooted, it seems reasonable to consider that the fungi are introduced on some puncturing object and the external wound having healed development goes on in the deeper structures.

PATHOLOGY

In more than 75% of cases of mycetoma the foot is the only part infected. More rarely there is involvement of hands, knees and buttocks.

The affected part shows nodules on the external surface which connect with the granulomatous lesions of the interior of the foot by sinuses. In advanced cases there may be a network of sinuses and cyst like dilatations which are filled with a viscid fluid packed with the small fish roe granules in the white variety or the gunpowder grains of the black mycetoma. The bony structures of the foot may undergo disintegration as well as muscular and areolar tissue so that on cutting into such a foot there is nothing normal remaining—simply a cheesy mass.

In the early granulomatous areas are found the actinomyces like granules surrounded by an area of mononuclear and polymorphonuclear infiltration. Giant cells are occasionally found. There is an inflammatory oedema. Externally we have connective tissue cells and a fibrous wall. The blood vessels show endothelial proliferation and thrombosis.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The disease usually begins in the sole of the foot with the formation of firm swellings about $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch in diameter. The cases are rarely seen at this stage, the natives waiting before seeking medical advice until the nodule has softened and begun to discharge the viscid fluid with the various coloured granules floating in it. As stated before the soft, yellowish white, fish roe like granules are most commonly observed, the more friable, hard, gunpowder like grains less so. The nodules continue to form and to break down until the foot has become greatly enlarged the under surface bulging out in a convex mass with the toes and heels appearing as if raised up. The dorsal surface is also puffed up and studded with broken down nodules, and the sides well rounded. There is no increase in the length of the foot. This swollen distorted foot is borne on a thin peg like leg which makes the size of the foot more striking.

If one probes the discharging sinuses bone may or may not be felt according to the advancement of the degenerative changes. There is rarely pain or bleeding following the probing.

It is more from the onerous burden of carrying around this fungoid mass of a foot, 3 or 4 times the normal size, than pain, that the patient complains of.

Uncomplicated cases do not show fever and the occasional enlargement of lymphatic glands is probably connected with bacterial infections.

There are never visceral metastases in mycetoma as is true of the nearly related actinomycosis.

The process shows no tendency to heal naturally or under treatment but fortunately does not extend, the process being confined to a foot or a hand. Unless the sinus riddled member is amputated the drain on the patient gradually exhausts him and death ensues in 10 or 15 years.

DIAGNOSIS

The distorted appearance of the foot or hand, riddled with sinuses discharging a viscid fluid containing the variously coloured granules, which upon microscopical examination are found to be sclerotia of fungi, is absolutely diagnostic. As regards recognition of the causative fungus one should culture the discharge or grains on maltose agar, potato or rather dry blood serum. The recognition of species of fungi is a very difficult matter, even for an expert.

PROGNOSIS

This is absolutely unfavorable as regards the relief of the condition but as regards life it is not unfavorable provided the drain on the system is gotten rid of by amputation of the part.

PROPHYLAXIS AND TREATMENT

Prophylaxis.—The wearing of shoes in the fields or forests would seem to be the best means of protection against small wounds from thorns, splinters and the like.

Then, too, any such wound which might occur should be treated with tincture of iodine.

Treatment.—It is usual to try the effects of curetting the lesions and if taken early enough this may have effect. As a rule the process goes on but is limited to the member attacked so that amputation of the diseased part brings about a cure. Iodide of potash is of no value.

CHAPTER XXVI

GRANULOMA VENEREUM

HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION

History.—It is generally stated that Daniels first noted the disease in British Guiana, in 1896, but Daniels regards the disease previously described by Macleod from India under the designation “serpiginous ulceration of the genitals,” as referring to granuloma venerum.

Geographical Distribution.—Cases of the disease have been chiefly reported from British Guiana and the West Indies. It is now recognized however that it occurs in India, China and Northern Australia as well as in some of the islands of the Pacific. It also occurs in Northern and Central Africa.

Grindon has reported 3 cases from the U. S.

ETIOLOGY

Various spirochaetes have been reported as present in the lesions. The finding by Wise of spirochaetes resembling *Treponema pallidum* has been generally accepted.

Donovan has reported the presence, in scrapings from the ulcerations, of an oval bacillus ($1\frac{1}{2} \times 2$ mikrons) which was contained in large phagocytic cells. There were sometimes several such bodies in a single cell.

Flu has recently reported the presence in plasma cells as well as occasionally in other cells of a capsulated organism which he believes related to the Friedlander group. His cultural work has not been conclusive.

There is also a suggestion of the cellular reaction characteristic of the chlamydozoa.

The disease is rather more common in women than in men and is rarely seen before the period of puberty. It is thought that it is transmitted by sexual intercourse.

PATHOLOGY

The pathological process manifests itself as a small round cell infiltration of the superficial portion of the corium. The growth is well supplied with blood vessels. Giant cell formation and caseation have not been noted. There is an abundance of plasma cells.

There is a marked tendency to the formation of fibrous tissue.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The disease usually first shows itself as a papule on the penis or labia minora. The process extends and the thin epidermal layer rubs off leaving a surface of granulations which bleed easily and give off a discharge which is frequently very offensive.

The process usually extends from the penis to the groins by continuity and thence down the inner surfaces of the thigh. When the glans penis is involved there may be a fungating growth suggestive of epithelioma. In the female the process extends from the labia minora into the vagina and also to the labia majora and thence to the perineum and peri-anal region. Recto-vaginal fistulae often result. The process extends more rapidly and markedly when invading mucous membranes.

While the granulomatous process is advancing there is frequently cicatrization of the areas previously invaded forming a scar tissue which breaks down easily. There is little pain or itching and the general health is not impaired.

There is no enlargement of the lymphatic glands. Although the process extends by continuity yet it may also pass to parts in contact with the diseased area. While healing of affected skin tends to occur that of mucous membrane does not.

There is really very little tendency to ulceration.

DIAGNOSIS

It is usual to suspect a syphilitic process but the absence of gland involvement and secondary manifestations of syphilis negatives this.

It may be suggestive of tuberculous or epitheliomatous processes. The marked chronicity and tendency to scarring is striking.

TREATMENT

Excision of the entire granulomatous area going well into the normal skin has been thought by some to be the only cure. Ordinary anti-syphilitic treatment does not seem to have any effect and the good reports that have been made as to therapeutic success with salvarsan may have been due to diagnosing a syphilitic process as granuloma venereum. Radiotherapy has been recommended.

Local treatment with antiseptic or deodorant washes or ointments is necessary in these cases.

SECTION VII

TROPICAL SKIN DISEASES

CHAPTER XXVII

TROPICAL ULCER

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Under the names tropical phagedaena or tropical ulcer various skin lesions have been described, from all parts of the tropics, which vary greatly in etiology and symptomatology.

These skin ulcers are most frequently observed on the dorsum of the foot or front of the leg but may also appear on the hands or forearms and have rarely been reported from other parts of the body.

There is no doubt but that many of the cases reported as tropical ulcer are really manifestations of tertiary syphilis.

Jeanselme has noted the insignificant manifestations of the secondary stage of syphilis in natives of Indo-China and the malignancy of the tertiary ones as regards the skin lesions. In fact a striking feature of the late stages of syphilis in the natives of the tropical world is the frequency and severity of skin lesions and the rarity or absence of involvement of the central nervous system to produce tabes or general paresis.

Again congenital syphilis is common in most tropical countries which have been visited by white men for long periods and Jeanselme has noted the rarity in natives so affected of interstitial keratitis and Hutchinson's teeth, signs upon which medical men are apt to base a diagnosis of such a condition.

Again, Butler, studying the serological side of 27 ulcerations which clinically could be diagnosed as tropical ulcer, obtained strongly positive Wassermann tests in 26 or 96% of the cases. Shattuck found that about 94% of the chronic ulcerations of the Philippines could be ascribed to syphilis.

Besides syphilis one must bear in mind the possibility of the ulcers being a manifestation of tertiary yaws, a condition which also gives a high percentage of positive Wassermann tests.

In Guam, the natives separate the ulcerations about the lower extremities from the naso-pharyngeal ones by designating the former cases *llagosos* and the latter *gangosas*. It is probable that the leg ulcers are manifestations of the same disease

as the naso-pharyngeal ones whether it be syphilis or yaws. These ulcers of the leg in Guam as well as those studied by Butler in the Philippines would certainly be classed as tropical ulcers.

There are undoubtedly many cases which can be explained by infections with ordinary pyogenic organisms of the skin which are enabled to get a foothold in an abrasion or other minor wound, in a person whose resistance has been reduced by such cachexia producing diseases as malaria, dysentery or ancylostomiasis.

Indeed some authorities attach special importance to the tibial ulcers found in advanced cases of hookworm disease. Some of the sores are due to irritating applications used by the natives of many countries as setons. In many instances the sores are from neglected wounds.

Vincent has called attention to the association of the fusiform bacillus and delicate spirillum, better known in connection with Vincent's angina, in smears from tropical ulcers.

Such findings have also caused many to consider tropical ulcer as related to hospital gangrene. There is no doubt but that smears from the dirty membranous deposit on these ulcers does frequently show the fusiform bacillus and at times the spirillum, but we also frequently find various fungi in such smears. Very few hold that these latter have anything to do with the production of the ulcer.

Innoculation experiments have as a rule been indefinite in result.

LeDantec has incriminated a very large Gram negative bacillus which was non cultivable.

Prowazek believes that he has found the cause in a spirochaete which possesses fewer turns and these more widely separated than those of the spirochaete of syphilis. The association with the fusiform bacillus has also been noted.

Wolbach and Todd note the frequent finding of spirochaetes in tropical ulcers and attach considerable importance to a spirochaete with abruptly tapering ends. They also generally found associated micrococci and bacilli as well as the fusiform bacillus.

Other than the noting of granulation tissue and the presence of plasma and small round cells there does not seem to be anything definite in the histopathology of tropical ulcer. This is what one might expect in view of the lack of definite knowledge of the condition.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

These ulcers are most frequently found on the dorsum of the foot, over the shin and about the external maleolus. More rarely they involve the dorsum of the hand or back of the wrist.

In the multiplicity of clinical descriptions from various parts of the tropics we obtain two types of ulceration. One is that of a rather chronic ulcer, which slowly develops from a painless swelling, which is not unlike a gummatous process. Surrounding the swelling there is a circumscribed, reddened, glazed area of skin. After two or three weeks

the swelling begins to soften and a serous fluid exudes from its summit. Ulceration, with the frequent formation of a membrane like deposit, now sets in and later on we have a more or less punched out ulcer showing indurated margins. There may be no impairment in the health of those with this type of ulcer.

The other type is generally seen in persons who are much debilitated or suffering from some cachectic state. In the earliest stages these sores seem to resemble an area which has been excoriated and inoculated with vaccine virus, there being a rather dry, angry-looking spot of erythema. This within a few hours may be surrounded by a circle of vesicles beyond which is an encircling inflammatory areola. There is marked subjective pain and tenderness. The serum from the vesicles fails to show any bacteria and the cellular contents are made up almost entirely of polymorphonuclear leucocytes. Within a few hours to one or two days the area within the ring of vesicles is converted into a dark grey to black pultaceous diphtheroid membrane which when detached shows underlying fungating granulations, covered with greenish yellow pus. This membrane, if stripped off, tends to reform with great rapidity (24 to 48 hours), and in many respects resembles the membrane of diphtheria except for its dark colour.

These ulcerations extend with great rapidity and even when showing a tendency to heal may suddenly, from a point along the margin, proceed to form a new area of ulceration, extending somewhat as would a ringworm. When the original site of ulceration fails to heal during a period of several weeks, the edges become rather indurated but do not show the punched out or undermined characteristics of the first type.

These cases last for months and are far more tantalizing than the former type of ulceration for the reason that from time to time they show a strong tendency to heal, the process clearing up almost entirely, when suddenly the former area of the ulceration is equalled or exceeded.

TREATMENT

Many of these ulcerations yield readily to salvarsan and in such cases we naturally think of a syphilitic or framboesial etiology.

Castellani has recommended a protargol ointment, 5 to 10%, which is applied to the ulcer after previous flushing with hydrogen peroxide or other antiseptic lotion.

At times thorough cauterization with pure carbolic acid followed by neutralization with alcohol may shorten the process.

Iodide of potash benefits some cases but has no effect on others and the same is true of mercurial treatment.

An 8% ointment of scarlet red should be tried on these sores when treatment with ordinary applications fails.

CHAPTER XXVIII

TINEA IMBRICATA

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

This form of tropical ringworm is chiefly found in the islands of the South Pacific and in the Malay Archipelago. It is also found in Southern China and quite recently has extended to Southern India and Ceylon.

On account of the disease having been carried from the Tokelau Group to Samoa it is often designated *tokelau*. Manson was the first to recognize the affection as due to a fungus which he demonstrated microscopically in the scales. He was also able to transmit the disease by inoculation experiments and found that after about 10 days a raised, brownish spot appeared at the site of inoculation. This spot increased in size until when about $\frac{1}{4}$ inch in diameter its central portion became detached, thus giving rise to several thin, rosette like scales, free at the center but still attached peripherally. The fungus advances peripherally leaving a smooth surface within. Again there is a similar process developing in the original central spot to again form a circle of scales within the older and more peripheral circle. The process is repeated until several rings of scales are formed each originating from the central focus as concentric ripples form on water from the fall of a pebble. These scale circles are from $\frac{1}{8}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ inch apart and give a festooned appearance to the affected skin. It was formerly supposed that the causative fungus was *Aspergillus concentricus* but Castellani has demonstrated that fungi of this genus, when present, are merely accidental. He has isolated in cultures what he considers the causative fungus, *Endodermophyton concentricum*. He treated scales for 10 minutes with absolute alcohol and then placed single scales in a series of tubes of maltose bouillon. The fungus grows between the rete malpighii and the external epidermal layers forming a network of mycelial threads, about 3 mikrons broad.

Another fungus cultured from *tinea imbricata* scales is *Endodermophyton indicum*. Inoculation of this organism in pure culture produced the disease.

The characteristics of the genus *Endodermophyton* are the growth of a mycelial network between the rete malphigii and the superficial epidermal layers. In cultures only mycelial filaments are found, there are no conidia bearing hyphae.

The fungus is also called *Trichophyton concentricum*.

When this skin disease is introduced into a country with high relative humidity and fairly uniform temperature, between 80° and 90° F. it spreads with great rapidity.

A dry climate or one showing considerable variations in temperature is not favorable for its spread.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The clinical characteristic of this form of ringworm is the presence of rosette like lesions of several concentric circles of shingle like, papery scales which are fixed peripherally and free toward the center thus, from its imbrications, suggesting the name given it by Manson.

If one passes the finger over the affected surface from without inwards there is no sensation of roughness but if passed from the center outwards the free borders of scales cause a sensation of roughness.

As these circles extend peripherally they meet the peripheral rings of other circles so that various curves appear which give the general appearance of watered silk.

The flaky scales are of tissue paper thinness and are of a dirty, brownish grey colour.

The general health of the patient is not affected but the itching is very severe.

There is an entire absence of inflammation about this ringworm thus differentiating it from the more common tropical ringworms. Again the axillae and crutch are much more rarely affected than in other ringworms as is also true of the face, palms of hands and soles of feet. The scalp is never affected.

Some claim that the fungus never invades the nails but Manson states that this frequently occurs. The presence of the fungus in a scale treated with 10% solution of sodium hydrate differentiates the scales from those of ichthyosis.

TREATMENT

A thorough preliminary scrubbing with soap and water in order to better expose the fungus to curative applications is important.

For treatment Manson recommends iodine liniment. This contains 12 1/2% of iodine as against 7% for the tincture. The liniment has also 3 1/2% of glycerine which is not an ingredient of the tincture.

Both tincture and liniment have 5% of potassium iodide. The application of the tincture does not seem to be as satisfactory as the liniment, the stronger preparation being more effective.

Chrysarobin is very effective but very irritant and has to be used with care. An application of a 5% solution of chrysarobin in chloroform to the affected area, then painting it over with a 50% aqueous solution of ichthyol, often gives good results.

Some prefer a 2% to 5% ointment of chrysarobin. Chrysarobin produces a conjunctivitis if used near the eyes. Again if absorbed it may act as a renal irritant.

Castellani strongly recommends the use of resorcin in tincture of benzoin (60 to 120 grains of resorcin in 1 ounce of tincture of benzoin). Either remedy alone has very little effect, the combination being necessary. The application is made once or twice daily. In addition to this treatment the patient should be scrubbed with sand-soap and hot water twice a week.

CHAPTER XXIX

TINEA CRURIS

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Under the name "dhobie itch" this fungus affection is probably better known to Europeans than any other tropical skin disease. This name dhobie or washerman's itch has been given on account of associating it with the infection of the underclothing while being washed in the pools or streams along with the garments of those who have this skin disease. This, like every other wide spread view, has probably some foundation but cannot be verified. It is the *eczema marginatum* of Hebra.

This affection is caused by various species of *Epidermophyton*. This genus differs from *Trichophyton* in that it never invades the hair or hair follicles.

The species which have been more frequently reported are *Epidermophyton cruris*, *E. perneti* and *E. rubrum*. The mycelium is about 4 mikrons broad and the spores about 5 or 6 mikrons. All of these fungi can be cultured on Sabouraud's maltose agar, growth appearing in about a week, except *E. perneti*, which grows more rapidly.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The favorite site is the crutch although the axillary region is also frequently involved. The process starts as a papule but these rapidly develop and give rise to an angry red, swollen patch with sharply delimited margins. These red, festooned patches are usually limited to the perineum, scrotum and inner surfaces of the thighs.

The itching is unbearable and many secondary infections or eczematous lesions result from the fierce scratching of the parts.

If the patient goes to a cooler place the process subsides to return when he comes back to the hot moist climate where the infection was originally contracted.

In some cases the fungus invades the region between the toes and gives rise to intolerable itching and from secondary bacterial infections to a condition known as "Mango toe."

It has seemed to me that when one has a coccal infection engrafted upon the fungus one the condition becomes what might be termed fulminating, so rapidly does the itch extend.

TREATMENT

When the process is markedly inflammatory mild applications are indicated, such as calamine lotion (30 grains each of calamine and zinc oxide with 5 or 10 drops of carbolic acid in one ounce of saturated solution of boric acid).

A 10% to 15% solution of sodium hyposulphite can, however, be used on the area even when markedly inflammatory.

Iodine applications are too irritating for the region of the scrotum.

An ointment of resorcin, 20 to 30 grains with one dram of sulphur to the ounce, may be tried. If chrysarobin be used it should be applied with greatest care as noted under *tinea imbricata*. Many advocate applications of solutions of salicylic acid in alcohol, 2% to 5%.

Manson's dusting powder of equal parts of boric acid, zinc oxide and starch should be freely used.

CHAPTER XXX

PINTA

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

This is a parasitic skin affection due to various species of fungi. It is only found in the tropical portion of the new world, and is especially prevalent in Colombia, where it has been estimated 4% of the population have the disease. It is also found in Mexico, Central America and some of the other countries of South America as well as Colombia.

Other names for the disease are caraate and mal de los pintos. At first it was thought that the different colours shown by the eruption were due to varying depths of the proliferating fungi in the skin layers but it is now known that the explanation is in a variety of species in the different types of pinta.

The pure violet pinta is caused by *Aspergillus pictor*, while the greyish violet one is due to *Penicillium montoyai*. A species of *Monilia* causes the white variety and different species of *Montoyella* a black and a red variety respectively. The genus *Montoyella* is stated by Castellani to have both slender and thick mycelial threads, from the thicker of which spring delicate hyphae terminating in pear shaped conidia.

Material scraped from the lesions and mounted in liquor potassae shows the fructification terminations characteristic of *Aspergillus* or *Penicillium* in the violet or grey violet varieties while the white, black and red ones only show mycelial threads and scattered spores. These pinta species of fungi can be cultivated on Sabouraud's medium.

Montoya thinks that the pinta fungi lead a saprophytic existence in the waters of mines or other places with a constant high temperature, and states that he has obtained pure cultures from such sources.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The spots of the eruption are generally first noted on the hands or face and are rather dry and only slightly raised. Itching is quite marked and the scratching probably is largely responsible for the gradual spread of the affection over the body generally.

The palms of the hands, soles of the feet and nails are never involved. The course is essentially chronic and shows no tendency to spontaneous cure.

The red pinta is that most often found in white people, the patches being of brick red colour.

The white pinta may not only be caused by a species of *Monilia* but it may represent an area formerly invaded by a species producing some other colour and then dying out leaving a vitiligo like area.

The violet pinta is quite common among miners, while the black one is the type which more often appears in the black population. The black varieties may show either a pure black or a violet black colour.

TREATMENT

Local applications of iodine preparations or of chrysarobin seem most effective. The resorcin sulphur ointment noted under tinea cruris is best for the face.

CHAPTER XXXI

MINOR TROPICAL AFFECTIONS OF THE SKIN

DERMATOPHILIASIS

This is a skin infection due to the penetration of the region about the feet and especially the toes by the female sand flea or chigoe. It is also sometimes called the jigger. This flea is a member of the subfamily Sarcopsyllinae which differs from the ordinary flea subfamily in that the impregnated female becomes fixed in the tissues of the host instead of developing her eggs in a free state. The proper name for this flea is *Dermatophilus penetrans*, synonym *Sarcopsylla penetrans*. It is found abundantly in Central America and Northern South America as well as in the West Indies. It is also found in East and West Africa as well as India and is apparently rapidly spreading over the tropical world.

This flea attacks not only man but many wild and domesticated animals as well and in particular the pig. The males and females live in dry sandy soil and feed on the blood of various mammals. The importance of the parasite is that upon impregnation the female ceases to lead a free existence but burrows into the tissues of man or other host and becomes enormously distended with eggs. There is some question as to whether these eggs are extruded by the female or whether they are set free in the ulceration process which tends to occur around the imbedded flea. The eggs develop into 13 segment larvae, which form a cocoon from which the insect comes out in about 10 days.

The female flea tends to burrow into the skin about the sides of the toe nails, although more rarely boring into other parts of the body as penis, scrotum, thighs or hands. Finally only the tip of the abdomen projects. This marks the black spot which is noted in the tense itching area which is quite white unless bacterial infection starts up inflammation.

The swelling is about the size of a small pea by the end of 5 or 6 days. Ulceration is the usual termination of the infection if untreated and such ulcers may be very intractable or form a favorable soil for infection with the tetanus bacillus.

Well made shoes are most important in prophylaxis and the best treatment is to enucleate the egg-distended flea with a needle and then touch the cavity with pure

carbolic acid followed by neutralization with alcohol. It is astonishing how expert the natives become in dissecting out these insects.

TROPICAL IMPETIGO

Under the designation pemphigus contagiosus Manson describes a very common skin disease of the tropics. The condition, however, is not pemphigus. A bacteriological examination shows in the smear great numbers of pus cells containing phagocytized diplococci. Wherry has named the organism *Diplococcus pemphigi contagiosi*. As a matter of fact, culturally, this organism is the common *Staphylococcus pyogenes aureus*. It is also a matter of common observation that this organism when in pus cells of active inflammatory processes shows a diplococcus morphology rather than a staphylococcal one. The disease is markedly contagious in children and is strikingly autoinoculable so that unless the first lesion is taken in hand immediately the eruption may become generalized. A small spot of erythema first appears which rapidly becomes vesicular, the bleb covering the entire spot, so that there is practically no surrounding inflammatory areola.

The diaphenous covering rubs off with the slightest touch and leaves underneath a raw looking surface which extends peripherally to form an angry looking red patch an inch or more in diameter. In adults it rarely affects parts other than the axilla or crutch.

The general health of the child is practically unaffected.

The usual treatment is with bichloride lotions followed by a dusting powder of equal parts of boric acid, starch and zinc oxide. I have found, however, that an ointment of ammoniated mercury, 2% to 5% according to age, is the most satisfactory treatment.

PIEDRA

This is a fungus disease of the hairs in which small nodules form along the shaft. They are about the size of the nits of head lice but more or less surround the hair instead of projecting off at an angle as do the ovoid lice nits. These little masses are black in colour and very hard, hence the name piedra—stone. The disease is chiefly found in Colombia and is thought to be due to the application, by the women, of a mucilaginous preparation to their hair. If an infected hair be examined in liquor potassae the nodule will be found to be made up of facettied bodies matted to the side of or, at times, encircling the hair. These bodies are the spores of *Trichosporum giganteum*.

Besides piedra there are also other nodular affections of the hairs due to species of *Nocardia*. Chalmers has recently reported several cases of trichonocardiasis where the axillary hairs were matted together and the skin of the region inflamed. Castellani called attention to this condition in 1911 and reported a narrow, bacillus like fungus as the cause, *Nocardia tenuis*. The nodules are rather soft and may be yellow, black or red in colour. Microscopical examination shows the fungus.

Chalmers had excellent results by treating the affected hairs with a 2% formalin solution in alcohol. At night a 2% ointment of sulphur was applied.

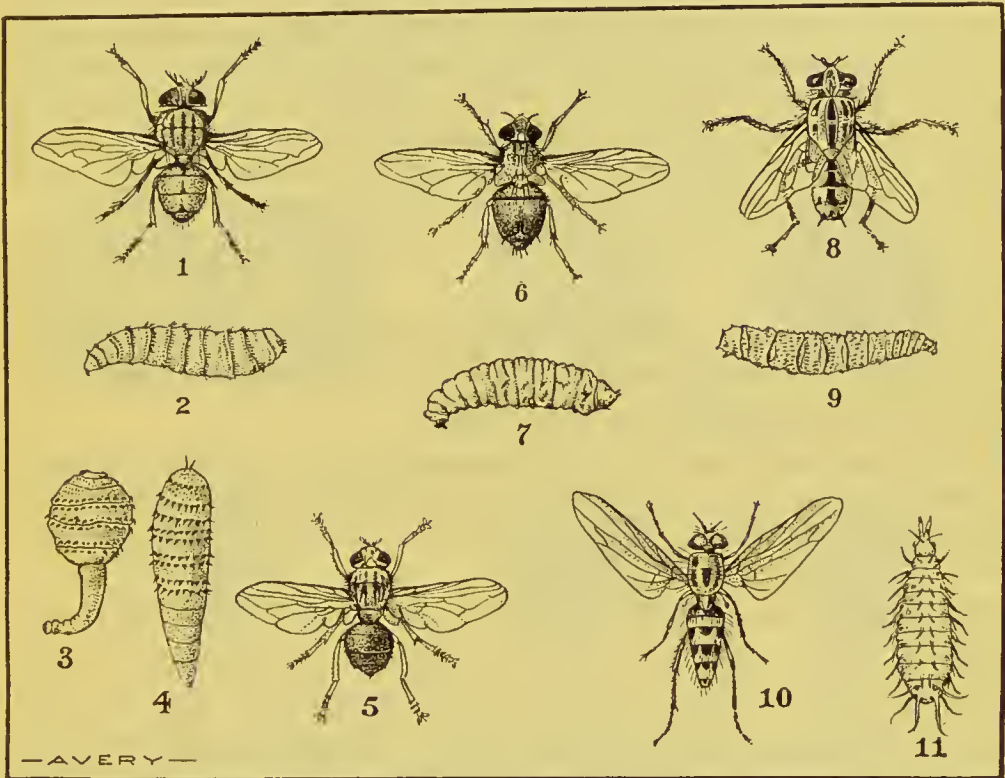


FIG. 74.—Insects in which the larval stage is important. (1) *Chrysomya macellaria*; (2) larva; (3) *Dermatobia cyaniventris* larva, early stage (ver macaque); (4) *D. cyaniventris* larva, later stage (torcel or berne); (5) *D. cyaniventris*; (6) *Auchmeromyia luteola*; (7) *A. luteola*, larva; (8) *Sarcophaga magnifica*; (9) *S. magnifica* larva; (10) *Anthomyia pluvialis*; (11) *A. pluvialis* larva.

CUTANEOUS MYIASSES

Ver Macaque.—The best known of these myiasess is that due to the larva of a gad-fly, *Dermatobia cyaniventris*.

The larva is at first club shaped and in this stage is called ver macaque. Later on it becomes worm shaped and is then called torcel in Venezuela or berne in Brazil. The natives of most of the countries

where the infection is found have called the larvae "mosquito worms" or "gusano de zancudo" and they have even incriminated large mosquitoes belonging to the genus *Psorophora* as being responsible for the infections.

Surcouf has noted that these fly larvae have been found cemented to mosquitoes of the genus *Janthinosoma* by a glue like substance. These mosquitoes are vicious biters and evidently the young larvae escape from the eggs attached to the mosquito and enter the wound made by the biting parts of the mosquito. Some have thought that *D. cyaniventris* deposits its eggs in a glue like material on the leaves of plants and that they stick to mosquitoes flying about such plants. From the facts that these eggs apparently only become attached to this particular mosquito and further in that the eggs are attached in a constant manner with the hatching end outward it would seem that the mother fly must in some way seize the mosquito and deposit her eggs on it. As the larva grows in the subcutaneous tissues of man or other animals a tumour like swelling develops with a central orifice, towards which the posterior extremity of the larva points and through which it takes air into its spiracles.

The swelling somewhat resembles a blind boil and may be as large as a pigeon's egg.

These gad-fly boils tend to break down and discharge a sero-purulent fluid and it is supposed that the larva, when mature, escapes as a result of the disintegration of the tumour.

In Brazil they make tobacco juice applications which cause the larva to protrude and then squeeze it out. The injection of a little chloroform into the larva with a hypodermic syringe, prior to its extraction with a forceps, makes the process less painful.

The Screw Worm.—This is the larva of a bluebottle fly, *Chrysomya macellaria*, which differs from the common bluebottle fly, *Lucilia*, by having 3 black lines on scutum. This muscid fly lays 200 to 300 eggs in wounds or orifices having offensive discharges, as from nose, ears, etc. The larvae burrow into the adjacent tissues and cause frightful destruction of all soft parts. The mature larvae are a little more than $\frac{2}{3}$ inch long and have circlets of spines around each of the 12 segments.

This infection is especially common in tropical and subtropical America and is important in animals as well as man.

In Yount's 23 cases 18 were of nasal myiasis; the mortality for the 23 cases was 15% and for the nasal ones 22%. Irrigations with chloroform water or a 5% carbolic acid or compound cresol solution give the best results in treatment. If the larvae reach the sinuses it may be necessary to open them to get at the parasites.

CREEPING ERUPTION

This is a skin affection which is also called larva migrans on account of its being due to the burrowing of more or less undetermined fly

larvae in the subcutaneous tissues. In their advance, which is at the rate of from one to several inches daily, they leave a raised pinkish line. The burrow is approximately $\frac{1}{6}$ inch in diameter. The disease is most common in Southern Russia but is also found in Africa, Asia and South America. Looss considers that hookworm larvae, when penetrating the skin, may produce similar lesions.

TUMBU FLY DISEASE

This African myiasis is due to the penetration of thighs or buttocks by the larvae of *Cordylobia anthropophaga*. The appearance of

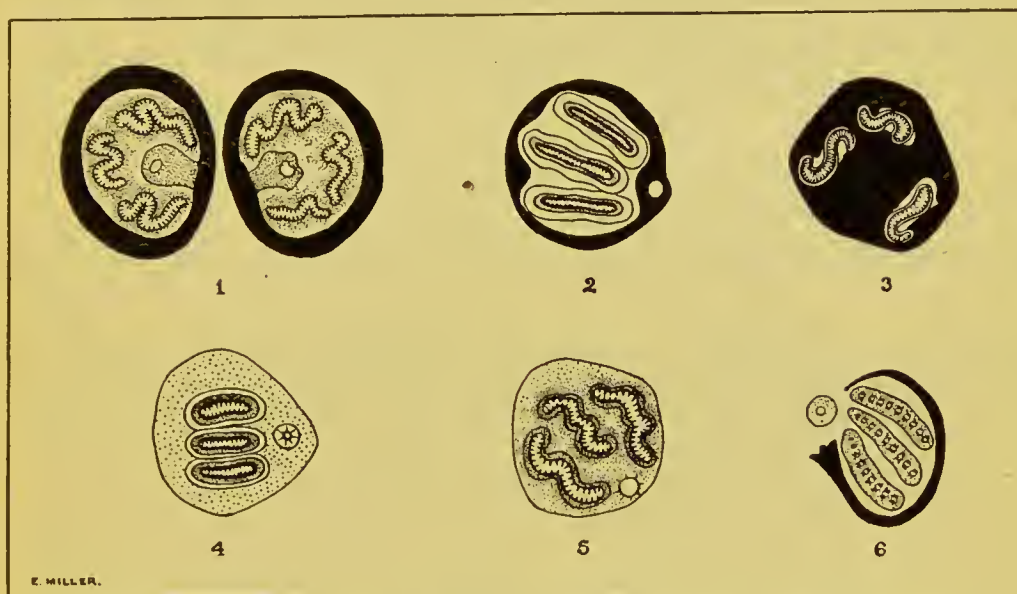


FIG. 75.—Markings of breathing slits on posterior stigmata of various larvae. 1, *Musca domestica*, showing both stigmata; 2, *Calliphora vomitoria*; 3, *Stomoxys calcitrans*; 4, *Auchmeromyia luteola*; 5, *Cordylobia anthropophaga*; 6, *Sarcophaga magnifica*.

the tumified area is quite similar to that of the tumour of *Dermatobia cyaniventris* and the treatment is similar.

CRAW-CRAW

This is a rather chronic papular skin disease which is reported from the West coast of Africa. These papules may be as large as a small pea and are quite hard. They are found chiefly on legs and arms. The proximal lymphatic glands may be enlarged.

Undoubtedly many of the cases called *craw-craw* are scabies. In fact the Africans give the name to a host of different skin affections. O'Niel thought he had found a filarial larva in one of his cases and Nielly incriminated a nematode larva of the *Anguillulidae* family. The cause is unknown and the disease very intractable to treatment.

SECTION VIII

TROPICAL DISEASES OF DISPUTED NATURE OR MINOR IMPORTANCE

CHAPTER XXXII

VERRUGA PERUVIANA AND OROYA FEVER

These two diseases have, until recently, been considered as two stages of the same disease, the usual idea being that Oroya fever is the first stage, following which, provided the patient does not die from this very fatal fever, there sets in an eruption which is the second or verruga stage.

In order to reconcile the observations of the development of the eruptive stage without a severe, febrile, preliminary one of three or four weeks, it was considered that the first stage might be exceedingly mild.

Strong and his colleagues inoculated a volunteer with material from verruga lesions and 16 days later the eruption appeared without any preliminary fever or anaemia as is so characteristic of Oroya fever.

It is thought that Oroya fever was the disease which proved so fatal to Pizarro's army in the 16th century. Great interest was aroused in these diseases in 1870 on account of their prevalence in the workmen constructing the railroad from Lima to Oroya, a town in the Andes. At this time there was much conflict of opinion as to whether the two diseases were identical. In 1885, Carrion, a medical student of Lima, inoculated himself with the blood from a verruga lesion and died from Oroya fever about one month later. As a result of this it seemed to be established that infection with verruga material would produce the serious first stage fever and many call the fever Carrion's disease.

OROYA FEVER

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

The disease is chiefly found in towns situated in narrow, wind-protected valleys of the West side of the Andes, at elevations of from

3,000 to 9,000 feet. Townsend has suggested that a species of *Phlebotomus*, which is very prevalent, may be the transmitting agent.

Barton isolated a paratyphoid bacillus from the blood of a patient, besides which other bacteria have also been isolated. In 1909, Barton noted certain rod-like organisms in the red cells of Oroya fever patients which he considered protozoal in nature.

Strong and his colleagues found in the blood of Oroya fever cases rod-shaped forms in the red cells, varying from 1 to 2 mikrons in length, the red cells containing from 1 to 30 of these elements.

Intravenous inoculation of blood containing these elements into monkeys and rabbits was negative in result. These organisms were considered as intermediate between bacteria and protozoa. They are closely related to *Grahamella* and the Harvard commission has proposed the name *Bartonella bacilliformis*.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The incubation period is about 3 weeks and the onset of the disease is marked by malaise and apathy, to be followed by a rapidly developing anaemia, of the pernicious anaemia type, with an irregular fever of a remittent character and excruciating pains in head, joints and bones. The tenderness over the bones is undoubtedly associated with the marked changes going on in the bone marrow and is particularly marked over the sternum.

The patient rapidly develops a very severe anaemia and death results in 20 to 40% of cases in 2 or 3 weeks. Delirium is often noted.

The most important findings in the disease are those in connection with the blood examination. The rod-shaped organisms, which are thought to be the cause of the disease, are somewhat difficult to observe in fresh blood preparations. They show definite motility within the red cells, particularly after warming the blood slide. The motion is a rather gliding one. In Romanowsky stained preparations the 1 to 2 mikron long rods within the red cells may occur singly or in numbers of 4 or 5. V shapes are frequently seen. The rod shows a bluish staining with a deep purplish-red chromatin stained granule at one extremity. Rounded, oval or pear-shaped forms may also be seen.

Very striking is the rapidly developing anaemia which frequently shows a red cell count of less than a million within a few days. Normoblasts are quite numerous and fulminating cases show numerous megaloblasts.

Polychromatophilia and poikilocytosis are noted.

In the red cells we have the picture of a rapidly developing pernicious anaemia. The colour index is above 1.

The leucocytes number about 20,000 of which 75% are neutrophiles. Immature neutrophiles, as the metamyelocyte, are very common.

The pathology is chiefly that of increased activity of the bone marrow. Strong noted enlargement and haemorrhagic infarctions of the spleen.

Treatment is of no avail, although arsenic preparations have been recommended.

VERRUGA PERUVIANA

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

The eruption of verruga somewhat resembles that of yaws and it was at one time suggested that verruga was simply yaws as influenced by high altitude. Strong and his colleagues found that they could infect rabbits intratesticularly and that lesions resembling those of man could be produced in dogs and monkeys by cutaneous and subcutaneous inoculations. The virus has been transmitted from monkey to monkey. The Wassermann reaction was negative. In extracts from the granulomatous lesions they found a very active haemolysin. It will be remembered that animals are not susceptible to Oroya fever blood inoculations.

From the fact that it is possible to inoculate a person by rubbing verruga material on a scarified surface it would seem that the infection might be transmitted by insects.

As regards the pathology of verruga, Cole has noted involvement of the lymphatic channels, which become obstructed by a cellular exudate, around which lymphatics are found plasma cells and fibroblasts. There is marked dilatation of the capillary blood vessels. The structure of these granulomatous tumors is very vascular, almost cavernous, hence the tendency to haemorrhage. The haemolysin may also be operative in the liability to haemorrhage.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY AND TREATMENT

The period of incubation is about 2 weeks as shown by experimental inoculation. The eruption shows two types, the one with numerous, small, wart-like lesions, not exceeding the size of a small pea—the miliary type, and the other, with less numerous but much larger

nodular masses—the nodular type. The latter type is more rarely seen than the former.

The eruption is most abundant on the face and extensor surfaces of the extremities and less common on the trunk. In the miliary type a pink macule appears which rapidly takes on a bright red colour and becomes nodular. These nodules may be flat or somewhat pedunculated and bleed easily. At first smooth and shiny, it later on shrivels up and forms a sort of crust, which eventually desquamates without leaving a scar. This form of the eruption may involve the mucous membranes, as of conjunctivae, nose, pharynx, etc.

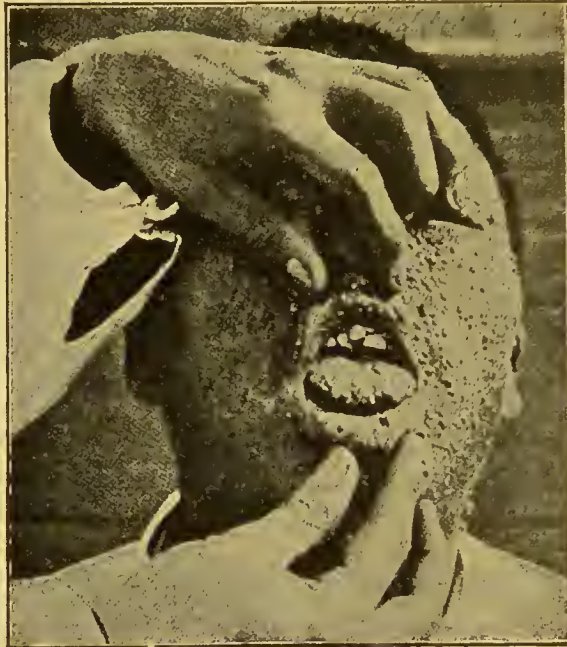


FIG. 76.—Verruga Peruviana. (From Ruge and zur Verth.)

The nodular eruption develops slowly and the lesions may become as large as a pigeon's egg. They tend to become strangulated and then show as ulcerating, fungating masses which are a source of danger from haemorrhage. The nodular eruption does not invade mucous membranes and is usually confined to the regions of joints, as elbows, knees, etc.

The eruptions tend to come out in crops and the duration of the disease extends over 2 or 3 months. The ordinary principles of cleanliness apply to the care of the lesions to prevent secondary infections.

When the large tumour-like masses begin to ulcerate or become gangrenous they should be excised. It must be remembered that dangerous bleeding may occur at unexpected times, for which reason the patients should be provided with styptics or compresses to prevent serious loss of blood.

CHAPTER XXXIII

HEAT-STROKE AND HEAT-PROSTRATION

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

It has been customary to differentiate etiologically, as well as clinically, the two most common manifestations of the effects of high temperature. Clinically we note cases (1) with a rapidly rising temperature which often reaches a very high point together with a hot, dry, reddened skin, and again we note cases (2) with pale clammy skin, marked evidences of cardiac weakness and a normal or subnormal temperature.

Brooks in a most excellent discussion of the subject applies the designation diathermasia to the former group of cases and regards them as connected with an undue retention of heat within the body. To the latter group, which he considers to be connected with exposure to the actinic rays of the sun, he applies the designation phoebism.

In diathermasia he considers that we have so great a strain on the thermotaxic mechanism that there is loss of balance between the heat discharge and heat producing centers, while in phoebism there is primarily an acute cerebral or cerebro-spinal congestion followed by a chronic inflammatory condition of the meninges and due to damage from the actinic or ultra-violet rays of the sun.

Sambon has suggested that there is a possibility that heat stroke or, as it is also designated thermic fever or siriasis, is due to a germ infection, but without advancing any particular evidence in favor of such an hypothesis.

There is undoubtedly much in favor of the views of those who regard heat-stroke and heat-prostration as due to an autointoxication from the accumulation of toxic substances resulting from increased metabolic activity due to excessive heat retention and having a selective action on the nerve cells.

Others think that as the result of more active metabolism there is a retention of carbonic and lactic acid with a demand on the alkali content of the blood resulting in an acidosis. As a matter of fact treatment of heat-stroke cases with intravenous or rectal injections of sodium bicarbonate seems to be of marked value.

It would seem advisable to take the ground that heat retention resulting from lack of heat radiation and insufficient skin evaporation

causes various manifestations of discomfort or bodily injury. Aron in Manila showed that monkeys exposed to the sun died in about one hour but that a control monkey, similarly placed, but kept in a current of air from an electric fan, suffered little or no injury. The reason the monkey died and man withstands similar exposure to the sun is on account of the more numerous and more active sweat glands possessed by man which give rise to increased evaporation and resulting loss of heat to the body.

High relative humidity is a potent factor in checking evaporation. The rectal temperature in Haldane's experiments showed a rise of a little over 1° F. when the wet bulb was at 90° F., 2° F. when at 94° F. while at 98° F. it was about 4° F. per hour.

Pathologically, there is usually congestion of the brain and meninges, that of the brain being particularly marked about the region of the medulla. There may even be punctate haemorrhages and the nerve cells show chromatolysis. These changes are much more evident in heat stroke than in heat prostration.

As a matter of fact in a body of men exposed to identical conditions of heat of sun and relative humidity we note certain cases exhibiting typical heat-stroke while other men will only show evidences of heat-prostration.

Alcoholism, obesity, diseases of heart and lungs, overcrowding, muscular fatigue, insufficient circulation of air, with the wet bulb about 90° F., and not drinking a sufficient amount of water, predispose to heat injury.

Fiske has noted that in oil burning firerooms, even with a temperature of 140° F., 10 degrees higher than on similar ships burning coal, there were no cases of heat prostration. He attributes this to the less fatiguing work in tending oil-burning furnaces and the smaller number of men required, this reducing overcrowding.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

In heat-stroke there are usually prodromata of dizziness, headache and somnolence, following which the body temperature shoots up to 105° F. or even above 110° F. There is a desire for frequent micturition, which may be considered as a prodromal warning of embarrassment of the sweating function. The skin is hot and dry and the pupils may be contracted. The pulse which is at first full and rapid soon becomes irregular. There may be delirium or coma or convulsive seizures.

Hiller divides these cases into (1) those showing an asphyxia syndrome, as characterized by cyanosis and collapse, with cessation of respiration and enfeebled circulation. Prolonged artificial respiration is required in such cases. (2) A para-

lytic type with deep coma, recurring convulsions and extreme hyperpyrexia. These cases exhibit oedema of lungs and brain and necessitate venesection. (3) A psychopathic type in which there is delirium often of a violent type with delusions of persecution. Such cases often commit suicide.

In *heat prostration* we have giddiness and possibly nausea with pale face, often bathed in cold perspiration and dilated pupils. The pulse is very weak and syncope may ensue. The temperature is not elevated and may be subnormal. Headache is often complained of after recovery. Following this or the more dangerous heat-stroke we may have lack of mental concentration or loss of memory with recurring headache upon even moderate exposure to the sun.

In the firerooms on board ship, when cruising in tropical waters, we note in addition to the usual signs of heat-prostration or heat-stroke, cramps of the abdominal muscles as well as of those of arms and legs.

TREATMENT

With heat-stroke we have a condition in which every moment lost before the institution of proper treatment reduces the chances of recovery. The two important measures are reduction of temperature and elimination of toxic material. For the former ice packs or ice baths are the most efficient. When the temperature starts down it may fall with great rapidity and collapse result. Consequently when giving these ice packs or baths the treatment should be discontinued when the temperature by rectum reaches about 103° F., the patient then being removed from the bath and covered with a blanket. If the temperature again shoots up the ice bath can be repeated. Many have reported great benefit from the use of enemata cooled with ice. Some prefer to apply ice to the head and rub the body with pieces of ice. This can be carried out on a rubber sheet placed on a cot. If there is no ice available a sheet wet in dilute alcohol, plus the effects of a current of air from the electric fan or otherwise, may be tried. In a case with marked cyanosis venesection may be necessary. In asphyxial types of sunstroke prolonged artificial respiration is indicated.

To promote elimination of toxic products venesection plus the use of intravenous injections of normal saline is the best treatment. In those terrible paralytic type cases which show a mortality of more than 50% it is well to think of acidosis and give slowly about a liter of a 1 or 2 percent solution of sodium bicarbonate. (See under treatment of cholera.) The use of alkaline enemata often gives good results, about a liter of a solution containing 2% of sodium chloride and 2 percent of sodium carbonate or bicarbonate.

As soon as possible after the more urgent hydrotherapeutic methods have controlled the case we should give calomel followed by salines. The coal tar products should be avoided as far as possible from the danger of cardiac depression.

In the non-febrile heat-prostration the treatment is entirely eliminative and stimulant. The patient should be placed on his back in a cool shady place and tight clothing released, particularly about the neck. Rubbing the limbs as for any syncope type affection, with hot water bottles if the collapse is marked, should be one line of treatment. Many give a little aromatic spirits of ammonia or whiskey but a hypodermic of strychnine would be better in a severe case.

Calomel and salines should be given after cardiac weakness disappears. To avoid these dangers of the tropical heat one should keep the body clean to promote good action of the sweat glands. The clothing should be light and loosely fitting and should permit a free circulation of air to assist evaporation. There does not seem to be any indication for the wearing of orange colored clothes as the actinic rays are apparently unimportant.

The head and nape of the neck should be protected by a light well ventilated helmet. Alcohol should be avoided, or at any rate absolutely so, until evening. Water or lemonade should be taken freely and a siesta in the middle of the day is an important conserver of one's resisting powers.

CHAPTER XXXIV

TSUTSUGAMUSHI

DEFINITION AND SYNONYMS

DEFINITION.—This is an acute febrile disease caused by the bite of the larval Kedani mite of the region where the infection prevails. The onset is characterized by headache and giddiness, a rather rapidly rising temperature and swelling of the lymphatic glands draining the region in which is situated a small necrotic ulcer marking the site of the bite. With injected conjunctivae, continuous fever and hyperaesthesia, the disease goes on for about a week when a macular eruption

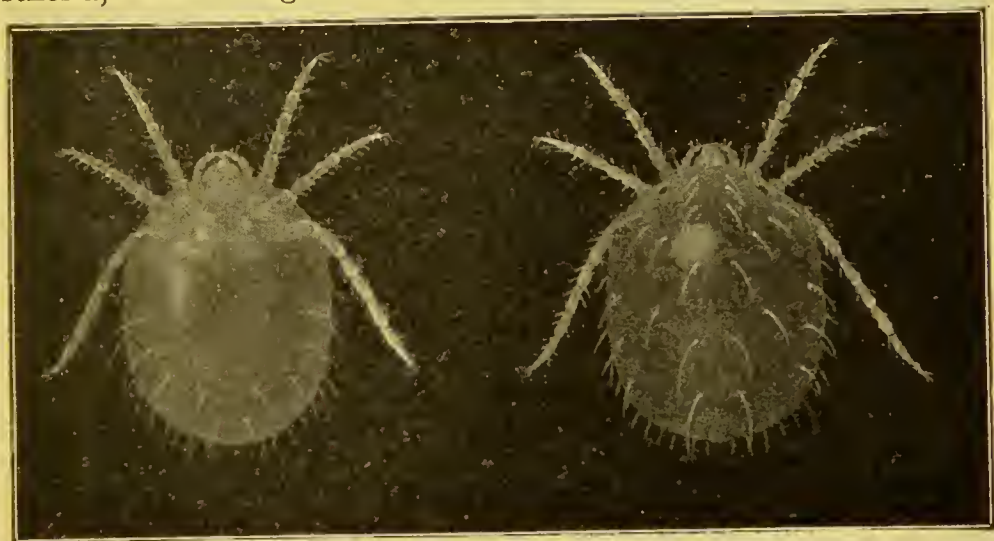


FIG. 77.—The Kedani mite. *Trombidium akamushi*. (From Ruge and zur Verth.)

appears about face, then chest, extremities and trunk. About ten days after the appearance of the eruption there is a fall of fever by lysis.

Synonyms.—Flood fever, Japanese River fever, Kedani mite disease. Shimamushi.

HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION

History.—There are records which would indicate that the disease has been known for more than a thousand years.

Geographical Distribution.—It is only in the western part of the island of Nippon, when the banks of the Shinanogawa are inundated each Spring, that we find the disease. The disease is supposed to be confined to Japan although Ashburn and Craig have thought a disease observed by them in the Philip pines as possibly identical.

ETIOLOGY AND EPIDEMIOLOGY

The cause is unknown, but has been attributed by some to various bacteria and by others to a protozoon.

The disease is not communicable from person to person and only follows the bite of a larval mite, *Trombidium akamushi*. This is a minute orange red arachnoid which can scarcely be seen with the naked eye. This mite is only a source of danger in the region of the inundated river banks, its bite not producing the disease elsewhere.

Persons harvesting hemp during August are liable to contract the disease if bitten by the larval mite.

The mite is found in large numbers on the ears of field mice, these hosts however not suffering from any particular disease.

PATHOLOGY

Other than the local ulcer and the swollen regional glands, there is little that is definite. The spleen shows enlargement and there is also swelling of the mesenteric glands. The lower part of the ileum may show injection.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

A Typical Case.—About one week after receiving the bite of the larval mite, which may not have been noticed by the patient, there develops chilliness, giddiness and headache, with a rising temperature. In two or three days from the onset, painful glands are noticed in certain regions as of groin, axilla or neck. From these glands we can often by following inflamed lymphatics trace the small necrotic ulcer which is often located in the armpit or in the region of the genitals. There is a dark red areola about the ulcer which is only slightly tender. The glands are not very much enlarged and are not excessively tender. There may be general glandular enlargement following that of the primary swellings. The pulse rate is only from 80–100, notwithstanding the rise of the fever to 104° F. for even 105° F.

The body is decidedly hyperaesthetic and the conjunctivae are injected. About the seventh day a macular eruption appears first on the face and then spreads to

chest, extremities and trunk. The eruption never becomes petechial. The tongue becomes dry and cracked. There is often a cough. The eruption disappears in from seven to ten days and the fever becomes remittent or intermittent and, after a few days, reaches normal.

Symptoms in Detail

The Nervous System.—There is marked giddiness and headache at the onset. Hyperaesthesia of the body is quite characteristic. There is often delirium at night. Deafness is frequently noted.

The Cutaneous System.—A small necrotic ulcer about one sixth inch in diameter, with a dusky red areola, is noted at the site of the bite of the larval mite. The healing of the ulcer is delayed well on into convalescence.

About one week after the onset a dusky macular eruption appears first on the face (cheeks), then going to the chest, legs, forearms and trunk. It is not marked on neck, arms or thighs. It never becomes petechial.

Fever Course.—The temperature, which on the first day or two reaches only 101° to 103° F., becomes later on higher and continuous. About the tenth day from the appearance of the eruption it begins to fall, becoming remittent and then intermittent.

The Lymphatic System.—Very characteristic is the swelling of the glands proximal to the initial ulcer. The connecting lymphatics may be inflamed. Later on other glands may show slight swelling and tenderness.

The spleen is usually enlarged.

DIAGNOSIS

In the differential diagnosis the limited geographical distribution should prevent error and, in particular, where one has the initial necrotic ulcer, with enlargement of the glands draining the region in which it is located, there should be little confusion. Of course plague may have a primary vesicle or ulcer with enlargement of neighboring glands; these glands however are matted together and are exquisitely tender.

Then too the eruption of tsutsugamushi and the early and more stuporous state of plague should differentiate, even without the aid of the laboratory.

TREATMENT

There is no specific treatment. It may be necessary to use drugs to combat the insomnia.

SPOTTED FEVER OF THE ROCKY MOUNTAINS AND TABARDILLO OR MEXICAN TYPHUS

For some reason, which is difficult to fully understand, typhus fever, spotted fever of the Rocky Mountains and Mexican typhus

or tabardillo are often considered as falling into a group with tsutsugamushi. Of course there is a more or less stuporous condition in all these diseases, together with an eruption, but otherwise they are widely separated clinically, as well as from the standpoint of transmitting agents. The cause is not known for any of these affections; but the transmitting body louse, *Pediculus vestimenti*, for typhus fever; a tick, *Dermacentor andersoni*, for Rocky Mountain spotted fever, and a larval mite, *Trombidium akamushi*, for tsutsugamushi, make striking points of dissimilarity.

Ricketts and Anderson have rather definitely shown that Mexican typhus and the typhus fever found in Europe are identical.

The three diseases can probably best be clinically differentiated by the characteristics of the fever and the eruption.

	Fever course	Eruption
<i>Tsutsugamushi.</i>	Fever increases each day until reaching maximum about 4th or 5th day. Fall by lysis after fading of eruption.	Begins on face, then chest, legs, forearms and trunk. Does not become petechial. First appears about 7th day.
<i>Tabardillo.</i>	Onset and termination of fever characterized by considerable abruptness.	Begins on abdomen, sides of chest thence going to extremities. Petechial tendency. First appears about 5th day.
<i>Spotted fever of the Rocky Mountains.</i>	Gradual rise during a week with lysis.	Begins on forearms and leg. Petechial tendency. May have gangrene of prepuce and scrotum. First appears on 2nd to 5th day.

CHAPTER XXXV

CLIMATIC BUBO, AINHUM, GOUNDOU AND RAT BITE DISEASE

CLIMATIC BUBO

General Considerations

The naval surgeons of various countries have for many years been interested in a condition where inguinal buboes develop which have no relation to venereal infections.

All attempts to find any organism in these lesions have so far failed. Cultures from excised glands or from the necrotic centres of such glands fail to show any growth.

Stained smears and India ink preparations alike fail to show any causative organism. The Wassermann test is also negative. The disease seems much more common in the West Indies than elsewhere, statistics showing it to be about 10 times as often contracted by sailors in those waters as by crews in the seaports of China. In a recent article Rost states that he thinks there is evidence to show that the disease is contracted by sexual intercourse with prostitutes of the colored races. Of his 17 cases all had exposed themselves in this way.

Children never show climatic bubo and it seems peculiarly to affect the young adults composing the crews of ships. Even among the native prostitutes such a condition does not seem to exist and climatic bubo does not affect the male natives.

There may or may not be a periadenitis but there is thickening of the capsule and fibrous septa of the glands. At times an apparently healthy gland may show a necrotic center, the contents of which, however, will be found to be sterile. One often notes in sections haemorrhagic infiltrations and oedema in the region of the peripheral lymph sinuses. A point of differentiation from ambulant plague buboes is the great increase in plasma cells in climatic bubo. It will be remembered that Cantlie suggested that climatic bubo was an attenuated plague but this idea has never been accepted. It has been suggested that malaria might cause climatic bubo.

Symptomatology

The period of incubation is a rather long one, Rost in a well controlled case noting a period of at least 5 weeks. The onset is very

gradual so the first intimation of a swelling in the groins may be when a sense of heaviness is noted in that region after prolonged work. For this reason they have been called "fatigue" glands.

The glands of one side of the groin are usually involved although the swellings may affect both sides. The deep iliac glands also often show marked increase in size but the glands of the other parts of the body, as axillary or cervical, are practically never involved.

The swollen glands are only slightly tender and at first are discrete and not attached to skin or underlying tissues. Later on with the development of a periadenitis they may be firmly attached. In size they are usually as large as a hen's egg but may become much larger.

The overlying skin is as a rule normal and one may at times palpate a soft center in an otherwise hard gland. Fever tends to come on as an irregular remittent type and I have seen cases showing temperature curves covering periods of 2 or 3 months which were not unlike those of Malta fever. With increase in size of the buboes there would be a 2 or 3 weeks rise to be followed, with the subsidence of the swelling, by lysis and later on to be renewed with reappearance of the bubo.

Climatic bubo runs a protracted course and does not respond at all well to treatment. The cases often develop a moderate secondary anaemia, which is most often noted in the relapse cases.

Diagnosis and Treatment

The history aids in differentiating gonorrhoeal, chancroidal and syphilitic buboes. There is not the hardness and marked absence of tenderness we get in syphilitic inguinal glands and the reddened overlying skin of the other venereal buboes should differentiate.

Plague buboes are exquisitely tender and the patient usually manifests signs of extreme illness. In climatic bubo the patients rarely seem sick.

Surgical treatment is usually recommended and some advocate a radical enucleation of all glands in the region involved as we find at times apparently normal glands to show necrotic centers. My objection to enucleation is that the deep iliac glands are also often involved and it is not only impossible to remove all affected glands in such an inaccessible region but the surgical risks of wounding the deep veins are great. I have seen this accident occur more than once. Again the radical removal of all glandular structures in the groins, with subsequent scar tissue formation, obstructs lymph return so that elephantoid conditions result.

Rest in bed and hot compresses are of value when periadenitis sets in. When softening occurs the aspiration of the pus with an aspirating syringe and the subsequent injection of glycerite of boroglycerine containing 10 per cent. of iodoform is to be recommended. Some apply ointment of ichthyol, others pressure by shot bags. X-ray treatment has been recommended.

AINHUM

General Considerations

This disease has been chiefly noted in the natives of the West Coast of Africa, especially among the Kroomen and in Brazil. Cases have been reported from the West Indies and rarely from the Southern States of the United States.

There have been all sorts of suggestions as to etiology: (a) that it is related to leprosy, (b) that it is a tropho-neurosis, (c) that it results from wearing constricting bands or rings on the toe, (d) that it is connected with frequent injuries to the under surface of the little toe.

Pathologically we find a fibrous cord which has replaced the bony structures normally attaching the toe to the foot. We have according to Unna a ring form scleroderma with thickening of the epidermis causing an endarteritis with the production of a rarefying osteitis.

The disease is chiefly found in male adults between 25 and 30.

Symptomatology and Treatment

In 90 percent of cases the little toe is the one affected, more rarely the fourth toe or very rarely both the fourth and little toe. The little toes may be attacked at the same time but the condition usually first sets in one toe. At first we have a crack in the digito-plantar fold of the little toe. This extends laterally and finally appears on the dorsum. The distal portion of the toe enlarges and becomes bulbous so that it looks like a small potato. The connections between the foot and the bloated looking toe is a limp fibrous cord which permits the toe to wobble in various directions and to interfere greatly with walking.

The course of the disease extends over several years if the toe is not amputated by cutting through the fibrous pedicle or as the result of ulceration from injury to the pedicle.

GOUNDOU

General Considerations

This is a disease which almost exclusively affects the black race and is chiefly found in the West Coast of Africa, where it is called big-nose or dog-nose. It is also found occasionally in China and the Malay Peninsula.

The prominent root of the nose is due to exostoses from the nasal processes of the superior maxillary bones.

Nothing definite is known as to etiology. Suggestions have been made that it is connected with yaws, syphilis or leprosy. Again that it is due to rhinoscleroma. Maclaud thought the hypertrophied tissues to be incident to irritation from dipterous larvae in the nasal fossae. Pathologically we have spongy bone covered by a thin layer of compact bone.

Symptomatology and Treatment

At first there is complaint of headache and an associated nasal discharge. At times the nasal passages may be obstructed by the developing growth, which however usually projects externally on both sides of the root of the nose just below the inner angle of the eyes. Breathing through the nose is not as a rule interfered with. The bony exostoses develop in a downward and outward direction. The shape is generally oval. The disease commences in childhood and the bony outgrowths slowly increase in size so that by adult life they attain the size of a walnut. The overlying skin is normal and not attached to the bony tumour. As the tumours grow they tend to interfere with the vision of the patient. This is purely from obstructing the lines of vision as the growth does not usually invade the orbits. The treatment is entirely surgical and consists in chiselling away the bony outgrowth.

RAT BITE DISEASE

General Considerations

This disease has been known to exist in Japan for a long period but it is only since 1901, following Miyake's reports of cases that the disease has attracted general attention. It seems probable that the construction of the Japanese houses gives greater opportunity for the occurrence of rat bites. It is only in certain cases that the disease follows a rat bite so that it would seem that the rats which are capable of causing the disease are infected, possibly with something allied to the filterable viruses like rabies in dogs. Ogata considers that the cause may possibly be a protozoon which may be found in the blood and swollen lymphatic glands.

Cases have recently been reported from the United States, England and Italy so that it may be found to be more widely distributed than was formerly thought. It is chiefly a disease of Japan and China.

Symptomatology and Treatment

Following a rather long incubation period of from six to eight weeks, during which time the wound of the rat bite heals, we have a rather sudden onset with headache, nausea and marked weakness. The cicatrix now becomes inflamed and the surrounding tissues show oedema and at times vesicle formation. Leading from the inflamed areas is a line of tender lymphatics which extend to a group of swollen lymphatic glands.

The fever rises rapidly to 101° F. or 102° F. and within two or three days has reached about 104° F. and remains high for two or three more days. About this time it falls rapidly to normal, attended with profuse sweating. The temperature remains normal for a few days, during which time the local swelling and inflammation subside. An eruption of purplish spots may accompany the fever, appearing chiefly on chest and arms. There may be urticarial lesions. Joint pains, together with motor and sensory disturbances, may be noted.

After the critical fall of temperature there is usually an apyrexial period of several days during which time the local manifestations about wound and glands subside. The fever again comes on to later disappear and reappear.

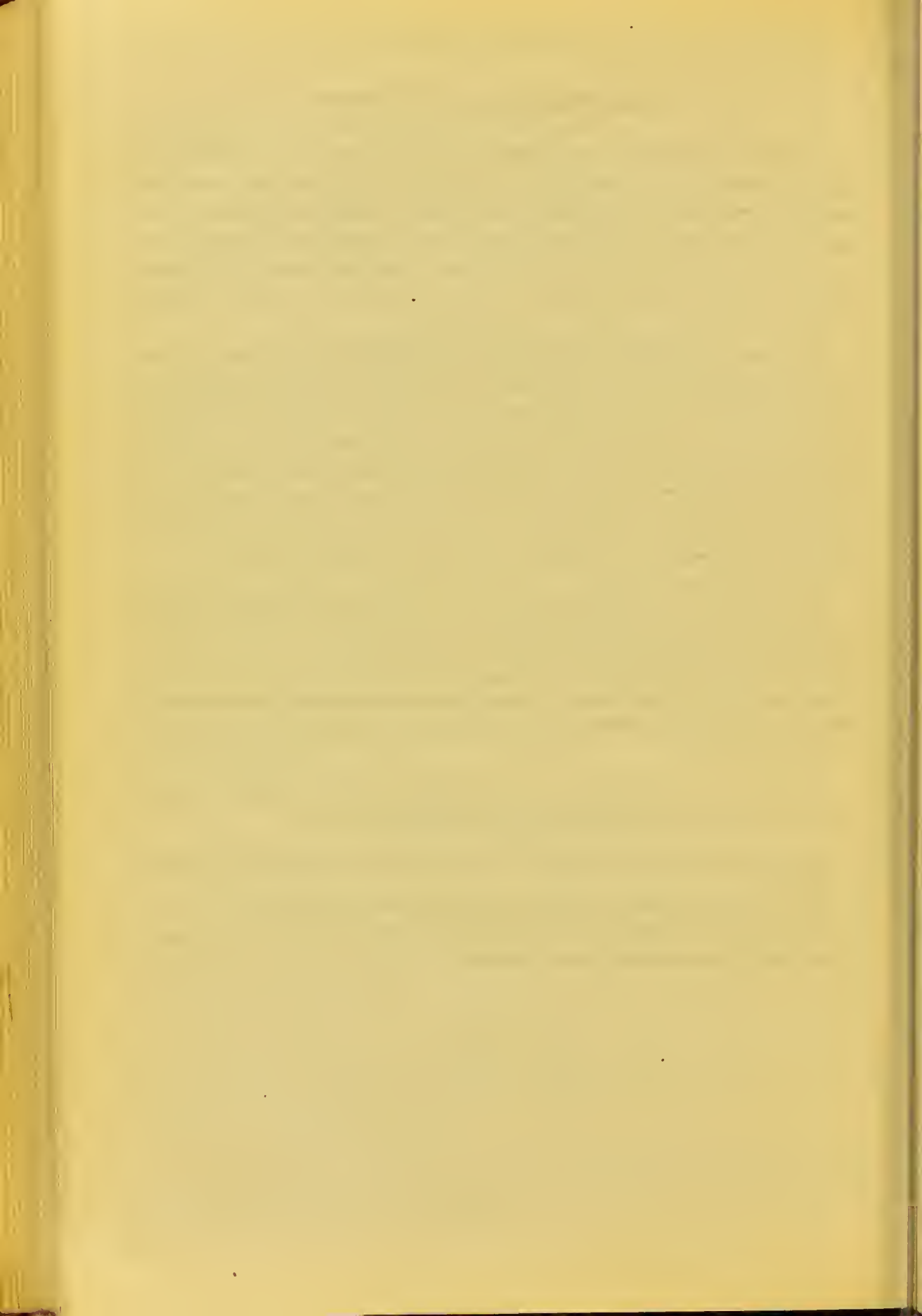
The fever is suggestive of the relapsing fevers. The pulse is rapid and weak. There may be as many as twelve of these febrile accessions and the course of the disease may extend over several months. There is an eosinophilia. The mortality is about 10 per cent.

Treatment.—Treatment is entirely symptomatic. Some success seems to have followed the administration of salvarsan.

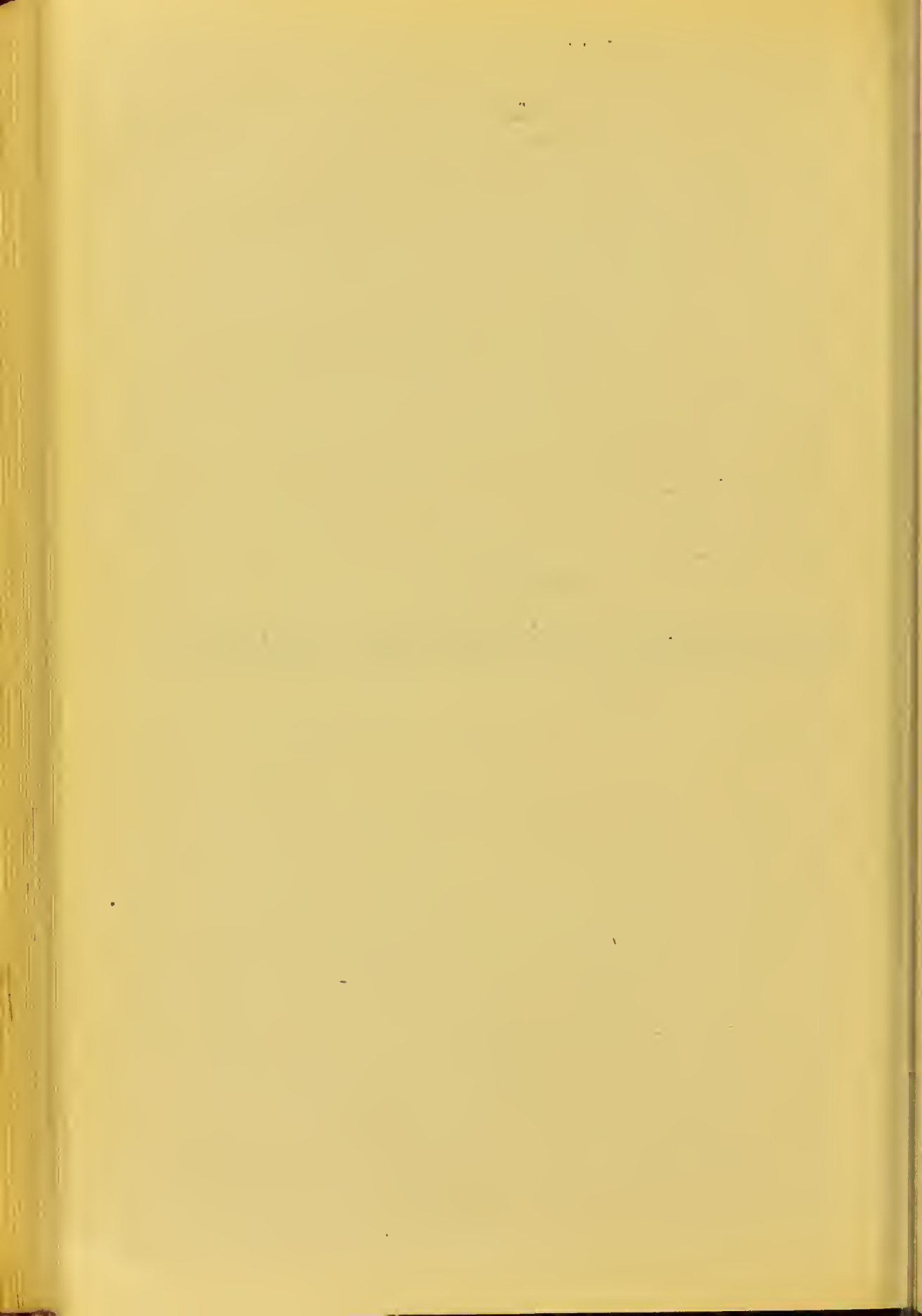
Strychnine for the heart weakness and tonics during convalescence are recommended.

Aspirin is often necessary to relieve the headache and joint pains.

As prophylactic measures the same precaution should be taken as to cauterization of the wound as one would observe in rabies.



PART II
DIAGNOSTICS OF TROPICAL DISEASES



CHAPTER XXXVI

ONSET AND THE TEMPERATURE CHART IN THE DIAGNOSIS OF TROPICAL DISEASES

While a knowledge of the variations in type and course of the body temperature in the various tropical diseases is of great value in diagnosis yet such information is liable to lead one astray, unless such data are controlled by a careful consideration of the other and, in my opinion, more important factors of physical diagnosis and laboratory examinations.

The idea that there is a scientific exactness in the employment of the clinical thermometer tends to make one overestimate its value in diagnosis.

For practical purposes we may divide tropical diseases, from a standpoint of body temperature, into two classes. 1. *Those diseases in which the absence of fever in the general course of the illness is the rule* and (2) *those diseases in which the presence of fever in the general course of the illness is the rule.*

Among the non febrile diseases we may note the following: Beriberi, sprue, pellagra, cholera, leprosy, amoebic dysentery, hookworm disease, filariasis, bilharziosis, endemic haemoptysis or paragonomiasis, liver fluke disease, malarial cachexia, yaws, verruga, oriental sore and ulcerating granuloma of the pudenda, as well as the various tropical skin diseases.

There are certain exceptions in the above list which may be here noted.

Beriberi.—There has been considerable discussion as to whether a disease with fever and a rash, but otherwise resembling wet beriberi, is the same disease or a distinct disease entity. The fever in epidemic dropsy, as it is called, is rarely over 102° F., usually ranging from 99° to 101° and accompanying the dropsy.

Pellagra.—While there may be slight variations from the normal yet the ordinary case of pellagra fails to show a distinct febrile course, so much so that the appearance of fever in a case of pellagra makes for an unfavorable prognosis. In the so called typhoid pellagra, an acute, rapidly fatal form of the disease, a high temperature curve may be obtained. At the same time this condition has been noted by Italian and German writers as being present in patients not showing any rise in temperature.

It is possible that the development of enteric fever in a pellagrin may at times be the explanation of the fever.

Cholera.—Instead of a favorable stage of reaction there may set in a condition with low muttering delirium, dry brown tongue and with an elevated temperature the so-called typhoid state, which is speedily fatal.

Rarely a rise of 3 or 4 degrees which does not last more than 48 hours may be present in a stage of reaction going on to a favorable convalescence.

It must be remembered that the rectal temperature in the majority of cases of cholera may show elevation of temperature approximating 100° F., while the axillary temperature may be as low as 95° F. When there is a great difference between the rectal and axillary temperatures, instead of the more common 4 or 5 degrees of a typical case of cholera, the prognosis is bad. The temperature taken by mouth may be as low as 86° F.

Leprosy.—Among the prodromata of leprosy, along with epistaxis, feeling of great weakness, somnolence and occasional sweats, there may be recurring attacks of fever. These are at times diagnosed as malarial manifestations. With the appearance of typical lesions the course is apt to be non febrile with the exception that febrile accessions often accompany the early macular manifestations.

Amoebic Dysentery.—Unless complicated by hepatitis or some bacterial infection of the amoebic lesions the disease progresses without fever.

Ancylostomiasis.—The occasional reports of fever being present are probably connected with bacterial infection at the site of attachment of the hookworm.

Filariasis.—There is a febrile manifestation of filarial disease which is attended by rigors and high fever. This is a lymphangitis which causes an erysipelatous appearance about the region involved. It is these recurring attacks of lymphangitis which gradually lead to the enormous thickening of the skin characteristic of elephantiasis. Such attacks are designated elephantoid fever. They are often diagnosed as malarial chills and in Barbadoes, where there is no malaria, such attacks are called "ague."

Malarial Cachexia.—Attacks of an irregular type of fever are frequently noted in the malarial cachectic, especially setting in upon some exposure to dampness or chilling, to alcoholic excesses or to excessive fatigue. Cases are also met with in the tropics, particularly among natives, where fever plays no apparent part in the profound anaemia of these ague cake victims. It is this absence of fever which many consider the evidence of immunity to malaria in the native with his anaemia and large spleen.

Yaws.—While fever of a more or less irregular type frequently occurs at the onset of both primary and secondary stages, especially just before the secondary general eruption, yet the course of yaws is afebrile.

Verruga.—The recent views as to verruga being a separate condition, and not the secondary stage of a typhoid like fever, Carrion's disease, removes from its clinical features the fever characteristics generally noted.

There are certain diseases in which marked lowering of the temperature may be a feature of some stage.

The algid stage of *cholera* is that which gives to cholera the picture of a living death with the cadaveric features and icy breath. Again in the choleraic type of algid pernicious malaria we may have a subnormal temperature.

In infections with Shiga's bacillus of *bacillary dysentery* we may have cases showing extreme toxæmia with algid manifestations and a subnormal temperature.

During the last stages of sleeping sickness a lowering of the temperature is fairly constant.

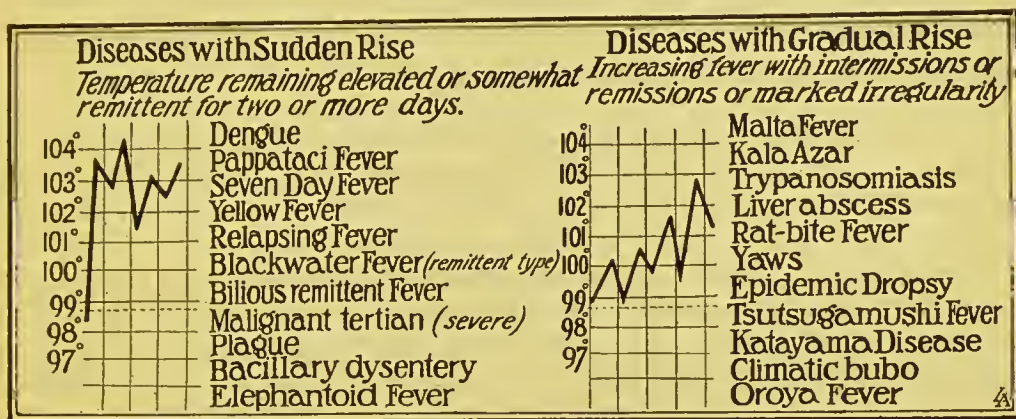


FIG. 78.—General type of fever onset in the various tropical diseases.

The diseases in which the presence of fever, in the general course of the illness, is the rule, may be considered in two groups:

1. Those in which the temperature chart is of prime importance in diagnosis and
2. Those in which the character of the fever gives but little assistance in diagnosis.

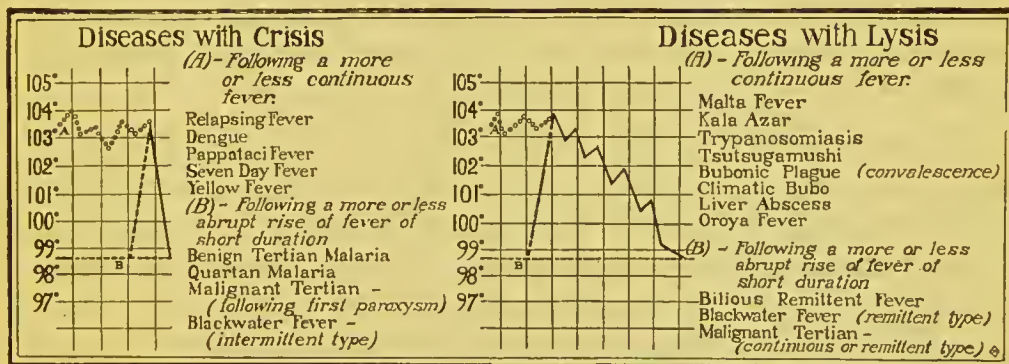


FIG. 79.—General type of termination of the febrile course in the various tropical diseases.

DISEASES IN WHICH THE TEMPERATURE CHART IS OF PRIME IMPORTANCE IN DIAGNOSIS

These include benign tertian and quartan malaria, dengue and relapsing fevers, in which the onset of the fever is sudden, while in malignant tertian malaria and Malta fever it is insidious.

The clinically benign malarial fevers: benign tertian and quartan.

The presence of a fever of tertian or quartan periodicity is absolutely characteristic of malaria. As the result of the introduction by infected mosquitoes, on successive days, of two generations of malarial parasites in benign tertian or of three generations in quartan malaria, a quotidian periodicity may obtain.

Such a type of fever is observed in tuberculosis, liver abscess and various pyogenic infections. The rise of temperature in benign tertian and quartan malaria usually takes place somewhat early in the day, while the daily rise in tuberculosis, septic conditions and liver abscess, is more apt to occur in the evening, the evening rise being almost the rule in such diseases. Hectic fevers generally show a less distinct cycle of chill, hot stage and sweating than do the benign malarial paroxysms. At the same time the enlarged spleen, presence of parasites in the peripheral circulation and response to quinine are diagnostic points in malaria which must always be thought of. When quinine administration has caused the parasites to be temporarily absent from the blood the increase of large mononuclears is very suggestive.

Dengue.—In this disease the extremely sudden onset with a fever rising rapidly to 104° F. or more and remaining elevated for 3 to 5 days, to fall by crisis to normal and, after an apyrexial period of one or two days, to be succeeded by a second febrile accession, gives a fever chart which is quite characteristic. The saddleback chart.

The typical dengue eruption does not appear until towards the end of the primary fever or about the commencement of the secondary one. Intense post-orbital soreness is a striking feature in dengue. The comparative slowness of the pulse may be noted in dengue as well as in yellow fever. Leucopenia and polymorphonuclear percentage reduction are rather characteristic.

Relapsing Fevers.—These fevers, when there are three or more relapses, can perhaps be more easily diagnosed from the temperature chart alone than is the case with any other disease, excepting malarial fevers showing tertian or quartan periodicity. With an abrupt rise of temperature, which remains elevated for from 3 to 7 days and drops by crisis to normal, to be followed by approximately a week of normal temperature, with two or three repetitions of the fever and apyretic intervals we have an extremely characteristic temperature chart.

Unlike malaria and yellow fever the onset is apt to be towards evening rather than in the morning hours.

The spleen is apt to be enlarged during the pyrexia and less so when the temperature is normal. The spirochaetes are to be searched for while fever is present as they disappear from the peripheral circulation during the apyretic intervals. Numerous relapses are frequent in the European and less common in the native.

Malignant Tertian Malaria.—While benign malarial infections are more common in temperate climates malignant tertian is the one which usually prevails in the tropics.

While the Italian designation of this type of fever as *aestivo-autumnal* has more general acceptance yet Koch's term, *tropical malaria* is eminently appropriate. The onset in malignant tertian is rather insidious so that the case may be suspected as one of typhoid fever. At the same time the first paroxysm is apt to show a tertian periodicity while subsequent ones, by only remitting, and not showing an intermission, give the temperature picture of a continued fever, in which periodicity is not easily noted. At the same time a study of such a chart will probably show that the curve tends to approach normal every other day. The suggestion of periodicity is almost of as great value as the actual drop to normal in the intermission.

The remittent or even continuous type of fever in malignant tertian tends to yield to an intermittent one after a week or more of such fever.

Very characteristic of malignant tertian paroxysms is that they set in with chilly sensations rather than a frank chill. It is for this reason that the so called "dumb chill" is recognized as more serious than the frank unmistakable chill.

The main feature of malignant tertian paroxysms is the pronounced and prolonged hot stage, which frequently lasts from 20 to 36 hours and may run over into the rising temperature connected with the development of the succeeding generation of parasites.

The terms anticipation and postponement are frequently used to explain the drawn out fever of this type of malaria.

There is great irregularity in time of development so that we get the impression of completed cycle before the accepted 48 hours as shown by a rising temperature within 36 hours—anticipation; or, instead of showing indications of a completion of cycle in 48 hours the fever still keeps up—retardation.

The descent of the fever curve is much more gradual than the rise at the onset of the paroxysm. The fine hair-like rings of the tropical parasite are the only schizont stages usually found in the peripheral blood. As the rings enlarge they fail to appear in the peripheral blood so that blood examination at such times will be negative. The finding of crescents is proof of a malignant tertian infection.

In view of the fact that one is likely to fail to find parasites just before or just after a paroxysm search should particularly be made for the pigment carrying phagocyte—the melaniferous leucocyte.

In certain of the pernicious manifestations of malignant tertian, especially the hyperpyrexial type of cerebral malaria, the temperature may reach a very high degree, 107° F. to 110° F., and it is often mistaken for sun stroke by the one not familiar with the fact that so called sun stroke is often only this fatal form of malaria.

In algid pernicious malaria the axillary and, in particular, the rectal temperature remain elevated even with a subnormal surface temperature.

Malta Fever.—In this disease, in which the wave like febrile periods during every 3 or 4 weeks are so characteristic as to give it the name of "febris undulans," there is a very insidious onset. For a week or ten days the temperature climbs up ladder like and then descends in like manner to be followed by a few days of apyrexia with succeeding similar relapses. The case would suggest an attack of typhoid with relapses.

The course of the disease is attended by rather marked anaemia and physical and mental depression. Very characteristic are the fleeting joint pains which involve chiefly the knees, hip, ankle and shoulder joints. There is pain and some swelling but without redness. Neuralgic pains are also common. There is often a bronchitis which, when associated with the rather common night sweats of the disease, is suggestive of phthisis.

The cardiac muscle seems to be especially liable to the toxic effects of the disease so that a weak heart and intermittent pulse are often noted. It has a very protracted course of on the average about 4 months.

An astonishing fact is that so severe and prolonged a fever should give such a slight mortality (2%).

Occasionally, a case shows a high continued or remittent fever and aggravated symptoms, going into a typhoid state. Such cases are often fatal. There is an increase in the lymphocytes but no increase in total leucocytes.

The wave course of the fever, with afebrile intervals and increasing anaemia is suggestive of kala azar, particularly when there is a greater enlargement of the spleen than is usual in the disease. Ordinarily the splenic enlargement about corresponds to that of typhoid fever but at times it may be so much enlarged as to suggest the splenic tumour of kala azar.

DISEASES IN WHICH FEVER IS AN IMPORTANT FEATURE BUT GIVES LITTLE ASSISTANCE IN DIAGNOSIS

Kala Azar.—This disease has a peculiarly insidious onset because, with a fairly high remittent fever, it may cause but slight feeling of illness in the patient.

Rogers insists upon the importance of taking the temperature every 4 hours so that one may note the fact of there being two distinct rises in the 24 hours instead of the single evening rise of typhoid fever.

At first it is confused with malaria as well as typhoid. The spleen becomes greatly enlarged by the third or fourth month and later on we also have enlargement of the liver. Periods of fever and apyrexia occur irregularly and over a period of months or even longer than a year.

There is a marked leucopenia and the presence of the leishman-donovan bodies, often in huge numbers, in the juice from spleen or liver puncture, makes for a certain diagnosis.

Yellow Fever.—With a sudden onset and rapidly rising fever, which often occurs in the early morning hours, in a patient who has gone to bed feeling well, we have a markedly congested face and neck with injected conjunctivae and intense headache and backache. The fever tends to remain elevated for about 3 days after which there may be noted a fall in temperature or even an intermission. This, which has been termed the period of calm, is often slight and of short duration. About this time the jaundice and haemorrhages show themselves and the temperature tends again to rise although less marked than with the sthenic fever of the first 2 or 3 days. Of great importance is the fact that the pulse rate falls with a maintained temperature or does not increase in rate as the temperature rises (Faget's law). A very slow pulse is quite characteristic of yellow fever after the third day.

Important in the diagnosis of yellow fever from bilious remittent fever and blackwater fever is the absence of splenic enlargement in the former. In particular must it be remembered that jaundice does not show itself in yellow fever until about the third day, following which we may have bleeding from the gums and black vomit.

Melaena and haematuria may also be noted. The presence of a marked albuminuria is one of the leading characteristics of yellow fever.

Blackwater Fever.—The onset is usually quite sudden with a rather severe chill and marked lumbar pain.

The temperature rises rapidly to about 104° F. and may fall in a few hours to a point but little above normal accompanied by profuse sweating. The fall in temperature is not followed by a feeling of improvement. On the other hand there may be a fever course of remittent or even continuous type. That which is most characteristic and which in the majority of cases enables the patient to make his own diagnosis is the passage of dark or porter colored urine.

The urinary sediment is simply granular débris, there are no intact red cells. It is a haemoglobinuria and not a haematuria. If there is any blood in the urine in yellow fever it is in the form of a haematuria. The urine in both blackwater fever and yellow fever is highly albuminous. In some cases the haemoglobinuria seems to result from quinine administration alone, in which case there is not the high fever of typical blackwater fever. As distinguishing it from yellow fever we have a marked jaundice which comes on in a few hours instead of being delayed until the third day, as in yellow fever. Again, the blackwater paroxysm is intensely prostrating, it is markedly asthenic while the onset of yellow fever is quite sthenic in

character. The enlarged tender spleen of blackwater fever is also a prominent feature, which is absent in yellow fever. Bilious vomiting is an early and severe feature of blackwater fever but not the black vomit of yellow fever which does not come on until after the third day.

Plague.—The fever rapidly rises, so that the maximum temperature of 104° F. or more may be attained on the first day of the disease. In general the type of fever is continuous with a rather marked remission about the third day, following which, the fever again goes up with the appearance of the glandular involvement.

In fatal cases the temperature may shoot up just prior to death. The drawn anxious countenance, the mental state and speech as of one suffering from alcoholic intoxication, the early cardiac involvement, with very weak and irregular pulse, give one a clue to plague even before the buboes appear. Smears and cultures from the buboes make the diagnosis.

In plague pneumonia there is nothing characteristic about the rather continuous fever which sets in suddenly and continues elevated until death, which generally occurs about the third or fourth day. The marked mental involvement, the extreme illness of the patient, with but slight physical signs of the involvement of the lungs, should make one suspect a plague pneumonia during an epidemic. The abundant, rather watery sputum, which later becomes sanguineous, gives us a diagnosis by reason of its being loaded with bipolarly stained plague bacilli. This material should be rubbed on the shaven abdomen of a guinea pig to make the diagnosis absolutely sure.

In septicaemic plague, if such be considered a distinct type, there is very little that is manifest except a fever in a profoundly ill person. The powers of resistance may be so overwhelmed that the temperature response is slight and the chart not show temperature records above 100° F. or 101° F. Blood cultures make for the diagnosis in septicaemic plague.

Trypanosomiasis.—The fever of trypanosomiasis is markedly irregular and may exist in natives without preventing them from carrying on their duties as porters. The onset is on the whole insidious. In this first stage of trypanosomiasis or trypanosome fever, when trypanosomes are found only in the glands and peripheral circulation, what may probably be considered as leading peculiarities of the fever are the great daily oscillations, a normal morning temperature being succeeded by an evening rise up to 103° F. or 104° F. Again a very rapid, low tension pulse is present, whether the temperature be low or high. These febrile accessions are followed by apyrexial intervals.

Extremely important in diagnosis are the glandular enlargements of which those of the upper posterior cervical triangle are the most characteristic (Winterbottom's sign). Gland juice is more apt to contain trypanosomes than the smear from the blood. Deep hyperaesthesia is also a very characteristic symptom (Kerandel's sign).

When the trypanosomes are found in the cerebro-spinal fluid we have the second stage of trypanosomiasis or that of sleeping sickness. This is ushered in by a tremor of the tongue and mental symptoms of great apathy and listlessness. An irregular fever is present at times during the course of this stage of sleeping sickness but toward the end of the disease the temperature tends to be subnormal.

Progressive weakness and emaciation with finally a comatose state are features of the terminal weeks.

Brazilian Trypanosomiasis.—The disease begins acutely in young children with an irregular remittent fever. The parasites are not apt to be found except during the fever. The lymphatic glands become swollen. With repeated accessions of fever, followed by apyrexial intervals, the child becomes weaker and more anaemic. The spleen is enlarged. This is very fatal for children.

Bacillary Dysentery.—The onset may be quite sudden and the temperature rise to 102° F. or 103° F. There is apt to be some evidence of toxæmia as shown by headache, slight flightiness and gastric upset. The dysenteric stool is of a whitish, mucopurulent appearance and flecked or streaked with blood rather than showing the uniformly brownish or greenish gelatinous material of amoebic dysentery.

In very severe bacillary dysentery algidity may come on with a cold clammy skin, reminding one of cholera. At such times the temperature is subnormal.

Liver Abscess.—In the so called pre-suppurative stage of amoebic hepatitis the only symptom may be an irregular remittent fever of moderate degree. This and a leucocytosis may be the only points noted.

In fully developed liver abscess we have a painful liver which is enlarged upwards, often with pain referred to the right shoulder and a crepitation at the base of the right lung. The fever is distinctly hectic in type with an evening rise and associated with profuse sweatings. The evening rise of temperature does not usually tend to exceed 102° F. and apyrexial intervals are frequently observed in the fever chart.

It must be remembered that liver abscess has been found at autopsy where fever had not been noted. A sensation of chilliness often accompanies the evening rise of temperature.

Rat Bite Disease.—Following a rather long incubation period of from 6 to 8 weeks, during which time the bite has healed, we have a rather sudden invasion with high fever, 103° to 104° F., chill and at the same

time inflammation of the site of the bite with lymphangitis and some swelling of tributary glands.

After 2 or 3 days of high fever we have a fall by crisis with profuse perspiration. The temperature remains normal for a few days during which time the local swelling and inflammation subside. The fever again comes on, frequently with an eruption, to later on disappear and reappear. At such times the fever course is irregular. There may be as many as 12 of these febrile accessions.

Tsutsugamushi.—The disease sets in about a week after the bite of the kedani mite with headache, chill and fever of about 101° F. There is also pain in certain lymphatic gland groups which will be found to drain the area in which is located a small necrotic ulcer, the site of the bite of the mite. The temperature continues to rise during the next 2 or 3 days to 104°–105° F. and remains as a high continuous fever for about a week, when an eruption of irregular dusky macules appears, first on the face and later on chest, extremities and trunk. About the tenth day the fever begins to go down by lysis and the eruption fades. Injection of the conjunctivae is marked.

Certain authorities have considered that there is a striking clinical similarity and possible identity attaching to tsutsugamusi, Rocky Mountain spotted fever, tabardillo and typhus fever. At present we believe that tabardillo or Mexican typhus is the same as the well known typhus of temperate climates, hence that which describes tabardillo obtains for typhus fever.

In tabardillo the onset and termination of the fever is rather abrupt while in spotted fever of the Rocky Mountains it climbs up gradually for a week to reach its maximum and falls by lysis.

All these diseases are characterized by a more or less stuporous state.

Oroya Fever.—It was formerly supposed that this fever was the first stage of verruga, but it is now considered as a distinct disease entity, caused by a protozoon of bacillary form which invades the red cells. With pains of various joints and bones we have a gradual rise of temperature which after a few days reaches 103° to 104° F. and tends to become remittent or continuous.

There is a remarkable and excessive destruction of the red cells which may fall to a million or less per c.mm. The fever after about three weeks begins to fall by lysis. Enlargement of liver, spleen and lymphatic glands are common. Pain over bones, especially the sternum, often excruciating.

CHAPTER XXXVII

BLOOD EXAMINATIONS IN THE DIAGNOSIS OF TROPICAL DISEASES

In a short chapter on such a large subject only the more important methods and findings can be considered. As regards interpretation of blood findings in various tropical diseases one may note in the recent work of Schilling-Torgau the difficulties which at present beset the subject. Until some universal agreement as to standard methods of technique and in particular complete accord as to the characteristics of the diagnostic cells can be arrived at conflicting reports as to findings must of necessity be obtained.

In taking up this subject it has seemed convenient to divide it into 4 heads. 1. The microscopical examination of fresh preparations or stained blood smears. 2. Blood culture methods. 3. Serological examinations and 4. Other practical methods of haematological study.

In the companion volume on laboratory work I have endeavored to take up rather in detail the various methods and techniques but in this chapter I shall only give single methods or point out short cuts in well recognized ones or make suggestions as to new methods of blood study which may eventually aid us in diagnosis.

Those who work in temperate climates cannot realize the difficulties which beset the tropical laboratory worker from the lack of proper assistance, damaging effects of heat and moisture on stains and media and, of greater importance, the impairment of that driving energy so necessary for the carrying out of complicated methods. A short and simple method has a far greater value in the tropics than at home.

BLOOD PREPARATIONS

To obtain blood, except for blood cultures, use either a platino-iridium hypodermic needle which can be sterilized in the flame, a small tenotome, or a surgical needle with cutting edge.

When using such surgical needles it is a good plan to sharpen the cutting edge on a fine-grained whetstone. Afterward the needle should be sterilized by boiling. Sterilization of a needle in the flame blunts the cutting edge. A steel pen with one nib broken off or the glass needle of Wright may also be used. To make a glass needle, pull straight apart a piece of capillary tubing in a very small flame. Tap

the fine point to break off the very delicate extremity. Scarcely any pain attends the use of such a needle. In puncturing either the tip of the finger or lobe of the ear a quick piano-touch-like stroke should be used. The ear is preferable, as it is less sensitive and there is less danger of infection. Before puncturing, the skin should be cleaned with 70% alcohol and allowed to dry. It is advisable to sterilize the needle before using it.

The first drop of blood which exudes should be taken up on the paper of the Tallquist haemoglobinometer, using subsequent ones for the blood pipettes and smears. If it is necessary to make a complete examination, it is rather difficult to draw up the blood in the pipettes, dilute it, and then get material for fresh blood preparations and films without undue squeezing, which is to be avoided. Of course, fresh punctures can be made. Ordinarily, complete blood examinations are not called for. It is only a white count or a differential count or an examination for malaria that is required.

As a practical point it is very rare that a red count is indicated. There is one point not sufficiently recognized by physicians and that is that a call for a routine blood examination is not apt to be as carefully conducted as one calling for a specific feature. Without disparaging the necessity of routine examination of urine as well as blood it is a fact that the internist who knows what he wants gets better results from the laboratory man.

THE MICROSCOPICAL EXAMINATION OF FRESH PREPARATIONS OR STAINED BLOOD SMEARS

As regards haemocytometry it may be stated that the counting of red cells is required more frequently in comparison to white ones than is the case in temperate climates where probably 100 white counts are necessitated as against 1 red count. This is on account of the frequency of secondary anaemias in the tropics.

The idea that time may be saved by making a white and red count from the same preparation is not borne out practically so that it is better to make white and red counts separately.

As a diluting fluid for red counts a normal salt solution, preferably about 0.9%, answers perfectly and if desired may be tinged with neutral red, methyl green or gentian violet to bring out white cells. When available, however, I prefer a 2 1/2% aqueous solution of potassium bichromate for red cell counts. The Türk ruling is the one usually recommended and when well understood is as satisfactory as the more recent Gorlaew ruling. The Bürker counting chamber has clamps and for this reason is more easily manipulated than the ordinary Thoma-Zeiss haemocytometer.

TO MAKE A RED COUNT.—Having a fairly large drop of blood, apply the tip of the 101 pipette to it and, holding the pipette horizontally, carefully and slowly draw

up with suction on the rubber tube a column of blood to exactly 0.5. The variation of $1/25$ of an inch from the mark would make a difference of almost 3%. If the column goes above 0.5, it can be gently tapped down on a piece of filter-paper until the 0.5 line is cut. Now insert the tip of the pipette into some diluting fluid and, revolving the pipette on its long axis while filling it by suction, you continue until the mark 101 is reached.

A variation of $1/25$ of an inch at this mark would only give an error of about $1/30$ of 1 %. This gives a 1-200 dilution. After mixing thoroughly by shaking for one or two minutes, the fluid in the pipette below the bulb is expelled (this, of course, is only diluting fluid). A drop of the diluted blood of a size just sufficient to

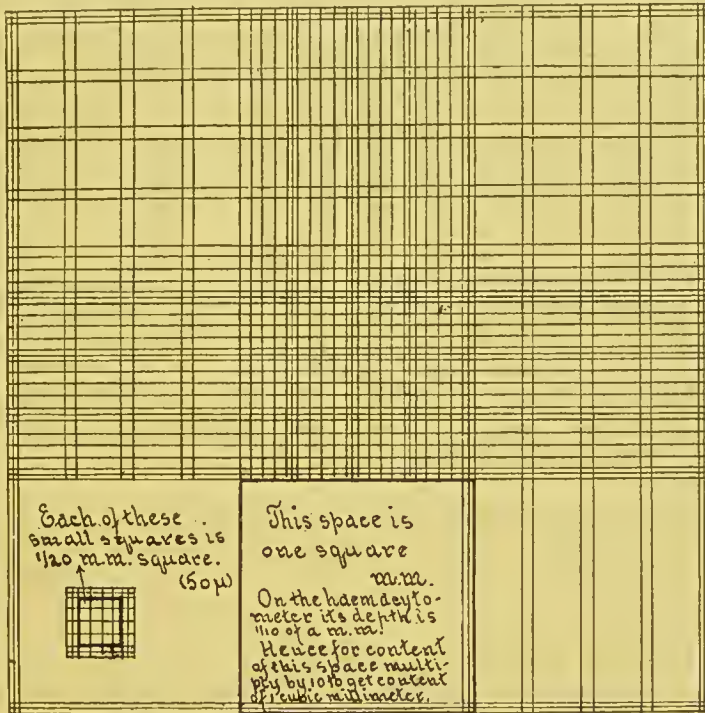


FIG. 80.—The Türk ruling. Thoma-Zeiss Haemacytometer.

cover the disc when the cover-glass is adjusted, is then deposited on the disc and the cover-glass applied by a sort of sliding movement, best obtained by using forceps in one hand assisted by the thumb and index-finger of the other.

In red counts we use exclusively the small $1/20$ millimeter squares which are in groups of 16 bounded by triple ruled lines.

The depth of fluid over the ruled surface is $1/10$ mm., hence each of these small squares is $1/10 \times 1/20 \times 1/20 = 1/4000$ of a cu.-mm., so that it takes 4000 such spaces to equal the unit for blood counting (1 cubic millimeter). My practice in making red counts is to count the red cells in five of the groups of 16 small squares. This in normal blood is about 100 for the 16 squares. After counting 5 groups of 16 we have counted the red cells of 80 small squares which is $1/50$ of 4000 (the number in the 1 cu. mm. unit). For this reason 50×200 (the blood dilution) = 10,000, so that it is only necessary to multiply the number of red cells found in 5 groups of 16 small squares by 10,000 in order to obtain the number of red cells per

cu. mm. For more accurate determination the process can be repeated with a second or third drop of the diluted blood, which would give an average from 160 or from 240 small squares.

To Count White Cells.—Draw up the fluid in the white pipette to the 0.5 line. Then, still holding the pipette as near the horizontal as possible, because the column of blood tends to fall down in the larger bore, draw by up suction a diluting fluid which will disintegrate the red cells without injuring the whites. The best fluid is 0.5% of glacial acetic acid in water. This makes the white cells stand out as highly refractile bodies. Some prefer to tinge the fluid with neutral red or gentian violet. The 0.5 mark is preferred because it takes a very large drop of blood to fill the tube up to the 1 mark and if there is much of a leukocytosis a 1 to 10 dilution is not sufficient.

The blood having been drawn up to 0.5, we have a dilution of 1 to 20.

Making a preparation, exactly as was done in the case of the red count, we count all of the white cells in one of the large squares (1 sq. mm.) The cross ruling greatly facilitates this. Note the number. Then count a second and a third square. Strike an average of the large squares counted and multiply this by 10, as the depth of the fluid gives a content equal to only 1/10 of a cubic millimeter. Then multiply by the dilution.

EXAMPLE.—First large square 50; second large square 70; third large square 60. Average 60. Then $60 \times 10 \times 20 = 12,000$, the number of leukocytes in 1 cubic millimeter of blood. In order to save time the count is preferably made with a low power (2/3-inch objective) as the leukocytes stand out like pearls. It is more accurate, however, to use a higher power, so that pieces of foreign material may be recognized and not enumerated as white cells.

If one will accustom himself to comparing the distribution of the leucocytes in a well made stained dried blood film, prepared according to Erlich's cover glass method, with that in a haemocytometer preparation, he can readily acquire an experience which will enable him to determine with considerable accuracy the degree of leucocytosis by the examination of a stained, cover glass preparation alone.

After making a blood count, the haemocytometer slide should be cleaned with soap and water and then rubbed dry, preferably with an old piece of linen. As the accuracy of the counting chamber depends upon the integrity of the cement, any reagent such as alcohol, xylol, etc., and in particular, heat, will ruin the instrument. The pipettes should be cleaned by inserting the ends into the tube from a vacuum pump, as a Chapman pump. First draw water or 1% sod. carbonate solution through the pipette, then alcohol, then ether, and finally allow air to pass through to dry the interior. If the interior is stained, use 1% HCl in alcohol. If a vacuum pump is not at hand, a bicycle pump or suction by mouth will answer.

PREPARATIONS FOR THE STUDY OF FRESH BLOOD

Many authorities prefer a fresh-blood specimen to a stained dried smear in the study of parasites of the blood. In malaria in particular

there is so much information as to species to be obtained from a fresh specimen that the employment of this method should never be neglected. While waiting for the film to stain one has five or six minutes which could not be better spent than in examining the fresh specimen which only requires a moment to make.

Manson's Method.—Have a perfectly clean cover-glass and slide. Touch the apex of the exuding drop of blood with the cover-glass and drop it on the center of the slide. The blood flows out in a film which exhibits an "empty zone" in the center. Surrounding this we have the "zone of scattered corpuscles," next the "single layer zone" and the "zone of rouleaux" at the periphery. It is well to ring the preparation with vaseline. When desiring to demonstrate the flagellated bodies in malaria; it is well to breathe on the cover-glass just prior to touching the drop of blood.

The Method of Ross is very easy of application and gives most satisfactory preparations. Take a perfectly clean slide, and make a vaseline ring or square of the size of the cover-glass. Then, having taken up the blood on the cover-glass, drop it so that its margin rests on the vaseline ring. Gently pressing down the cover-glass on the vaseline makes beautiful preparations which keep for a very long time. If it is desired to study the action of stains on living cells, this method is also applicable. A very practical way to do this is to tinge 0.85% salt solution containing 1% sodium citrate (the same as is used in opsonic work) with methylene azur, gentian violet, or methyl green. With a Wright bulb pipette, take up one part of blood, then one part of tinted salt solution. Mix them quickly on a slide and then deposit a small drop of the mixture in the center of the vaseline ring and immediately apply a cover-glass and press down the margins as before. This method will be found of great practical value.

A METHOD FOR MAKING DIFFERENTIAL LEUKOCYTE COUNT IN SAME PREPARATION AS FOR WHITE COUNT

Employ the same technic as in making the ordinary white count but using as a diluting fluid a 2% solution of formalin to which has been added one drop of Giemsa's stain for each c.c. just before making the blood examination.

The best results are obtained when the contents of the pipette are thoroughly shaken immediately after taking up blood and diluent. There is the greatest variation as to degree of acidity of the various preparations of commercial formalin, some being quite acid and producing so much precipitate with the Giemsa stain as to make the preparation unsatisfactory.

To obviate this take about 20 c.c. of a 10% solution of formalin and add to it 2 drops of phenolphthalein (the same as is used in determining the total acidity in gastric contents). Now drop in, drop by drop, a solution of sodium carbonate, 1 or 2 percent., until the faintest pinkish tinge appears. Of this neutralized 10% formalin

solution take 10 c.c. and dilute it with 40 c.c. of distilled water, giving a 2% solution. The addition of 1/2% glycerin to the 2% formalin solution seems to improve the diluent, but is unnecessary.

The usual technic in making the hæmocyto-meter preparation is employed using a Türck ruling. Count the leukocytes in the three upper or lower 1 sq. mm. squares, divide by 3 to obtain an average per sq. mm., multiply by 10 for the content of a cubic millimeter and then by 20 for the dilution. (Blood to 0.5; diluent to 11.) This can be done mentally and requires no calculation on paper. Having counted the leukocytes, again go over the same portion of the ruled surface and count the polymorphonuclears and estimate the percentage of these to the total leukocytes. The majority of disrupted cells in a dry-stained preparation are transitionals hence the percentage of polymorphonuclears by this method is lower.

It is unnecessary in such a count to have an assistant; of course, in making a complete differential count it is preferable to have some one tabulate or laboriously to do this one's self.

The red cells are practically diaphanous and not disintegrated as when acetic acid is used as a diluent, consequently it is easy to make out the particular red cell as to size, etc., containing a malarial parasite.

The best results are obtained with a 1/6-in. objective. Higher powers are of course impracticable by reason of the thickness of the cover-glass of the hæmocyto-meter.

The following are the appearances of the various leukocytes.

Eosinophiles.—In these the bilobed nucleus stains rather faintly and the color is greenish-blue. The eosinophile granules show easily as coarse, brickdust-colored particles.

Polymorphonuclears.—The nucleus stains a deep, rich, pure violet but less intense than that of the small lymphocyte. The shape of the nucleus is typically three or four lobed but even when of the horseshoe shape of a transitional nucleus is easily recognizable by the intensity of the violet staining. That which makes the polymorphonuclears very easy of differentiation is the distinctness of the cell outlines produced by the fine yellowish granulations in the cytoplasm.

Lymphocytes.—The nucleus is perfectly round and stains a rich violet.

Large Mononuclears and Transitionals.—These show a washed-out, slate-colored nucleus which blends with the gray slate-blue staining of the cytoplasm so that there is an indefiniteness of outline in the more or less irregularly contoured nucleus. The large mononuclears and transitionals stand out as slate-colored cells. When very much degenerated these cells have a greenish hue.

Mast Cells.—The granulations show as a rich maroon or reddish-violet color.

The young ring forms of malaria show as violet-blue areas in the red cells. When half-grown or approaching the merocyte stage, the containing red cell takes on a faint pink coloration, thereby differentiating it from the noninfected red cells. At the same time the parasite is extruded and has the appearance of a violet-blue body projecting from the margin of the red cell. It is as if a blue body were budding from a pink one.

It is an easy matter with this method to count the number of trypanosomes or malarial crescents in a cubic millimeter of blood.

PREPARATION AND STAINING OF DRIED FILMS

When preparations are desired for a differential count, Ehrlich's method of making films is to be preferred, as the different types of leukocytes are more evenly distributed. In making smears by spreading, there is a tendency for the polymorphonuclears to be concentrated at the margin while lymphocytes remain in the central part of the film.

In Ehrlich's method we have perfectly clean dry cover-slips. Take up a small drop of blood without touching the surface of the ear or finger. Drop this cover-glass immediately on a second one and as soon as the blood runs out in a film, draw the two cover-slips apart in a plane parallel to the cover-glasses. Slide them apart. Ehrlich uses forceps to hold the cover-glasses to avoid moisture from the fingers, but this is not necessary.

Of the various methods of spreading films on slides there is none equal to that described by Daniels. In this the drop of blood is drawn along and not pushed along. The films are even, can be made of any desired thickness by changing the angle of the drawing slide, and there is little liability of crushing pathological cells. Take a small drop of blood on the end of a clean slide. Touch a second slide about $1/2$ inch from end with the drop and as soon as the blood runs out along the line of the slide end, slide it at an angle of 45° to the other end of the horizontal slide. The blood is pulled or drawn behind the advancing edge of the advancing slide. An angle less than 45° makes a thinner film; one greater, a thicker film.

Instead of a slide a square cover-glass may be used and if the edge be smooth it makes a more satisfactory spreader than the slide. Many workers prefer the *Ross thick-film method* in examining for malaria. In this about one-half of a drop of blood is smeared out over a surface about equal to that of a square cover-glass and allowed to dry. It is then flooded with $1/10$ of a 1% aqueous solution of eosin for about 15 minutes. The preparation is then gently washed with water and then treated with a polychrome methylene-blue solution. After a few seconds this is carefully washed off and the preparation dried and examined.

James smears out an ordinary drop of blood so that it makes a circular smear about $3/4$ inch in diameter. This may be easily accomplished with a spatulate toothpick. When dry, treat the blood smear with alcohol containing HCl (Alcohol 50 c.c., HCl 10 drops) until the haemoglobin is dissolved out. Then wash thoroughly in water for 5 or 10 minutes. Allow to dry and then stain as ordinarily with the Wright or Giemsa stain.

With all thick film methods it is extremely important to have thorough drying of the smear before dehaemoglobinizing or staining. This ordinarily requires 1 or 2 hours in the air or 20 to 30 minutes in the incubator. It is particularly important in working with such smears, although holding for ordinary smears, to protect them from flies, ants, etc., as such insects will eat up the smear in a few minutes if left exposed.

Fixation of Film.—In Wright's, Leishman's, and other similar stains the methyl-alcohol solvent causes the fixation. In staining with Giemsa's stain, or hæmatoxylin and eosin, separate fixation is necessary. For Giemsa either absolute alcohol (ten to fifteen minutes), or methyl alcohol (two to five minutes) answer well.

For hæmatoxylin and eosin, heat gives the best results. The best method is to place the films in an oven provided with a thermometer. Raise the temperature of the oven to 135° C. and then remove the burner. After the oven has cooled, take out the fixed slides or slips.

One of the handiest methods is to drop a few drops of 95% alcohol on the slide or cover-glass. Allow this to flow over the entire surface; then get rid of the excess of alcohol by touching the edge to a piece of filter-paper for a second or two. Then light the remaining alcohol film from the flame and allow the burning alcohol to burn itself out.

Staining Blood-films.—As separate staining with eosin and methylene blue rarely gives good preparations and as the modifications of the Romanowsky stain recommended are easy to make and employ, and give much greater information, the separate method of staining is not recommended.

Wright's Method.—The stain is made by adding 1 gram of methylene blue (Grubler) to 100 c.c. of a 1/2% solution of sodium bicarbonate in water. This mixture is heated for 1 hour in an Arnold sterilizer. The flask containing the alkaline methylene-blue solution should be of such size and shape that the depth of the fluid does not exceed 2 1/2 inches. When cool, add to the methylene-blue solution 500 c.c. of a 1 to 1000 eosin solution (yellow eosin, water soluble). Add the eosin solution slowly, stirring constantly until the blue color is lost and the mixture becomes purple with a yellow metallic luster on the surface, and there is formed a finely granular black precipitate. Collect this precipitate on a filter-paper and when thoroughly dry (dry in the incubator at 38° C.) dissolve 0.3 gram in 100 c.c. of pure methyl alcohol (acetone free). Wright lately has recommended using 0.1 in 60 c.c. methyl alcohol. This constitutes the stock solution. For use filter off 20 c.c. and add to the filtrate 5 c.c. of methyl alcohol.

A modification by Balch is very satisfactory. In this method instead of polychroming the methylene blue with sodium bicarbonate and heat, the method of Borrel is used. Dissolve 1 gram of methylene blue in 100 c.c. of distilled water. Next dissolve 0.5 gram of silver nitrate in 50 c.c. of distilled water. To the silver solution add a 2 to 5% caustic soda solution until the silver oxide is completely precipitated. Wash the precipitated silver oxide several times with distilled water. This is best accomplished by pouring the wash-water on the heavy black precipitate in the flask, agitating, then decanting and again pouring on water. After removing all excess of alkali by repeated washings, add the methylene-blue solution to the precipitated silver oxide in the flask. Allow to stand about ten days, occasionally shaking until a purplish color develops. The process may be hastened in an incubator. When polychroming is complete, filter off and add to the filtrate the 1 to 1000 eosin solution and proceed exactly as with Wright's stain.

In Leishman's method the polychroming is accomplished by adding 1 gram of

methylene blue to 100 c.c. of a 1/2% solution of sodium carbonate. This is kept at 65° C. for twelve hours and allowed to stand at room temperature for ten days before the eosin solution is added. The succeeding steps are as for Wright's stain.

In all Romanowsky methods distilled water should be used. If not obtainable, the best substitute is rain-water collected in the open and not from a roof.

Method of staining:

1. Make films and air dry.
2. Cover dry film preparation with the methyl-alcohol stain for one minute (to fix).
3. Add water to the stain on the cover-glass or slide, drop by drop, until a yellow metallic scum begins to form. It is advisable to add the drops of water rapidly in order to eliminate precipitates on the stained film. Practically, we may add 1 drop of water for every drop of stain used.
4. Wash thoroughly in water until the film has a pinkish tint.
5. Dry with filter-paper and mount.

Red cells are stained orange to pink; nuclei, shades of violet; eosinophile granules, red; neutrophile granules, yellow to lilac; blood platelets, purplish; malarial parasites, blue; chromatin, metallic-red to rose-pink.

Giemsa's Modification of the Romanowsky Method.—This is one of the most perfect of the modifications. The objection is that greater time in staining films is required than with the Wright or Leishman method and the stain is very expensive.

Take of Azur II eosin 0.3 gram. Azur II 0.08 gram.

Dissolve this amount of dry powder in 25 c.c. of glycerine at 60° C. Then add 25 c.c. of methyl-alcohol at the same temperature. Allow the glycerine methyl-alcohol solution to stand overnight and then filter. This is the stock stain. To use: Dilute 1 c.c. with 10 to 15 c.c. of distilled water. If 1 to 1000 potassium carbonate solution is used instead of water it stains more deeply.

The alkaline diluent is used to obtain the coarse stippling in malignant tertian (Maurer's clefts). Having fixed the smear with methyl alcohol for one to five minutes, pour on the diluted stain, and after fifteen to thirty minutes wash off and continue washing with distilled water until the film has a slight pink tinge. For *Treponema pertenue* stain from one to twelve hours.

While the Romanowsky methods are more satisfactory for differential counts and for the demonstration of the malarial parasites, and especially for differentiating species, yet by reason of the liability to deterioration in the tropics of methylene blue the hæmatoxylin methods may be preferable. Many workers in blood-work and cytodiagnosis prefer the hæmatoxylin.

1. Fix the film either by heat or with methyl alcohol for two minutes. Heat is to be preferred.
2. Stain with Meyer's hemalum or Delafield's hæmatoxylin for from five to fifteen minutes according to the stain. Frequently three minutes will be found

sufficient. To make the hemalum, dissolve 0.5 gram of hæmatin in 25 c.c. of 95% alcohol. Next dissolve 25 grams of ammonia alum in 500 c.c. of distilled water. Mix the two solutions and allow to ripen for a few days. The stain should be satisfactory in two or three days.

To make Delafield's hæmatoxylin, dissolve 1 gram of hæmatoxylin crystals in 6 c.c. of 95% alcohol. Add this to 100 c.c. of saturated aqueous solution of ammonia alum. After exposure to light for a week, the color changes to a deep blue-purple. Add to this ripened stain 25 c.c. of glycerine and 25 c.c. of methyl-alcohol and, after it has stood for about two days, filter. The stain should be filtered from time to time as a sediment forms. This makes a stock solution which should be diluted 10 to 15 times with water when staining.

3. Wash for two to five minutes in tap water to develop the hæmatoxylin color.

4. Stain either with a 1 to 1000 aqueous solution of eosin or with a 1/2 of 1% eosin solution in 70% alcohol. The eosin staining only requires fifteen to thirty seconds.

5. Wash and examine.

DIFFERENTIAL COUNT

In making a differential count I would recommend the following from the directions of Schilling-Torgau. It will be remembered that considerable interest was raised a few years ago in what was termed the Arneth index. In this the more normal, more mature, better resisting polymorphonuclears were considered to have 3 or 4 lobes to the nuclear structure, even occasionally 5. The immature cells had only one or at most two lobes to the nucleus. The index was obtained by adding the percentages of cells showing 1 and 2 lobes to 1/2 the percentage of those with 3 lobes. As will be understood a high percentage of these immature cells was unfavorable in prognosis. These cells are graded from left to right I, II, III, IV, V, as to separate masses in the nucleus, so that when the percentage is shoved or displaced to the left it indicates an increase in the immature cells.

Schilling-Torgau divides his polymorphonuclears into 1. the myelocyte which is always of course a pathological cell, 2. the immature form polymorphonuclear. In this there is a close resemblance to the neutrophile myelocyte but there is a nuclear indentation instead of the round nucleus of the myelocyte. It is this cell which often puzzles us as to whether to regard it as a true myelocyte. It is the metamyelocyte of many authorities. 3. Between the mature or segmented polymorphonuclear and the immature one or metamyelocyte we have what may be designated the band form nucleated one. These show the type of nucleus which one is familiar with in the nucleus of the transitional. 4. The mature, multilobed or segmented nucleus of the typical polymorphonuclear.

It would seem that if all tropical workers would agree upon some single method of recording differential counts it would be advantageous.

Under the blood findings in liver abscess, in a paragraph to follow in this chapter, I give suggestive counts indicating the value of Schilling-Torgau's method.

In the differential count he not only divides up the polymorphonuclears but makes no separation of small from large lymphocytes. Although I have always divided lymphocytes into large and small ones I believe it unnecessary and impractical and shall henceforth group all such cells in one grouping. The statement that large mononuclears and transitionals are cells of a similar origin, type and significance has always been my idea.

SCHEME OF SCHILLING-TORGAU

Type of Cell	Normal Percentage	Percentage Moderate Sepsis (W.C. 14,000)
1. Mast cells.	1	1.0
2. Eosinophiles.	3	1.5
3. Neutrophiles.	a. myelocytes.	.5
	b. immature forms (metamyelocytes).	5.0
	c. bandform (Stabkernige).	13.5
	d. multilobed (Segmentkernige).	64.0
4. Lymphocytes.	23	10.5
5. Large Mononuclears and Transitionals.	6	4.0

BLOOD CULTURING

There are many ways of carrying out the cultivation of organisms from the blood but the one which may be strongly recommended is the following. The blood is obtained from a vein, the overlying skin of which has been painted with tincture of iodine to ensure a sterile skin surface.

A stout hypodermic needle is attached to about 6 inches of rubber tubing which in turn is pushed over a downward bent glass tube which passes through a doubly perforated rubber stopper. A second glass tube, which also passes through the stopper, is bent upward to be attached to a second piece of rubber tubing for use in suction by the mouth. The glass tubes project about 1/2 inch below the under surface of the rubber stopper and above are about 2 1/2 inches including the bent arm. This system of tubing and stopper is readily sterilized by boiling in a pan or instrument sterilizer. As a receptacle for the blood we employ Erlenmeyer flasks of 100 c.c. capacity, containing 25 c.c. of salt solution with 1% of sodium citrate, for prevention of coagulation. These citrated salt solution flasks are plugged with cotton, sterilized and kept on hand ready for immediate use, so that we only have to sterilize the stopper and tubing by boiling and flame the neck of the flask when removing the cotton

plug to insert the stopper of the system. By suction we can take any amount of blood desired. I usually count the drops of blood as they fall into the citrated salt solution allowing 16 drops to the c.c. In this way we may take from 10 to 25 c.c. of blood at the bedside and then later on in the laboratory, when it is convenient, inoculate various media from the flask. For plates add 2 or 3 c.c. of this citrated blood to 6 or 8 c.c. of melted agar at 45° C. The blood mixture can also be added to various sugar bouillons for fermentation reactions. Finally we place the receiving flask in the incubator and culture it as well as the other media.

A very simple method is to take blood with a Wright U tube. Then centrifuge and use the serum for agglutination tests and the clot, emulsified in some liquid medium, for the blood culturing. For paratyphoid culturing bile media is preferable, just as for typhoid.

In culturing blood for protozoa the N.N.N. medium is usually employed. Novy and MacNeal originally used a 12 1/2% meat infusion containing 2 1/2% agar, 2% peptone, 1% normal sodium carbonate and 1/2% salt. To one part of this agar, melted and cooled to 60° C., they added twice the amount of defibrinated rabbit's blood. In the N.N.N. medium, as modified by Nicolle, there is beside the blood only salt and agar—no peptone or meat extractives.

Citrated salt solution was the medium used by Rogers in the cultivation of splenic juice from kala azar patients.

THE TAKING OF BLOOD FOR SEROLOGICAL TESTS

This can be done with the Wright tube, pipetting off the clear serum after centrifuging. We usually draw blood from a vein by use of the system of stopper and tubing described under blood culturing but employing an empty, sterile centrifuge tube.

Agglutination Tests

There are two methods of testing the agglutinating powers of a serum—the microscopical and the macroscopical or sedimentation method.

1. For the microscopical method draw up serum to the mark 0.5 of the white pipette. Then draw up salt solution to the mark 11. This when mixed gives a dilution of 1 to 20. One loopful of the diluted serum and one loopful of a bouillon culture or salt solution suspension of the organism to be tested gives a dilution of 1 to 40. One loopful of the 1-20 diluted serum and 3 loopfuls of the bacterial suspension give a dilution of 1-80. These two dilutions answer in ordinary diagnostic tests. The red pipette with a 1-100 or 1-200 dilution may be used where dilutions approaching 1-1000 are desired. Having mixed the diluted serum and the bacterial suspension on a cover-glass, we invert it over a vaselined concave slide and examine

with a high power, a dry objective ($1/6$ in.). It is simpler to make a ring of vaseline to fit the cover-glass and make the mixture of diluted serum and culture in the center of this ring or square. Then apply the cover-glass, press it down on the vaseline ring and examine as with the ordinary hanging drop. In making dilutions it is preferable to use salt solution, as the phenomenon of agglutination requires the presence of salts. Ordinarily, thirty minutes is a sufficient time to wait before reporting the absence of agglutination. Agglutination is more rapid at body temperature than at room temperature. In reporting agglutination, always give time and dilution. It is absolutely necessary that a control preparation be prepared in every instance; that is, one with the bacterial culture alone or with a normal serum of the same dilution as the lowest used. Some normal sera will agglutinate in 1 to 10 dilution, and group agglutinations (as paratyphoid with typhoid serum) may occur in 1 to 40 or possibly higher. It is very unusual for sera to agglutinate any other bacteria than the specific one in dilutions as high as 1-80.

For the Macroscopic Test.—Make dilutions of serum in ordinary test-tubes ($3/4 \times 6$ in.). Then take a loopful (2 mg.) of culture from an eighteen to twenty-four-hour-old agar culture and emulsify it thoroughly in the dilution in the first test-tube—repeat the process in the second tube and so on. This procedure is much safer than when live cultures are added with a pipette. Again, the dilution is unchanged by this addition whereas it is doubled when an equal volume of culture is added to the diluted serum. A control should always be made in normal salt solution. After incubating, observe flocculent precipitates (agglutination).

The method of using a slide with two vaselined rings, one containing an emulsion in the specific serum and the other in salt solution is of great practical value. This method is described under cholera.

Complement fixation tests have been employed in the diagnosis of several tropical diseases but do not seem to be at present sufficiently reliable or practical. The chief difficulty with complement fixation tests for suspected sera is to obtain a reliable antigen. Should we later on be able to prepare bacterial antigens as satisfactory as Noguchi's acetone insoluble antigen there may be a field for such tests in tropical pathology.

OTHER PRACTICAL METHODS OF HAEMATOLOGICAL STUDY

Hæmoglobin Estimation

The most accurate instrument for this purpose is the Miescher modification of the v. Fleischl hæmoglobinometer.

The apparatus is expensive, requires considerable time and care in the making of estimations, and is exclusively an instrument for a well-equipped laboratory.

Sahli's Hæmometer.—A simple and apparently very scientific instrument which has been recently introduced is the Sahli modification of the Gower hæmoglobinometer. Instead of the tinted glass, or gelatin colored with picrocarmine to resemble a definite blood dilution, Sahli uses as a standard the same coloring matter as is present

in the tube containing the blood. By acting on blood with ten times its volume of $N/10$ HCl, hæmatin hydrochlorate is produced, which gives a brownish-yellow color. In the standard tube, which is sealed, a dilution representing 1% of normal blood is used. To apply this test, pour in $N/10$ HCl to the mark 10 on the scale of the graduated tube. Add to this 20 cubic millimeters of the blood to be examined, drawn up by the capillary pipette provided. So soon as the mixture assumes a clear bright dark brown color, which requires about 10 minutes add water drop by drop until the color of the tubes matches. The reading of the height of the aqueous dilution on the scale gives the Hb. reading. The tubes are encased in a vulcanite frame with rectangular apertures. This gives the same optical impression as would planoparallel glass sides.

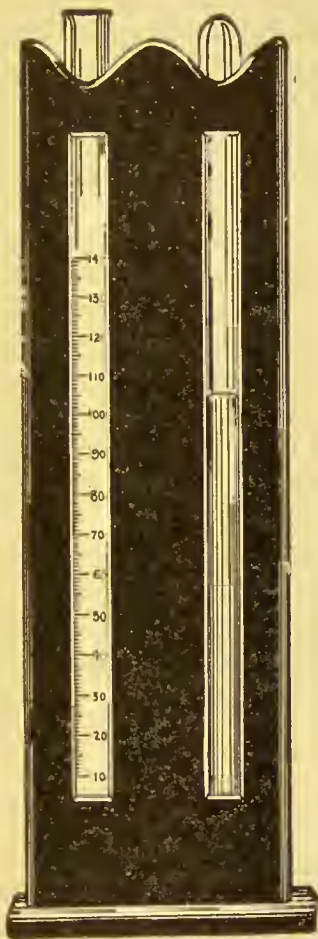


FIG. 81.—Sahli's Haemoglobinometer. (Greene.)

The most accurate readings are obtained with artificial light in a dark room but almost as satisfactory comparisons can be obtained with natural light from a window. It is advisable to turn the ruled side around so that one may match colors without being influenced in his determination by the scale.

The apparatus must be kept in a dark place as strong light will change the color of the standard tube. It is recommended that the $N/10$ HCl be preserved with chloroform.

Pappenheim has recently proposed an instrument in which the blood is converted into hæmatin hydrochloride as for the Sahli apparatus. Instead of matching a standard tube, with a dilution made drop by drop in the second tube, the new method employs a wedge shaped glass vessel showing graduations of the brown coloured blood, the treated blood being matched against the wedge shaped container (Autenreith-Koenigsberger Haemocolorimeter).

Tallquist's Hæmoglobin Scale.—This is a small book of specially prepared filter-paper with a color-scale plate of ten shades of blood colors. These are so tinted as to match blood taken up on a piece of the filter-paper and are graded from 10 to 100. So soon as the blood on the filter-paper has lost its humid gloss, the comparison should be made. This is best done by shifting the blood-stained piece of filter-paper suddenly from one to the other of the holes cut in each shade—

the piece of filter-paper being underneath the color plate. At least a square centimeter of the filter paper should be stained by the blood. Daylight coming from a window to the rear or at the side should be used in making the comparison. The error with this method is probably not over 10% after a little experience. If the colored plate is not kept in the dark, the tints tend to fade.

In considering what may be termed normal blood, it must be borne in mind that the normal varies for men, women, and children:

	Hb.	Red cells	Leukocytes
Men,	90 to 110%	5 to 5 1/2 million,	7500.
Women,	80 to 100%	4 1/2 to 5 million,	7500.
Children	70 to 80%	4 1/2 to 5 million,	9000.

Color Index

This is obtained by dividing the percentage of the hæmoglobin by the percentage of red cells, five million red cells being considered as 100%. To obtain the percentage of red cells it is only necessary to multiply the two extreme figures to the left by two. Thus if a count showed the presence of 1,700,000 red cells, the percentage would be 34 ($17 \times 2 = 34$). If the Hb. percentage in this case were 50; then the color index would be $50 \div 34$, or 1.4.

In normal blood the color index is, approximately, 1.

In anæmias we have three types of color index: 1. The pernicious anæmia type, which is above 1. Here we have a greater reduction in red cells than we have of the hæmoglobin content of each cell. 2. The normal type, when both red cells and hæmoglobin are proportionally decreased, as in anæmia following hæmorrhage. 3. The chlorotic type. Here there is a great decrease in hæmoglobin percentage, but only a moderate decrease in the number of red cells. Hence the color index is only a fraction of 1. For example, in a case of chlorosis we have 40% of hæmoglobin and 90% of red cells, $40 \div 90 = 0.4$.

Coagulation Rate of Blood

This determination is of value in connection with operations on jaundiced patients.

Wright's coagulometer is a standard instrument but is cumbersome.

A simple method of determining the rate is to take a piece of capillary glass tubing and hold it downward from the puncture to let it fill for 3 or 4 inches. Then at intervals of thirty seconds scratch with a file the capillary tubing at short distances and break off between the fingers. When coagulation has taken place a long worm-like coagulum is obtained. Normally coagulation occurs in about three to four minutes, when the temperature is that of the hand in which the tubes are conveniently held. Rudolf recommends placing the tubes in metal tube containers in a Thermos bottle at 20° C. He gives the normal coagulation rate for this temperature as 8 minutes, while at a temperature below this the period is lengthened. Age and sex do not influence the rate. Sabrazes, the originator of this method found no appreciable variation in tubes from 0.8 to 1.2 mm. diameter.

In Bürker's test you mix a drop of blood in a drop of distilled water on a slide and with a capillary tube sealed off at the end stir the mixture every half minute. So soon as fibrin threads appear you have coagulation.

Specific Gravity of the Blood

Hammerschlag has a method for the determination of the Hb. percentage based upon the specific gravity of the blood.

In this method a mixture of benzol and chloroform is made of a specific gravity of about 1050. A medium size drop of blood is then taken up with a pipette and dropped into the mixture. If it sinks add more chloroform from a dropping bottle, if it tends to rise, more benzol. The mixture in which the drop of blood tends to remain stationary, near the top of the mixed benzol and chloroform, has the same specific gravity as that of the blood. This is determined by an accurately graduated hydrometer. The normal average specific gravity for men is 1059, for women 1056. A table, giving the Hb. percentage corresponding to the specific gravity accompanies the outfit.

To determine the necessity for intravenous infusion in cholera Rogers has recently recommended the employment of small bottles containing aqueous solution of glycerine with specific gravities varying from 1048 to 1070, increasing the specific gravity in each successive bottle by 2°.

An accurate urinometer will suffice to determine the specific gravity. Drops of blood from the cholera patient are deposited at the center of the surface of the fluid in the bottles from a capillary pipette. If the specific gravity of the blood is 1062 at least a liter of saline or sodium bicarbonate solution is needed. If 1066 at least two liters. Formerly he estimated the indications by blood pressure considering a pressure of 80 in Europeans or of 70 in natives as indicating intravenous injections.

Blood Alkalinity Determination in Connection with Acidosis

Sellards has recently brought out a simple and clinically accurate method for determining the degree of titrable alkalinity of the blood serum in cases where an acidosis factor is suspected.

To carry out the test we add 1 c.c. of serum, drop by drop, to 25 c.c. of absolute alcohol (it is very important to secure a neutral alcohol and I have found that of Merck satisfactory). This precipitates the protein which is the factor interfering with a sharp end reaction. After filtering we add 3 or 4 drops of neutralized phenolphthalein solution to the filtrate and evaporate the alcohol in a porcelain dish on a water bath. Every piece of apparatus must be perfectly dry and the steam vapor of the bath quite low to avoid the taking up by the alcohol of water. In normal cases the dark pinkish tinge of the sediment, after evaporation, will remain at least one hour, while with cases showing increased acidosis the reddish tinging of the sediment disappears in a few minutes. In cases of very marked acidosis one may add 1 c.c. of

serum to 9 c.c distilled water in a test tube. Heat gently over the flame to boiling and add 2 drops of phenolphthalein solution. In normal cases or those with only moderate acidosis a pinkish colour persists while with sera showing great acidosis the contents of the test tube remain colourless.

PRACTICAL APPLICATION OF METHODS OF BLOOD EXAMINATIONS TO THE VARIOUS TROPICAL DISEASES

In considering the value of blood examinations in the various tropical diseases we may first note those in which such examinations are of little or no value and second those in which such examinations are crucial or at any rate of prime importance.

In the first group we may include the following:

Beriberi.—The leucocytes are about normal in number with possibly a slight increase in lymphocytes. Of course there may be anaemia present with the progress of the disease. Some think there is a slight diminution from the normal percentage of eosinophiles.

Noc found the percentage of lymphocytes in beriberi patients to be about 35 as against 32 for those unaffected.

Sprue.—There is considerable reduction in red cells which may fall below 2,000,000 in advanced cases. The whites may show a slight tendency to leucopenia with a relative increase in lymphocytes. The haemoglobin is not as much reduced as the red cells so that we obtain a colour index of from 1.1 to 1.3.

Pellagra.—This disease may show a chloranaemia. Some authorities have stated that we have an increase in the percentage of large mononuclears but Hillman found a rather definite increase in the lymphocytes (34%) and a normal large mononuclear percentage.

Yaws.—This disease may show a moderate anaemia with a low colour index. The leucocytes are about normal in number with a moderate increase in the percentage of large mononuclears.

Leprosy.—There is, as would be expected, with the progress of the disease, an anaemia which is of the chlorotic type. Leprosy bacilli may be found in the blood, especially during the time of the febrile accessions, but such examinations are of very little value in practical diagnosis and there are so many liabilities to error, as shown in the work with tubercle bacilli in blood, that we should be very conservative in this direction.

There is probably an increase in the percentage of lymphocytes.

Yellow Fever.—The blood findings are usually given as normal although Noc states that at first we have an increase in polymorphonuclear percentage to be followed by an increase in the large mononuclears about the fifth day. He also noted an absence or diminution of eosinophiles.

Cholera.—As cyanosis develops the red count goes up even to 8,000,000 with a corresponding or greater increase in the leucocyte count. The estimation of the low

blood pressure is important as indicating the necessity for intravenous injections. The determination of the degree of serum acidosis is also indicated with reference to alkaline treatment. In a convalescent from a disease suspected as cholera an agglutination test would be of value, and in the absence of the sera of immunized animals one could use that of a cholera convalescent against a spirillum isolated from the stool of a suspected case of cholera.

Of the diseases in which an examination of the blood should always play a part in diagnosis may be noted the following:

Malaria.—The examination of the blood is necessary not only to prove the existence of a malarial infection but, as well, to determine the species of parasite present, this latter a matter of much importance as to prognosis and intensity of treatment according as one has to deal with a benign or malignant parasite. More exact information and with the expenditure of much less time can be obtained from a smear stained with some Romanowsky modification than by examining a fresh preparation. At the same time it is advisable to make a wet preparation and study it for amoeboid activity of the parasites and character of the pigment while awaiting the completion of the staining process. Melaniferous leucocytes can be made out better in a fresh specimen than in a dried, stained one. One can better differentiate species by an even thin film than by a thick film method. There is often great doubt with a thick film as to whether the object noted is an artifact or a parasite. The James thick film method has given very good results.

There is only a moderate variation from a normal white count but in cases when the parasites are very scanty or when they have been driven from the peripheral circulation by quinine treatment we may make a tentative diagnosis of malaria on a leucocytosis during the paroxysm with a leucopenia during the afebrile interval with, at this time, an increase in the percentage of large mononuclears to 10 to 15%.

Melaniferous leucocytes are rarely noted in the benign tertian infections but in some of the very puzzling aestivo-autumnal fevers they may give the diagnostic clue.

Schüffner's dots are yellowish dots in the infected red cells and are characteristic of benign tertian. The Maurer clefts of malignant tertian are less commonly noted. Always carefully note the pale swollen, infected red cells of benign tertian, the shrunken degenerated cell of malignant tertian and the normal one of quartan. The fine hair like ring of malignant tertian is often noted in the periphery of the red cell as a narrow line while the half grown schizont of quartan is often seen as an equatorial band.

In the anaemia following malaria we may have very low red counts and haemoglobin percentages. They usually run parallel, so that the colour index approximates 1.

Punctate basophilia is quite common in malarial anaemias. Up to the present time the culturing of the parasite can scarcely be considered an aid to diagnosis as it is difficult to carry the development beyond one generation so that we do not get multiplication of parasites. In cases where confusion exists as to the nature of the species of parasite present culturing would help as regards the possibility of noting the developmental stages of *Plasmodium falciparum*.

Blackwater Fever.—The same points which hold for malaria hold for blackwater fever.

The striking feature of blackwater, from the side of the blood, is the rapid and great reduction in red cells and haemoglobin. As a result of the pathognomonic haemoglobinuria we may have in a few days a fall of red cells from 4 to 5 million to approximately 1 million with haemoglobin down to 20%. The colour index is usually about 1. The blood is thin and the serum tinged. Probably from the excessive haemolysis one does not see degenerated cells as frequently as would be expected. Tests for acidosis and coagulability of the blood are indicated as there is a reduction in titrable alkalinity of the serum and coagulation rate.

Oroya Fever.—This disease, within 2 or 3 weeks, gives the blood picture of a marked pernicious anaemia. The rod-shaped protozoon may be seen lying in the red cells singly or in V shapes.

These rods show a chromatin granule at one extremity. Normoblasts are very numerous and megaloblasts appear later. There is both polychromatophilia and poikilocytosis. The colour index is that of pernicious anaemia, above 1. The leucocytes are increased to about 20,000 with 75% of neutrophils, among which are many immature forms or metamyelocytes. The pathological process shows its greatest activity in the bone marrow.

Malta Fever.—In this disease blood cultures offer the surest and most practical way of making the diagnosis. The blood should be taken from a vein at the time of the height of the fever rise. To prevent coagulation the blood should be forced from the syringe into about an equal amount of citrated salt solution and subsequently added to melted agar to then be poured into petri dishes. Cultures can also be made by smearing the citrated blood over poured plates of agar. It must be remembered that the colonies are quite small and do not develop for 4 or 5 days. The citrated blood can also be added to bouillon. The blood culturing has rather replaced the culturing from spleen juice. As the coccus is in the blood it is eliminated in the urine and plates should be made from the urine as well as the blood.

Malta fever is one of the diseases which can be diagnosed quite early by agglutination tests, the reaction often appearing before the end of the first week and often continuing for months after recovery. There is a liability to error when low dilutions

are employed so that the former use of dilutions of 1 to 20 and 1 to 40 are no longer advised. Probably a dilution of 1 to 100 would be sufficiently specific but dilutions of 1 to 500 and even higher are frequently obtained. It is now thought best to heat the patient's serum to 56° C. for 20 minutes before applying the test so as to destroy non-specific agglutinins. Opsonic index and complement fixation tests have been employed in diagnosis.

As the disease progresses a secondary anaemia develops. The white count is about normal but with the polymorphonuclears somewhat reduced in percentage and the mononuclears increased.

Plague.—In septicaemic plague blood cultures offer the surest method of diagnosis as clinically there may be very little to suggest plague. This is about the only disease in which one may find the causative bacterium in a blood smear. For this examination the thick film method has been recommended. Just as with the material from a puncture of a bubo or the sputum from plague pneumonia we should employ animal inoculation as well as cultural procedures with the blood.

We usually have a marked leucocytosis due to a great increase in the polymorphonuclears. The white count may exceed 50,000. Just as septicaemic plague may so overwhelm the organism that it does not respond with fever so may the leucocytosis be absent. Bubonic and pneumonic plague tend to become septicaemic so that in such types of the disease we may obtain results with blood cultures.

Liver Abscess.—Schilling-Torgau brings out the point that even with an absence of the usual blood findings it is possible to diagnose the disease and make a just prognosis with his method of differential counting. Ordinarily we have a leucocytosis of from twelve to twenty thousand with only about 70% of polymorphonuclears and about 12 to 15% of large mononuclears. When a bacterial infection accompanies the amoebic one of course the leucocytosis and polymorphonuclear percentage reach higher figures. The eosinophiles may entirely disappear in an uncomplicated case of amoebic abscess.

In comparing his method with the ordinary one Schilling-Torgau notes a case with a differential count showing 72% of polymorphonuclears, 17% of lymphocytes and 8% of large mononuclears with a white count of 6,000—apparently a normal blood. By his method 33% of these neutrophils were found to be of the band form or less mature cells, thus showing that the blood really did deviate from the normal.

In other examinations he noted very unfavorable indications from the high percentage of metamyelocytes and even myelocytes when the ordinary count did not suggest the serious condition.

As stated previously this method would seem to offer many advantages over the ordinary one.

Trypanosomiasis.—While the blood, when examined in ordinary smears or with thick film methods, does not give as good results as by examining the gland juice for trypanosomes, yet, by taking 5 or 10 c.c. of blood in citrated salt solution with 2 or 3 centrifugalizations, we may obtain greater success in finding the parasites in this way than when using gland juice. In wet preparations we may note the clumping of the red cells. This is the phenomenon of auto-agglutination thought by some to be rather characteristic of trypanosomiasis. We may carry out the leucocyte attachment test using the inactivated serum of the suspected patient.

As the disease progresses we get a secondary anaemia. The leucocyte count is usually normal but the differential count shows an increase in the large mononuclears. Bacterial infections often supervene when a leucocytosis will be noted.

Kala-azar.—Quite recently there has been success in the diagnosis of kala-azar by culturing the blood of the suspect on N. N. N. medium. The key to success when culturing from the blood is to wait for 2 or 3 weeks before giving up the examination of the cultures. It will be remembered that almost invariably leishman bodies are present in the blood only in extremely small numbers so that there is not time by the end of a few days for sufficient development to have taken place. In probably 80% of cases the parasite of kala-azar may be found in stained smears from the peripheral blood but only after prolonged and patient search. They may be found phagocytized by large mononuclears or polymorphonuclears.

The marked anaemia of kala-azar does not appear until the earlier symptoms of fever and splenic enlargement have gone on for some time. Very characteristic and important in diagnosis, however, is the marked leucopenia of kala-azar, approximating 2,000 leucocytes on the average. Again the white cells are only about in the proportion of 1 to 1,000 red cells. There is an increase in the percentage of large mononuclears. Some authorities have reported an acidosis of the blood serum. Coagulation rate is delayed.

Relapsing Fever.—The spirochaetes are not so numerous in the blood of the peripheral circulation in tropical relapsing fevers as in those of Europe. The spirochaetes can best be seen in stained smears but the agitation of the red cells in a wet preparation by the motile spiral organisms is of assistance in their recognition.

During the afebrile period the parasites disappear from the peripheral circulation.

If the disease is first seen during the afebrile stage we may try Löwenthal's reaction, which consists in taking a drop of the blood of the suspected patient, mixing

it on a vaseline ringed slide with the blood of a patient showing spirochaetes, then covering with a cover glass and incubating for 30 minutes at 37° C. A positive reaction shows clumping and loss of motility of the spirochaetes.

Reports vary as to the white count but on the whole there would seem to be more evidence in favor of a moderate leucocytosis although some observers have noted a fall from the normal. The usual statements give a leucocytosis of from 12 to 15 thousand with a polymorphonuclear increase to between 75 and 80%. The statement is usually made that the normal percentage of large mononuclears helps in the differentiation of malaria. Kieseritzky has reported leucopenia and slight increase in lymphocytes in relapsing fever.

Filariasis.—The sheathed embryos of *Filaria bancrofti* are found in the peripheral circulation at night only, hence *F. nocturna*, while those of *F. loa* are only to be found in the daytime, hence *F. diurna*. In the islands of the South Pacific the filarial infection is considered as of *F. bancrofti* but the embryos are present in the peripheral circulation both by day and by night.

Instead of being uncommon it seems to rather be the rule to fail to find embryos in the blood preparations in cases showing marked evidences of filarial disease, as in elephantiasis, calabar swellings, etc. The positive blood findings are most frequent in those who do not as yet show symptoms. There has not yet been sufficient obstruction in the lymphatics to keep the embryos from reaching the blood stream. We may examine the blood either with fresh preparations, when the movements of the embryos assist in their detection, or by staining dried smears. Haematoxylin staining is better than the Romanowsky one as the break in cells and other points are better brought out.

An eosinophilia is usually considered as constantly present but this is not invariable. The leucocyte count is about normal.

Dengue and Phlebotomus Fever.—In these diseases a leucopenia, which begins to show itself by the second day, is very characteristic.

The average leucocyte count is about 3,000 and along with this we have a reduction in the percentage of polymorphonuclears to about 50%. Towards the end of the terminal fever we have an increase in the percentage of large mononuclears.

Bacillary Dysentery.—The agglutination tests are of little value in diagnosing the presence of or type of an infection with dysentery bacilli, as the agglutinating power does not appear until during convalescence.

It is now customary to use a polyvalent antidysenteric serum in treatment so that it is not very essential to ascertain the strain involved in an infection. As a practical matter we make our diagnosis of the presence as well as type of dysentery bacillus involved in an infection by isolating the organism from the dysenteric stool.

During the fever we may have a moderate polymorphonuclear leucocytosis.

Various Helminthological Infections.—In the earlier stages of ancylostomiasis and schistosomiasis we have a rather notable increase in the percentage of eosinophiles but with the advanced stages of these infections, with severe anaemia, the eosinophiles may even be absent.

In the urticarial fever stage of Japanese schistosomiasis the marked eosinophilia is of great assistance in diagnosis. One trouble about attaching importance to eosinophilia in the tropics is the confusion which is difficult to eliminate and which arises from infections with the more common but less important group of intestinal parasites such as *Ascaris*, *Trichuris*, etc.

The eosinophilia producing characteristics of many skin diseases must also be kept in mind.

CHAPTER XXXVIII

THE CIRCULATORY, RESPIRATORY AND LYMPHATIC SYSTEMS TOGETHER WITH ANAEMIA, HAEMORRHAGES AND OEDEMA IN TROPICAL DISEASES

THE CIRCULATORY SYSTEM

Beriberi.—Almost as important in diagnosis as the weakness of the legs, with anaesthetic and oedematous areas, is the early palpitation of the heart upon the slightest exertion. Later on as the vagal degeneration becomes more prominent we have a loss of the normal cardiac rhythm, to even become embryocardial, together with dilatation of the right heart, pulsating jugulars and various blowing murmurs, which are propagated into the vessels of the neck. The pulse is weak and rapid and this combination of a tumultuous heart action and weak pulse is striking. Blood pressure is below normal.

In *yellow fever* we have at first a high blood pressure. The pulse rate, which at first corresponds with the rise of temperature, soon shows Faget's law—a falling pulse with a constant temperature or a constant pulse with a rising temperature. It is a markedly slow pulse after the third day. The blood pressure is low in the asthenic stage.

In *dengue* we do not have the rise in blood pressure but the slow pulse is quite a feature of many of the dengue-like fevers.

In *blackwater fever* the pulse is rapid and soon becomes weak and of low tension.

Plague shows a striking toxic action on the heart muscle so that we soon get a soft, dicrotic pulse, rapid from the first and soon becoming thready. Patients with plague may die from cardiac failure upon getting up from bed.

In *cholera* the pulse is rapid and feeble during the stage of evacuation and with the onset of the algid stage we practically have a cessation of the circulation. The systolic pressure may fall as low as 60 or 70 m.m.

Hookworm anaemia shows early and marked cardiac palpitation. The pulse rate averages about 110 and the blood pressure is low. There is often some right side dilatation of the heart.

Malaria generally gives a small, rapid, high tension pulse in the cold stage to become full and bounding in the hot stage. A cardiac type of pernicious malarial fever has been described, particularly by the French.

Both *Malta fever* and *bacillary dysentery* tend to have a toxic effect on the heart.

THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM

In *beriberi* we have shortness of breath with the early cardiac palpitation. In acute pernicious beriberi the pulmonary congestion and oedema divide with the heart the terrible manifestations of such an attack. The diaphragm may become paralyzed in beriberi. Some authors refer to the dyspnoea of beriberi as the beriberic corset.

Paragonomiasis gives rise to a chronic cough attended with the expectoration of more or less bloody sputum containing ova. Haemoptysis is not infrequent. The physical signs on percussion are slight but may be more marked on auscultation.

Plague pneumonia is characterized by profound prostration in a patient whose physical signs do not seem to justify such extreme illness. The rather abundant and watery sputum soon becomes sanguinolent. Herpes labialis is absent. Besides primary plague pneumonia which develops directly from contact with a former case we have a secondary pneumonia which develops in the course of a typical case of bubonic plague.

In *malaria* we have a slight bronchitis in the ordinary types and many recognize a pulmonary type of pernicious malaria.

Malta fever tends to show a bronchial involvement about the twelfth day of the disease. Crepitant rales, a moderate cough and slight dyspnoea may be noted. It was the presence of pulmonary signs along with the profuse sweating and anaemia of the disease that justified the designation Mediterranean phthisis.

In *liver abscess* the crepitation at the base of the right lung, following congestion incident to the abscess of the right lobe of the liver, is of value in diagnosis. Rupture of a liver abscess into the lung occurs in about 10% of cases.

In *heat stroke* we may have Cheyne-Stokes respiration and pulmonary oedema.

Japanese River fever often shows bronchial involvement and cough at the time of the height of the fever.

In *ancylostomiasis* cases with cough and bronchitis have been reported and it seems probable that such manifestations may be connected with the course of the larvae through the pulmonary passages to reach the intestinal tract.

The filarial embryos of *F. bancrofti* remain in the lung capillaries during the day and recently such embryos have been found in blood coughed up from the lungs.

Kalayama disease may show a localized bronchitis early in the attack and from its rapid appearance and disappearance would seem to be a sort of patchy pulmonary oedema.

Kala-azar patients are often carried off by a terminal pneumonia probably connected with the leucopenia and marked diminution of polymorphonuclears.

In *leprosy*, also, the victims are frequently carried off by pulmonary tuberculosis.

THE LYMPHATIC SYSTEM

Plague.—The buboes are the most characteristic feature of the more common form of plague, bubonic plague. There may also be slight enlargement and tenderness of the glands in septicæmic and pneumonic plague but many such cases fail to show any evidence of superficial glandular enlargement. In *pestis minor* the only feature suggestive of plague is the glandular enlargement.

Very characteristic of the glandular involvement in plague is the marked tenderness of such glands. The slight pressure of palpation causes some pain and a sharp punch over an affected gland, excruciating pain. So exquisitely painful are these buboes that the patient with groin or axillary buboes will flex the leg or extend the arm to relieve pressure. In about 70% of cases the bubo is located in the groin, with 15% to 20% for axillary involvement and 5% to 10% for the submaxillary or cervical region. There may be involvement of both deep and superficial glands of a region, such buboes giving a large area of induration. As a rule there is a single bubo. The bubo is formed not only by the glands but by a periglandular oedema which fuses the glands into a solid mass. The buboes tend to suppurate about the commencement of the second week, so that gland puncture with subsequent culturing for plague bacilli and animal inoculation should be carried out before this time as pyogenic organisms replace the plague bacilli upon suppuration taking place.

Trypanosomiasis.—One of the characteristics of the disease recognized as diagnostic more than 100 years ago is enlargement of the glands of the posterior cervical triangle (Winterbottom's sign).

There may be general enlargement of the lymphatic glands which are rather hard, discrete and not bound down to the overlying skin. These glands may be somewhat tender or entirely painless. One of the most valuable methods of diagnosis of trypanosomiasis is by gland puncture, the juice obtained therefrom being examined in smear or inoculated into a monkey or guinea pig. Brazilian trypanosomiasis also shows glandular involvement.

Filariasis.—Varicose groin glands are frequently associated with lymph scrotum, chylocele or chyluria. The glandular masses are soft and doughy. The consistency is often that of a lipoma.

The overlying skin slips over the glandular mass. These glands are often mistaken for inguinal hernia. They do not give a tympanitic note and disappear slowly upon firm pressure with the patient lying down but return even with the pressure maintained upon assuming the upright position. There is no impulse on

coughing. If a sterile hypodermic needle be inserted into the mass a chylous fluid slowly and persistently comes out of the needle drop by drop.

Climatic Bubo.—The onset is gradual often accompanied by a low remittent type of fever. There is an absence of venereal sore.

These glands are only slightly tender and are often called fatigue glands as they produce a feeling of weariness after even moderate exercise. The inguinal glands of one or both sides are the ones involved but the overlying skin does not show the redness of a chancroidal or gonorrhoeal bubo. There is often a softening in the center of the affected glands.

Tsutsugamushi.—The glands which drain the area in which is located the ulcer at the site of the bite of the Kedani mite show swelling and tenderness.

Rat-bite fever also shows glandular enlargement in the glands tributary to the healed infecting bite of the rat.

In *leprosy* the glands draining involved regions become enlarged but do not show a tendency to suppuration. The glands most frequently involved are the cervical and groin glands.

In *kala-azar* the recommendation has lately been made to excise the somewhat enlarged glands and make smears from a piece of such gland and then examine the smear for leishman bodies. Gland puncture has not given as satisfactory results.

ANAEMIA

The old idea that tropical life produced an anaemia is no longer held, the view now being that such anaemic conditions are almost invariably due to some well recognized cause, the most important of which is malaria. Natives of the tropics may appear bleached out but show a normal red count and haemoglobin percentage. Chamberlain's observations have shown that a residence in the tropics of approximately 2 years has no appreciable influence on the red cell count or haemoglobin content of the blood of white men and that the actinic rays do not seem to be operative in producing anaemia.

Oroya Fever.—In this disease we have what might well be termed a fulminating pernicious anaemia. The rod shaped protozoon which attacks the red cells seems to be peculiarly active in the bone marrow, excruciating bone pains being quite a feature of the disease.

There may be a reduction in red cells to one million per cu. mm. within a few days. Normoblasts are abundant and megaloblasts may be observed in the more severe cases. The anaemia is intense and 20% to 40% of cases die within 2 or 3 weeks.

Blackwater fever may produce a fall in red cells almost as marked as in Oroya fever.

Sprue shows a slowly progressive anaemia which in the later stages of the disease may become extreme, going down to one million, but with a low colour index.

Ancylostomiasis is along with malaria the disease to be first thought of in connection with anaemia. The splenic enlargement of malaria should be thought of, although the view has recently been advanced that the spleen may be enlarged in hookworm disease.

In advanced cases of hookworm disease, showing a picture of profound anaemia, there may be so few worms present that the method of making diagnosis by finding ova be unsuccessful. I have seen a case of typical aplastic pernicious anaemia, confirmed by autopsy, undoubtedly following a vicious cycle set up by the hookworm infection, in which scarcely a worm was to be found in searching the intestines.

Kala-azar gives a marked anaemia with an earthy colour of the skin. The leucopenia and splenic enlargement are characteristic and the finding of parasites confirmatory.

Malta fever is usually followed by a moderate anaemia.

The *helminthic infections*, besides hookworm disease, are always to be thought of in the presence of anaemia. Very important among these are rectal and vesical schistosomiasis as well as that from the Japanese schistosome, together with liver and lung fluke disease. Even the ordinary round worm, *Ascaris lumbricoides*, is to be thought of in a tropical anaemia.

Tropical dysenteries are often responsible for anaemia and in liver abscess the patient becomes quite earthy in colour, provided no operation is performed. In chyluria there is a marked drain on the patient.

HAEMORRHAGES

The loss of blood through haemoglobinuria and haematuria has been taken up under the urine.

Yellow Fever.—During the asthenic period of the disease, which sets in about the fourth day, we have, as a result of the damage to the endothelial lining of the capillaries, various haemorrhages.

Of these the best known and most dreaded is that from the stomach, black vomit. The bleeding from the gums is apt to appear before that from the stomach. Not only may bleeding occur from the intestines but from any mucosa, as that of the nose, conjunctiva or vagina.

In *vesical and rectal bilharziasis* the perforation of the terminal branches of the portal vein by the terminal or lateral spined eggs gives rise to haemorrhages.

In *dysentery* the blood admixed mucous stools are of diagnostic importance.

In *endemic haemoptysis* the operculated eggs of *Paragonimus westermanni* are to be sought for in the sputum.

In *leprosy* epistaxis may be an early sign.

The damage to the endothelial lining of capillaries in "*plague*" gives rise to frequent haemorrhages into the skin.

There is a question whether the hookworms abstract blood from the intestines, although tests for occult blood are deemed important by some authorities in the diagnosis of this disease.

The granulomatous lesions of *verruca* are markedly haemorrhagic.

Some consider *ship beriberi* to be of the nature of *scurvy* in which case one should have in mind spongy, bleeding gums and the intramuscular haemorrhages of *scurvy*.

OEDEMA

Oedema, especially about the ankles, is to be looked for in all the secondary anaemias of the tropics, particularly malaria and ancylostomiasis.

Beriberi.—The oedema begins at first about the feet, especially about the dorsal junction of phalanges and metatarsus. It is characteristically pretibial. It may remain confined to the shin or go up to knees, scrotum, sternal region or trunk. It is generally symmetrical but may be unilateral. It may become a general anasarca, even in 48 hours.

The swelling of the face is at times enormous, the eyelids being so oedematous that the patient can only see by separating them with the fingers. The oedema is more solid than that of nephritis. It not only rapidly appears but disappears as rapidly.

The oedema of beriberi may involve the glottis (oedema of glottis).

Oedema of genital origin is less marked than in nephritis or cardiac disease. We may also have localized areas of oedema 3 or 4 inches in diameter.

Calabar Swellings.—These seem connected with infections with *Filaria loa*. The swellings originate suddenly and disappear in 3 or 4 days. They are hard and do not pit on pressure. These smooth swellings, often 2 to 4 inches in extent, are most often seen on arms, face or ankles.

In *trypanosomiasis* oedema of the face and especially of the eyelids may be striking. There may also be patches of oedema elsewhere.

In *Katayama disease* the urticarial areas of oedema have given it the name of urticarial fever.

CHAPTER XXXIX

JAUNDICE AND THE LIVER AND SPLEEN IN TROPICAL DISEASES

JAUNDICE

Although the appearance of jaundice immediately suggests a disease of the liver yet as a matter of fact those diseases of the tropics in which the liver involvement is the sole or chief feature rarely show marked jaundice.

In *tropical hepatitis* or congestion of the liver or, as it is often termed, tropical liver, there is rarely a distinct jaundice and if such occur it is only temporary. Such terms as earthy, muddy, sallow, sub-icteric or pale lemon tint are more often applied than jaundice.

Liver abscess rarely gives rise to a definite jaundice unless the abscess be so situated as to cause pressure on the bile ducts.

In *clonorchiosis*, or the liver fluke disease of man, jaundice is not a feature of the disease except in the very late stages.

In those liver cirrhoses associated with *Katayama disease*, *malaria* or *kala-azar* there is no typical jaundice.

The tropical diseases in which jaundice is an important diagnostic feature are yellow fever, blackwater fever, bilious remittent fever and relapsing fever.

Yellow Fever.—There are cases which succumb without having shown jaundice but immediately following death the yellowish discoloration has been noted. At autopsy the yellow fever cadaver is almost invariably deeply jaundiced.

Very important is the fact that the jaundice of yellow fever does not appear until late, about the 3rd or 4th day. When jaundice appears earlier, as by the 2nd day, the prognosis is almost surely a fatal one.

The icterus is more marked about the face, neck and upper parts of the trunk. The albuminuria precedes the jaundice.

Blackwater Fever.—In a typical case of this disease we have within a few hours a marked jaundice which tends to deepen. It is usually more or less marked according as the haemoglobinuria may be. It does not show the tendency to persist as does the jaundice of yellow fever.

Bilious Remittent Fever.—The jaundice appears rather earlier than that of yellow fever but is rarely seen on the first day of the paroxysm as with blackwater fever.

Of great diagnostic value is the early appearance of bile colored urine as different from the haemoglobin tinged urine of blackwater. The albuminous urine of yellow fever is not apt to show any bile coloring in the first 3 or 4 days of the disease.

Relapsing Fever.—There is a clinical type of relapsing fever associated with jaundice and a high death rate which was first described by Griesinger from Egypt. This icteric type is not infrequent in Asia. This jaundice is late and the disease much resembles yellow fever. The enlarged painful spleen and the finding of spirochaetes in the peripheral circulation are essential to differentiation.

ALTERATIONS IN SIZE OF THE LIVER

There is only a slight enlargement in the ordinary case of tropical liver but in some cases it may extend 3 or 4 fingers' breadth below the costal cartilages or rarely to the umbilicus.

In *liver abscess* the enlargement is a rather late feature, and the condition should be diagnosed before we have the assistance of protruding ribs and distention of the intercostal spaces. As the abscess is usually located in the upper portion of the right lobe the enlargement is usually upwards and is best made out with the X ray, showing the cupola-like projection.

In *Kala-azar* the liver does not begin to enlarge until after about 3 months from the time of onset at which time the spleen will be quite large. Decided enlargement is generally noted by the 6th month.

The liver cirrhoses due to *schistosomiasis* or *malaria* may show slight enlargement or no particular change.

Sprue is a disease which gives a decided atrophy of the liver. Some authorities have noted a decrease of the size of the liver in cholera. The liver of *yellow fever* is of normal size and is not associated with splenic enlargement.

In the tropics one must always keep in mind the possibility of a liver enlargement being due to syphilis.

PAINS OF THE LIVER

In tropical liver there is more a sensation of weight than one of pain. In liver abscess, however, there are painful dragging sensations and, at times, with abscess of the upper right lobe, pain referred to the right shoulder. There is a marked tendency to splint the liver as shown by

the costal breathing and moderate rigidity of the right rectus. The patient tends to lie on his back as shifting to either side, especially the left, causes pain. The legs are drawn up to relieve tension. Any jolting of the liver in palpation is exquisitely painful.

When active suppuration is going on in the liver the pain may be of an acute throbbing character. With abscess of the left lobe the pains may suggest gastric disease while with an abscess of the concave surface of the liver there may be referred pain in the appendix region.

In *blackwater fever* and *bilious remittent fever* there may be tenderness of the liver as well as the more prominent pain in the spleen.

In *plague* there is a marked congestion of the liver as of other viscera and there may be some tenderness.

The liver becomes tender as well as showing enlargement in infections with *Clonorchis*.

SPLENIC ENLARGEMENTS AND PAINS

Splenic puncture has been carried out for diagnosis chiefly in kala-azar, malaria and Malta fever. Some authorities have reported fatalities from spleen puncture in kala-azar approximating one percent so that many advise the safer liver puncture to that of the spleen. Spleen puncture would only exceptionally be called for in malaria as there is usually no difficulty in making the diagnosis from a blood smear. Malta fever can usually best be diagnosed by blood culture taken at the height of fever and recent work by Wenyon and others would indicate that blood cultures on N.N.N. medium might take the place of spleen puncture in kala-azar.

Kala-azar.—The splenic enlargement is the most conspicuous change in the disease, the spleen often reaching the umbilicus by the third month and later possibly filling up the entire left side of the abdomen. The coincident emaciation of the patient makes the splenic tumor more apparent. When first enlarging the spleen may be the source of considerable pain and tenderness.

Fluctuations in the size of the spleen have been noted in the course of the disease, diminution in size often attending severe diarrhoeal attacks. In spleen or liver puncture the needle must be dry so that the parasites shall not suffer distortion.

Malaria.—Splenic enlargement and tenderness are important points in diagnosis of malaria.

In acute malignant tertian infections the spleen is often diffuent so that it is liable to rupture upon slight injury. One should even

exercise care not to palpate the spleen too violently and the possibility of accident should be thought of in making a spleen puncture.

The typical malaria spleen is the ague cake of malarial cachexia. Here we have a greatly enlarged spleen with a thickened capsule and firm consistence. This spleen may fill up one side of the abdomen.

Malta Fever.—The splenic enlargement in this disease usually corresponds about to that of typhoid fever. At times, however, the size may be so great as even to suggest kala-azar.

Relapsing Fever.—Splenic enlargement and tenderness are marked features in this disease, often being noted early in the course.

Blackwater Fever.—The spleen is painful and enlarged. The splenic enlargement in this disease and relapsing fever are important in differential diagnosis from yellow fever, a disease in which the spleen is unaffected.

The spleen may be enlarged in Japanese schistosomiasis as well as in rectal schistosomiasis.

Darling has recently noted that it may be difficult to differentiate the anaemia of malarial cachexia from that due to hookworm disease. As a matter of fact most authorities note a diminution in the size of the spleen in ancylostomiasis rather than an increase and splenic enlargement would certainly favor a diagnosis of malarial anaemia.

CHAPTER XL

THE URINE AND THE GENITO-URINARY APPARATUS IN THE DIAGNOSIS OF TROPICAL DISEASE

THE URINE

Of the chemical tests employed in the examination of urine that for the presence of sugar is rarely required, as there is no tropical disease in which the presence or absence of sugar is of diagnostic importance.

The determination not only of the presence of albumin in the urine but, as well, of the variations quantitatively from day to day is, however, most necessary in many of the tropical diseases and particularly in yellow fever and blackwater fever.

The simplest and most reliable test for albumin is the heat test with the subsequent addition of a sufficient number of drops of 5% acetic acid to make the boiled urine acid and incidentally to dissolve any phosphates which may have separated out on boiling.

Ulrich's test is a very simple one and only calls for reagents which are usually at hand. Heat a saturated solution of common salt, containing 2% of glacial acetic acid, and superimpose the urine to be tested upon the hot reagent. A ring shows the presence of albumin.

For Heller's test, pour a small amount of nitric acid into a narrow test-tube and, while holding the tube at an angle of about 45°, superimpose a layer of the urine to be tested, which is delivered drop by drop from a pipette and allowed to flow down the side of the tube.

This test can be converted into a quantitative one which is sufficiently accurate for clinical purposes. It is based on the fact that a specimen of urine containing 0.003% of albumin will give a perceptible ring at the layering of the urine and acid in two minutes. If the ring appears at once or in a few seconds the albumin content is greater. From the qualitative test an idea can be formed as to the amount of albumin which the urine contains, a heavy ring forming immediately showing a considerable albumin content. Probably the highest elimination of albumin is found in chronic parenchymatous nephritis where it may run from 1 to 3%. In an ordinary case of acute nephritis 0.5% would be an average content.

Recently I have been using for both qualitative and quantitative albumin tests the following apparatus. This is simply a five-inch piece of one-fourth inch soft glass tubing heated at a point 2 inches from one end, drawn out for about two inches and bent to form a U tube with one end shorter than the other. This form of tube enables one to perform two tests with the same column of nitric acid and is easily

cleaned and dried. They may be kept suspended around a glass tumbler's rim. Taking up a small amount of nitric acid with a capillary bulb pipette it is deposited in the capillary curve of the bent tube. This acid pipette should be kept attached to the acid bottle. With a second pipette the urine is deposited in the short arm of the U tube and the presence of albumin shows by a distinct ring at the junction of urine and acid in the clear capillary tubing. The long arm will serve for the introduction of a second specimen of urine for the albumin test.

For quantitative test we dilute the filtered urine with one or more parts of normal salt solution according to the intensity of the albumin ring. A very convenient way of making the dilution is with a graduated centrifuge tube. Make a one to ten dilution of the urine, mix and draw up with a bulb pipette and deposit in the short arm of the U tube. A distinct ring forms in 2 or 3 seconds. Pour off one-half of the diluted urine and make up with an equal amount of saline. Deposit this 1-20 dilution in the long arm. The ring forms in about a minute. With further testing it is found that a one to forty dilution shows a perceptible ring in just 2 minutes. This final and successful dilution multiplied by 0.0033 gives the percentage of albumin in the urine ($40 \times 0.0033 = 0.13\%$).

Should it be desired to determine the nature of the proteids present either in urine or in exudates or transudates the following method is applicable. Determine the percentage of total proteid by the method employed above. Then throw down the globulins by the addition of an equal amount of a saturated solution of ammonium sulphate, filter and estimate the proteid content of the filtrate. The difference between that and the total gives the percentage of globulin. The filtrate is now treated with 5% acetic acid until a precipitate of nucleo-proteid ceases to form; the fluid is filtered and the clear filtrate (which should not show any turbidity with a drop of 5% acetic acid) is tested for its proteid content, which represents the serum albumin. When the combined percentage of globulins and serum albumin is subtracted from the total proteid percentage we have the percentage of nucleo-proteid.

Very important in tests of the urine are those for blood. With the unaided eye a smoky coloured urine, more or less reddish brown in color, is suggestive in cases of haematuria, while in haemoglobinuria we usually have a more or less porter coloured, turbid fluid which, however, shows a clear haemoglobin tinged fluid when centrifuged to throw down the haemoglobin casts and granular débris of the disintegrated red cells. Upon shaking such urine we get a pinkish foam instead of the yellowish one of icteric urine.

A strip of white filter paper when partially dipped into urine shows pinkish coloured waves which are more deeply coloured at the summit of the waves while the paper which absorbs bile containing urine shows the yellowish colour and waves less yellow at the summits of the coloured waves.

For haematuria we may use either the microscopic method for the recognition of red cells or chemical ones. The red cell is best recognized by the double contour of the 7.5 mikron disk. Spores of moulds,

which greatly resemble red cells, are smaller, usually not more than 5 mikrons.

The following technique is of the greatest value not only because it makes the red cells more distinct but because by staining the various epithelial elements it gives us more exact information as to distinction between the segmented nucleus of pus cells and the single one of renal cells. Make a streak of vaseline across a slide one inch from one end. Then deposit a drop of urinary sediment, taken up from the centrifuge tube with a pipette, about $\frac{1}{4}$ inch from the grease line. Then drop a large drop of Gram's iodine solution on this sediment and then apply one side of a square cover glass to the vaseline line and allow it to fall gently on the drop of sediment and stain. There is no current motion and casts and other urinary elements remain under the cover glass instead of floating out beyond the margins. It is well to examine the unstained sediment with a $\frac{2}{3}$ inch objective before adding the iodine and applying the cover glass, as one gets a better idea of casts with a low power and unstained than in any other way.

With haemoglobinuria we necessarily turn to chemical or spectroscopic tests which are also applicable to microscopically doubtful cases of haematuria.

For Teichman's Haemin Crystals.—Prepare a solution of 0.1 gram each of KI, KBr, and KCL in 100 c.c. of acetic acid. This is a stable solution. Mix some of the material with a few drops of the solution on a slide, apply a cover-glass and warm the material until bubbles begin to appear (gentle steaming), then examine for dark-brown crystals.

The most rapid method of detection of blood in the urine is by using the microspectroscope. An ordinary hand spectroscope will answer however.

Donogany's test is very satisfactory. To 10 c.c. of urine add 1 c.c. ammonium sulphide solution and 1 c.c. of pyridin. The urine will assume a more or less deep orange color according to its blood content. The spectrum of alkaline methæmoglobin or hæmochromogen will be obtained.

In making the guaiac or other tests it is a good plan to repeatedly filter the blood-containing urine through the filter. Then touch a spot on the moist filter with the guaiac or benzidin solution and then finally drop on this so treated spot a drop or two of hydrogen peroxide solution. For such tests see under fæces.

In *sprue* and *pellagra* we have a rather marked increase in indican. It is probable that many cases of vague manifestations of neurasthenia with loss of physical and mental energy are connected with autointoxication rather than tropical heat or intestinal parasites.

Of the tests for indicanuria that of Obermayer is generally used.

Take 10 c.c. urine and treat it with 1 c.c. of sol. of lead subacetate. Filter. Of this filtrate take 6 c.c. and treat with an equal amount of Obermayer's reagent; allow to stand for 5 minutes then shake gently with 2 c.c. of chloroform. Obermayer's reagent is strong HCl containing 2 parts of ferric chloride to the liter—0.1 gram to 50 c.c. of HCl.

A more exact method is to pour off the supernatant acid urine, wash the chloroform with water, then pour off as much of the supernatant water as possible and add 10 c.c. of alcohol. A clear blue fluid results.

In conditions where there is a great destruction of red cells tests for urobilin are important. Plehn considers the presence of urobilin as of importance in the diagnosis of *latent malaria*, which is true, provided other causes for red blood cell destruction are excluded. *Blackwater fever* cases usually show an intense urobilinuria.

The best test is that of Schlesinger. To the unfiltered urine add an equal amount of a saturated solution of zinc acetate in absolute alcohol. Shake, add a few drops of Lugol's solution and filter. Fluorescence in the filtrate shows the presence of urobilin. The degree of blood destruction is indicated by the intensity of the fluorescence.

In conditions associated with the presence of bile pigments in the urine we may conveniently employ the Gmelin test in the following manner. Filter the urine several times through the filter and then touch the moist inner surface of the paper with a glass rod dipped in commercial nitric acid. A ring-like play of colours, green, blue, violet and red circle out from the spot touched. A green colour must be noted for positive diagnosis.

Tests for bile acids seem to have but slight value in differential diagnosis.

A very simple and apparently quite reliable test for deficiencies in liver functioning is that known as Ehrlich's aldehyd reaction. The reagent is a 2% solution of p. dimethylaminobenzaldehyde in equal parts of water and concentrated hydrochloric acid.

For the test treat 5 c.c. urine with 5 to 10 drops of the reagent. Agitate a few minutes and a positive reaction is shown by a fine cherry-red color, thought to be due to urobilinogen.

The urine sample should be perfectly fresh and not long exposed to light.

In connection with derangement of liver functioning we may have an acidosis which is most satisfactorily determined by the test of blood serum as described under blood examination. As there is usually an increase in the ammonia quotient when the urea functioning of the liver is impaired we may estimate the ratio of N eliminated as ammonia to that of the total nitrogen or more approximately and less accurately to that of urea. Normally we have about 0.7 gram of N eliminated daily which is from 3% to 5% of the total nitrogen.

For this purpose the urea may be estimated by one of the methods ordinarily recommended in books on urine. For the estimation of ammonia nitrogen the following test is recommended.

Free ammonia reacts with formalin to form hexamethylenetetramine. If sodium hydrate is added to neutralized urine in the presence of formalin free ammonia is liberated and reacts with the formalin. So soon as all the ammonia has been liberated, the end reaction occurs.

Ronchese first utilized this principle and Mathison found that pot. oxalate made the end reaction sharper. Brown found that preliminary clearing with lead subacetate made the end reaction still sharper and removed certain nitrogenous substances which reacted with formalin making the result only about 5% higher than with Schaffer's method. The technic is as follows: About 60 c.c. of filtered urine are treated with 3 grams of basic-lead acetate, well stirred, allowed to stand a few minutes and filtered. The filtrate is treated with 2 grams of neutral potassium oxalate well stirred and filtered; 10 c.c. of the clear filtrate are diluted to 50 c.c. with distilled water; a few drops of 1% phenolphthalein solution are added. The mixture will be slightly alkaline or acid. Fifteen grams potassium oxalate are added and stirred. It is exactly neutralized with decinormal NaOH or H_2SO_4 . Twenty c.c. of 20% commercial formalin, previously made neutral, are added, and the solution again titrated with decinormal NaOH to neutralization. Every c.c. of decinormal NaOH corresponds to 0.0017 gram NH_3 . The quantity of ammonia is then calculated on the basis of the twenty-four-hour volume. Example: The 10 c.c. of urine required 4 c.c. N/10 NaOH to give a pink color. $4 \times 0.0017 = 0.0068$. Then 100 c.c. urine would contain 0.068 and 1000 c.c. (twenty-four-hour urine amount) 0.68 gram of ammonia.

AMOUNT OF URINE IN 24 HOURS

Normally a man passes about 1,200 c.c. of urine in 24 hours, a woman somewhat less. When the amount is under 750 c.c. we have an oliguria. To consider a polyuria as present the patient should pass more than 3,000 c.c., as this amount may be considered the upper normal limit. In anuria we have a cessation of renal activity.

The disease in which anuria is most characteristic is *cholera*. During the stage of evacuation the urinary secretion becomes less and less along with the progressive failure of circulation and, during the algid stage, we have a suppression of urine. In the stage of reaction the favorable outcome is the reappearance of urine, which increases in amount to become a polyuria. In unfavorable cases the anuria continues.

In *blackwater fever* anuria may result from the blocking up of the renal tubules by haemoglobin casts. Blackwater urine is irritating so that there is vesical tenesmus with frequent urination.

The degree of renal involvement is of great prognostic value in *yellow fever* and those cases where the oliguria goes on to suppression are apt to terminate fatally.

In *heat stroke* there is an oliguria or anuria which may be followed, during convalescence, by a polyuria.

In *dropsical beriberi* there is an oliguria or, rarely, an anuria which with the rapid disappearance of the general body oedema may become an excessive polyuria.

Rarely one may observe a critical flow of urine in *dengue* at the time of the fall of the primary febrile accession.

ALBUMINURIA

The disease in which this is of peculiar diagnostic and prognostic value is *yellow fever*. We expect albumin about the second day with a steady increase in amount during succeeding days of the fever. The degree of oliguria or rather anuria is of greater prognostic value than the degree of albuminuria. The albuminuria is of great diagnostic value in differentiating yellow fever from dengue.

Blackwater fever shows a great abundance of albumin with the appearance of the haemoglobinuria and diminishes as the colour of the urine clears up.

In *malaria* albumin was present in 38% of benign tertian infections and 58% of malignant ones at Johns Hopkins Hospital.

The absence of albumin in *beriberic urine* is important in differential diagnosis from acute nephritis.

HAEMOGLOBINURIA

Paroxysmal haemoglobinuria or haemoglobinuria the result of poisoning by potassium chlorate or from severe burns or intravenous injections of foreign sera may be noted in the tropics. The vast majority of cases of tropical haemoglobinuria, however, are due either to blackwater fever or to the administration of the acid salts of quinine to one predisposed to quinine haemoglobinuria. While it must be admitted that haemoglobinuria may result from quinine it is certainly so rare in subtropical countries, where great amounts of quinine are administered in treatment of malaria, as to be unimportant. It is only where the malignant tertian parasite flourishes that we have the question of the importance of quinine in producing haemoglobinuria brought up.

The dark, porter coloured urine of blackwater is diagnostic even to the patient. The urinary sediment consists of granular debris with occasional haematoidin crystals. Albuminuria runs parallel with the haemoglobinuria. Pains in the loins, probably from the plugging of the renal tubules by the detritus of red cell destruction, is a

feature of blackwater fever. In blackwater fever we have the early appearance, even in a few hours, in a patient who is markedly asthenic and miserable, of jaundice, porter-coloured urine and albuminuria.

HAEMATURIA

Among tropical diseases that which immediately suggests haematuria is vesical bilharziasis. The blood in the urine is in the form of red cells, it is a haematuria and not a haemoglobinuria. The passage of blood usually occurs at the end of micturition and it is either in the last few drops of urine or in the sediment obtained after centrifuging that we note the terminal spined eggs of *S. haematobium* which prove the diagnosis.

Red blood cells in the urine may also be noted in the haematochyluria of filarial disease.

When we have blood in the urine in yellow fever it is a haematuria and comes on about the same time as the black vomit and other haemorrhages resulting from degeneration of the endothelial linings of the blood capillaries, which only takes place about the 3rd or 4th day of the disease.

Haematuria may also be noted in plague at the time when the haemorrhages into the skin occur.

CHYLURIA

Vesical varices from lymphatic obstruction, due to filarial disease, are the most frequent cause of the milky urine of chyluria. The urine usually has a pinkish tinge from blood admixture so that the condition is really a haemato-chyluria. The thoracic duct may not be the seat of obstruction which has taken place elsewhere when the condition is lymphuria instead of chyluria. Lymph and chyle differ in fat content, the former having about 35% and the latter 65%.

In chyluria the morning urine is often clear while that at night is milky. On standing, chylous urine separates into an upper cream like layer with a pinkish sediment and, between, a pinkish white fluid in which floats a clot. Filarial embryos may or may not be found.

AFFECTIONS OF THE GENITO-URINARY ORGANS

In *blackwater fever* we have marked pain in the region of the kidneys due to the plugging of the tubules with haemoglobin casts. Vesical tenesmus and pain along the ureters may also be present.

In *malaria* Thayer states that nephritis occurs in about 2% of malignant tertian cases.

In *bilharziasis* the kidneys are involved secondarily—the change being brought about by stone in the bladder and cystitis leading to hydronephrosis and pyelonephritis.

In *cholera* the kidneys are markedly affected, especially the epithelial lining of the tubules.

Malta fever may rarely be attended by an orchitis.

One of the manifestations of filarial disease is *lymph scrotum* in which the scrotum is covered with small blebs containing a chylous fluid which may possibly contain microfilariae. It is associated with recurring attacks of lymphangitis. There is also a filarial orchitis and we may have a lymphangitis of the lymphatics of the cord. Again filarial disease may show a chylocele in which the tunica vaginalis contains a fluid similar to that seen in the varices of lymph scrotum. This fluid may also show filarial embryos.

In *endemic funiculitis* there is a sudden onset with high temperature and pain in spermatic cord and epididymis. The general condition rapidly becomes grave with a hard, tender, cylindrical swelling along the cord and also pain and swelling of epididymis. It is a streptococcus infection usually engrafted on a filarial or bilharzial process and demands immediate surgical measures.

Kala-azar may be accompanied by sloughing of the scrotum at the time manifestations of cancrum oris are noted.

Cases of gangrene of the scrotum have been reported as connected with *malaria*.

If *leprosy* comes on before puberty the sexual organs remain in an undeveloped condition. Leprous infiltrations are noted in the testicles and ovaries. In nerve leprosy, which does not usually come on until after puberty, the women may bear healthy children and it is now thought that the view that leprosy markedly tends to produce sterility is lacking in confirmation.

In *ancylostomiasis* menstruation is markedly interfered with and amenorrhoea is often a prominent symptom. Young men who have been affected before puberty show lack of development of pubic hair along with infantile genital organs. The girls do not show normal breast development.

Granuloma of the pudenda is a disease which is rather frequent in British Guiana.

Dhobie itch is characteristically located in the crutch region.

BACTERIOLOGICAL EXAMINATION OF URINE

About the only tropical disease in which a bacteriological examination of the urine is of particular value is that in connection with *Malta*

fever. It is advisable to cleanse the meatus with alcohol and then having discarded the first ounce or so of the urine to receive the remainder in a sterile salt mouth bottle. A drop of this urine can be deposited on a poured agar plate and smeared out over the surface.

As dysentery bacilli and cholera spirilla are practically absent from the blood, urine examination for the causative organisms in these diseases is fruitless.

CHAPTER XLI

THE FÆCES AND THE ALIMENTARY TRACT IN TROPICAL DISEASES

THE FÆCES

It is advisable to examine a stool macroscopically before taking up the microscopical examination. Pus or blood in stools may often be noted without the aid of the microscope.

The normal stool is sausage shaped and soft.

The mucus of bacillary dysentery is opaque and grayish from the great number of pus and phagocytic cells. It is well to remember that Charcot Leyden crystals, which are practically always absent from bacillary dysentery stools, are not infrequent findings in the amœbæ containing stools; of course, these crystals appear in other intestinal parasite infections.

In obstruction of the common bile duct we have acholic, whitish, foul-smelling stools. If the putty color be due to bacterial change exposure to the air will restore the brownish tinge.

Sprue stools are white-wash to putty colored, pultaceous, and filled with air bubbles. The amount is excessive.

A very practical way of obtaining amœbæ is to pass a rectal tube or a piece of drainage tube with fenestrations into the bowel, and amœbæ may be found in the mucus filling the perforations in the tube.

Ordinarily the stool is best collected in quart fruit jars and examined as soon after evacuation as possible. The wooden spatula like tongue depressors are well adapted for handling the specimen.

In examining a stool, it is well to color the drop of fæces, which is to be covered with the cover-glass, with a small loopful of 1/2% solution of neutral red. If diluting fluid is used, it should be salt solution, and not water. The neutral red tinges the granules of the endoplasm of amœbæ and flagellates a very striking brown-red color, thus differentiating them from vegetable cells or body cells.

Whether examining fæces or the mucus particle, it is well to reserve report on amœbæ or flagellates until motion is observed. Encysted protozoa are difficult to diagnose, unless one possesses considerable experience.

Epithelial cells are generally more or less disintegrated. In the mucus of bacillary dysenteric stools, however, large intact phagocytic cells are frequent, which may be mistaken for encysted amœbæ.

When a smear preparation is desired, we may smear out a fragment of mucus and stain by Romanowsky's or Gram's method. Beautiful preparations may be made by mixing the fæces with water, then centrifuging for one minute. This throws down vegetable débris and crystals. Now decant the supernatant fluid, which holds the

bacteria in suspension, and add an equal amount of alcohol. Again centrifuge, decant, and smear out and examine the bacterial sediment.

Simply taking a small mass of faeces and emulsifying it with a wooden toothpick on a concave slide in 70% alcohol—then, after the sediment settles, taking up a loopful with platinum loop from the surface and smearing out, gives a very satisfactory smear. Gram's method, with dilute carbol fuchsin counterstaining, gives the best picture.

To culture for typhoid, dysentery, cholera, or other bacteria, take up the material in a tube of sterile bouillon and smear it out with a swab over a lactose litmus agar plate or an Endo or Conradi-Drigalski plate. Before streaking the plates they should be very dry on the surface. This can be best done by pouring the melted agar into a plate with a circular piece of filter-paper in the lid and placing in the incubator for one-half hour to dry. The filter-paper absorbs the moisture. Then inoculate the surface of the plate with the faecal material.

The test for occult blood is indicated in helminthiasis as well as in the conditions for which it is usually tested.

Take 5 grams of faeces and rub it up thoroughly in a mortar with 15 c.c. of a mixture of equal parts of alcohol, glacial acetic acid and ether. Filter through an unmoistened pleated filter paper repeatedly until only 3 or 4 c.c. remain of the filtrate. The faeces filtrate can be first tested chemically by depositing a few drops in the center of 3 or 4 circles of white filter-paper placed in a Petri dish or upon an ordinary white plate.

The moistened spot is then treated with a few drops of a freshly prepared alcoholic solution of guaiac resin (about $\frac{1}{2}$ gram of guaiac resin is broken up into small fragments and shaken up in about 3 c.c. of alcohol) and finally there is dropped upon the spot a few drops of a solution of hydrogen peroxide. Waves of blue color extending out into the moistened filter-paper show a positive test for blood.

For the benzidin test pour on this faeces filtrate-moistened filter-paper a few drops of the following solution: 2 c.c. of a saturated alcoholic solution of benzidin, 2 c.c. of solution of peroxide of hydrogen and two drops of glacial acetic acid.

If the aloin test is preferred we treat the filtrate-moistened filter-paper with a few drops of a 3% solution of aloin in 70% alcohol and then treating the spot with hydrogen peroxide solution. Brick red colour.

It is in the faeces we examine either for the parasites or for their ova in connection with practically all the flukes, except the lung fluke and the bladder fluke; for intestinal taeniasis and for practically all the round worms, except the filarial ones.

In the tropics, the examination of the faeces vastly exceeds in value that of urine and is possibly more important than blood examinations.

There is one point in connection with the statistical reports as to the presence of intestinal parasites in a given section of the tropics that I desire to emphasize.

Because a limited district shows a certain prevalence of intestinal parasites we should not conclude that the entire country from which such findings emanate shows a similar extent and type of infection. Take for instance the Philippine Islands.

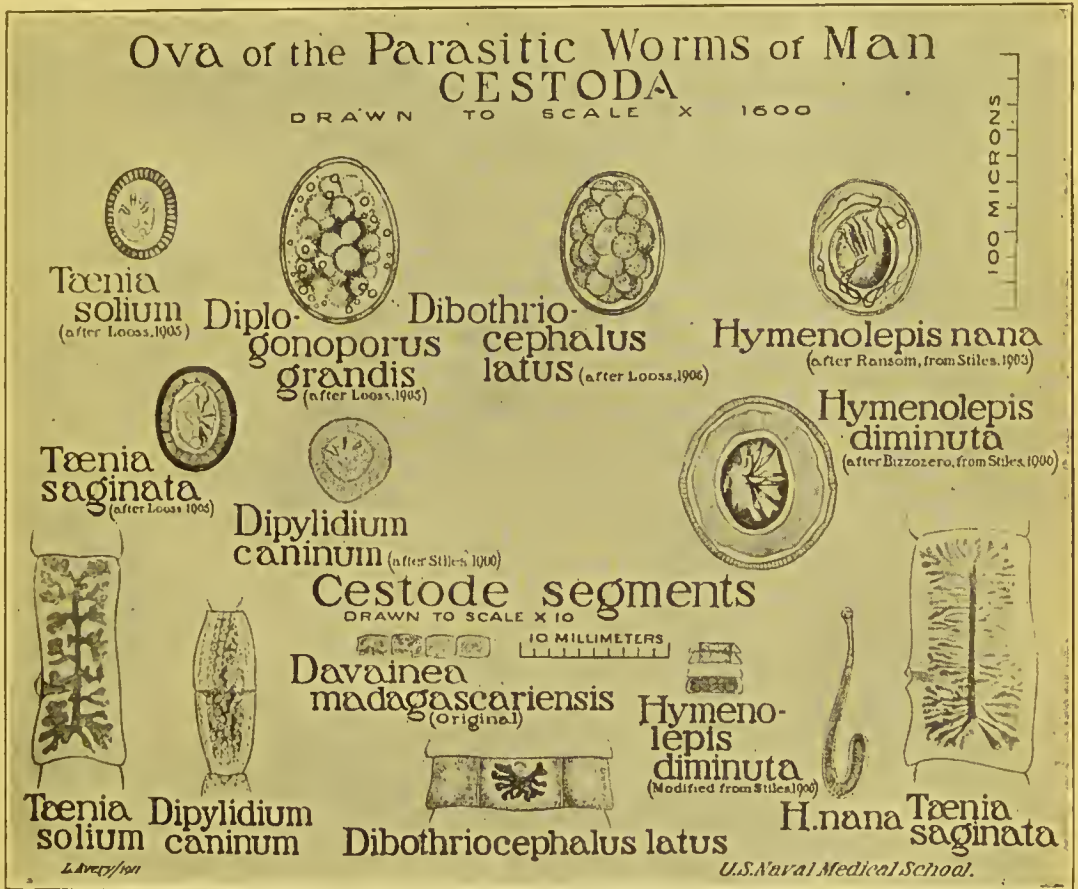


FIG. 82.—Cestodes and cestode ova.

In 1910, there were made in Cavite Province 932 stool examinations upon specimens from cases of sick people and of these only such patients as it was thought required such an examination for diagnostic reasons were made to bring such a specimen of feces.

Of the 932 examinations, 135 or 14.4 per cent failed to show the presence of intestinal parasites or their ova. The remaining positive examinations gave findings as follows:

Organism	Number of infections	Per cent.
<i>Ascaris</i>	627	67.2
<i>Trichocephalus</i>	607	65.1
Flagellates.....	135	14.4
Amœbæ.....	111	10.9
Hookworm.....	23	2.4
<i>Tania saginata</i>	3	.3
<i>Balantidium</i>	1	.1
<i>Strongyloides</i>	1	.1

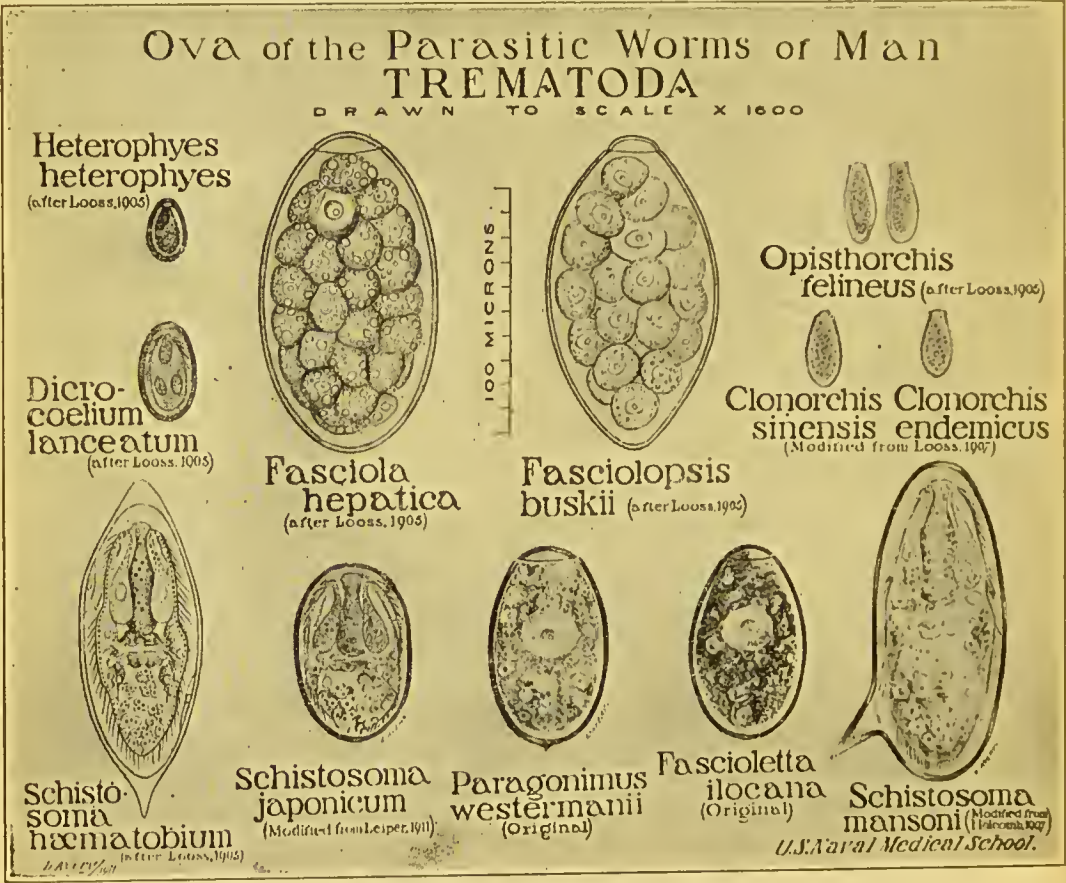


FIG. 83.—Trematode ova.

At Bilibid Prison, Garrison encountered amœbic infection in 23 per cent of the cases. In the medical survey of Taytay, his findings were 2.7 per cent. Rissler and Gomez report only 0.39 per cent of amœbic infection in their examinations in Las Piñas and no cases showing such infections in Tuguegarao and Santa Isabel. Such numbers are in striking contrast with those of former investigators, some of whom have reported as high a percentage of infection as 70.

Our findings as regards flagellates (14.4 per cent) corresponded fairly closely with those of Garrison, namely, 21 per cent at Bilibid and 5.5 per cent at Taytay.

Garrison, for *Trichocephalus* infection, obtained 59 per cent at Bilibid and 77 per cent at Taytay; Rissler and Gomez give 53 per cent at Las Piñas; 25.9 per cent at Tuguegarao, and 6.23 at Santa Isabel. Our findings were 65.1 per cent.

As regards *Ascaris* we found a higher rate of infection than for any other parasite (67.2 per cent). Garrison encountered 26 per cent at Bilibid and 82.9 per cent at Taytay. The percentages of Rissler and Gomez are 77, 73, and 60 respectively for Las Piñas, Tuguegarao, and Santa Isabel.



FIG. 84.—Nematode ova.

Garrison noted at Bilibid an incidence second only to *Trichocephalus* for hookworm infection, namely 52 per cent. His percentage of infection at Taytay was 11.6. Rissler and Gomez found 11.14 of all cases examined, infected with hookworms at Las Piñas; 8.01 per cent in Tuguegarao, and 45.38 per cent in Santa Isabel. We noted only 2.4 per cent for Cavite, San Roque, and Caridad.

Our findings as regards *Strongyloides* (0.1 per cent) were far below those reported by Garrison at Bilibid (3 per cent) and at Taytay (0.7 per cent). Rissler and Gomez found 2.24 per cent infected in Las Piñas, but no cases were encountered in Tuguegarao and Santa Isabel. The same factors influencing hookworm infection in this

locality may be operative for *Strongyloides*. Garrison found 0.2 per cent of the individuals examined at Taytay to be infected with ciliates, while Gomez and Rissler failed to find such infections at Tuguegarao or Santa Isabel. We found a single case in the 932 examinations.

THE ALIMENTARY TRACT

The Mouth

In *pellagra* we have moist fissuring at the angles of the mouth with a large indented tongue with central coating and bare tip and sides. There is often a glairy mucus covering these red borders on the side. The fungiform papillae are prominent. Later on the tongue may become fissured and uniformly red. The buccal mucosa shows a carmine flush. The gums are tender but there is not the tendency to aphthous ulcers one sees in sprue. The flow of saliva is frequently increased.

In *sprue* there is at first great sensitiveness of the buccal mucosa so that articles of moderate pungency give rise to painful burning sensations. The tongue becomes quite sore with vesicle formation along borders and tip which soon turn into ulcers. Ulcerations also occur on the buccal mucosa, particularly at the site of the posterior upper and lower molar teeth (Crombie's ulcer).

The congestion causes a great increase in mucus especially about the faucial pillars and pharynx. Ulcers are common about the fraenum of the tongue. While the tongue is coated at first with red ulcerated tip and sides it later becomes bare of any coating, red and finally even glazed as though varnished. It is at times fissured.

Herpes labialis is not so common in tropical as in temperate climate malarias. It is absent in plague pneumonia.

In *leprosy* the nodules which form on the inside of the cheeks and fauces tend to show ulceration and thickenings. The discharges from the ulcerations in the nose, especially that on the vomer, reach the pharynx and such leprosy bacilli-containing discharges may be expectorated and cause one to consider the material as coming from the lungs.

In *yellow fever* the bleeding from the gums usually precedes the black vomit.

In *kala-azar* and possibly in *malaria* we may have gangrenous conditions of the cheek, as cancrum oris.

In the miliary type of *verruca* we may have the granulomatous lesions appearing on the mucous membranes of the mouth.

We may rarely have parotid gland enlargement in *Malta fever*, *malaria* and *tsutsugamushi*.

Stomach and Oesophagus

Very important in diagnosis is a tenderness in the pyloric end of the stomach, which is brought out by attempting to palpate the epigastric region. It is marked in yellow fever and acute pernicious beriberi as well as in blackwater fever and bilious remittent fever. We also frequently have epigastric tenderness, extending to the right, in ancylostomiasis.

Hookworm patients are often "pot-bellied" and the craving for eating unusual articles, as earth, may be connected with the gastric hyperacidity which the patient desires to neutralize with alkaline earth.

Sprue gives a flatulent dyspepsia with gaseous eructations.

Pellagra gives eructations and pyrosis and very common is a burning sensation going up from the stomach along the line of the oesophagus.

The oesophagus is raw in *sprue* so that swallowing is painful.

Nausea and Vomiting

So many diseases are attended with nausea, besides those in which nausea is accompanied by rather constant vomiting, that it would hardly seem advisable to consider it alone. At the same time the slight nausea which often accompanies *bacillary dysentery*, as one of the manifestations of toxæmia, is of value in differentiating this type of dysentery from the amoebic one.

In *yellow fever* there may be early vomiting of whitish or bile stained mucus but the well known black vomit is a later feature, only occurring after the 4th day when the other hæmorrhagic manifestations set in.

Bilious vomiting is the feature in *bilious remittent fever* which causes the patient the greatest distress.

In *blackwater fever* the frequent retching and bilious vomiting tend to exhaust the patient and the persistent vomiting of green bile often precedes death.

Bilious vomiting may be quite a feature of the icteric type of *relapsing fever*.

Vomiting is often a sign of dangerous vagal involvement in *acute pernicious beriberi*. Some consider that the extreme dilatation of the right heart, pressing on the stomach, may be the excitant of this vomiting.

The vomiting of *cholera* follows the diarrhoea. The material vomited may be of the same character as the rice water stools.

Rarely a *liver abscess* may burst into the stomach, in which case we would have the vomiting of pus. Of course the more common route is by the lungs in which case the chocolate-coloured liver abscess pus would be coughed up instead of vomited up.

The Intestinal Tract

It is usual to consider constipation as a clinical feature of such diseases as plague, yellow fever, Malta fever, beriberi and tsutsugamushi.

Abdominal pains are most often connected with dysenteric conditions and it is customary to state that the greater the tormina, or intestinal griping, the nearer is the dysenteric process to the caecum.

In *cholera* the cramping of the abdominal muscles may follow that of the calf muscles.

In the algid type of *pernicious malaria* the abdominal griping may be severe.

Tenesmus is the condition which along with tormina gives a diagnosis of some form of dysentery.

In *rectal schistosomiasis* the thickenings and blood extravasations, resulting from the eggs extruded by the fluke, may give rise to prolapse of the rectum. This may also occur in severe bacillary dysentery and in a disease of British Guiana and Venezuela, known as *epidemic gangrenous rectitis*, prolapse and gangrene of the rectum may occur. The symptoms are those of gangrenous dysentery.

Diarrhoea

The chronic diarrhoeas of the tropics are often associated with amoebic dysentery and in such cases we generally get a history of recurring attacks of diarrhoea separated by periods of constipation.

In *sprue* the condition generally sets in as a morning diarrhoea, very profuse and painless. *Hill diarrhoea* also shows frequent stools of whitish colour from early morning until about noon.

The typical stool of *sprue* is a gas permeated, putty coloured, offensive mass, extraordinarily copious.

In *cholera* the rice water stool, which is not attended by pain, causes an unusual sense of prostration even at the onset of the stage of evacuation.

In *pellagra* we often have a recurring diarrhoea or mild manifestations of dysentery.

In *Japanese schistosomiasis*, following the stage of urticarial fever, we have our best diagnostic means in examining the blood-tinged bit of mucus capping the stool for the spineless ova of the fluke.

The *fluke diseases* of the liver and intestines give rise to various disturbances. The diagnosis is by the finding of the specific ova.

In infections with *Strongyloides stercoralis* there may be vague manifestations of neurasthenia and diarrhoeal disturbances.

Infections with amoebae, intestinal flagellates and ciliates are discussed under dysentery.

Intestinal flagellates are so common in the stools of well people in the tropics that one should be very careful in assigning a pathogenic rôle to them.

Intestinal Myiases

In the tropics vague intestinal disturbances or violent abdominal cramping may be brought about by dipterous larvae in the intestinal canal. The symptoms may be those of a dysentery and may be attended with fever and malaise.



FIG. 85.—Larva of *Musca vomitoria* (*Calliphora vomitoria*): below, of natural size; above, enlarged. (Leuckart.) (From Tyson.)



FIG. 86.—Larva of *Anthomyia canicularis*, enlarged. Rarely found in the stool. (Gould.) (From Tyson.)

The larvae usually obtain access to the alimentary tract in food taken in by the mouth. Flies of the genus *Sarcophaga* are prone to deposit their larvae on food, especially meat that is somewhat tainted. Other flies, as *Musca* or *Anthomyia*, may lay their eggs on food. Flies of the genus *Anthomyia* tend to lay their eggs on plants.

It is possible for a fly to deposit its eggs or larvae about the anus while the man is at stool.

Great care must always be observed to assure one's self that fly larvae, which may be present in the stool, have not originated from larvae deposited on the stool subsequent to its passage.

CHAPTER XLII

NEUROLOGICAL CONSIDERATIONS IN TROPICAL DISEASES

There is a great tendency in the tropics to ascribe neurological manifestations to beriberi or malaria. It must be acknowledged, however, that various sensory and motor phenomena, which may show themselves from time to time, in those who have suffered from beriberi, are common and prove sources of confusion in diagnosis. Tropical sunlight with its ultra violet rays had a vogue which held sway for a brief period as explaining most nervous conditions in Europeans in the tropics. At present we are inclined to believe that excesses in eating and drinking may be more potent in the production of nervous breakdowns than are factors less cosmopolitan.

DELIRIUM AND COMA

It is difficult to make a sharp distinction between a disease showing delirium and one showing coma as delirious states tend to be followed by coma or such conditions may alternate.

In *yellow fever* the alert, suspicious mental state may give way to one of marked delirium requiring close watching to prevent the patient throwing himself from his bed.

In *plague* there is more of a mild delirious state in which the patient has a great tendency to wander about. The mental state is rather that of an intoxicated person with the thickness of speech and retardation of mental processes.

A delirious state, especially at night, is often noted in *tsutsugamushi*.
Rat bite fever also tends to show delirium.

In the ordinary paroxysm of *malignant tertian* there is quite a tendency to flightiness during the prolonged hot stage. In the cerebral types of pernicious malaria there may be violent delirium followed by coma or the patient may be comatose from the onset of the paroxysm. Such conditions are often mistaken for sunstroke. In the comatose form of malaria we have a high temperature with sighing or stertorous breathing and at times Cheyne-Stokes respiration.

Following upon the algid stage of *cholera* we may have a stage of reaction without the disappearance of anuria, in which a typhoid state, with low muttering delirium or even with an acute delirious state, supervenes.

Toward the end of the sleeping sickness stage of *trypanosomiasis* we have a subnormal temperature with a comatose state.

Comatose states following upon the acute confusional psychoses of *pellagra* are not uncommon. *Pellagra* may show an acute collapse delirium.

In *heat stroke* we may have either delirium or coma. There is no more difficult problem encountered in the tropics than the one of differentiating cerebral malaria from heat stroke.

Oroya fever is frequently accompanied by delirium.

In *typhus fever* (tabardillo) delirious or stuporous states are to be expected about the end of the first week or even earlier. This is a disease in which the clouding of the consciousness is almost as marked as in plague. Delirium is more apt to occur at night.

In very toxic cases of *bacillary dysentery* there may be a mild delirium.

INSOMNIA AND SOMNOLENCE

Insomnia.—Sleeplessness or, at any rate, a condition where the patient only dozes is often seen in *dengue*. This mental alertness and wakefulness may also be noted in yellow fever. In malaria, possibly connected with quinine administration, we may have marked insomnia although cases have been reported of insomnia due to malaria which have been relieved by quinine.

Just as cardiac decompensation from any cause will be attended by a distressing insomnia so is this also a feature of *beriberi* where cardiac involvement is marked.

Malta fever is often attended with a weariness from suffering with the various joint and nerve pains so that insomnia is often marked.

Even in *trypanosomiasis* insomnia may be present at first.

Somnolence.—The disease in which this symptom is best known is *sleeping sickness*. The patient may go to sleep lying in the bright sunlight or in the midst of eating a morsel of food. These cases can be easily aroused but quickly drop off to sleep afterwards. They often deny that they were asleep. Later on in sleeping sickness the patient may sleep from 24 to 36 hours continuously and a more marked tendency to somnolence may be present by day than by night.

In the prodromal stage of *leprosy* somnolence is often marked and accompanied by a sensation of unaccountable weakness. Sweatings and accessions of fever may also be noted at this time.

In *plague* the rather stuporous state of the patient may give the impression of somnolence.

CEPHALALGIA, RACHIALGIA AND OTHER PAINS

Yellow fever is marked by pains in the lumbar region, the *coup de barre* of the French. It is as if the patient had been beaten over the small of the back with a bar of iron. The headache is rather orbital and is often excruciating. There are also frequently heavy, dull pains of the extremities.

Blackwater fever also has marked pains in the lumbar region giving expression to the kidney damage done by the haemoglobin detritus plugging the tubules.

In all forms of *malaria*, but especially in the paroxysms of malignant malaria, there are severe headaches and pains in the extremities. Intermittent neuralgia is often regarded as malarial.

Dengue gives rise to a marked post orbital soreness rather than pain. There is also a marked rachialgia with pains in the limbs often referred to the region of the joints, which, however, are not swollen.

In *Malta fever* the neuralgias, especially sciatica, often associated with suddenly appearing, painful joint swellings, are prominent features.

In *trypanosomiasis* headache is often marked together with a characteristic deep hyperaesthesia, so that the striking of a limb against a hard object gives rise to excruciating pain, there being, however, a delay in the experiencing of the painful sensation.

In *relapsing fever* the headache is often intense with pains in the back and bones.

In *cholera* one of the most striking phenomena of the disease is the terrible cramping of the muscles, especially those of the calves and feet. These pains actually torture the patient. Cramps of abdominal muscles as well as those of extremities are often noted in *heat stroke* in men in firerooms.

In *beriberi* there is often pain in the epigastric region so that the slightest touch causes great distress. This epigastric tenderness is also a feature of yellow fever. The calf muscles are also markedly hyperaesthetic in *beriberi*.

In *leprosy* the neuralgic pains may be very severe while the nerves

are being pressed upon by the connective tissue increase of the endo and perineurium. Mention has been made of excruciating pains of toes, especially the big toe, even suggesting gout.

The excruciating pains of *Oroya fever* are connected with the changes taking place in the bone marrow. There is probably more rapid alteration in the blood picture in this disease than in any other. It might be designated a fulminating pernicious anaemia.

Pain on pressure on dorsal or lumbar spine is common in *pellagra*.

Plague may be associated, during the first day or two, with an excruciating headache. This may even be prodromal but tends to disappear with the rapidly developing stuporous state of the patient.

In *typhus fever* boring headache, oppressive rather than lancinating, is a feature of the first days. It is usually frontal or temporal.

In *malignant tertian* the headache is often quite intense during the prolonged hot stage. The headache of malaria is usually frontal or suboccipital.

TREMORS AND CONVULSIONS

It is in *trypanosomiasis* that we have the most important tremor. It is the fine tremors, which first are noticeable in the tongue and later in hands and even legs, that mark the onset of the stage of sleeping sickness with the trypanosomes in the cerebro spinal fluid. At times an intention tremor may be noted in advanced cases of sleeping sickness. In addition we may have epileptiform seizures in sleeping sickness.

In cerebral manifestations of *pernicious malaria* there is a type characterized by epileptiform convulsions.

In the acute stage of *Brazilian trypanosomiasis* we may have almost any type of cerebral or cord lesion.

Tremors of tongue and hands may be present in the 2nd stage of *pellagra*.

Fibrillary tremors have been noted in the main-en-griffe of *beriberi* but tremors of the tongue and hands, so common in alcoholic neuritis, are rare in *beriberi*.

Convulsive seizures are not uncommon in the hyperpyrexial type of *heat stroke*.

In *schistosomiasis* and *paragonomiasis* as well as in infections with the larval stage of *Taenia solium* we may have brain involvement and manifestations of Jacksonian epilepsy.

ALTERED REFLEXES INCLUDING SENSORY AND MOTOR DISTURBANCES

Beriberi.—It is usually stated that the tendon reflexes of the lower extremity, especially the patellar reflex, are absent. While this is generally true they may at first show an exaggeration and some cases do not seem to show any decided change. There may be striking variation from day to day in the reflexes. The superficial reflexes, especially the cremasteric, are as a rule more active than normally.

The sensory changes in beriberi are less marked than those of the motor side. There is rarely complete anaesthesia but rather a blunting of sensation. Hyperaesthesia, particularly of the muscles of the calf of the leg, is well marked when the muscles are grasped with the hand.

The anaesthesia is earliest noted over the shin bone and dorsum of the foot. A loss of tactile sense is often noted about finger tips making it difficult for the patient to button his coat.

The most striking motor phenomena are the foot and wrist drop, especially the former. The extensor muscles are more markedly involved than the flexors. There is marked muscular weakness of foot as well as hands. The weakness of the muscles of the leg is often the first symptom to be complained of. The type of palsy in beriberi is mainly paraplegic although hemiplegic and monoplegic types have been reported. The paralysis of the diaphragm is the most serious of the muscle palsies.

Contractures of the muscles of the foot or calf of the leg may occur. Contractures of the muscles of the upper extremity are more rare. Muscular atrophy of the leg muscles is often marked. In the upper extremity the muscles of the hand are most frequently atrophied.

Pellagra.—There is considerable variation from time to time in the reflexes. Some authorities attach diagnostic value to the appearance of an exaggerated reflex on one side and a diminution or absence of the corresponding reflex on the other side. Ankle clonus may be present.

Paraesthesias and in particular a burning sensation of the erythematous areas are often noted. Hyperaesthesia of the dorsal and lumbar regions is often noted. Pruritus is at times complained of in the region of the perineum. We have muscular weakness.

Sleeping Sickness.—The deep reflexes are usually exaggerated and the superficial ones diminished or absent.

There is no distinct alteration of motor or sensory function except that of deep hyperaesthesia (Kerandel's sign). There is usually marked weakness of muscles of locomotion.

Leprosy.—The usual statement is that there is an exaggeration of the deep reflexes. Ankle clonus has been rarely reported.

Anaesthesia is the most important symptom in the diagnosis of leprosy. This loss of sensation is often for pain and temperature with retention of tactile sense (Dissociation of sensation—a prominent symptom of syringomyelia). The anaesthesia is not only found in the spots but associated with the leprous neuritis which chiefly involves the ulnar, facial and peroneal nerves. Muscle palsies and atrophies are common and the main-en-griffe appearance of the hand is seen.

PSYCHIC AND NEURASTHENIC STATES

Pellagra.—Very important in diagnosis is a more or less prolonged prodromal period of neurasthenia which is apt to be more marked in the winter at a time when the skin and alimentary tract manifestations are in abeyance. Along with the anxiety and unrest of this neurasthenia we have lack of mental concentration and depression of spirits.

A melancholic state is almost always present in the psychosis of pellagra. There is not the indifferent, satisfied, more or less happy mental state of the case of general paresis. Some consider the pellagrous psychosis to belong to the toxic group, as from alcohol or cocaine, while others place it in the group of infective psychoses, as the post-influenzal one. Gregor regards it as belonging to the infective-exhaustive group. The insanity of pellagra is that of an acute confusional one.

In the final cachexia there is a dementia.

Sleeping Sickness.—It may be many months or even years before the mental changes follow the trypanosome fever stage. At first a change in disposition is noted, the patient becoming listless and apathetic.

There is great impairment of mental concentration and memory. There may be later on catatonic manifestations as echolalia, mutism or *flexibilitas cerea*. There may at times be paranoid manifestations to be succeeded by states of profound melancholia. In the terminal stage a comatose state overshadows the psychical manifestations.

Malaria.—Leaving out of account the acute delirious states which accompany cerebral malaria there have been reported cases showing various manifestations of psychic disturbances even to maniacal or melancholic forms of insanity.

It is a common practice to attribute the irritability and lack of mental concentration of those who have lived for a long time in the tropics to the damage done the cerebral cortex by the malarial parasite. It is certainly more reasonable to attribute these minor psychic disturbances to malaria rather than to actinic rays of the sun.

Insolation.—It is popular to assign neurasthenic manifestations to the actinic rays of the sun or the tropical heat as these influences operate on every resident of the tropics. It is very necessary to exclude derangements of the digestion due to errors in diet with resulting exhaustion of the pancreatic and hepatic functions.

Alcohol is a potent factor for tropical neurasthenia as the tendency is for excess in this direction in those who in temperate climates are only moderate drinkers.

Hookworm Disease.—The patients with this disease are apt to become hypochondriacal and even melancholic.

There is a correspondence between the physical and mental backwardness of children with this disease, a child of 12, who by the Binet-Simond test will only be rated at 7 will also not seem larger or better developed physically than a child of 7 years would be.

Malta Fever.—Owing to the neuralgic pains and insomnia patients with this disease are apt to become neurasthenic. They are peculiarly liable to form the morphine habit if this drug be placed in their hands for the relief of pain.

Dengue often shows a rather marked neurasthenia during convalescence and this may be protracted if the patient tries to resume his active duties before his complete recovery.

THE GAIT

There are no gaits in tropical diseases which can strictly speaking be regarded as special types of gait. In beriberi we often note the designation *tripod gait* of *beriberi*. This simply refers to the manner in which a case of the paraplegic type of beriberi uses a stick held by his hands to assist him in dragging along his atrophied and muscle enfeebled legs. The legs are widely separated and the stick placed in front makes the two legs and stick resemble a tripod.

It is true that beriberics show the steppage gait of multiple neuritis as, owing to more or less foot drop and lack of power to extend the toes, the patient lifts his foot high from the ground to avoid scraping the toes, and bends to the other side. It is as if a man were walking through a mire.

In *sleeping sickness* it is a shuffling gait. It is as if one were dragging the feet along from pure muscular weakness.

In *pellagra* we may see a gait in which the patient separates his legs rather widely and uses a stick in front, shuffling his feet along with

knees slightly bent and soles of the feet scarcely raised from the ground.

Some cases show a typical spastic paralytic gait.

We often note under *dengue* the designation dandyfied gait. This refers to the stilted, mincing gait of a dandy and is probably the explanation of the derivation of the word dengue. The pains about the site of the insertions of muscles with the slightest movement make these patients walk in a stiff, self-conscious manner.



INDEX

- Acidosis, 370, 391
 in blackwater, 43, 48
 in cholera, 163
 in heat stroke, 329
- Agglutination tests, 366
 in cholera, 159
 in dysentery, 122
 in Malta fever, 170
- Ainhum, 339
- Alcohol, and neuritis, 226
 and liver abscess, 105, 107
- Albumin tests, 388
- Albuminuria, 393
 in blackwater, 47
 in malaria, 30
 in yellow fever, 201
- Alimentary tract, 402
- Amoebae, 89, 94
- Anaemia, 381
- Ancylostomiasis, 31, 80, 249, 291, 346,
 377, 382, 383, 387
 ancylostoma in, 251
 diagnosis in, 258
 epidemiology of, 253
 geographical distribution of, 250
 ground itch in, 256
 history of, 249
 life history of hookworm, 251
 pathology of, 254
 prognosis in, 259
 prophylaxis in, 259
 symptomatology of, 255
 symptoms in detail of, 257
 treatment of, 260
- Anopheline mosquitoes, 5, 8, 16, 19
- Arsenic and beriberi, 214
- Bacillus dysenteriae, 115, 116
 icteroides, 193
 leprae, 174
 pestis, 128, 141
- Benign malaria, 21, 22
- Beriberi, 212, 345, 371, 378, 379, 383,
 393, 403, 410
 acute pernicious, 223
 and scurvy, 226
 atrophic, 220
 definition of, 212
 diagnosis in, 225
- Beriberi epidemic dropsy, 220
 epidemiology of, 218
 etiology of, 213
 food deficiency, 214
 geographical distribution of, 213
 history of, 212
 infantile, 220
 pathology of, 218
 paraplegic, 220
 prognosis in, 227
 prophylaxis in, 227
 rice in, 215
 ship, 226
 symptomatology of, 219
 symptoms in detail of, 224
 synonyms for, 212
 treatment of, 228
 vitamines in, 217
 wet, 220
- Berne, 321
- Bilious remittent malaria, 28, 46, 385
- Black death, 127, 138
- Blackwater fever, 27, 40, 201, 351,
 373, 387, 392, 393, 403
 complications in, 47
 definition of, 40
 diagnosis in, 45
 epidemiology of, 43
 etiology of, 41
 geographical distribution of, 41
 history of, 40
 pathology of, 43
 prognosis in, 47
 prophylaxis in, 47
 symptomatology of, 44
 symptoms in detail of, 45
 synonyms for, 40
 treatment of, 48
- Blood examinations, 355
 acidosis in, 370
 coagulation rate in, 369
 counting cells in, 356
 culturing in, 365
 differential count in, 364
 dried smears, 361
 haemoglobin in, 367
 in blackwater, 45
 in malaria, 30
 in kala azar, 80

- Blood, specific gravity of, 370
 - staining films, 362
 - thick films in, 361
 - wet preparations in, 359
- Blood in tropical diseases, 371
 - blackwater fever, 373
 - filariasis, 376
 - kala azar, 375
 - liver abscess, 374
 - malaria, 372
 - Malta fever, 373
 - plague, 374
 - relapsing fever, 375
 - trypanosomiasis, 375
- Brazilian trypanosomiasis, 49, 353
 - diagnosis of, 63
 - epidemiology of, 61
 - etiology of, 61
 - prophylaxis in, 63
 - symptomatology of, 63
 - transmission of, 61
 - types of, 63
- Bubas, 86
- Calabar swellings, 277
- Cephalalgia, 408
- Chaulmoogra oil, 190
- Cholera, 120, 147, 346, 371, 378, 392, 395, 398, 404
 - carriers in, 154
 - definition of, 147
 - diagnosis in, 158
 - disinfection in, 161
 - epidemiology of, 151
 - etiology of, 149
 - blood transmission, 153
 - geographical distribution of, 148
 - history of, 147
 - pathology of, 155
 - prognosis in, 160
 - prophylaxis in, 160
 - symptomatology of, 156
 - symptoms in detail of, 157
 - treatment of, 162
 - vaccination in, 162
 - water transmission, 152
- Cholera red reaction, 160
- Cholerine, 157
- Chrysomya macellaria, 322
- Chyluria, 394
- Circulatory system, 378
- Climatic bubo, 140, 337, 381
 - diagnosis in, 338
 - symptomatology of, 337
- Clonorchiasis, 288
 - symptomatology of, 289
- Clonorchis endemicus, 288
- Coagulation rate, 369
- Cochin-China diarrhoea, 290
- Color index, 369
- Coma, 406
- Conorrhinus, 73
- Convulsions, 409
- Craw-craw, 323
- Creeping eruption, 322
- Culexine mosquitoes, 16
- Culturing blood, 366
- Cylops, 265
- Delirium, 406
- Dengue, 69, 201, 204, 348, 376, 412, 413
 - definition of, 204
 - diagnosis in, 208
 - epidemiology of, 205
 - etiology of, 205
 - geographical distribution of, 205
 - history of, 204
 - mosquitoes in, 206
 - pathology of, 206
 - prophylaxis in, 209
 - symptomatology of, 206
 - symptoms in detail of, 207
 - synonyms for, 204
 - treatment of, 209
- Dengue like fevers, 209
- Dermatobia eyaniventris, 321
- Dermatophiliasis, 319
- Dhobie itch, 315
- Diarrhoea, 404
- Dysentery, 88, 284
 - baeterial, 91
 - definition of, 88
 - etiology of, 89, 90, 91
 - from animal parasites, 89
 - from poisons, 91
- Dysentery (amoebic), 93, 346, 397, 404
 - complications in, 99
 - diagnosis in, 99
 - epidemiology of, 97
 - etiology of, 94
 - geographical distribution of, 94
 - history of, 93
 - pathology of, 97
 - prophylaxis in, 101
 - symptomatology of, 98
 - transmission of, 96
 - treatment of, 102
- Dysentery (bacillary), 114, 353, 376, 397, 398, 407
 - chronic, 120
 - complications in, 121
 - diagnosis in, 120
 - epidemiology of, 117
 - etiology of, 114
 - gangrenous, 120
 - geographical distribution of, 114

- Dysentery (bacillary), history of, 114
 pathology of, 118
 prophylaxis in, 123
 symptomatology of, 119
 treatment in, 123
- Ekiri, 91
- Elephantiasis, 271
 of scrotum, 272
- Emetine, 102, 112
- Endemic haematuria, 282
- Entamoeba coli, 95, 101
 histolytica, 94, 101, 104
 tetragena, 95
- Epidemic dropsy, 220
 gangrenous rectitis, 404
- Espundia, 86
- Faeces, 397
 intestinal parasites, 401
 occult blood in, 398
 ova in, 398
- Fasciolopsis buski, 289
- Fever free diseases, 345
- Filaria, bancrofti, 263, 264, 266
 loa, 263, 264, 266, 276
 medinensis, 264, 265, 266, 278
 perstans, 264, 265
 volvulus, 264, 265, 277
- Filariasis, 262, 346, 376, 380, 394, 395
 abscesses in, 270
 and chylous hydrocele, 275
 ehyluria, 271
 clinical types, 269
 diagnosis in, 275
 elephantiasis, 271
 elephantoid fever, 269
 etiology of, 266
 history of, 265
 life history of *F. bancrofti*, 267
 mosquitoes in, 267
 pathology of, 268
 scrotum in, 269
 varicose groin glands in, 270
- Filterable viruses, 192
- Flagellated body, 6
- Fleas in leishmaniasis, 73
 in plague, 130, 132
- Framboesia, 292
- Funiculitis, endemic, 395
- Gaits, 412
- Gametes in malaria, 6
- Gangosa, 299
 and yaws, 299
 diagnosis in, 302
 epidemiology of, 299
 etiology of, 299
 geographical distribution of, 299
- Gangosa, history of, 299
 pathology of, 300
 symptomatology of, 300
 treatment of, 302
- Genito-urinary system, 394
- Giemsa's stain, 363
- Glandular involvements, 380
- Glossina morsitans, 50, 53
 palpalis, 49, 51
- Goundou, 339
- Granuloma venereum, 307
 diagnosis in, 308
 etiology of, 307
 history of, 307
 pathology of, 307
 symptomatology of, 308
- Guinea worm, 278
- Haemacytometry, 356
- Haematuria, 394
- Hæmoglobin estimations, 367
- Haemoglobinuria, 393
 hæmoglobinuric fever, 42
- Haemorrhages, 382
- Haemosporidia, 4, 5
- Haffkine's plague prophylactic, 145
 cholera vaccine, 150
- Heat prostration, 331
 stroke, 329, 393, 407, 412
 etiology of, 329
 symptomatology of, 330
 treatment of, 331
- Hill diarrhoea, 247
- Hosts, 5
- Impetigo, 320
- Infantile beriberi, 220
- Influenza, 140
- Intestinal bacteria, 116
 parasites, 400
 tract, 404
- Insolatio, 329, 412
- Insomnia, 407
- Jaundice, 384
- Kala azar, 76, 350, 375, 382, 386
 diagnosis, in, 80
 epidemiology of, 76
 etiology of, 73
 history of, 71
 pathology of, 77
 prognosis in, 81
 prophylaxis in, 82
 symptomatology of, 78
 symptoms in detail of, 79
 synonyms for, 71
 treatment of, 82
- Katayama disease, 284

- Laverania, 4
 Leishmania donovani, 71, 73
 infantum, 71, 72, 73
 tropica, 71
 Leishmaniases, 71
 canine, 73
 cutaneous, 82
 infantile, 79
 relationship, 75
 visceral, 76
 Leprosy, 31, 173, 346, 371, 381, 408, 411
 bible and, 173
 cultivation of bacillus, 175
 definition of, 172
 diagnosis in, 186
 epidemiology of, 176
 etiology of, 174
 geographical distribution of, 173
 history of, 172
 nerve, 182
 nodular, 180
 of rats, 178
 pathology of, 178
 prognosis in, 188
 prophylaxis in, 189
 symptomatology of, 179
 symptoms in detail of, 184
 synonyms for, 172
 transmission of, 177
 treatment of, 189
 Liver, alterations in size of, 385
 pains of, 385
 tropical, 107
 Liver abscess, 104, 353, 374, 384, 385
 complications in, 106
 diagnosis of, 109
 emetine in, 112
 etiology of, 104
 geographical distribution of, 104
 history of, 104
 operation for, 112
 pathology of, 105
 prophylaxis in, 111
 rupture of, 106
 symptomatology of, 106
 symptoms in detail of, 108
 treatment of, 111
 Liver fluke disease, 288
 Lymphatic glands, in trypanosomiasis, 56, 59
 system, 380
 Lymph scrotum, 269, 395
 Maize in pellagra, 231
 Malaria, 1, 80, 110, 348, 372, 381, 383, 386, 391, 393, 406
 algid, 28
 cachexia, 26
 Malaria, cerebral, 27
 cultivation of parasite, 15
 definition of, 1
 diagnosis in, 30
 discovery of parasite, 2
 epidemiology of, 19
 etiology of, 4
 geographical distribution of, 4
 heredity in, 14
 history of, 1
 in animals, 5
 index of, 8
 life history of parasite, 6, 7
 malignant tertian 21, 23, 27
 masked 28
 mosquitoes in, 5, 32
 pathology of, 19
 perniciousness in, 15, 27
 prognosis in, 31
 prophylaxis in, 32, 33
 relapses in, 26
 symptomatology of, 20
 symptoms in detail of, 29
 synonyms for, 1
 toxin in, 6, 14
 transmission of, 5, 6
 treatment of, 35
 variations in cycle, 8
 Malta fever, 31, 80, 165, 350, 373, 379, 382, 387, 395, 407
 complications in, 171
 definition of, 165
 diagnosis in, 170
 epidemiology of, 166
 etiology of, 166
 geographical distribution of, 165
 goat milk in, 167
 history of, 165
 pathology of, 168
 prognosis in, 171
 prophylaxis in, 171
 symptomatology of, 168
 symptoms in detail of, 169
 synonyms for, 165
 treatment of, 171
 Methylene blue, in malaria, 39
 Mexican typhus, 336
 Micrococcus melitensis, 72, 166
 Mosquito, anatomy of, 16, 18
 Anopheline, 16, 18, 19
 destruction, 32
 in dengue, 206
 in filariasis, 267
 in yellow fever, 196
 Mouth, 402
 Mycetoma, 303
 diagnosis in, 305
 epidemiology of, 304
 etiology of, 303

- Mycetoma, geographical distribution
 of, 303
 history of, 303
 pathology of, 304
 prognosis in, 306
 symptomatology of, 305
 treatment of, 306
 Myiasis, cutaneous, 321
 intestinal, 405

 Nausea, 403
 Necator americanus, 251
 Neurasthenia, 411
 Neurological manifestations, 406

 Occult blood, 390
 Oedema, 383
 Oesophagus, 403
 Opisthorchis felinus, 289
 Oriental sore, 85
 diagnosis in, 86
 epidemiology of, 83
 etiology of, 83
 geographical distribution of, 83
 history of, 72
 pathology of, 84
 prophylaxis in, 86
 symptomatology of, 85
 synonyms for, 71
 treatment, 87
 Ornithodoros moubata, 65, 66
 Oroya fever, 325, 381
 etiology of, 326
 symptomatology of, 326

 Pappataci fever, 209
 Paragonomiasis, 287, 379
 diagnosis in, 288
 etiology of, 287
 history of, 287
 symptomatology of, 288
 Paragonimus westermanni, 287
 life history, 287
 Pediculi, 66
 Pellagra, 228, 229, 247, 345, 371, 390,
 402, 403, 410, 411, 412
 corn in, 232
 definition of, 229
 diagnosis in, 241, 242
 epidemiology of, 233
 eruption of, 238
 etiology of, 230
 geographical distribution of, 230
 history of, 230
 moulds and, 232
 mouth in, 237
 pathology of, 234
 periodic recurrences of, 237
 prognosis in, 242

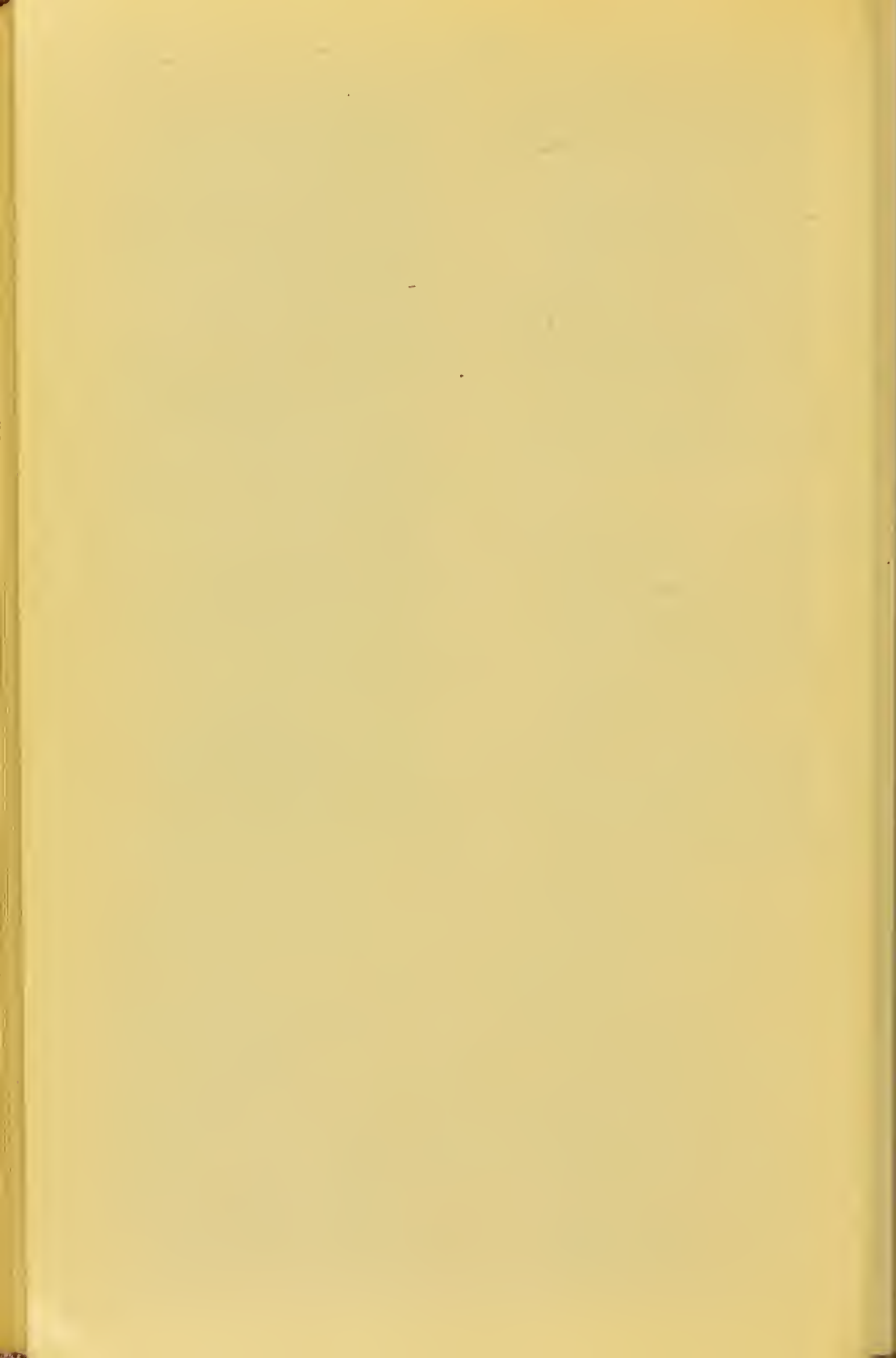
 Pellagra, prophylaxis in, 242
 Simulium in, 233
 symptomatology of, 235
 symptoms in detail of, 241
 synonyms for, 229
 treatment of, 242
 Pernicious malaria, 15, 27
 Phlebotomus fever, 209
 pappatassii, 209
 Piedra, 320
 Pinta, 317
 Piroplasms, 4, 43
 Plague, 126, 352, 374, 380, 406, 408
 bubonic, 135
 cutaneous, 136
 definition of, 126
 diagnosis in, 140
 epidemiology of, 129
 etiology of, 127
 Flugges droplet method, 133, 143
 geographical distribution of, 127
 guinea pig test, 142
 Haffkine's prophylactic, 145
 history of, 126
 pathology of, 133
 pneumonic, 133, 137
 prognosis in, 143
 prophylaxis in, 143
 septicaemic, 134, 138
 symptomatology of, 134
 symptoms in detail of, 138
 synonyms for, 126
 tokens in, 137
 treatment of, 146
 Yersin's serum, 146
 Plasmodium falciparum, 4, 11, 12
 malariae, 4, 10, 12
 vivax, 4, 8, 12
 Proteosoma, 3, 5
 Psychoses, 411

 Quinin, 2, 15, 36
 administration of, 36
 prophylaxis, 34
 toxic effects, 36
 in blackwater, 42

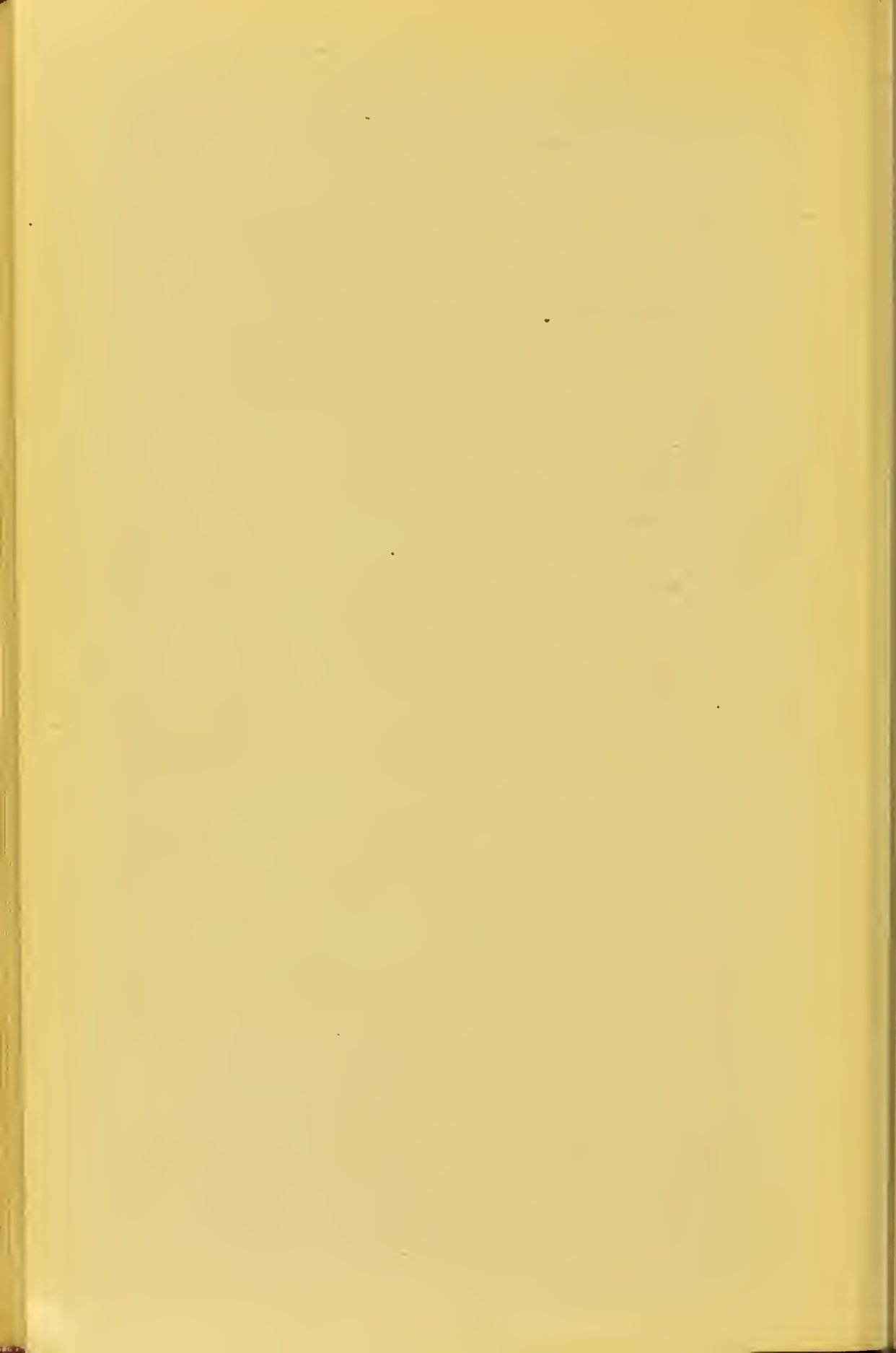
 Rachialgia, 408
 Rat bite fever, 340
 Rats and leprosy, 178
 and plague, 131, 142, 144
 Reflexes, 410
 Relapsing fever, 31, 64, 348, 375, 385,
 387, 408
 definition of, 64
 diagnosis in, 69
 epidemiology of, 66
 etiology of, 65
 pathology of, 67

- Relapsing fever, prophylaxis in, 69
 symptomatology of, 67
 symptoms in detail of, 68
 synonyms for, 64
 transmission of, 66
 treatment of, 70
 Respiratory system, 379
 Rhino-pharyngitis mutilans, 299
 Rice and beriberi, 216
 Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 335
 Romanowsky stains, 363
 Saline enemata, 48
 infusions in blackwater, 48
 in cholera, 163
 in heat stroke, 331
 Sand fly fever, 211
 Sarcopsylla penetrans, 319
 Schilling-Torgau's differential count, 365
 Schistosoma haematobium, 281
 japonicum, 281
 mansoni, 281
 Schistosomiasis, 280, 345, 377, 382, 383, 385, 394, 405
 diagnosis in, 286
 etiology of, 280
 geographical distribution of, 282, 283, 284
 history of, 281
 infection in, 280
 Japanese type, 284
 pathology of, 282
 prophylaxis in, 286
 rectal type, 283
 symptomatology of, 282
 treatment of, 286
 urticarial fever in, 284
 vesical type, 282
 Schizogony, 6, 7
 Schizotrypanum cruzi, 63
 Screw worm, 322
 Scurvy, 226
 Seven day fever, 210
 Ship beriberi, 226
 Simulium reptans, 230, 233
 Six day fever, 211
 Skin diseases, 309
 Sleeping sickness, 57
 Smallpox, 69
 Somnolence, 407
 Spirillum cholerae asiaticae, 149, 159
 Spirochaeta duttoni, 64, 65
 Spleen, enlargements of, 386
 pains of, 387
 puncture in kala azar, 81
 Sporogony, 7
 Sporozoites, 6
 Sprue, 241, 244, 345, 371, 390, 397
 and hill diarrhoea, 247
 diagnosis in, 247
 etiology of, 244
 pathology of, 245
 stools in, 246
 symptomatology of, 245
 symptoms in detail of, 246
 treatment of, 248
 Stegomyia calopus, 192, 196
 Stomach, 403
 Strongyloides stercoralis, 290
 life history of, 290
 symptoms of, 290
 treatment of, 291
 Syphilis and liver abscess, 110
 and yaws, 297
 and tropical ulcer, 309
 Tabardillo, 336
 Temperature chart in blackwater fever, 351
 dengue, 348
 kala azar, 350
 liver abscess, 353
 malaria, 348, 349
 Malta fever, 350
 Oroya fever, 354
 plague, 352
 relapsing fever, 348
 trypanosomiasis, 352
 yellow fever, 351
 Thymol treatment, 260
 Tinea cruris, 315
 etiology of, 315
 symptomatology of, 315
 treatment of, 316
 Tinea imbricata, 312
 etiology of, 313
 symptomatology of, 313
 treatment of, 313
 Trematode diseases, 287, 289
 Tremors, 409
 Treponema pertenue, 292
 Tropical liver, 107
 and syphilis, 309
 etiology of, 310
 symptomatology of, 310
 treatment of, 311
 Trypanosoma brucei, 50, 51
 gambiense, 49, 50, 51
 rhodesiense, 50, 51
 Trypanosomiasis, 31, 49, 352, 375, 380, 407, 409, 410, 411, 412
 Brazilian, 61
 definition of, 49
 diagnosis in, 58
 epidemiology of, 53

- Trypanosomiasis, etiology of, 50
geographical distribution of, 50
history of, 49
pathology of, 54
prognosis in, 59
prophylaxis in, 59
symptomatology of, 54
symptoms in detail of, 57
synonyms for, 49
treatment of, 60
- Tsetse flies, 51, 53
- Tsutsugamushi, 333
diagnosis in, 335
epidemiology of, 324
symptomatology of, 324
- Tuberculosis, 110
- Tumbu fly disease, 323
- Typhoid fever, 24, 69, 80
- Typhus fever, 69, 140
- Uta, 86
- Urine, 388
ammonia nitrogen in, 392
amount of, 392
bacteriology of, 395
bile pigment in, 391
Erich's aldehyde test, 391
- Urobilinuria, 391
in blackwater, 47
- Verruga, 325, 327
pathology of, 327
symptomatology of, 327
- Ver macaque, 321
- Vitamines, 217, 231
- Vomiting, 403
- Yaws, 292, 346, 371
and syphilis, 297
diagnosis in, 298
epidemiology of, 293
etiology of, 292
geographical distribution of, 292
history of, 292
inoculation experiments, 293
pathology of, 294
prognosis in, 298
prophylaxis in, 298
symptomatology of, 294
tertiary, 297
treatment of, 298
- Yellow fever, 31, 46, 191, 208, 351, 371, 382, 384, 393, 403, 406, 408
Bacillus icteroides, 193
black vomit in, 199
Commission reports, 193, 195
definition of, 191
diagnosis in, 201
epidemiology of, 196
etiology of, 192
experimental work, 194
Faget's law, 200
geographical distribution of, 192
history of, 191
pathology of, 197
prognosis in, 202
prophylaxis in, 202
Stegomyia in, 192, 196
symptomatology of, 198
symptoms in detail of, 199
synonyms for, 191
treatment of, 202
- Yersin's plague serum, 146
- Zygote, 7







SELECTED LIST
OF
NEW AND STANDARD WORKS

PUBLISHED BY

H. K. LEWIS & CO. LTD.,
136 GOWER STREET, & 24 GOWER PLACE,
LONDON, W.C.

TELEGRAMS: Publicavit, Eusroad, London. (ESTABLISHED 1844). TELEPHONE: Museum 1072.

* * *For full list of works on Medicine and Surgery published by H. K. Lewis & Co. Ltd. see complete Catalogue, post free on application.*

SIR JAMES MACKENZIE DAVIDSON.

Consulting Medical Officer Roentgen Ray Department, Royal London Ophthalmic Hospital; Consulting Medical Officer X-Ray Department, Charing Cross Hospital, &c.

LOCALISATION BY X-RAYS AND STEREOSCOPY.
With Stereoscopic Plates and other Illustrations, royal 8vo.
[In the Press.]

EDMOND DELORME.

Médecin Inspecteur Général de l'Armée, &c.

WAR SURGERY. Translated by HENRY DE MERIC, Surgeon, In-patients, French Hospital and Dispensary, London, &c. With Illustrations, crown 8vo, 5s. *net*.

E. H. KETTLE, M.D., B.S.

Assistant Pathologist and Assistant Lecturer on Pathology, St. Mary's Hospital Medical School; Formerly Pathologist to the Cancer Hospital, Brompton.

THE PATHOLOGY OF TUMOURS.
Demy 8vo, with 126 Illustrations (3 in colours) from original drawings and photographs. Demy 8vo. [In the press.]

ALFRED M. HELLMAN. B.A., M.D.

Adjunct attending Gynaecologist and Obstetrician, Lebanon Hospital; Fellow New York Academy of Medicine, &c.

AMNESIA AND ANALGESIA IN PARTURITION
(TWILIGHT SLEEP). Crown 8vo, 6s. 6d. *net*.
[Just published.]

New and Standard Works published by

R. W. ALLEN, M.D., B.S. LOND.

Late Clinical Pathologist to the Mount Vernon Hospital for Diseases of the Chest, Ilampstead; late Pathologist to the Royal Eye Hospital, London.

I.

VACCINE THERAPY, ITS THEORY AND PRACTICE. Fourth Edition, entirely re-written and greatly enlarged, with additional charts, demy 8vo. 9s. *net*.

II.

THE BACTERIAL DISEASES OF RESPIRATION, and Vaccines in their Treatment. With 10 plates and 19 charts, royal 8vo, 6s. *net*.

W. E. M. ARMSTRONG, M.A., M.D. DUB.

Bacteriologist to the Central London Ophthalmic Hospital, &c.

I. **K. THERAPY,** with Special Reference to Tuberculosis. Demy 8vo, 5s. *net*.

NOEL D. BARDSWELL, M.D.

Medical Superintendent, King Edward VII Sanatorium, Midhurst.

PRELIMINARY REPORT ON THE TREATMENT OF PULMONARY TUBERCULOSIS WITH TUBERCULIN. Prefatory note by Professor KARL PEARSON, F.R.S. With 22 Charts, demy 8vo, 6s. *net*.

W. M. BEAUMONT.

INJURIES OF THE EYES OF THE EMPLOYED, AND THE WORKMEN'S COMPENSATION ACT. Problems in Prognosis. Crown 8vo, 5s.

REGINALD R. BENNETT, B.SC. LOND., F.I.C.

Pharmaceutical Chemist; late Pharmacist and Teacher of Pharmacy to University College Hospital, London, &c.

MATERIA MEDICA AND PHARMACY FOR MEDICAL STUDENTS. With an appendix on Incompatibility. Third Edition, thoroughly revised, fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d. *net*.

JOHN FAIRBAIRN BINNIE, A.M., C.M. ABERD.

Surgeon to the General Hospital, Kansas City, Mo., &c.

MANUAL OF OPERATIVE SURGERY. Seventh Edition, revised and enlarged, with numerous illustrations, royal 8vo. [In the Press.]

H. K. Lewis & Co. Ltd., 136 Gower Street, London.

E. M. BROCKBANK, M.D. VICT., F.R.C.P.

Senior Honorary Assistant Physician Royal Infirmary, Manchester, &c.

**PRACTICAL POINTS IN THE DIAGNOSIS AND
TREATMENT OF HEART DISEASE.** Being a new
and enlarged Edition of "Heart Sounds and Murmurs, their
Causation and Differentiation." With Illustrations, crown 8vo.
[Nearly ready.]

OLLIVER BRUCE, M.R.C.S., L.R.C.P.,

Joint Tuberculosis Officer for the County of Essex.

LECTURES ON TUBERCULOSIS TO NURSES.
Based on a Course delivered to the Queen Victoria Jubilee
Nurses. With Illustrations, crown 8vo, 2s. 6d. *net*.

W. IRONSIDE BRUCE, M.D.

Physician to the X-Ray and Electrical Departments, Charing Cross
Hospital, &c.

A SYSTEM OF RADIOGRAPHY: with an Atlas of the
Normal. With 111 Illustrations, folio, 15s. *net*.

MILDRED M. BURGESS, M.D. LOND.

Late Assistant House Physician, Victoria Hospital for Sick Children, Hull;
late House Surgeon, Royal Free Hospital; Assistant School Doctor, London
County Council; Medical Officer, London County Council, Girls' Industrial
School, Brixton Hill, S.W., &c.

I.

HEALTH.

With 2 coloured Plates and other Illustrations, crown 8vo,
stiff paper covers, 1s. 6d. *net*.

II.

THE CARE OF INFANTS AND YOUNG CHILDREN
IN HEALTH. Second Edition, reprinted, crown 8vo,
stiff paper covers, 1s. *net*.

JOSEPH BYRNE, A.M., M.D., LL.B.

I

ON THE PHYSIOLOGY OF THE SEMICIRCULAR
CANALS AND THEIR RELATION TO SEASICK-
NESS. Illustrated with diagrams, tables and a chart, crown 8vo,
12s. 6d. *net*.

II.

SEA-SICKNESS AND HEALTH. A Manual for
Travellers. Crown 8vo, 4s. *net*.

New and Standard Works published by

ALFRED H. CARTER, M.D. LOND., F.R.C.P., J.P.

Formerly Professor of Medicine, University of Birmingham; Late Examiner
in Medicine for the University of London; Consulting Physician to the
Queen's Hospital, Birmingham, &c.

ELEMENTS OF PRACTICAL MEDICINE.

Tenth Edition, revised throughout, crown 8vo, *gs. net.*

F. COLEMAN, L.R.C.P., M.R.C.S., L.D.S.

Assistant Dental Surgeon, St. Bartholomew's Hospital, and the Royal
Dental Hospital.

AND HARVEY HILLIARD, L.R.C.P.

Anæsthetist to the Royal Dental Hospital, &c.

ANÆSTHETICS IN DENTAL SURGERY.

With 6 plates and 38 illustrations in the text, crown 8vo,
7s. net.

F. COLEMAN, L.R.C.P., M.R.C.S., L.D.S.

Assistant Dental Surgeon to St. Bartholomew's Hospital.

EXTRACTION OF TEETH.

Second Edition, with 57 Illustrations, crown 8vo,
3s. 6d. net.

ARTHUR COOPER, M.R.C.S., L.R.C.P.

Consulting Surgeon to the Westminster General Dispensary, &c.

**THE SEXUAL DISABILITIES OF MAN AND
THEIR TREATMENT.** Second Edition, Enlarged, with
Illustrations, fcap. 8vo, *5s. net.*

CHARLES COTAR, M.D. PARIS.

Consulting Physician in Vichy.

THE MINERAL WATERS OF VICHY. For the use of
General Practitioners. With a preface by Dr. Vaughan
Harley. With plans and illustrations, post 8vo, *4s. net.*

H. RADCLIFFE-CROCKER, M.D. LOND., B.S., F.R.C.P.

Late Physician for Diseases of the Skin in University College Hospital.

**DISEASES OF THE SKIN: THEIR DESCRIPTION,
PATHOLOGY, DIAGNOSIS, AND TREATMENT.**
Third Edition, with 76 Plates and 112 Illustrations, 2 vols.,
large 8vo, *30s. net.*

H. K. Lewis & Co. Ltd., 136 Gower Street, London.

F. G. CROOKSHANK, M.D.

Physician (Out-patients) Hampstead General and N.W. London Hospital.

I.

ESSAYS AND CLINICAL STUDIES.

Demy 8vo, 7s. 6d. *net.*

II.

FLATULENCE AND SHOCK.

Demy 8vo, 2s. *net.*

J. SADLER CURGENVEN, M.R.C.S., L.R.C.P.

THE CHILD'S DIET.

Second Edition, crown 8vo, 2s. 6d. *net.*

E. RUMLEY DAWSON, M.R.C.S., L.R.C.P.

Formerly Member of the Council of the Obstetrical Society of London, &c.

THE CAUSATION OF SEX. A new theory of Sex based on Clinical Materials, with chapters on the fore-casting of the sex of the unborn child, and on the determination or production of sex at will. Second Edition, with illustrations, demy 8vo.

[*In Preparation.*]

EDWARD J. EDWARDES, M.D. LOND.

Member of the Royal College of Physicians, London.

A CONCISE HISTORY OF SMALL-POX AND VACCINATION IN EUROPE. Crown 8vo, 2s. 6d. *net.*

MAX EINHORN, M.D.

Professor of Medicine at the New York Graduate Medical School and Hospital, &c.

LECTURES ON DIETETICS.

With 4 plates, post 8vo, 4s. *net.*

W. D'ESTE EMERY, M.D., B.SC. LOND.

Director of the Laboratories and Lecturer on Pathology and Bacteriology, King's College Hospital, and Lecturer on General Pathology, London School of Medicine for Women; formerly Assistant Bacteriologist to the Laboratories of the Royal Colleges of Physicians and Surgeons, London; and sometime Lecturer on Pathology and Bacteriology in the University of Birmingham, &c.

IMMUNITY AND SPECIFIC THERAPY. An Account of the main phenomena of Infection and Immunity, and their application in the prevention, diagnosis and treatment of disease. With illustrations, demy 8vo, 12s. 6d. *net.*

New and Standard Works published by

E. W. GOODALL, M.D. LOND.

Medical Superintendent of the Eastern Hospital of the Metropolitan Asylums Board; Formerly Medical Registrar to Guy's Hospital;

AND J. W. WASHBOURN, C.M.G., M.D. LOND., F.R.C.P.

Late Physician to the London Fever Hospital; Assistant Physician to Guy's Hospital, and Lecturer in the Medical School.

A MANUAL OF INFECTIOUS DISEASES. Second Edition, revised and largely rewritten by E. W. GOODALL, Illustrated with Plates, Diagrams, and Charts, 8vo, 14s. *net*.

ALFRED GORDON, A.M. M.D. PARIS.

Associate in Nervous and Mental Diseases, Jefferson Medical College, &c.

DISEASES OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM: for the General Practitioner and Student. Second Edition, with 69 Illustrations, roy. 8vo, 17s. *net*.

WILLIAM GORDON, M.A., M.D., F.R.C.P.

Physician to the Royal Devon and Exeter Hospital; Physician to the West of England Eye Infirmary; sometime Scholar of Trinity College, Cambridge.

I.
THE INFLUENCE OF STRONG PREVALENT RAIN-BEARING WINDS ON THE PREVALENCE OF PHTHISIS. With 22 maps, mostly coloured, demy 8vo, 7s. 6d. *net*.

II.
THE PLACE OF CLIMATOLOGY IN MEDICINE: being the Samuel Hyde Memorial Lectures read before the Section of Balneology and Climatology of the Royal Society of Medicine, May 20th and 21st, 1913. With 18 Tables, demy 8vo, 3s. 6d. *net*.

GEORGE M. GOULD, A.M., M.D.

I.
THE PRACTITIONER'S MEDICAL DICTIONARY, an illustrated dictionary of Medicine and allied subjects, including all the words and phrases generally used in Medicine, with their proper pronunciation, derivation, and definition. Second Edition, illustrated, medium 8vo, pp. xxvi. + 1043, gilt edges, rounded corners, bound in limp leather, 18s. *net*.

II.
A POCKET MEDICAL DICTIONARY, giving the Pronunciation and Definition of the Principal Words used in Medicine and the Collateral Sciences. Seventh edition, thoroughly revised, containing 35,000 words. Limp leather, 32mo, 5s. *net*; or with Thumb Index, 6s. 6d. *net*. [Just published.]

H. K. Lewis & Co. Ltd., 136 Gower Street, London.

G. M. GOULD AND W. L. PYLE.

POCKET CYCLOPEDIA OF MEDICINE AND SURGERY. Based upon the Second Edition of Gould and Pyle's Cyclopaedia of Practical Medicine and Surgery. Second Edition, revised, enlarged and edited by R. J. E. SCOTT, M.A., B.C.L., M.D., New York; formerly attending Physician to the Demilt Dispensary; formerly attending Physician to the Bellevue Dispensary. 736 pages, limp leather, 32mo, 5s. *net*.

C. GRAHAM GRANT, L.R.C.P. AND S. EDIN.

Divisional Surgeon H. and Thames Divisions Metropolitan Police.
Surgeon Poplar Hospital, &c.

PRACTICAL FORENSIC MEDICINE, A Police-Surgeon's Emergency Guide. Second Edition, revised and enlarged, fcap. 8vo, 2s. *net*.

DR. RICHARD GREEFF.

Professor of Ophthalmology in the University of Berlin and Chief of the Royal Ophthalmic Clinic in the Charité Hospital.

ATLAS OF EXTERNAL DISEASES OF THE EYE, for Physicians and Students. Only authorised English Translation by P. W. SHEDD, M.D., New York. With 84 Illustrations in colour on 54 plates, demy 4to, 42s. *net*.

B. BURNETT HAM, M.D., M.R.C.S., D.P.H.

Late Chief Health Officer for Victoria, Australia. Late Commissioner of Public Health for Queensland.

A HANDBOOK OF SANITARY LAW, for the use of Candidates for Public Health Qualifications, Seventh Edition, fcap 8vo, 3s. 6d. *net*.

J. DELPRATT HARRIS, M.D. (DURH.), M.R.C.S.

Senior Surgeon and Hon. Medical Officer in charge of Electrical Department, Royal Devon and Exeter Hospital, etc.

LECTURES ON MEDICAL ELECTRICITY TO NURSES. An Illustrated Manual. With 23 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 2s. 6d. *net*.

F. HERNAMAN-JOHNSON, M.D.

THE LOCALIZATION OF BULLETS AND SHELL FRAGMENTS. With Illustrations demy 8vo, 1s. *net*.

New and Standard Works published by

H. LEWIS JONES, M.A., M.D., F.R.C.P.

Late Consulting Medical Officer to the Electrical Department in St. Bartholomew's Hospital; Honorary Fellow of the American Electro-Therapeutic Association; Member of the Société Française d'Electro-Thérapie et de Radiologie. &c.

IONIC MEDICATION: THE PRINCIPLES OF THE METHOD,
AND AN ACCOUNT OF THE CLINICAL RESULTS OBTAINED.
Second Edition, with coloured Frontispiece. Crown 8vo, 5s. *net*.

EMILIA KANTHACK.

(MRS. DE VOSS.)

THE PRESERVATION OF INFANT LIFE. A guide
for health visitors. With Preface by Dr. J. F. J. SYKES,
Late Medical Officer of Health, St. Pancras. Crown 8vo, 1s. *net*.

H. R. KENWOOD, M.B., D.P.H., F.C.S.

Temporary Lieut.-Col. R.A.M.C.; Professor of Hygiene and Public Health
in the University of London, &c.

HEALTH IN THE CAMP. A Talk to Soldiers.
Demy 16mo. 3d. *net*.

PROF. FEDOR KRAUSE, M.D.

Geh. Medizinalrat Dirigierender Arzt am Augusta-Hospital zu Berlin.

SURGERY OF THE BRAIN AND SPINAL CORD,
based on personal experiences. Translated by Prof. H. A.
HAUBOLD, M.D., Clinical Professor of Surgery, Bellevue Hospital
and New York University Medical College.

Vol. I. With 63 figures in the Text, 24 coloured plates, and 1
half-tone plate. Crown 4to, 25s. *net*.

Vol. II. With 94 figures in the Text (14 coloured) 27 coloured
figures and 4 half-tone figs. on 15 plates. Crown 4to, 30s. *net*.

Vol. III. With 42 figures (3 coloured) in the text, and 47 coloured
figures on 22 plates. Crown 4to, 30s. *net*.

DAVID BRIDGE LEES, M.D., CANTAB., F.R.C.P., LOND.

Late Consulting Physician to St. Mary's Hospital and to the Hospital for
Sick Children, Great Ormond Street, London.

ON THE DIAGNOSIS AND TREATMENT OF
INCIPIENT PULMONARY TUBERCULOSIS. The
Bradshaw Lectures delivered before the Royal College of Physi-
cians of London. With appendices, demy 8vo, 5s. *net*.

DR. PERCY LEWIS.

Hon. Medical Officer to the Victoria Hospital and Surgeon to St. Andrews'
Convalescent Home, Folkestone.

A MANUAL OF MEDICAL EXERCISES.
2nd edition, 16mo, enlarged, 1s. 6d. *net*.

H. K. Lewis & Co. Ltd., 136 Gower Street, London.

LEWIS'S PRACTICAL SERIES.

In Demy and Crown 8vo Volumes, with Illustrations.

- THE OPERATIONS OF AURAL SURGERY.** By C. E. WEST, F.R.C.S., Aural Surgeon, St. Bartholomew's Hospital, and SYDNEY SCOTT, M.S., F.R.C.S., Assistant Aural Surgeon, St. Bartholomew's Hospital, &c. With Illustrations, demy 8vo, 7s. 6d. *net*.
- MIND AND ITS DISORDERS. A Textbook for Students and Practitioners.** By W. H. B. STODDART, M.D., F.R.C.P., Lecturer on Mental Diseases, St. Thomas's Hospital, &c. Second Edition, 12s. 6d. *net*.
- CLINICAL BACTERIOLOGY AND HÆMATOLOGY FOR PRACTITIONERS.** By W. D'ESTE EMERY, M.D., B.Sc. LOND., Clinical Pathologist to King's College Hospital, &c. Fifth Edition. *[In preparation.]*
- DISEASES OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM. A Handbook for Students and Practitioners.** By C. E. BEEVOR, M.D. Lond., F.R.C.P., Physician to the National Hospital for the Paralysed and Epileptic. 10s. 6d.
- THE TREATMENT OF PULMONARY CONSUMPTION.** By VINCENT D. HARRIS, M.D. Lond., F.R.C.P., and E. CLIFFORD BEALE, M.A., M.B., Cantab., F.R.C.P., Physicians to the City of London Hospital for Diseases of the Chest, &c. 10s. 6d.
- THE SURGICAL DISEASES OF CHILDREN AND THEIR TREATMENT BY MODERN METHODS.** By D'ARCY POWER, F.R.C.S., Surgeon to St. Bartholomew's Hospital. 10s. 6d.
- DISEASES OF THE NOSE & THROAT.** By HERBERT TILLEY, M.D., B.S. Lond., F.R.C.S. Eng., Surgeon to the Ear and Throat Department, University College Hospital. Third Edition, 14s. *net*.
- PUBLIC HEALTH LABORATORY WORK.** By H. R. KENWOOD, M.B., D.P.H., F.C.S., Chagwick Professor of Hygiene and Public Health, London University, &c. Sixth Edition, 10s. *net*.
- MEDICAL MICROSCOPY.** By FRANK J. WETHERED, M.D., M.R.C.P., Medical Registrar to the Middlesex Hospital. 9s.
- MEDICAL ELECTRICITY.** By H. LEWIS JONES, M.A. M.D., F.R.C.P., late Consulting Medical Officer, Electrical Department, St. Bartholomew's Hospital. Sixth Edition, thoroughly revised, demy 8vo, 12s. 6d. *net*.
- HYGIENE AND PUBLIC HEALTH.** By LOUIS PARKES, M.D., D.P.H. Lond. Univ., Lecturer on Public Health at St. George's Hospital; and H. R. KENWOOD, M.B., D.P.H., F.C.S. Fifth Edition, 12s. 6d. *net*.
- MANUAL OF OPHTHALMIC PRACTICE,** By C. HIGGENS, F.R.C.S., Lecturer on Ophthalmology at Guy's Hospital Medical School, &c. Second Edition, 7s. 6d.
- A PRACTICAL TEXTBOOK OF THE DISEASES OF WOMEN.** By ARTHUR H. N. LEWERS, M.D. Lond., F.R.C.P. Lond., Consulting Obstetric Physician, London Hospital. Seventh Edition, with Coloured Plates and new Illustrations, 12s. 6d. *net*.
- ANÆSTHETICS: their Uses and Administration.** By DUDLEY W. BUXTON, M.D., B.S., M.R.C.P., Administrator of Anæsthetics at University College Hospital, &c. Fifth Edition, with 8 Plates and 84 Illustrations, 10s. 6d. *net*.
- A PRACTICAL TREATISE ON DISEASES OF THE KIDNEYS AND URINARY DERANGEMENTS.** By C. H. RALFE, M.A., M.D. Cantab., F.R.C.P., Physician to the London Hospital. 10s. 6d.
- DENTAL SURGERY FOR MEDICAL PRACTITIONERS AND STUDENTS OF MEDICINE.** By ASHLEY W. BARRETT, M.B. Lond., M.R.C.S., L.D.S., Consulting Dental Surgeon to the London Hospital. Fifth Edition. *[In preparation.]*

New and Standard Works published by

G. ROE LOCKWOOD, M.D.

Professor of Clinical Medicine in the Columbia University.

DISEASES OF THE STOMACH, including Dietetic and Medicinal Treatment. With 15 Plates and 126 Engravings, medium 8vo, 25s. *net*.

J. M. H. MACLEOD, M.A., M.D., M.R.C.P.

Physician for Diseases of the Skin, Charing Cross Hospital; Physician for Diseases of the Skin, Victoria Hospital for Children; Lecturer on Skin Diseases, London School of Tropical Medicine.

PRACTICAL HANDBOOK OF THE PATHOLOGY OF THE SKIN. An Introduction to the Histology, Pathology, and Bacteriology of the Skin, with special reference to **TECHNIQUE**. With 40 Plates (8 being in colours), from original Drawings, demy 8vo, 15s. *net*.

W. HARRISON MARTINDALE, PH.D., F.C.S.

AND W. WYNN WESTCOTT, M.B. LOND., D.P.H.

H.M.'s Coroner for North-East London.

I.

THE EXTRA PHARMACOPŒIA.

Being the Sixteenth Edition of MARTINDALE and WESTCOTT'S "Extra Pharmacopœia," 2 vols., fcap. 8vo, 21s. *net*. Also sold separately, Vol. I., 14s. *net*, Vol. II., 7s. *net*.

II.

"SALVARSAN" or "606" (DIOXY-DIAMINO-ARSENO-BENZOL); its Chemistry, Pharmacy and Therapeutics. With five illustrations, demy 8vo, 5s. *net*.

G. M. MAYBERRY, B.A., L.R.C.P.

Resident Medical Officer, Dagenham Sanatorium, Essex, &c.

SANATORIUM CASE REGISTER. The Register Sheet measures 23 ins. by 11 in. The Registers are supplied strongly bound, with Index, in books of 50, 100, 150 or 200 Forms. The name of the Sanatorium can be added on the side if required. Book of 50 forms, bound Half Black Basil, Marbled Edges, Index two letters to a page, folioed, £1 5s.; book of 100 forms, bound as above, £1 10s.; book of 150 forms, bound as above, £1 15s.; book of 200 forms, bound as above, £2.

CHARLES A. MERCIER, M.D., F.R.C.P.

LEPER HOUSES AND MEDIÆVAL HOSPITALS, being the Fitzpatrick Lectures delivered before the Royal College of Physicians, London. Royal 8vo, 1s. *net*.

C. KILLICK MILLARD, M.D., D.SC.

Medical Officer of Health for Leicester, &c.

THE VACCINATION QUESTION IN THE LIGHT OF MODERN EXPERIENCE. An Appeal for Reconsideration. With 10 plates and 4 diagrams, demy 8vo, 6s. *net*.

H. K. Lewis & Co. Ltd., 136 Gower Street, London.

A. STANFORD MORTON, M.B., F.R.C.S. ENG.

Surgeon to the Moorfields Ophthalmic Hospital; Ophthalmic Surgeon to the Great Northern Central Hospital, &c.

REFRACTION OF THE EYE; its Diagnosis and the Correction of its Errors. Seventh Edition, thoroughly revised, small 8vo, 3s. 6d.

C. W. MANSELL MOULLIN, M.A., M.D. OXON., F.R.C.S. ENG.

Surgeon and Lecturer on Physiology at the London Hospital, &c.

I.

THE BRADSHAW LECTURE ON THE BIOLOGY OF TUMOURS. Demy 8vo, 2s. *net*.

II.

THE ENLARGEMENT OF THE PROSTATE, Its Treatment and Radical Cure. Fourth Edition, 8vo. 6s.

WILLIAM MURRAY, M.D., F.R.C.P. LOND.

ROUGH NOTES ON REMEDIES. Sixth Edition, with new matter, crown 8vo, 4s. *net*.

WILLIAM MURRELL, M.D., F.R.C.P.

Late Senior Physician to Westminster Hospital, &c.

WHAT TO DO IN CASES OF POISONING. Eleventh edition, thoroughly revised, roy. 32mo. 3s. *net*.

G. OLIVER, M.D., F.R.C.P.

STUDIES IN BLOOD PRESSURE: PHYSIOLOGICAL AND CLINICAL. Second Edition, revised and enlarged, roan, rounded corners, fcap. 8vo, 4s. *net*.

SIR THOMAS OLIVER, M.D., F.R.C.P.

Consulting Physician Royal Victoria Infirmary, and Professor of the Principles and Practice of Medicine, University of Durham College of Medicine, Newcastle-upon-Tyne.

LEAD POISONING, from the Industrial, Medical, and Social points of view. Lectures delivered at the Royal Institute of Public Health. Crown 8vo, with illustrations, 5s. *net*.

New and Standard Works published by

SIR WILLIAM OSLER, BART., M.D., F.R.C.P. LOND.

Regius Professor of Medicine, University of Oxford.

A EQUANIMITAS: With other Essays and Addresses to
Medical Students, Nurses and Practitioners of Medicine.
Third Impression of Second Edition. Post 8vo, 6s. *net*.

KURRE W. OSTROM.

Instructor in Massage and Swedish Movements in the Philadelphia Polyclinic
and College for Graduates in Medicine.

M ASSAGE AND THE ORIGINAL SWEDISH
MOVEMENTS; their application to various diseases of
the body. Seventh Edition, with 115 illustrations, crown 8vo,
3s. 6d. *net*.

STEPHEN PAGET, F.R.C.S.

Senior Secretary, Surgical Section, Royal Society of Medicine Hon.
Secretary, Research Defence Society, &c.

F OR AND AGAINST EXPERIMENTS ON ANI-
MALS. Evidence before the Royal Commission on
Vivisection. With an Introduction by the Right Hon. the EARL
F CROMER, O.M., G.C.M.G., G.C.B. Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d. *net*.

LLEWELLYN POWELL PHILLIPS, M.A., M.D. (Cantab.),
F.R.C.P. (Lond.), F.R.C.S. (Eng.)

Professor of Medicine in the Egyptian Government School of Medicine
Cairo, &c.

A MŒBIASIS AND THE DYSENTERIES.

Demy 8vo, 6s. 6d. *net*.

[Just published.]

SIR RICHARD DOUGLAS POWELL, BART., M.D. LOND., F.R.C.P.

Physician In Ordinary to H.M. the King; Consulting Physician to the
Middlesex Hospital, &c.

AND P. HORTON-SMITH HARTLEY, C.V.O., M.A., M.D. CANTAB.
F.R.C.P.

Physician to Out-patients, St. Bartholomew's Hospital; Physician to the
Brompton Hospital, &c.

O N DISEASES OF THE LUNGS AND PLEURÆ
INCLUDING TUBERCULOSIS AND MEDIASTINAL
GROWTHS. Fifth Edition, with 29 plates (6 coloured) and
other illustrations in the text, 8vo, 21s. *net*.

H. K. Lewis & Co. Ltd., 136 Gower Street, London.

LOUIS BATHE RAWLING, M.B., B.C. CANTAB., F.R.C.S. ENG.

Surgeon, with charge of Out-Patients, and Demonstrator of Practical and Operative Surgery, St. Bartholomew's Hospital; late Senior Demonstrator of Anatomy and Assistant Surgeon to the German Hospital, Dalston.

LANDMARKS AND SURFACE MARKINGS OF THE HUMAN BODY. Fifth Edition, demy 8vo, 29 plates (mostly in colour), 5s. *net*.

FREDERICK T. ROBERTS, M.D., B.SC., F.R.C.P.

Emeritus Professor of Medicine and Clinical Medicine in University College; Consulting Physician to University College Hospital, &c.

THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF MEDICINE. Tenth Edition, with Appendix, in 1 volume, with Illustrations, large 8vo, 12s. 6d. *net*.

A. H. RUTHERFORD, M.D., M.B., C.M., EDIN.

THE ILEO-CÆCAL VALVE. Based upon a Thesis submitted for the Degree of Doctor of Medicine of the University of Edinburgh. With 3 Coloured Plates and 20 Half-tone Plates, comprising 37 figures, demy 8vo, 6s. *net*.

T. B. SCOTT, M.R.C.S., L.R.C.P.

I.

THE ROAD TO A HEALTHY OLD AGE
Essays Lay and Medical. Fcap 8vo, 2s. 6d. *net*.

II.

ESSAYS ON PRACTICAL MEDICINE. By a General Practitioner for General Practitioners. Crown 8vo.
[*Nearly ready.*]

G. E. SHUTTLEWORTH, B.A., M.D.

Medical Examiner of Defective Children to the Willesden Education Committee and formerly to the School Board for London; Consulting Medical Officer, National Association for the Feeble Minded, &c.

AND W. A. POTTS, B.A., M.D.

Consulting Medical Officer, National Association for the Feeble Minded; Chairman of the After-Care Committee, Member Special Schools Committee, Birmingham; late Medical Investigator, Royal Commission on Care and Control of Feeble Minded, &c.

MENTALLY-DEFICIENT CHILDREN: their Treatment and Training. Fourth Edition, with Plates and Illustrations, crown 8vo. [*Nearly ready.*]

New and Standard Works published by

LOUIS STARR, M.D.

Physician to the Children's Hospital, Philadelphia, &c.

I.

HYGIENE OF THE NURSERY. Including the General Regimen and Feeding of Infants and Children; Massage, and the Domestic Management of the Ordinary Emergencies of Early Life. Eighth Edition, with Illustrations, cr. 8vo, 3s. 6d. *net*.

II.

THE ADOLESCENT PERIOD: its Features and Management. Intended for the Teacher and Parent as well as the Practitioner. Post 8vo. [Nearly ready.]

W. MITCHELL STEVENS, M.D., M.R.C.P.

Fellow of University College, London; University Scholar in Medicine (London); Senior Physician to the King Edward VII Hospital, Cardiff; Consulting Physician to the Royal Hamadryad Seamen's Hospital; Lecturer in Pharmacology in University College, Cardiff.

MEDICAL DIAGNOSIS.

Medium 8vo, with 177 illustrations, several in colours including a coloured plate, 15s. *net*.

E. R. STITT, A.M., PH.G., M.D.

Inspector U.S. Navy; Graduate London School of Tropical Medicine, &c.

I.

PRACTICAL BACTERIOLOGY, BLOOD WORK, and Animal Parasitology, &c. Third Edition, 4 Plates and 106 Illustrations, post 8vo, 6s. 6d. *net*.

II.

THE DIAGNOSTICS AND TREATMENT OF TROPICAL DISEASES. With numerous Illustrations, post 8vo, 8s. *net*.

SIR J. BLAND-SUTTON, F.R.C.S.

Assistant Surgeon to the Middlesex Hospital.

LIGAMENTS: THEIR NATURE AND MORPHOLOGY. Third Edition, wood engravings, post 8vo, 4s. 6d.

LOUIS WERNER, M.B., F.R.C.S.I., SEN. MOD. UNIV. DUB.

Ophthalmic Surgeon, Mater Hospital, Dublin, &c.

SWANZY'S HANDBOOK OF THE DISEASES OF THE EYE AND THEIR TREATMENT. Eleventh Edition, with 261 Illustrations and 9 Coloured Plates, demy 8vo, 12s. 6d. *net*.

H. K. Lewis & Co. Ltd., 136 Gower Street, London.

G. DE SWIETECHOWSKI, M.D., M.R.C.S.

Fellow of the Royal Society of Medicine; Clinical Assistant, Electrical and
Massage Department, King's College Hospital.

MECCHANO-THERAPEUTICS IN GENERAL PRACTICE. With 31 Illustrations, crown 8vo, 4s. *net.*

ALBERT TAYLOR.

Member Royal Sanitary Institute; Sanitary Inspector, City of Westminster.

THE SANITARY INSPECTOR'S HANDBOOK.
Fifth Edition, with Illustrations, cr. 8vo, 6s. *net.*

HUGH THURSFIELD, M.D., F.R.C.P.

Senior Demonstrator of Medical Pathology, St. Bartholomew's Hospital;
Assistant Physician to the Hospital for Sick Children, Great Ormond
Street, &c.

AND WILLIAM P. S. BRANSON, M.D., M.R.C.P.

Junior Curator of the Museum, St. Bartholomew's Hospital; Assistant
Physician to the Royal Free Hospital, &c.

MEDICAL MORBID ANATOMY AND PATHOLOGY. Crown 8vo, 6s. *net.*

HUGH WALSHAM, M.A., M.D. CANTAB, F.R.C.P.

Chief Assistant in the Electrical Department of St. Bartholomew's
Hospital. &c.

AND GEORGE HARRISON ORTON, M.A., M.D. CANTAB.

Medical Officer in charge of the X-Ray Department St. Mary's Hospital, and
the Cheyne Hospital for Sick Children, &c.

THE ROENTGEN RAYS IN THE DIAGNOSIS OF
DISEASES OF THE CHEST. With 18 specially prepared
plates from selected negatives, and other illustrations, demy 8vo,
6s. *net.*

R. PROSSER WHITE, M.D. EDIN., M.R.C.S. ENG.

Life Vice-President and Honorary Medical Officer, Royal Albert
Edward Infirmary, Wigan.

I.

CATARRHAL FEVERS, COMMONLY CALLED
COLDS: their Causes, Consequences, Control, and Cure.
With 3 plates, extra demy 8vo, 4s.

II.

OCUPATIONAL AFFECTIONS OF THE SKIN.
A brief account of the trade processes and agents which
give rise to them. With 3 Plates, demy 8vo, 7s. 6d. *net.*

JOHN WYLLIE, M.D. GLASGOW.

I.

MENINGITIS, SINUS THROMBOSIS AND AB-
SCISS OF THE BRAIN. Post 8vo, 6s. 6d. *net.*

G. U.B.
1914

Lewis's Publications.

All Charts sent post free. Specimen of any Chart free.

LEWIS'S DIET CHARTS. A Suggestive set of Diet Tables for the use of Physicians, for handing to Patients after Consultation, modified to suit Individual Requirements; for Albuminuria, Anæmia and Debility, Constipation, Diabetes, Diarrhœa, Dyspepsia, Eczema, Fevers, Gall Stones, Gout and Gravel, Heart Disease (chronic), Nervous Diseases, Obesity, Phthisis, Rheumatism (chronic); and Blank Chart for other diseases. 5s. per packet of 100 charts, post free. A special leaflet on the Diet and Management of Infants is sold separately. 12, 1s.; 100, 7s. 6d., post free.

CHART FOR RECORDING THE EXAMINATION OF URINE. Designed for the use of medical men, analysts and others making examinations of the urine of patients. 12, 1s.; 100, 6s. 6d.; 250, 14s.; 500, 25s.; 1000, 40s.

CLINICAL CHARTS FOR TEMPERATURE OBSERVATIONS, ETC. Arranged by W. RIGDEN, M.R.C.S. 12, 1s.; 100, 6s. 6d.; 250, 14s.; 500, 25s.; 1000, 40s.

LEWIS'S HÆMATOLOGICAL CHART. A new Chart designed for recording Counts, &c., designed by Dr. E. R. TURTON. 1000, 40s.; 500, 25s.; 250, 14s.; 100, 6s. 6d.; 12, 1s.

LEWIS'S CLINICAL CHART, SPECIALLY DESIGNED FOR USE WITH THE VISITING LIST. Arranged for four weeks, and measures 6 × 3 inches. 12, 6d.; 25, 1s.; 100, 2s. 6d.; 500, 11s. 6d.; 1000, 20s.

LEWIS'S "HANDY" TEMPERATURE CHART. Arranged for three weeks, with space for notes of case as to diet, &c., and ruled on back for recording observations on urine. 20, 1s.; 50, 2s.; 100, 3s. 6d.; 500, 14s.; 1000, 25s.

Uniform in price with the "Handy" Chart :—

LEWIS'S FOUR-HOUR TEMPERATURE CHART. Each chart will last a week.

LEWIS'S NURSING CHART. Printed on both sides.

LEWIS'S BLOOD-PRESSURE AND PULSE CHART.

LEWIS'S SMALL FOUR-HOUR TEMPERATURE CHART. Designed by G. C. COLES, M.R.C.S. For two weeks, giving space for Pulse, Respiration, Urine, and Remarks.

LEWIS'S MORNING AND EVENING TEMPERATURE CHART. Designed by G. C. COLES, M.R.C.S. Each chart lasts three weeks, and provides space for noting also the Pulse, Respiration, and Urine, and general Remarks.

LEWIS'S POCKET CASE BOOK. For the use of Nurses, Students and Practitioners, 25 cases, 4 pp. to each case, with headings, diagrams, and a temperature chart. Oblong 8vo, 8 in. × 5 in., 1s. 6d. *net*, post free, 1s. 9d.

